

Project Manual



**City of Norman
Municipal Complex
Renovation**

Municipal Court

Norman, Oklahoma

Issued for Bidding

November 15, 2022



**SECTION 000110
TABLE OF CONTENTS**

PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

DIVISION 00 -- PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

- 000110 - Table of Contents
- Structural Engineers Table of Contents
- MEP Engineers Table of Contents
- Technology Engineers Table of Contents
- 004323 - Alternates Form
- 004325 - Substitution Request Form - During Procurement

SPECIFICATIONS

DIVISION 01 -- GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- 012000 - Price and Payment Procedures
- 012300 - Alternates
- 012500 - Substitution Procedures
- 013000 - Administrative Requirements
- 014000 - Quality Requirements
- 016000 - Product Requirements
- 016116 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content Restrictions
- 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements
- 017800 - Closeout Submittals
- 017900 - Demonstration and Training

DIVISION 02 -- EXISTING CONDITIONS

- 024100 - Demolition

DIVISION 03 -- CONCRETE - REFER TO THE ATTACHED KFC ENGINEERING TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 04 -- MASONRY

- 042000 - Unit Masonry

DIVISION 05 -- METALS - REFER TO THE ATTACHED KFC ENGINEERING TABLE OF CONTENTS AND BELOW

- 055213 - Pipe and Tube Railings

DIVISION 06 -- WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

- 061000 - Rough Carpentry
- 062000 - Finish Carpentry
- 064100 - Architectural Wood Casework

DIVISION 07 -- THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

- 072100 - Thermal Insulation
- 072400 - Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems
- 072500 - Weather Barriers
- 075300 - Elastomeric Membrane Roofing
- 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
- 079200 - Joint Sealants

DIVISION 08 -- OPENINGS

- 081113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
- 081116 - Aluminum Doors and Frames (Interior)
- 081416 - Flush Wood Doors
- 083100 - Access Doors and Panels
- 084313 - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts (Exterior)
- 087100 - Door Hardware
- 088000 - Glazing

DIVISION 09 -- FINISHES

- 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies
- 093000 - Tiling
- 095100 - Acoustical Ceilings
- 095126 - Wall Units
- 096500 - Resilient Flooring
- 096813 - Tile Carpeting
- 099113 - Exterior Painting
- 099123 - Interior Painting

DIVISION 10 -- SPECIALTIES

- 102100 - Toilet Compartments
- 102600 - Wall and Door Protection
- 102800 - Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories
- 104400 - Fire Protection Specialties
- 107316.13 - Metal Canopies

DIVISION 11 -- EQUIPMENT

DIVISION 12 -- FURNISHINGS

- 122400 - Window Shades
- 123600 - Countertops

DIVISION 13 -- SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

- 131010 - Bullet Resistant Partitions and Equipment

DIVISION 14 -- CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

DIVISION 32 -- EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

- 321623 - Sidewalks
- 323313 - Site Bicycle Racks

END OF SECTION

STRUCTURAL SPECIFICATION INDEX

Section	Section Title	pages
	Structural Specification Table of Contents (KFC)	1-1

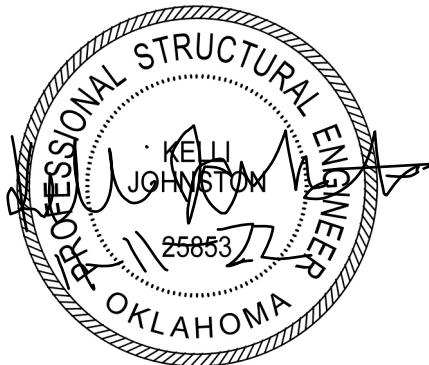
DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

03 3000 – Cast In Place Concrete (KFC)	1-14
--	------

DIVISION 05 – METALS

05 1200 – Structural Steel (KFC)	1-9
05 3000 – Metal Deck (KFC)	1-3
05 4000 – Cold-Formed Metal Framing (KFC)	1-4

END OF STRUCTURAL SPECIFICATION INDEX



Kirkpatrick Forest Curtis PC

Structural Engineering
OKCA #3898, Exp. 06/30/21
525 Central Park Drive, Suite 202
Oklahoma City, OK 73105
Tel: 405-231-4600

Division	Section Title	Pages
City of Norman Development Center		
<i>MEP Specifications</i>		
DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION		
210517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING	5
210518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING	3
210523	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING	8
210533	HEAT TRACING FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING	5
210553	IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	6
210700	FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS INSULATION	30
211119	FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS	3
211313	WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS	15
211316	DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS	14
DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING		
220513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT	3
220516	EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING	7
220517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING	4
220518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING	3
220519	METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING	9
220523	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING	8
220529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	11
220529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	11
220533	HEAT TRACING FOR PLUMBING PIPING	6
220548	VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	12
220553	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	6
220716	PLUMBING EQUIPMENT INSULATION	17
220719	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION	18
221116	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING	15
221119	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES	11
221123.21	INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS	8
221316	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING	15
221319	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES	11
221413	FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING	13
221423	STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES	5
223400	FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS	8
224100	PLUMBING FIXTURES	5
DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)		
230130.52	EXISTING HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CLEANING	8
230513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT	3
230516	EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING	7
230517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING	5
230518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING	3

230519	METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING	18
230523.10	GLOBE VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING	22
230529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	13
230553	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT	4
230593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC	27
230713	DUCT INSULATION	12
230716	HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION	14
230719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION	17
232113	HYDRONIC PIPING	10
232116	HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES	8
232300	REFRIGERANT PIPING	5
232500	HVAC WATER TREATMENT	7
232513	WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS	9
233113	METAL DUCTS	14
233346	FLEXIBLE DUCTS	4
233416	CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS	16
233423	HVAC POWER VENTILATORS	11
233713.13	AIR DIFFUSERS	6
238126	SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS	11

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

260000	GENERAL ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS	12
260519	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES	7
260526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	9
260529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	6
260533	RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	10
260544	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING	4
260553	IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS	9
260923	LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES	7
262416	PANELBOARDS	12
262726	WIRING DEVICES	6
262813	FUSES	4
262816	ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS	11
263213	ENGINE GENERATORS	11
263600	AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES	10
265119	LED INTERIOR LIGHTING	8

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

283111	DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM	18
--------	--	----

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

27 0501	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS	13
27 0527	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS	3
27 0528	PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS	4
27 0553.01	IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS	3
27 1101	COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS	4
27 1323	COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL BACKBONE CABLING	8
27 1333	COMMUNICATIONS COAXIAL BACKBONE CABLING	4
27 1513	COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING	7
27 1533	COMMUNICATIONS COAXIAL HORIZONTAL CABLING	4
27 1543	COMMUNICATIONS FACEPLATES AND CONNECTORS	3
27 4100	AUDIO-VIDEO SYSTEMS	23
27 4133	MASTER ANTENNA TELEVISION SYSTEMS	6

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

28 0500	COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SECURITY	15
28 1300	ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM	10
28 1600	INTRUSION DETECTION SYSTEM	9
28 2300	ELECTRONIC VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM	6

**SECTION 004323
ALTERNATES FORM**

PARTICULARS

1.01 THE FOLLOWING IS THE LIST OF ALTERNATES REFERENCED IN THE BID SUBMITTED BY:

1.02 (BIDDER) _____

1.03 DATED _____ AND WHICH IS AN INTEGRAL PART OF THE BID FORM.

ALTERNATES LIST

**2.01 THE FOLLOWING AMOUNTS SHALL BE ADDED TO OR DEDUCTED FROM THE BID
AMOUNT. REFER TO SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES.**

ALTERNATE # 1: ADD / (DEDUCT) \$ _____

END OF SECTION

SECTION 004325
SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM - DURING PROCUREMENT

REFER TO THE FORM BELOW TO BE USED FOR ALL SUBSTITUTION REQUESTS DURING PROCUREMENT.

DATE: _____

COMPANY SUBMITTING REQUEST: _____

CONTACT NAME: _____

PHONE: _____

EMAIL ADDRESS: _____

PROJECT NAME: _____

SPECIFIED ITEM: _____

PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION: _____

ATTACHED TO SUBSTITUTION REQUEST:

PRODUCT DESCRIPTION **PERFORMANCE DATA**

DRAWINGS **PHOTOGRAPHS**

SUBSTITUTION WILL REQUIRE MODIFICATIONS TO THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS **YES** **NO**

THE UNDERSIGNED STATES THAT THE FOLLOWING PARAGRAPHS ARE CORRECT:

1. THE PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION DOES NOT AFFECT DIMENSIONS SHOWN ON THE DRAWINGS.
2. NO CHANGES TO THE BUILDING DESIGN, ENGINEERING DESIGN, OR DETAILING ARE REQUIRED BY THE PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION.
3. THE PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION WILL HAVE NO ADVERSE EFFECT ON OTHER TRADES, THE CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, OR SPECIFIED WARRANTY REQUIREMENTS.
4. NO MAINTENANCE IS REQUIRED BY THE PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION OTHER THAN THAT REQUIRED FOR ORIGINALLY SPECIFIED PRODUCT.
5. THE UNDERSIGNED FURTHER STATES THAT THEY HAVE READ THE CORRESPONDING SPECIFICATION SECTION IN THE PROJECT MANUAL AND CONFIRMS THAT THE FUNCTION, APPEARANCE AND QUALITY OF THE PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION ARE EQUIVALENT OR SUPERIOR TO THE ORIGINALLY SPECIFIED PRODUCT.

SIGNATURE: _____

PRINTED NAME: _____

FOR ARCHITECT'S USE:

ACCEPTED **ACCEPTED AS NOTED** **INCOMPLETE INFORMATION**

NOT ACCEPTED **RECEIVED TOO LATE** **NO SUBSTITUTIONS ACCEPTED
FOR THIS PRODUCT**

REVIEWED BY / DATE: _____

PROCESSED BY ADDENDUM NO. _____ **COMMENTS:** _____

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 012000
PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Procedures for preparation and submittal of applications for progress payments.
- B. Documentation of changes in Contract Sum and Contract Time.
- C. Change procedures.
- D. Correlation of Contractor submittals based on changes.
- E. Procedures for preparation and submittal of application for final payment.

1.02 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Use Schedule of Values Form: AIA G703, edition stipulated in the Agreement.
- B. Electronic media printout including equivalent information will be considered in lieu of standard form specified; submit draft to Architect for approval.
- C. Forms filled out by hand will not be accepted.
- D. Include in each line item, the amount of Allowances specified in this section. For unit cost Allowances, identify quantities taken from Contract Documents multiplied by the unit cost to achieve the total for the item.
- E. Include separately from each line item, a direct proportional amount of Contractor's overhead and profit.
- F. Revise schedule to list approved Change Orders, with each Application For Payment.

1.03 APPLICATIONS FOR PROGRESS PAYMENTS

- A. Payment Period: Submit at intervals stipulated in the Agreement.
- B. Electronic media printout including equivalent information will be considered in lieu of standard form specified; submit sample to Architect for approval.
- C. Forms filled out by hand will not be accepted.
- D. For each item, provide a column for listing each of the following:
 1. Item Number.
 2. Description of work.
 3. Scheduled Values.
 4. Previous Applications.
 5. Work in Place and Stored Materials under this Application.
 6. Authorized Change Orders.
 7. Total Completed and Stored to Date of Application.
 8. Percentage of Completion.
 9. Balance to Finish.
 10. Retainage.
- E. Execute certification by signature of authorized officer.
- F. Use data from approved Schedule of Values. Provide dollar value in each column for each line item for portion of work performed and for stored products.
- G. List each authorized Change Order as a separate line item, listing Change Order number and dollar amount as for an original item of work.
- H. Submit one electronic copy of each Application for Payment.
- I. Include the following with the application:
 1. Construction progress schedule, revised and current as specified in Section 013000.
 2. Affidavits attesting to off-site stored products.
- J. When Architect requires substantiating information, submit data justifying dollar amounts in question. Provide one copy of data with cover letter for each copy of submittal. Show

application number and date, and line item by number and description.

1.04 MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

- A. For minor changes not involving an adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time, Architect will issue instructions directly to Contractor.
- B. For other required changes, Architect will issue a document signed by Owner instructing Contractor to proceed with the change, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 - 1. The document will describe the required changes and will designate method of determining any change in Contract Sum or Contract Time.
 - 2. Promptly execute the change.
- C. For changes for which advance pricing is desired, Architect will issue a document that includes a detailed description of a proposed change with supplementary or revised drawings and specifications, a change in Contract Time for executing the change and the period of time during which the requested price will be considered valid. Contractor shall prepare and submit a fixed price quotation within ten days.
- D. Contractor may propose a change by submitting a request for change to Architect, describing the proposed change and its full effect on the work, with a statement describing the reason for the change, and the effect on the Contract Sum and Contract Time with full documentation.
- E. Computation of Change in Contract Amount: As specified in the Agreement and Conditions of the Contract.
- F. Substantiation of Costs: Provide full information required for evaluation.
 - 1. On request, provide the following data:
 - a. Quantities of products, labor, and equipment.
 - b. Taxes, insurance, and bonds.
 - c. Overhead and profit.
 - d. Justification for any change in Contract Time.
 - e. Credit for deletions from Contract, similarly documented.
 - 2. Support each claim for additional costs with additional information:
 - a. Origin and date of claim.
 - b. Dates and times work was performed, and by whom.
 - c. Time records and wage rates paid.
 - d. Invoices and receipts for products, equipment, and subcontracts, similarly documented.
 - 3. For Time and Material work, submit itemized account and supporting data after completion of change, within time limits indicated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- G. Execution of Change Orders: Architect will issue Change Orders for signatures of parties as provided in the Conditions of the Contract.
- H. After execution of Change Order, promptly revise Schedule of Values and Application for Payment forms to record each authorized Change Order as a separate line item and adjust the Contract Sum.
- I. Promptly revise progress schedules to reflect any change in Contract Time, revise sub-schedules to adjust times for other items of work affected by the change, and resubmit.
- J. Promptly enter changes in Project Record Documents.

1.05 APPLICATION FOR FINAL PAYMENT

- A. Prepare Application for Final Payment as specified for progress payments, identifying total adjusted Contract Sum, previous payments, and sum remaining due.
- B. Application for Final Payment will not be considered until the following have been accomplished:
 - 1. All closeout procedures specified in Section 017000.

Issued for Bidding
November 15,2022

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 012300
ALTERNATES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Description of Alternates.
- B. Procedures for pricing Alternates.
- C. Documentation of changes to Contract Price and Contract Time.

1.02 ACCEPTANCE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternates quoted on Bid Forms will be reviewed and accepted or rejected at Owner's option.
Accepted Alternates will be identified in the Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- B. Coordinate related work and modify surrounding work to integrate the Work of each Alternate.

1.03 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternate No. 1 - Install Quartz Countertops in locations where noted on plans:

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 012500
SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Procedural requirements for proposed substitutions.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 004325 - Substitution Request Form - During Procurement: Required form for substitution requests made prior to award of contract (During procurement).

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes from Contract Documents requirements proposed by Contractor to products, assemblies, and equipment.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Proposed due to changed Project circumstances beyond Contractor's control.
 - a. Unavailability.
 - b. Regulatory changes.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Proposed due to possibility of offering substantial advantage to the Project.
 - a. Substitution requests offering advantages solely to the Contractor will not be considered.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. CSI/CSC Form 1.5C - Substitution Request (During the Bidding/Negotiating Stage) Current Edition.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. A Substitution Request for products, assemblies, materials, and equipment constitutes a representation that the submitter:
 - 1. Has investigated proposed product and determined that it meets or exceeds the quality level of the specified product, equipment, assembly, or system.
 - 2. Agrees to provide the same warranty for the substitution as for the specified product.
 - 3. Agrees to provide same or equivalent maintenance service and source of replacement parts, as applicable.
 - 4. Agrees to coordinate installation and make changes to other work that may be required for the work to be complete, with no additional cost to Owner.
 - 5. Waives claims for additional costs or time extension that may subsequently become apparent.
 - 6. Agrees to reimburse Owner and Architect for review or redesign services associated with re-approval by authorities.
- B. A Substitution Request for specified installer constitutes a representation that the submitter:
 - 1. Has acted in good faith to obtain services of specified installer, but was unable to come to commercial, or other terms.
- C. Document each request with complete data substantiating compliance of proposed substitution with Contract Documents. Burden of proof is on proposer.
 - 1. Note explicitly any non-compliant characteristics.
- D. Content: Include information necessary for tracking the status of each Substitution Request, and information necessary to provide an actionable response.
 - 1. Forms indicated in the Project Manual must be used and must include the following:
 - a. Project Information:
 - 1) Official project name and number, and any additional required identifiers established in Contract Documents.

- b. Substitution Request Information:
 - 1) Discrete and consecutive Substitution Request number, and descriptive subject/title.
 - 2) Indication of whether the substitution is for cause or convenience.
 - 3) Issue date.
 - 4) Reference to particular Contract Document(s) specification section number, title, and article/paragraph(s).
 - 5) Description of Substitution.
 - 6) Reason why the specified item cannot be provided.
 - 7) Differences between proposed substitution and specified item.
 - 8) Description of how proposed substitution affects other parts of work.
- c. Attached Comparative Data: Provide point-by-point, side-by-side comparison addressing essential attributes specified, as appropriate and relevant for the item:
 - 1) Physical characteristics.
 - 2) In-service performance.
 - 3) Expected durability.
 - 4) Visual effect.
 - 5) Warranties.
 - 6) Other salient features and requirements.
 - 7) Include, as appropriate or requested, the following types of documentation:
 - (a) Product Data:
 - (b) Samples.
 - (c) Certificates, test, reports or similar qualification data.
 - (d) Drawings, when required to show impact on adjacent construction elements.
- d. Impact of Substitution:
 - 1) Savings to Owner for accepting substitution.
 - 2) Change to Contract Time due to accepting substitution.
- E. Limit each request to a single proposed substitution item.
 - 1. Submit an electronic document, combining the request form with supporting data into single document.

3.02 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES DURING PROCUREMENT

- A. Instructions to Bidders specifies time restrictions for submitting requests for substitutions during the bidding period, and the documents required.
- B. Submittal Form (before award of contract):
 - 1. Submit substitution requests by completing the form in Section 004325; see this section for additional information and instructions. Use only this form; other forms of submission are unacceptable.

3.03 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES DURING CONSTRUCTION

- A. Submittal Form (after award of contract):
 - 1. Submit substitution requests by completing the form in Section 00435; see this section for additional information and instructions. Use only this form; other forms of submission are unacceptable.
- B. Submit request for Substitution for Cause within 14 days of discovery of need for substitution, but not later than 14 days prior to time required for review and approval by Architect, in order to stay on approved project schedule.
- C. Submit request for Substitution for Convenience immediately upon discovery of its potential advantage to the project, but not later than 14 days prior to time required for review and approval by Architect, in order to stay on approved project schedule.
 - 1. In addition to meeting general documentation requirements, document how the requested substitution benefits the Owner through cost savings, time savings, greater energy conservation, or in other specific ways.

2. Document means of coordinating of substitution item with other portions of the work, including work by affected subcontractors.
3. Bear the costs engendered by proposed substitution of:
 - a. Owner's compensation to the Architect for any required redesign, time spent processing and evaluating the request.
 - b. Other construction by Owner.
 - c. Other unanticipated project considerations.
- D. Substitutions will not be considered under one or more of the following circumstances:
 1. When they are indicated or implied on shop drawing or product data submittals, without having received prior approval.
 2. When acceptance will require revisions to Contract Documents.

3.04 RESOLUTION

- A. Architect may request additional information and documentation prior to rendering a decision. Provide this data in an expeditious manner.
- B. Architect will notify Contractor in writing of decision to accept or reject request.
 1. Architect's decision following review of proposed substitution will be noted on the submitted form.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 013000
ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. General administrative requirements.
- B. Preconstruction meeting.
- C. Site mobilization meeting.
- D. Progress meetings.
- E. Construction progress schedule.
- F. Submittals for review, information, and project closeout.
- G. Number of copies of submittals.
- H. Requests for Interpretation (RFI) procedures.
- I. Submittal procedures.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 016000 - Product Requirements: General product requirements.
- B. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Additional coordination requirements.
- C. Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals: Project record documents; operation and maintenance data; warranties and bonds.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

1.04 GENERAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for coordination of execution of administrative tasks with timing of construction activities.

1.05 PROJECT COORDINATOR

- A. Project Coordinator: Construction Manager.
- B. Cooperate with the Project Coordinator in allocation of mobilization areas of site; for field offices and sheds, for delivery and equipment access, traffic, and parking facilities.
- C. During construction, coordinate use of site and facilities through the Project Coordinator.
- D. Comply with Project Coordinator's procedures for intra-project communications; submittals, reports and records, schedules, coordination drawings, and recommendations; and resolution of ambiguities and conflicts.
- E. Coordinate field engineering and layout work under instructions of the Project Coordinator.
- F. Make the following types of submittals to Architect through the Project Coordinator:
 - 1. Requests for Interpretation.
 - 2. Requests for substitution.
 - 3. Shop drawings, product data, and samples.
 - 4. Test and inspection reports.
 - 5. Design data.
 - 6. Manufacturer's instructions and field reports.
 - 7. Applications for payment and change order requests.
 - 8. Progress schedules.
 - 9. Coordination drawings.
 - 10. Correction Punch List and Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
 - 11. Closeout submittals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING

- A. Contractor will schedule a meeting after Notice of Award.
- B. Attendance Required:
 - 1. Owner.
 - 2. Architect.
 - 3. Contractor.
 - 4. Owner's Program Manager.
- C. Agenda:
 - 1. Execution of Owner-Contractor Agreement.
 - 2. Submission of executed bonds and insurance certificates.
 - 3. Distribution of Contract Documents.
 - 4. Submission of list of subcontractors, list of products, schedule of values, and progress schedule.
 - 5. Procedures and processing of field decisions, submittals, substitutions, applications for payments, proposal request, Change Orders, and Contract closeout procedures.
 - 6. Scheduling.
- D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

3.02 SITE MOBILIZATION MEETING

- A. Contractor will schedule meeting at the Project site prior to Contractor / Sub-Contractor occupancy.
- B. Attendance Required:
 - 1. Contractor / Sub-Contractor.
 - 2. Owner.
 - 3. Architect.
 - 4. Contractor / Sub-Contractor's Superintendent.
 - 5. Major subcontractors.
 - 6. Owner's Program Manager.
- C. Agenda:
 - 1. Use of premises by Owner and Contractor / Sub-Contractor.
 - 2. Owner's requirements and occupancy prior to completion.
 - 3. Construction facilities and controls provided by Owner.
 - 4. Temporary utilities provided by Owner.
 - 5. Survey and building layout.
 - 6. Security and housekeeping procedures.
 - 7. Schedules.
 - 8. Application for payment procedures.
 - 9. Procedures for testing.
 - 10. Procedures for maintaining record documents.
 - 11. Requirements for start-up of equipment.
 - 12. Inspection and acceptance of equipment put into service during construction period.
- D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

3.03 PROGRESS MEETINGS

- A. Schedule and administer meetings throughout progress of the work at maximum bi-monthly intervals.
- B. Attendance Required, as appropriate to agenda topics for each meeting:
 - 1. Contractor.

2. Owner.
 3. Architect.
 4. Contractor's Superintendent.
 5. Owner's Program Manager.
- C. Agenda:
1. Review minutes of previous meetings.
 2. Review of work progress.
 3. Field observations, problems, and decisions.
 4. Identification of problems that impede, or will impede, planned progress.
 5. Review of submittals schedule and status of submittals.
 6. Review of RFIs log and status of responses.
 7. Review of off-site fabrication and delivery schedules.
 8. Maintenance of progress schedule.
 9. Corrective measures to regain projected schedules.
 10. Planned progress during succeeding work period.
 11. Coordination of projected progress.
 12. Maintenance of quality and work standards.
 13. Effect of proposed changes on progress schedule and coordination.
 14. Other business relating to work.
- D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

3.04 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE

- A. If preliminary schedule requires revision after review, submit revised schedule within 10 days.
- B. Within 20 days after review of preliminary schedule, submit draft of proposed complete schedule for review.
 1. Include written certification that major contractors have reviewed and accepted proposed schedule.
- C. Within 10 days after joint review, submit complete schedule.
- D. Submit updated schedule with each Application for Payment.

3.05 REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATION (RFI)

- A. Definition: A request seeking one of the following.
 1. An interpretation, amplification, or clarification of some requirement of Contract Documents arising from inability to determine from them the exact material, process, or system to be installed; or when the elements of construction are required to occupy the same space (interference); or when an item of work is described differently at more than one place in Contract Documents.
 2. A resolution to an issue which has arisen due to field conditions and affects design intent.
- B. Whenever possible, request clarifications at the next appropriate project progress meeting, with response entered into meeting minutes, rendering unnecessary the issuance of a formal RFI.
- C. Preparation: Prepare an RFI immediately upon discovery of a need for interpretation of Contract Documents. Failure to submit a RFI in a timely manner is not a legitimate cause for claiming additional costs or delays in execution of the work.
 1. Prepare a separate RFI for each specific item.
 - a. Review, coordinate, and comment on requests originating with subcontractors and/or materials suppliers.
 - b. Do not forward requests which solely require internal coordination between subcontractors.
 2. Prepare in a format and with content acceptable to Owner.
 3. Combine RFI and its attachments into a single electronic file. PDF format is preferred.
- D. Reason for the RFI: Prior to initiation of an RFI, carefully study all Contract Documents to confirm that information sufficient for their interpretation is definitely not included.

1. Include in each request Contractor's signature attesting to good faith effort to determine from Contract Documents information requiring interpretation.
 2. Unacceptable Uses for RFIs: Do not use RFIs to request the following:
 - a. Approval of submittals (use procedures specified elsewhere in this section).
 - b. Changes that entail change in Contract Time and Contract Sum (comply with provisions of the Conditions of the Contract).
 3. Improper RFIs: Requests not prepared in compliance with requirements of this section, and/or missing key information required to render an actionable response. They will be returned without a response, with an explanatory notation.
 4. Frivolous RFIs: Requests regarding information that is clearly indicated on, or reasonably inferable from, Contract Documents, with no additional input required to clarify the question. They will be returned without a response, with an explanatory notation.
 - a. The Owner reserves the right to assess the Contractor for the costs (on time-and-materials basis) incurred by the Architect, and any of its consultants, due to processing of such RFIs.
- E. Content: Include identifiers necessary for tracking the status of each RFI, and information necessary to provide an actionable response.
- F. Attachments: Include sketches, coordination drawings, descriptions, photos, submittals, and other information necessary to substantiate the reason for the request.
- G. RFI Log: Prepare and maintain a tabular log of RFIs for the duration of the project.
 1. Indicate current status of every RFI. Update log promptly and on a regular basis.
 2. Note dates of when each request is made, and when a response is received.
 3. Highlight items requiring priority or expedited response.
- H. Review Time: Architect will respond and return RFIs to Contractor within seven calendar days of receipt. For the purpose of establishing the start of the mandated response period, RFIs received after 12:00 noon will be considered as having been received on the following regular working day.
 1. Response period may be shortened or lengthened for specific items, subject to mutual agreement, and recorded in a timely manner in progress meeting minutes.
- I. Responses: Content of answered RFIs will not constitute in any manner a directive or authorization to perform extra work or delay the project. If in Contractor's belief it is likely to lead to a change to Contract Sum or Contract Time, promptly issue a notice to this effect, and follow up with an appropriate Change Order request to Owner.
 1. Response may include a request for additional information, in which case the original RFI will be deemed as having been answered, and an amended one is to be issued forthwith. Identify the amended RFI with an R suffix to the original number.
 2. Upon receipt of a response, promptly review and distribute it to all affected parties, and update the RFI Log.
 3. Notify Architect within seven calendar days if an additional or corrected response is required by submitting an amended version of the original RFI, identified as specified above.

3.06 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submit to Architect for review a schedule for submittals in tabular format.
1. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule and schedule of values.
 2. Format schedule to allow tracking of status of submittals throughout duration of construction.
 3. Account for time required for preparation, review, manufacturing, fabrication and delivery when establishing submittal delivery and review deadline dates.
 - a. For assemblies, equipment, systems comprised of multiple components and/or requiring detailed coordination with other work, allow for additional time to make corrections or revisions to initial submittals, and time for their review.

3.07 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them for review:

1. Product data.
 2. Shop drawings.
 3. Samples for selection.
 4. Samples for verification.
- B. Submit to Architect for review for the limited purpose of checking for compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in Contract Documents.
- C. Samples will be reviewed for aesthetic, color, or finish selection.
- D. After review, provide copies and distribute in accordance with SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES article below and for record documents purposes described in Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals.

3.08 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

- A. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them for information:
 1. Design data.
 2. Certificates.
 3. Test reports.
 4. Inspection reports.
 5. Manufacturer's instructions.
 6. Manufacturer's field reports.
 7. Other types indicated.
- B. Submit for Architect's knowledge as contract administrator or for Owner. No action will be taken.

3.09 SUBMITTALS FOR PROJECT CLOSEOUT

- A. Submit Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
- B. Submit Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
- C. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them at project closeout in compliance with requirements of Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals:
 1. Project record documents.
 2. Operation and maintenance data.
 3. Warranties.
- D. Submit for Owner's benefit during and after project completion.

3.10 NUMBER OF COPIES OF SUBMITTALS

- A. Electronic Documents: Submit one electronic copy in PDF format; an electronically-marked up file will be returned. Create PDFs at native size and right-side up; illegible files will be rejected.
- B. Extra Copies at Project Closeout: See Section 017800.
- C. Samples: Submit the number specified in individual specification sections; one of which will be retained by Architect.
 1. After review, produce duplicates.
 2. Retained samples will not be returned to Contractor / Sub-Contractor unless specifically so stated.

3.11 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Requirements:
 1. Use a separate transmittal for each item.
 2. Sequentially identify each item. For revised submittals use original number and a sequential alphabetical suffix.
 3. Identify: Project; Contractor / Sub-Contractor; subcontractor or supplier; pertinent drawing and detail number; and specification section number and article/paragraph, as appropriate on each copy.
 4. Apply Contractor /Sub-Contractor's stamp, signed or initialed certifying that review, approval, verification of products required, field dimensions, adjacent construction work, and coordination of information is in accordance with the requirements of the work and

- Contract Documents.
- a. Submittals from sources other than the Contractor, or without Contractor's stamp will not be acknowledged, reviewed, or returned.
 - 5. Deliver each submittal on date noted in submittal schedule, unless an earlier date has been agreed to by all affected parties, and is of the benefit to the project.
 - 6. Schedule submittals to expedite the Project, and coordinate submission of related items.
 - a. For each submittal for review, allow 15 days excluding delivery time to and from the Contractor / Sub-Contractor.
 - 7. Identify variations from Contract Documents and product or system limitations that may be detrimental to successful performance of the completed work.
 - 8. Provide space for Contractor / Sub-Contractor and Architect review stamps.
 - 9. When revised for resubmission, identify all changes made since previous submission.
 - 10. Distribute reviewed submittals as appropriate. Instruct parties to promptly report inability to comply with requirements.
 - 11. Incomplete submittals will not be reviewed, unless they are partial submittals for distinct portion(s) of the work, and have received prior approval for their use.
 - 12. Submittals not requested will be recognized, and will be returned "Not Reviewed".
- B. Product Data Procedures:
- 1. Submit only information required by individual specification sections.
 - 2. Collect required information into a single submittal.
 - 3. Do not submit (Material) Safety Data Sheets for materials or products.
- C. Shop Drawing Procedures:
- 1. Prepare accurate, drawn-to-scale, original shop drawing documentation by interpreting Contract Documents and coordinating related work.
 - 2. Do not reproduce Contract Documents to create shop drawings.
 - 3. Generic, non-project-specific information submitted as shop drawings do not meet the requirements for shop drawings.
- D. Samples Procedures:
- 1. Transmit related items together as single package.
 - 2. Identify each item to allow review for applicability in relation to shop drawings showing installation locations.

3.12 SUBMITTAL REVIEW

- A. Submittals for Review: Architect will review each submittal, and approve, or take other appropriate action.
- B. Submittals for Information: Architect will acknowledge receipt and review. See below for actions to be taken.
- C. Architect's actions will be reflected by marking each returned submittal using virtual stamp on electronic submittals.
 - 1. Notations may be made directly on submitted items and/or listed on appended Submittal Review cover sheet.
- D. Architect's and consultants' actions on items submitted for review:
 - 1. Authorizing purchasing, fabrication, delivery, and installation:
 - a. "Approved", or language with same legal meaning.
 - b. "Approved as Noted, Resubmission not required", or language with same legal meaning.
 - 1) At Contractor's option, submit corrected item, with review notations acknowledged and incorporated.
 - c. "Approved as Noted, Resubmit for Record", or language with same legal meaning.
 - 1) Resubmit corrected item, with review notations acknowledged and incorporated. Resubmit separately, or as part of project record documents.
 - 2) Non-responsive resubmittals may be rejected.
 - 2. Not Authorizing fabrication, delivery, and installation:
 - a. "Revise and Resubmit".

- 1) Resubmit revised item, with review notations acknowledged and incorporated.
 - 2) Non-responsive resubmittals may be rejected.
- b. "Rejected".
- 1) Submit item complying with requirements of Contract Documents.
- E. Architect's and consultants' actions on items submitted for information:
1. Items for which no action was taken:
 - a. "Received" - to notify the Contractor that the submittal has been received for record only.
 2. Items for which action was taken:
 - a. "Reviewed" - no further action is required from Contractor.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 014000
QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Submittals.
- B. Quality assurance.
- C. Testing and inspection agencies and services.
- D. Control of installation.
- E. Mock-ups.
- F. Tolerances.
- G. Manufacturers' field services.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Submittal procedures.
- B. Section 016000 - Product Requirements: Requirements for material and product quality.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C1021 - Standard Practice for Laboratories Engaged in Testing of Building Sealants 2008 (Reapproved 2019).
- B. ASTM C1077 - Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation 2017.
- C. ASTM C1093 - Standard Practice for Accreditation of Testing Agencies for Masonry 2022.
- D. ASTM D3740 - Standard Practice for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction 2019.
- E. ASTM E329 - Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection, Testing, or Special Inspection 2021.
- F. ASTM E543 - Standard Specification for Agencies Performing Nondestructive Testing 2021.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Design Data: Submit for Architect's knowledge as contract administrator for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents, or for Owner's information.
- C. Test Reports: After each test/inspection, promptly submit two copies of report to Architect and to Contractor.
 1. Include:
 - a. Date issued.
 - b. Project title and number.
 - c. Name of inspector.
 - d. Date and time of sampling or inspection.
 - e. Identification of product and specifications section.
 - f. Location in the Project.
 - g. Type of test/inspection.
 - h. Date of test/inspection.
 - i. Results of test/inspection.
 - j. Compliance with Contract Documents.
 - k. When requested by Architect, provide interpretation of results.
 2. Test report submittals are for Architect's knowledge as contract administrator for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents, or for Owner's information.

- D. Certificates: When specified in individual specification sections, submit certification by the manufacturer and Contractor or installation/application subcontractor to Architect, in quantities specified for Product Data.
 - 1. Indicate material or product complies with or exceeds specified requirements. Submit supporting reference data, affidavits, and certifications as appropriate.
 - 2. Certificates may be recent or previous test results on material or product, but must be acceptable to Architect.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: When specified in individual specification sections, submit printed instructions for delivery, storage, assembly, installation, start-up, adjusting, and finishing, for the Owner's information. Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention, and special environmental criteria required for application or installation.
- F. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Submit reports for Architect's benefit as contract administrator or for Owner.
 - 1. Submit for information for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Prior to start of work, submit agency name, address, and telephone number, and names of full time registered Engineer and responsible officer.

1.06 TESTING AND INSPECTION AGENCIES AND SERVICES

- A. As indicated in individual specification sections, Owner or Contractor shall employ and pay for services of an independent testing agency to perform other specified testing.
- B. Employment of agency in no way relieves Contractor of obligation to perform Work in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- C. Contractor Employed Agency:
 - 1. Testing agency: Comply with requirements of ASTM E329, ASTM E543, ASTM E699, ASTM C1021, ASTM C1077, ASTM C1093, and ASTM D3740.
 - 2. Inspection agency: Comply with requirements of ASTM D3740 and ASTM E329.
 - 3. Laboratory: Authorized to operate in Oklahoma.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 CONTROL OF INSTALLATION

- A. Monitor quality control over suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions, and workmanship, to produce work of specified quality.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' instructions, including each step in sequence.
- C. Should manufacturers' instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- D. Comply with specified standards as minimum quality for the work except where more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.
- E. Have work performed by persons qualified to produce required and specified quality.
- F. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings or as instructed by the manufacturer.
- G. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion, and disfigurement.

3.02 MOCK-UPS

- A. Before installing portions of the Work where mock-ups are required, construct mock-ups in location and size indicated for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work. The purpose of

mock-up is to demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.

- B. Accepted mock-ups establish the standard of quality the Architect will use to judge the Work.
- C. Integrated Exterior Mock-ups: Construct integrated exterior mock-up as indicated on drawings. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products as required in individual Specification Sections. Provide adequate supporting structure for mock-up materials as necessary.
- D. Room Mock-ups: Construct room mock-ups as indicated on drawings. Coordinate installation of materials, products, and assemblies as required in specification sections; finish according to requirements. Provide required lighting and any supplemental lighting where required to enable Architect to evaluate quality of the mock-up.
- E. Notify Architect fifteen (15) working days in advance of dates and times when mock-ups will be constructed.
- F. Tests shall be performed under provisions identified in this section and identified in the respective product specification sections.
- G. Assemble and erect specified items with specified attachment and anchorage devices, flashings, seals, and finishes.
- H. Obtain Architect's approval of mock-ups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
- I. Accepted mock-ups shall be a comparison standard for the remaining Work.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Monitor fabrication and installation tolerance control of products to produce acceptable Work. Do not permit tolerances to accumulate.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' tolerances. Should manufacturers' tolerances conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect before proceeding.
- C. Adjust products to appropriate dimensions; position before securing products in place.

3.04 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. See individual specification sections for testing required.
- B. Testing Agency Duties:
 - 1. Provide qualified personnel at site. Cooperate with Architect and Contractor / Sub-Contractor in performance of services.
 - 2. Perform specified sampling and testing of products in accordance with specified standards.
 - 3. Ascertain compliance of materials and mixes with requirements of Contract Documents.
 - 4. Promptly notify Architect and Contractor / Sub-Contractor of observed irregularities or non-compliance of Work or products.
 - 5. Perform additional tests and inspections required by Architect.
 - 6. Attend preconstruction meetings and progress meetings.
 - 7. Submit reports of all tests/inspections specified.
- C. Limits on Testing/Inspection Agency Authority:
 - 1. Agency may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on requirements of Contract Documents.
 - 2. Agency may not approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 - 3. Agency may not assume any duties of Contractor / Sub-Contractor.
 - 4. Agency has no authority to stop the Work.
- D. Contractor / Sub-Contractor Responsibilities:
 - 1. Deliver to agency at designated location, adequate samples of materials proposed to be used that require testing, along with proposed mix designs.
 - 2. Cooperate with laboratory personnel, and provide access to the Work and to manufacturers' facilities.
 - 3. Provide incidental labor and facilities:
 - a. To provide access to Work to be tested/inspected.

- b. To obtain and handle samples at the site or at source of Products to be tested/inspected.
- c. To facilitate tests/inspections.
- d. To provide storage and curing of test samples.
- 4. Notify Architect and laboratory 24 hours prior to expected time for operations requiring testing/inspection services.
- 5. Employ services of an independent qualified testing laboratory and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
- 6. Arrange with Owner's agency and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
- E. Re-testing required because of non-compliance with specified requirements shall be performed by the same agency on instructions by Architect.
- F. Re-testing required because of non-compliance with specified requirements shall be paid for by Contractor.

3.05 MANUFACTURERS' FIELD SERVICES

- A. When specified in individual specification sections, require material or product suppliers or manufacturers to provide qualified staff personnel to observe site conditions, conditions of surfaces and installation, quality of workmanship, start-up of equipment, test, adjust, and balance equipment as applicable, and to initiate instructions when necessary.
- B. Report observations and site decisions or instructions given to applicators or installers that are supplemental or contrary to manufacturers' written instructions.

3.06 DEFECT ASSESSMENT

- A. Replace Work or portions of the Work not complying with specified requirements.
- B. If, in the opinion of Architect, it is not practical to remove and replace the work, Architect will direct an appropriate remedy or adjust payment.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 016000
PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. General product requirements.
- B. Transportation, handling, storage and protection.
- C. Product option requirements.
- D. Substitution limitations.
- E. Procedures for Owner-supplied products.
- F. Maintenance materials, including extra materials, spare parts, tools, and software.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 012500 - Substitution Procedures: Substitutions made during procurement and/or construction phases.
- B. Section 016116 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content Restrictions: Requirements for VOC-restricted product categories.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data Submittals: Submit manufacturer's standard published data. Mark each copy to identify applicable products, models, options, and other data. Supplement manufacturers' standard data to provide information specific to this Project.
- B. Shop Drawing Submittals: Prepared specifically for this Project; indicate utility and electrical characteristics, utility connection requirements, and location of utility outlets for service for functional equipment and appliances.
- C. Sample Submittals: Illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of the product, with integral parts and attachment devices. Coordinate sample submittals for interfacing work.
 - 1. For selection from standard finishes, submit samples of the full range of the manufacturer's standard colors, textures, and patterns.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 NEW PRODUCTS

- A. Provide new products unless specifically required or permitted by Contract Documents.
- B. Where other criteria are met, Contractor shall give preference to products that:
 - 1. If used on interior, have lower emissions, as defined in Section 016116.
 - 2. If wet-applied, have lower VOC content, as defined in Section 016116.

2.02 PRODUCT OPTIONS

- A. Products Specified by Reference Standards or by Description Only: Use any product meeting those standards or description.
- B. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers with a Provision for Substitutions: Submit a request for substitution for any manufacturer not named.

2.03 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, spare parts, tools, and software of types and in quantities as specified in individual specification sections and noted on A9.0.
- B. Deliver to Project site; obtain receipt prior to final payment.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS

- A. See Section 012500 - Substitution Procedures.

3.02 OWNER-SUPPLIED PRODUCTS

- A. Owner's Responsibilities:
 - 1. Arrange for and deliver Owner reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples, to Contractor.
 - 2. Arrange and pay for product delivery to site.
 - 3. On delivery, inspect products jointly with Contractor.
 - 4. Submit claims for transportation damage and replace damaged, defective, or deficient items.
 - 5. Arrange for manufacturers' warranties, inspections, and service.
- B. Contractor's Responsibilities:
 - 1. Review Owner reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples.
 - 2. Receive and unload products at site; inspect for completeness or damage jointly with Owner.
 - 3. Handle, store, install and finish products.
 - 4. Repair or replace items damaged after receipt.

3.03 TRANSPORTATION AND HANDLING

- A. Package products for shipment in manner to prevent damage; for equipment, package to avoid loss of factory calibration.
- B. If special precautions are required, attach instructions prominently and legibly on outside of packaging.
- C. Coordinate schedule of product delivery to designated prepared areas in order to minimize site storage time and potential damage to stored materials.
- D. Transport and handle products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Transport materials in covered trucks to prevent contamination of product and littering of surrounding areas.
- F. Promptly inspect shipments to ensure that products comply with requirements, quantities are correct, and products are undamaged.
- G. Provide equipment and personnel to handle products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage, and to minimize handling.
- H. Arrange for the return of packing materials, such as wood pallets, where economically feasible.

3.04 STORAGE AND PROTECTION

- A. Designate receiving/storage areas for incoming products so that they are delivered according to installation schedule and placed convenient to work area in order to minimize waste due to excessive materials handling and misapplication. See Section 017419.
- B. Store and protect products in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- C. Store with seals and labels intact and legible.
- D. Store sensitive products in weathertight, climate-controlled enclosures in an environment favorable to product.
- E. For exterior storage of fabricated products, place on sloped supports above ground.
- F. Protect products from damage or deterioration due to construction operations, weather, precipitation, humidity, temperature, sunlight and ultraviolet light, dirt, dust, and other contaminants.
- G. Comply with manufacturer's warranty conditions, if any.
- H. Cover products subject to deterioration with impervious sheet covering. Provide ventilation to prevent condensation and degradation of products.
- I. Prevent contact with material that may cause corrosion, discoloration, or staining.
- J. Provide equipment and personnel to store products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage.

- K. Arrange storage of products to permit access for inspection. Periodically inspect to verify products are undamaged and are maintained in acceptable condition.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 016116
VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUND (VOC) CONTENT RESTRICTIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Requirements for Indoor-Emissions-Restricted products.
- B. Requirements for VOC-Content-Restricted products.
- C. Requirement for installer certification that they did not use any non-compliant products.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Submittal procedures.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Indoor-Emissions-Restricted Products: All products in the following product categories, whether specified or not:
 1. Interior paints and coatings applied on site.
 2. Interior adhesives and sealants applied on site, including flooring adhesives.
 3. Flooring.
 4. Composite wood.
 5. Products making up wall and ceiling assemblies.
 6. Thermal and acoustical insulation.
- B. VOC-Content-Restricted Products: All products in the following product categories, whether specified or not:
 1. Interior paints and coatings applied on site.
 2. Interior adhesives and sealants applied on site, including flooring adhesives.
- C. Interior of Building: Anywhere inside the exterior weather barrier.
- D. Adhesives: All gunnable, trowelable, liquid-applied, and aerosol adhesives, whether specified or not; including flooring adhesives, resilient base adhesives, and pipe jointing adhesives.
- E. Sealants: All gunnable, trowelable, and liquid-applied joint sealants and sealant primers, whether specified or not; including firestopping sealants and duct joint sealers.
- F. Inherently Non-Emitting Materials: Products composed wholly of minerals or metals, unless they include organic-based surface coatings, binders, or sealants; and specifically the following:
 1. Concrete.
 2. Clay brick.
 3. Metals that are plated, anodized, or powder-coated.
 4. Glass.
 5. Ceramics.
 6. Solid wood flooring that is unfinished and untreated.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency current edition.
- B. ASTM D3960 - Standard Practice for Determining Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content of Paints and Related Coatings 2005 (Reapproved 2018).
- C. CAL (CDPH SM) - Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers 2017, v1.2.
- D. CARB (ATCM) - Airborne Toxic Control Measure to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions from Composite Wood Products; California Air Resources Board current edition.
- E. CARB (SCM) - Suggested Control Measure for Architectural Coatings; California Air Resources Board 2020.
- F. CHPS (HPPD) - High Performance Products Database Current Edition.
- G. CRI (GLP) - Green Label Plus Testing Program - Certified Products Current Edition.

- H. SCAQMD 1113 - Architectural Coatings 1977, with Amendment (2016).
- I. SCAQMD 1168 - Adhesive and Sealant Applications 1989, with Amendment (2017).
- J. SCS (CPD) - SCS Certified Products Current Edition.
- K. UL (GGG) - GREENGUARD Gold Certified Products Current Edition.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: For each VOC-restricted product used in the project, submit evidence of compliance.
- C. Installer Certifications Regarding Prohibited Content: Require each installer of any type of product (not just the products for which VOC restrictions are specified) to certify that either 1) no adhesives, joint sealants, paints, coatings, or composite wood or agrifiber products have been used in the installation of installer's products, or 2) that such products used comply with these requirements.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Indoor Emissions Standard and Test Method: CAL (CDPH SM), using Standard Private Office exposure scenario and the allowable concentrations specified in the method, and range of total VOC's after 14 days.
 - 1. Wet-Applied Products: State amount applied in mass per surface area.
 - 2. Paints and Coatings: Test tinted products, not just tinting bases.
 - 3. Evidence of Compliance: Acceptable types of evidence are the following:
 - a. Current UL (GGG) certification.
 - b. Current SCS (CPD) Floorscore certification.
 - c. Current SCS (CPD) Indoor Advantage Gold certification.
 - d. Current listing in CHPS (HPPD) as a low-emitting product.
 - e. Current CRI (GLP) certification.
 - f. Test report showing compliance and stating exposure scenario used.
 - 4. Product data submittal showing VOC content is NOT acceptable evidence.
 - 5. Manufacturer's certification without test report by independent agency is NOT acceptable evidence.
- B. VOC Content Test Method: 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), or ASTM D3960, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Evidence of Compliance: Acceptable types of evidence are:
 - a. Report of laboratory testing performed in accordance with requirements.
 - b. Certification by manufacturer that product complies with requirements.
- C. Composite Wood Emissions Standard: CARB (ATCM) for ultra-low emitting formaldehyde (ULEF) resins.
 - 1. Evidence of Compliance: Acceptable types of evidence are:
 - a. Current SCS "No Added Formaldehyde (NAF)" certification; www.scscertified.com.
 - b. Report of laboratory testing performed in accordance with requirements.
 - c. Published product data showing compliance with requirements.
 - d. Certification by manufacturer that product complies with requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. All Products: Comply with the most stringent of federal, State, and local requirements, or these specifications.
- B. Indoor-Emissions-Restricted Products: Comply with Indoor Emissions Standard and Test Method, except for:
 - 1. Composite Wood, Wood Fiber, and Wood Chip Products: Comply with Composite Wood Emissions Standard or contain no added formaldehyde resins.
 - 2. Inherently Non-Emitting Materials.

- C. VOC-Content-Restricted Products: VOC content not greater than required by the following:
 - 1. Adhesives, Including Flooring Adhesives: SCAQMD 1168 Rule.
 - 2. Joint Sealants: SCAQMD 1168 Rule.
 - 3. Paints and Coatings: Each color; most stringent of the following:
 - a. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D.
 - b. SCAQMD 1113 Rule.
 - c. CARB (SCM).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner reserves the right to reject non-compliant products, whether installed or not, and require their removal and replacement with compliant products at no extra cost to Owner.
- B. Additional costs to restore indoor air quality due to installation of non-compliant products will be borne by Contractor.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 017000
EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Examination, preparation, and general installation procedures.
- B. Requirements for alterations work, including selective demolition.
- C. Pre-installation meetings.
- D. Cutting and patching.
- E. Surveying for laying out the work.
- F. Cleaning and protection.
- G. Starting of systems and equipment.
- H. Demonstration and instruction of Owner personnel.
- I. Closeout Submittals.
- J. Closeout procedures, including Contractor's Correction Punch List, except payment procedures.
- K. General requirements for maintenance service.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Submittals procedures.
- B. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Testing and inspection procedures.
- C. Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals: Project record documents, operation and maintenance data, warranties, and bonds.
- D. Section 017900 - Demonstration and Training: Demonstration of products and systems to be commissioned and where indicated in specific specification sections
- E. Section 024100 - Demolition: Demolition of whole structures and parts thereof; site utility demolition.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NFPA 241 - Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations 2022, with Errata (2021).

1.04 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Use of explosives is not permitted.
- B. Grade site to drain. Maintain excavations free of water. Provide, operate, and maintain pumping equipment.
- C. Protect site from puddling or running water. Provide water barriers as required to protect site from soil erosion.
- D. Perform dewatering activities, as required, for the duration of the project.
- E. Ventilate enclosed areas to assist cure of materials, to dissipate humidity, and to prevent accumulation of dust, fumes, vapors, or gases.
- F. Dust Control: Execute work by methods to minimize raising dust from construction operations. Provide positive means to prevent air-borne dust from dispersing into atmosphere and over adjacent property.
 1. Provide dust-proof enclosures to prevent entry of dust generated outdoors.
- G. Erosion and Sediment Control: Plan and execute work by methods to control surface drainage from cuts and fills, from borrow and waste disposal areas. Prevent erosion and sedimentation.
 1. Minimize amount of bare soil exposed at one time.
 2. Provide temporary measures such as berms, dikes, and drains, to prevent water flow.

3. Construct fill and waste areas by selective placement to avoid erosive surface silts or clays.
4. Periodically inspect earthwork to detect evidence of erosion and sedimentation; promptly apply corrective measures.
- H. Noise Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to minimize noise produced by construction operations.
 1. Outdoors: Limit conduct of especially noisy exterior work to the hours of 8 am to 5 pm.
- I. Pest and Rodent Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to prevent pests and insects from damaging the work.
- J. Pollution Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to prevent contamination of soil, water, and atmosphere from discharge of noxious, toxic substances, and pollutants produced by construction operations. Comply with federal, state, and local regulations.

1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and work of the various sections of the Project Manual to ensure efficient and orderly sequence of installation of interdependent construction elements, with provisions for accommodating items installed later.
- B. Notify affected utility companies and comply with their requirements.
- C. Verify that utility requirements and characteristics of new operating equipment are compatible with building utilities. Coordinate work of various sections having interdependent responsibilities for installing, connecting to, and placing in service, such equipment.
- D. Coordinate space requirements, supports, and installation of mechanical and electrical work that are indicated diagrammatically on drawings. Follow routing indicated for pipes, ducts, and conduit, as closely as practicable; place runs parallel with lines of building. Utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.
- E. In finished areas except as otherwise indicated, conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring within the construction. Coordinate locations of fixtures and outlets with finish elements.
- F. Coordinate completion and clean-up of work of separate sections.
- G. After Owner occupancy of premises, coordinate access to site for correction of defective work and work not in accordance with Contract Documents, to minimize disruption of Owner's activities.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PATCHING MATERIALS

- A. New Materials: As specified in product sections; match existing products and work for patching and extending work.
- B. Type and Quality of Existing Products: Determine by inspecting and testing products where necessary, referring to existing work as a standard.
- C. Product Substitution: For any proposed change in materials, submit request for substitution described in Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that existing site conditions and substrate surfaces are acceptable for subsequent work. Start of work means acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Verify that existing substrate is capable of structural support or attachment of new work being applied or attached.
- C. Examine and verify specific conditions described in individual specification sections.
- D. Take field measurements before confirming product orders or beginning fabrication, to minimize waste due to over-ordering or misfabrication.

- E. Verify that utility services are available, of the correct characteristics, and in the correct locations.
- F. Prior to Cutting: Examine existing conditions prior to commencing work, including elements subject to damage or movement during cutting and patching. After uncovering existing work, assess conditions affecting performance of work. Beginning of cutting or patching means acceptance of existing conditions.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate surfaces prior to applying next material or substance.
- B. Seal cracks or openings of substrate prior to applying next material or substance.
- C. Apply manufacturer required or recommended substrate primer, sealer, or conditioner prior to applying any new material or substance in contact or bond.

3.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. When required in individual specification sections, convene a preinstallation meeting at the site prior to commencing work of the section.
- B. Require attendance of parties directly affecting, or affected by, work of the specific section.
- C. Notify Architect five working days in advance of meeting date.
- D. Prepare agenda and preside at meeting:
 1. Review conditions of examination, preparation and installation procedures.
 2. Review coordination with related work.
- E. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

3.04 LAYING OUT THE WORK

- A. Utilize recognized engineering survey practices.
- B. Establish elevations, lines and levels. Locate and lay out by instrumentation and similar appropriate means:
 1. Site improvements including pavements; stakes for grading, fill and topsoil placement; utility locations, slopes, and invert elevations.
 2. Grid or axis for structures.
 3. Building foundation, column locations, ground floor elevations.
- C. Periodically verify layouts by same means.
- D. Maintain a complete and accurate log of control and survey work as it progresses.

3.05 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install products as specified in individual sections, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, and so as to avoid waste due to necessity for replacement.
- B. Make vertical elements plumb and horizontal elements level, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install equipment and fittings plumb and level, neatly aligned with adjacent vertical and horizontal lines, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Make consistent texture on surfaces, with seamless transitions, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Make neat transitions between different surfaces, maintaining texture and appearance.

3.06 ALTERATIONS

- A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
 1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as indicated.
 2. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
 3. Beginning of alterations work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Maintain weatherproof exterior building enclosure except for interruptions required for replacement or modifications; take care to prevent water and humidity damage.

1. Where openings in exterior enclosure exist, provide construction to make exterior enclosure weatherproof.
2. Insulate existing ducts or pipes that are exposed to outdoor ambient temperatures by alterations work.
- C. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
 1. Remove rotted wood, corroded metals, and deteriorated masonry and concrete; replace with new construction specified.
 2. Remove items indicated on drawings.
 3. Relocate items indicated on drawings.
 4. Where new surface finishes are to be applied to existing work, perform removals, patch, and prepare existing surfaces as required to receive new finish; remove existing finish if necessary for successful application of new finish.
 5. Where new surface finishes are not specified or indicated, patch holes and damaged surfaces to match adjacent finished surfaces as closely as possible.
- D. Services (Including but not limited to HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Electrical, and Telecommunications): Remove, relocate, and extend existing systems to accommodate new construction.
 1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components; if necessary, modify installation to allow access or provide access panel.
 2. Where existing systems or equipment are not active and Contract Documents require reactivation, put back into operational condition; repair supply, distribution, and equipment as required.
 3. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
 - a. Disable existing systems only to make switchovers and connections; minimize duration of outages.
 - b. Provide temporary connections as required to maintain existing systems in service.
 4. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities.
 5. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment , including those above accessible ceilings; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification; patch holes left by removal using materials specified for new construction.
- E. Protect existing work to remain.
 1. Prevent movement of structure; provide shoring and bracing if necessary.
 2. Perform cutting to accomplish removals neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
 3. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.
- F. Adapt existing work to fit new work: Make as neat and smooth transition as possible.
 1. When existing finished surfaces are cut so that a smooth transition with new work is not possible, terminate existing surface along a straight line at a natural line of division and make recommendation to Architect.
 2. Where removal of partitions or walls results in adjacent spaces becoming one, rework floors, walls, and ceilings to a smooth plane without breaks, steps, or bulkheads.
 3. Where a change of plane of 1/4 inch or more occurs in existing work, submit recommendation for providing a smooth transition for Architect review and request instructions.
- G. Patching: Where the existing surface is not indicated to be refinished, patch to match the surface finish that existed prior to cutting. Where the surface is indicated to be refinished, patch so that the substrate is ready for the new finish.
- H. Refinish existing surfaces as indicated:
 1. Where rooms or spaces are indicated to be refinished, refinish all visible existing surfaces to remain to the specified condition for each material, with a neat transition to adjacent finishes.

2. If mechanical or electrical work is exposed accidentally during the work, re-cover and refinish to match.
- I. Clean existing systems and equipment.
- J. Remove demolition debris and abandoned items from alterations areas and dispose of off-site; do not burn or bury.
- K. Do not begin new construction in alterations areas before demolition is complete.
- L. Comply with all other applicable requirements of this section.

3.07 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Whenever possible, execute the work by methods that avoid cutting or patching.
- B. See Alterations article above for additional requirements.
- C. Perform whatever cutting and patching is necessary to:
 1. Complete the work.
 2. Fit products together to integrate with other work.
 3. Provide openings for penetration of mechanical, electrical, and other services.
 4. Match work that has been cut to adjacent work.
 5. Repair areas adjacent to cuts to required condition.
 6. Repair new work damaged by subsequent work.
 7. Remove samples of installed work for testing when requested.
 8. Remove and replace defective and non-complying work.
- D. Execute work by methods that avoid damage to other work and that will provide appropriate surfaces to receive patching and finishing. In existing work, minimize damage and restore to original condition.
- E. Employ skilled and experienced installer to perform cutting for weather exposed and moisture resistant elements, and sight exposed surfaces.
- F. Cut rigid materials using masonry saw or core drill. Pneumatic tools not allowed without prior approval.
- G. Restore work with new products in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- H. Fit work air tight to pipes, sleeves, ducts, conduit, and other penetrations through surfaces.
- I. At penetrations of fire rated walls, partitions, ceiling, or floor construction, completely seal voids with fire rated material , to full thickness of the penetrated element.
- J. Patching:
 1. Finish patched surfaces to match finish that existed prior to patching. On continuous surfaces, refinish to nearest intersection or natural break. For an assembly, refinish entire unit.
 2. Match color, texture, and appearance.
 3. Repair patched surfaces that are damaged, lifted, discolored, or showing other imperfections due to patching work. If defects are due to condition of substrate, repair substrate prior to repairing finish.

3.08 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. Maintain areas free of waste materials, debris, and rubbish. Maintain site in a clean and orderly condition.
- B. Remove debris and rubbish from pipe chases, plenums, attics, crawl spaces, and other closed or remote spaces, prior to enclosing the space.
- C. Broom and vacuum clean interior areas prior to start of surface finishing, and continue cleaning to eliminate dust.
- D. Collect and remove waste materials, debris, and trash/rubbish from site periodically and dispose off-site; do not burn or bury.

3.09 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED WORK

- A. Protect installed work from damage by construction operations.
- B. Provide special protection where specified in individual specification sections.
- C. Provide temporary and removable protection for installed products. Control activity in immediate work area to prevent damage.
- D. Provide protective coverings at walls, projections, jambs, sills, and soffits of openings.
- E. Protect finished floors, stairs, and other surfaces from traffic, dirt, wear, damage, or movement of heavy objects, by protecting with durable sheet materials.
- F. Prohibit traffic or storage upon waterproofed or roofed surfaces. If traffic or activity is necessary, obtain recommendations for protection from waterproofing or roofing material manufacturer.
- G. Remove protective coverings when no longer needed; reuse or recycle coverings if possible.

3.10 SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Coordinate schedule for start-up of various equipment and systems.
- B. Verify that each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, belt tension, control sequence, and for conditions that may cause damage.
- C. Verify tests, meter readings, and specified electrical characteristics agree with those required by the equipment or system manufacturer.
- D. Verify that wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.
- E. Execute start-up under supervision of applicable Contractor personnel and manufacturer's representative in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- F. When specified in individual specification Sections, require manufacturer to provide authorized representative to be present at site to inspect, check, and approve equipment or system installation prior to start-up, and to supervise placing equipment or system in operation.
- G. Submit a written report that equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning correctly.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTION

- A. See Section 017900 - Demonstration and Training.

3.12 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating products and equipment to ensure smooth and unhindered operation.
- B. Testing, adjusting, and balancing HVAC systems: See Section 230593 - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC.

3.13 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Execute final cleaning prior to Substantial Completion.
- B. Use cleaning materials that are nonhazardous.
- C. Clean interior and exterior glass, surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains and foreign substances, polish transparent and glossy surfaces, vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces.
- D. Remove all labels that are not permanent. Do not paint or otherwise cover fire test labels or nameplates on mechanical and electrical equipment.
- E. Clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition with cleaning materials appropriate to the surface and material being cleaned.
- F. Clean filters of operating equipment.
- G. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts, scuppers, overflow drains, area drains, and drainage systems.
- H. Clean site; sweep paved areas, rake clean landscaped surfaces.

- I. Remove waste, surplus materials, trash/rubbish, and construction facilities from the site; dispose of in legal manner; do not burn or bury.

3.14 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Make submittals that are required by governing or other authorities.
 1. Provide copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Accompany Owner and Architect on preliminary inspection to determine items to be listed for completion or correction in the Contractor's Correction Punch List for Contractor's Notice of Substantial Completion.
- C. Notify Architect when work is considered ready for Architect's Substantial Completion inspection.
- D. Submit written certification containing Contractor's Correction Punch List, that Contract Documents have been reviewed, work has been inspected, and that work is complete in accordance with Contract Documents and ready for Architect's Substantial Completion inspection.
- E. Conduct Substantial Completion inspection and create Final Correction Punch List containing Architect's and Contractor's comprehensive list of items identified to be completed or corrected and submit to Architect.
- F. Correct items of work listed in Final Correction Punch List and comply with requirements for access to Owner-occupied areas.
- G. Notify Architect when work is considered finally complete and ready for Architect's Substantial Completion final inspection.
- H. Complete items of work determined by Architect listed in executed Certificate of Substantial Completion.

3.15 MAINTENANCE

- A. Provide service and maintenance of components indicated in specification sections.
- B. Maintenance Period: As indicated in specification sections or, if not indicated, not less than one year from the Date of Substantial Completion or the length of the specified warranty, whichever is longer.
- C. Examine system components at a frequency consistent with reliable operation. Clean, adjust, and lubricate as required.
- D. Include systematic examination, adjustment, and lubrication of components. Repair or replace parts whenever required. Use parts produced by the manufacturer of the original component.
- E. Maintenance service shall not be assigned or transferred to any agent or subcontractor without prior written consent of the Owner.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 017800
CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Project record documents.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.
- C. Warranties and bonds.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements: Submittals procedures, shop drawings, product data, and samples.
- B. Individual Product Sections: Specific requirements for operation and maintenance data.
- C. Individual Product Sections: Warranties required for specific products or Work.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide one (1) electronic copy and (1) hard copy of the following:
 1. Project Record Documents: Submit documents to Architect with claim for final Application for Payment.
 2. Operation and Mainenance Manual.
 3. Operation and Maintenance Data:
 - a. For equipment, or component parts of equipment put into service during construction and operated by Owner, submit completed documents within ten days after acceptance.
 - b. Submit one copy of completed documents 15 days prior to final inspection. This copy will be reviewed and returned after final inspection, with Architect comments. Revise content of all document sets as required prior to final submission.
 - c. Submit one (1) electronic copy and (1) hard copy of revised final documents in final form within 10 days after final inspection.
 4. Warranties and Bonds:
 - a. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during construction with Owner's permission, submit documents within 10 days after acceptance.
 - b. Make other submittals within 10 days after Date of Substantial Completion, prior to final Application for Payment.
 - 1) For items of Work for which acceptance is delayed beyond Date of Substantial Completion, submit within 10 days after acceptance, listing the date of acceptance as the beginning of the warranty period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintain on site one set of the following record documents; record actual revisions to the Work:
 1. Drawings.
 2. Addenda.
 3. Change Orders and other modifications to the Contract.
 4. Reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples.
 5. Manufacturer's instruction for assembly, installation, and adjusting.
- B. Ensure entries are complete and accurate, enabling future reference by Owner.
- C. Store record documents separate from documents used for construction.
- D. Record information concurrent with construction progress.
- E. Record Drawings and Shop Drawings: Legibly mark each item to record actual construction including:

1. Measured horizontal and vertical locations of underground utilities and appurtenances, referenced to permanent surface improvements.
2. Measured locations of internal utilities and appurtenances concealed in construction, referenced to visible and accessible features of the Work.
3. Field changes of dimension and detail.
4. Details not on original Contract drawings.

3.02 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Source Data: For each product or system, list names, addresses and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers, including local source of supplies and replacement parts.
- B. Product Data: Mark each sheet to clearly identify specific products and component parts, and data applicable to installation. Delete inapplicable information.
- C. Drawings: Supplement product data to illustrate relations of component parts of equipment and systems, to show control and flow diagrams. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
- D. Typed Text: As required to supplement product data. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure, incorporating manufacturer's instructions.

3.03 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR MATERIALS AND FINISHES

- A. For Each Product, Applied Material, and Finish:
 1. Product data, with catalog number, size, composition, and color and texture designations.
 2. Information for re-ordering custom manufactured products.
- B. Instructions for Care and Maintenance: Manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning agents and methods, precautions against detrimental cleaning agents and methods, and recommended schedule for cleaning and maintenance.
- C. Additional information as specified in individual product specification sections.
- D. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.

3.04 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. For Each Item of Equipment and Each System:
 1. Description of unit or system, and component parts.
 2. Identify function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.
 3. Include performance curves, with engineering data and tests.
 4. Complete nomenclature and model number of replaceable parts.
- B. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.
- C. Panelboard Circuit Directories: Provide electrical service characteristics, controls, and communications; typed.
- D. Operating Procedures: Include start-up, break-in, and routine normal operating instructions and sequences. Include regulation, control, stopping, shut-down, and emergency instructions. Include summer, winter, and any special operating instructions.
- E. Maintenance Requirements: Include routine procedures and guide for preventative maintenance and trouble shooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly instructions; and alignment, adjusting, balancing, and checking instructions.
 1. Include HVAC outdoor and exhaust air damper calibration strategy.
 - a. Include provisions which ensure that full closure of dampers can be achieved.
 2. Include Carbon Dioxide Monitoring Protocol.
 3. Include Carbon Monoxide Monitoring Protocol.
- F. Provide servicing and lubrication schedule, and list of lubricants required.
- G. Include manufacturer's printed operation and maintenance instructions.

- H. Include sequence of operation by controls manufacturer.
- I. Provide original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings, and diagrams required for maintenance.
- J. Provide control diagrams by controls manufacturer as installed.
- K. Provide charts of valve tag numbers, with location and function of each valve, keyed to flow and control diagrams.
- L. Provide list of original manufacturer's spare parts, current prices, and recommended quantities to be maintained in storage.
- M. Additional Requirements: As specified in individual product specification sections.
- N. Test and Balance Reports.

3.05 ASSEMBLY OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Provide (1) hard copy and (1) electronic copy in PDF Format organized in the same format as the hard copy with electronic tabs, cover sheet, table of contents page and drawings.
- B. Assemble operation and maintenance data into manuals for Owner's personnel use, with data arranged in the same sequence as, and identified by, the specification sections.
- C. Where systems involve more than one specification section, provide separate tabbed divider for each system.
- D. Binders: Commercial quality, 8-1/2 by 11 inch three D side ring binders with durable plastic covers; 2 inch maximum ring size. When multiple binders are used, correlate data into related consistent groupings.
- E. Cover: Identify each binder with typed or printed title OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS; identify title of Project; identify subject matter of contents.
- F. Project Directory: Title and address of Project; names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Architect, Consultants, Contractor and subcontractors, with names of responsible parties.
- G. Tables of Contents: List every item separated by a divider, using the same identification as on the divider tab; where multiple volumes are required, include all volumes Tables of Contents in each volume, with the current volume clearly identified.
- H. Dividers: Provide tabbed dividers for each separate product and system; identify the contents on the divider tab; immediately following the divider tab include a description of product and major component parts of equipment.
- I. Text: Manufacturer's printed data, or typewritten data on 20 pound paper.
- J. Drawings: Provide with reinforced punched binder tab. Bind in with text; fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
- K. Arrangement of Contents: Organize each volume in parts as follows:
 1. Project Directory.
 2. Table of Contents, of all volumes, and of this volume.
 3. Operation and Maintenance Data: Arranged by system, then by product category.
 - a. Source data.
 - b. Product data, shop drawings, and other submittals.
 - c. Operation and maintenance data.
 - d. Field quality control data.
 - e. Photocopies of warranties and bonds.

3.06 WARRANTIES AND BONDS

- A. Obtain warranties and bonds, executed in duplicate by responsible Subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers, within 10 days after completion of the applicable item of work. Except for items put into use with Owner's permission, leave date of beginning of time of warranty until Date of Substantial completion is determined.
- B. Verify that documents are in proper form, contain full information, and are notarized.

- C. Co-execute submittals when required.
- D. Retain warranties and bonds until time specified for submittal.
- E. Include originals of each in operation and maintenance manuals, indexed separately on Table of Contents.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 017900
DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Demonstration of products and systems where indicated in specific specification sections.
- B. Training of Owner personnel in operation and maintenance is required for:
 1. All software-operated systems.
 2. HVAC systems and equipment.
 3. Electrical systems and equipment.
 4. Conveying systems.
 5. Items specified in individual product Sections.
- C. Training of Owner personnel in care, cleaning, maintenance, and repair is required for:
 1. Items specified in individual product Sections.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
 - B. Training Plan: Owner will designate personnel to be trained; tailor training to needs and skill-level of attendees.
 1. Submit not less than four weeks prior to start of training.
 2. Revise and resubmit until acceptable.
 3. Provide an overall schedule showing all training sessions.
 4. Include at least the following for each training session:
 - a. Identification, date, time, and duration.
 - b. Description of products and/or systems to be covered.
 - c. Name of firm and person conducting training; include qualifications.
 - d. Intended audience, such as job description.
 - e. Objectives of training and suggested methods of ensuring adequate training.
 - f. Methods to be used, such as classroom lecture, live demonstrations, hands-on, etc.
 - g. Media to be used, such as slides, hand-outs, etc.
 - h. Training equipment required, such as projector, projection screen, etc., to be provided by Contractor.
- C. Training Manuals: Provide training manual for each attendee; allow for minimum of two attendees per training session.
 1. Include applicable portion of O&M manuals.
 2. Include copies of all hand-outs, slides, overheads, video presentations, etc., that are not included in O&M manuals.
 3. Provide one extra copy of each training manual to be included with operation and maintenance data.
- D. Training Reports:
 1. Identification of each training session, date, time, and duration.
 2. Sign-in sheet showing names and job titles of attendees.
 3. List of attendee questions and written answers given, including copies of and references to supporting documentation required for clarification; include answers to questions that could not be answered in original training session.
 4. Include Commissioning Authority's formal acceptance of training session.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Instructor Qualifications: Familiar with design, operation, maintenance and troubleshooting of the relevant products and systems.
 1. Provide as instructors the most qualified trainer of those contractors and/or installers who actually supplied and installed the systems and equipment.
 2. Where a single person is not familiar with all aspects, provide specialists with necessary qualifications.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 DEMONSTRATION - GENERAL

- A. Demonstrations conducted during system start-up do not qualify as demonstrations for the purposes of this section, unless approved in advance by Owner.
- B. Demonstrations conducted during Functional Testing need not be repeated unless Owner personnel training is specified.
- C. Demonstration may be combined with Owner personnel training if applicable.
- D. Operating Equipment and Systems: Demonstrate operation in all modes, including start-up, shut-down, seasonal changeover, emergency conditions, and troubleshooting, and maintenance procedures, including scheduled and preventive maintenance.
 - 1. Perform demonstrations not less than two weeks prior to Substantial Completion.
 - 2. For equipment or systems requiring seasonal operation, perform demonstration for other season within six months.
- E. Non-Operating Products: Demonstrate cleaning, scheduled and preventive maintenance, and repair procedures.
 - 1. Perform demonstrations not less than two weeks prior to Substantial Completion.

3.02 TRAINING - GENERAL

- A. Commissioning Authority will prepare the Training Plan based on draft plans submitted.
- B. Conduct training on-site unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Owner will provide classroom and seating at no cost to Contractor.
- D. Do not start training until Functional Testing is complete, unless otherwise specified or approved by the Commissioning Authority.
- E. Provide training in minimum two hour segments.
- F. The Commissioning Authority is responsible for determining that the training was satisfactorily completed and will provide approval forms.
- G. Training schedule will be subject to availability of Owner's personnel to be trained; re-schedule training sessions as required by Owner; once schedule has been approved by Owner failure to conduct sessions according to schedule will be cause for Owner to charge Contractor for personnel "show-up" time.
- H. Review of Facility Policy on Operation and Maintenance Data: During training discuss:
 - 1. The location of the O&M manuals and procedures for use and preservation; backup copies.
 - 2. Typical contents and organization of all manuals, including explanatory information, system narratives, and product specific information.
 - 3. Typical uses of the O&M manuals.
- I. Product- and System-Specific Training:
 - 1. Review the applicable O&M manuals.
 - 2. For systems, provide an overview of system operation, design parameters and constraints, and operational strategies.
 - 3. Review instructions for proper operation in all modes, including start-up, shut-down, seasonal changeover and emergency procedures, and for maintenance, including preventative maintenance.
 - 4. Provide hands-on training on all operational modes possible and preventive maintenance.
 - 5. Emphasize safe and proper operating requirements; discuss relevant health and safety issues and emergency procedures.
 - 6. Discuss common troubleshooting problems and solutions.
 - 7. Discuss any peculiarities of equipment installation or operation.
 - 8. Discuss warranties and guarantees, including procedures necessary to avoid voiding coverage.

9. Review recommended tools and spare parts inventory suggestions of manufacturers.
 10. Review spare parts and tools required to be furnished by Contractor.
 11. Review spare parts suppliers and sources and procurement procedures.
- J. Be prepared to answer questions raised by training attendees; if unable to answer during training session, provide written response within three days.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 024100 DEMOLITION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Building demolition .
- B. Selective demolition of built site elements.
- C. Selective demolition of building elements for alteration purposes.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Project conditions; protection of bench marks, survey control points, and existing construction to remain; reinstallation of removed products; temporary bracing and shoring.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 29 CFR 1926 - Safety and Health Regulations for Construction Current Edition.
- B. NFPA 241 - Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations 2022, with Errata (2021).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Site Plan: Showing:
 - 1. Areas for temporary construction and field offices.
 - 2. Areas for temporary and permanent placement of removed materials.
- C. Demolition Plan: Submit demolition plan as specified by OSHA and local authorities.
 - 1. Indicate extent of demolition, removal sequence, bracing and shoring, and location and construction of barricades and fences.
 - 2. Identify demolition firm and submit qualifications.
- D. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of capped and active utilities and subsurface construction.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: Company specializing in the type of work required.
 - 1. Minimum of five years of documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS -- NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 SCOPE

- A. Remove the entire building designated on the Demolition Plans - refer all disciplines plans - Architectural, Structural, and MEP.
- B. Remove paving and curbs as required to accomplish new work.
- C. Remove all items indicated on the drawings. Remove adjoining construction as needed to accomodate the Design Intent. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage as much as possible.
- D. Fill excavations, open pits, and holes in ground areas generated as result of removals, using specified fill; compact fill as required so that required rough grade elevations do not subside within one year after completion.

3.02 GENERAL PROCEDURES AND PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with applicable codes and regulations for demolition operations and safety of adjacent structures and the public.
 - 1. Obtain required permits.
 - 2. Comply with applicable requirements of NFPA 241.
 - 3. Use of explosives is not permitted.

4. Take precautions to prevent catastrophic or uncontrolled collapse of structures to be removed; do not allow worker or public access within range of potential collapse of unstable structures.
 5. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary barriers and security devices.
 6. Use physical barriers to prevent access to areas that could be hazardous to workers or the public.
 7. Conduct operations to minimize effects on and interference with adjacent structures and occupants.
 8. Do not close or obstruct roadways or sidewalks without permit.
 9. Conduct operations to minimize obstruction of public and private entrances and exits; do not obstruct required exits at any time; protect persons using entrances and exits from removal operations.
 10. Obtain written permission from owners of adjacent properties when demolition equipment will traverse, infringe upon or limit access to their property.
- B. Do not begin removal until receipt of notification to proceed from Owner.
- C. Do not begin removal until built elements to be salvaged or relocated have been removed.
- D. Protect existing structures and other elements that are not to be removed.
1. Provide bracing and shoring.
 2. Prevent movement or settlement of adjacent structures.
 3. Stop work immediately if adjacent structures appear to be in danger.
- E. Minimize production of dust due to demolition operations; do not use water if that will result in ice, flooding, sedimentation of public waterways or storm sewers, or other pollution.
- F. If hazardous materials are discovered during removal operations, stop work and notify Architect and Owner; hazardous materials include regulated asbestos containing materials, lead, PCB's, and mercury.
- G. Partial Removal of Paving and Curbs: Neatly saw cut at right angle to surface.

3.03 EXISTING UTILITIES

- A. Coordinate work with utility companies; notify before starting work and comply with their requirements; obtain required permits.
- B. Protect existing utilities to remain from damage.
- C. Do not disrupt public utilities without permit from authority having jurisdiction.
- D. Do not close, shut off, or disrupt existing life safety systems that are in use without at least 7 days prior written notification to Owner.
- E. Do not close, shut off, or disrupt existing utility branches or take-offs that are in use without at least 3 days prior written notification to Owner.
- F. Locate and mark utilities to remain; mark using highly visible tags or flags, with identification of utility type; protect from damage due to subsequent construction, using substantial barricades if necessary.
- G. Remove exposed piping, valves, meters, equipment, supports, and foundations of disconnected and abandoned utilities.
- H. Prepare building demolition areas by disconnecting and capping utilities outside the demolition zone; identify and mark utilities to be subsequently reconnected, in same manner as other utilities to remain.

3.04 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION FOR ALTERATIONS

- A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
 1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as indicated.
 2. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
 3. Beginning of demolition work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions that would be apparent upon examination prior to starting demolition.

- B. Maintain weatherproof exterior building enclosure except for interruptions required for replacement or modifications; take care to prevent water and humidity damage.
- C. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
 - 1. Remove rotted wood, corroded metals, and deteriorated masonry and concrete; replace with new construction specified.
 - 2. Remove items indicated on drawings.
- D. Services (Including but not limited to HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Electrical, and Telecommunications): Remove existing systems and equipment as indicated.
 - 1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components.
 - 2. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
 - 3. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities before removal.
 - 4. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment, including those above accessible ceilings; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification.
- E. Protect existing work to remain.
 - 1. Prevent movement of structure; provide shoring and bracing if necessary.
 - 2. Perform cutting to accomplish removals neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
 - 3. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.
 - 4. Patch as specified for patching new work.

3.05 DEBRIS AND WASTE REMOVAL

- A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.
- B. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.
- C. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 30 00

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
 - 1. Foundations
 - 2. Slabs-on-grade.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 2 Section "Cement Concrete Paving" for concrete pavement.
 - 2. Division 2 Section Concrete Sidewalks, Curbs and Gutters" for sidewalks

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
 - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.

November 15,2022

- D. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:
 - 1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.
- E. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Admixtures.
 - 3. Form materials and form-release agents.
 - 4. Waterstops.
- F. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5.
 - 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- E. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

November 15, 2022

- B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
1. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, with options as follows:
 - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
 - b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
- D. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm), minimum.
- E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.

2.02 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed, typically. ASTM A 706/A 706M, grade 60 deformed where welding of reinforcement is required.
- B. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn.
- C. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.

November 15, 2022

- D. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- E. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.

2.03 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

2.04 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I for slab on grade and all elevated elements
 2. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II for foundations
 3. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 3M coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size:
 - a. Grade Beam, Pier Caps and spread Foundations: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) nominal.
 - b. Slab-on-grade: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) nominal.
 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.05 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those

November 15, 2022

permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
7. Moisture Vapor Reduction Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type S.

2.06 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, $\frac{3}{8}$ by 1 inch (19 x 25 mm).
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc.; MiraSTOP.
 - b. CETCO; Volclay Waterstop-RX.
 - c. Concrete Sealants Inc.; Conseal CS-231.
 - d. Greenstreak; Swellstop.
 - e. Henry Company, Sealants Division; Hydro-Flex.
 - f. JR Specialties, Inc.; Earth Shield Type 20.

2.07 VAPOR BARRIER

- A. Vapor barrier shall have all of the following qualities:
1. Maintain permeance of less than 0.01 Perms [grains/(ft² · hr · inHg)] as tested in accordance with mandatory conditioning tests per ASTM E1745 Section 7.1 (7.1.1-7.1.5).
 1. Other performance criteria:
 - a. Strength: ASTM E1745 Class A.
 - b. Thickness: 15 mils minimum
 2. Provide third party documentation that all testing was performed on a single production roll per ASTM E1745 Section 8.1.

November 15, 2022

2.08 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete. Note that this product is not a curing agent.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
 - b. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Aquafilm.
 - c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
 - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
 - f. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
 - g. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.

2.09 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 per ASTM D 2240.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
 - 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

2.10 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement.

November 15,2022

2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm) or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi (29 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlay: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement.
 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm) or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.11 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
 1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Use water-reducing high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.

2.12 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.13 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
 - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 - 1. Class A, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
 - 2. Class C, 1/2 inch (13 mm) for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
 - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely

November 15, 2022

braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

- H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.02 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 2. Install steel reinforcing bar dowels to match vertical reinforcing bars in Concrete Masonry Units.

3.03 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

November 15,2022

3.04 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.05 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
 - 3. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
 - 4. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 - 5. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
 - 1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with early-entry dry-cut power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) wide joints

into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install 30# felt at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
 - 1. Extend 30# felt full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.

3.06 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

3.07 VAPOR BARRIER

1. Install vapor barrier in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Terminate all edges on top of concrete foundations.
3. Overlap and tape all seams with manufacturer's approved tape.
4. Repair damaged areas with like material.

3.08 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Engineer.
 - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- C. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 - 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
 - 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6

November 15, 2022

inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

- D. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 - 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 - 3. Screeed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 - 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 - 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- E. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
 - 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- F. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
 - 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.09 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

November 15, 2022

- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view or to receive a rubbed finish.
- C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where concrete is exposed to view:
 - 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
- D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch (6 mm) in 1 direction.
 - 1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated.
- C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
 - 1. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish.
- D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
 - 1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated.

November 15, 2022

2. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-foot- (3.05-m-) long straightedge resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
- E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated and where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
 1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.
- F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.11 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

3.12 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching $0.2 \text{ lb/sq. ft.} \times h$ ($1 \text{ kg/sq. m} \times h$) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

November 15, 2022

- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.

3.13 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least two month(s). Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches (50 mm) deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

3.14 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

November 15,2022

- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
 - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
 - 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm) wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 - 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 - 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 - 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.

November 15, 2022

6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Inspections:
 1. Steel reinforcement placement.
 2. Steel reinforcement welding.
 3. Headed bolts and studs.
 4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
 5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
 6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
 7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- C. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd. (4 cu. m), but less than 25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m), plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) or fraction thereof.

November 15,2022

- a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
 - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
7. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
8. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
10. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.

Issued for Bidding

November 15,2022

11. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
12. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 03 3000

**SECTION 042000
UNIT MASONRY**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Concrete block.
- B. Clay facing brick.
- C. Hollow brick.
- D. Mortar and grout.
- E. Reinforcement and anchorage.
- F. Flashings.
- G. Lintels.
- H. Accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 072500 - Weather Barriers: Water-resistive barriers or air barriers applied to the exterior face of the backing sheathing or masonry.
- B. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing control and expansion joints.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement 2022.
- B. ASTM A641/A641M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire 2019.
- C. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar 2015.
- D. ASTM A951/A951M - Standard Specification for Steel Wire for Masonry Joint Reinforcement 2016, with Editorial Revision (2018).
- E. ASTM A1064/A1064M - Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete 2018a.
- F. ASTM C62 - Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made From Clay or Shale) 2017.
- G. ASTM C67/C67M - Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile 2021.
- H. ASTM C90 - Standard Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units 2022.
- I. ASTM C91/C91M - Standard Specification for Masonry Cement 2018.
- J. ASTM C144 - Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar 2018.
- K. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement 2022.
- L. ASTM C207 - Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes 2018.
- M. ASTM C270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry 2019a, with Editorial Revision.
- N. ASTM C404 - Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout 2018.
- O. ASTM C476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry 2022.
- P. ASTM C652 - Standard Specification for Hollow Brick (Hollow Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale) 2022.
- Q. ASTM C979/C979M - Standard Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete 2016.
- R. ASTM C1634 - Standard Specification for Concrete Facing Brick and Other Concrete Masonry Facing Units 2020.

- S. BIA Technical Notes No. 7 - Water Penetration Resistance – Design and Detailing 2017.
- T. BIA Technical Notes No. 13 - Ceramic Glazed Brick Exterior Walls 2017.
- U. TMS 402/602 - Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures 2022.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by all relevant installers.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for masonry units, fabricated wire reinforcement, mortar, and masonry accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate pertinent dimensions, materials, anchorage, size and type of fasteners, and accessories for brickwork support system.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that masonry units meet or exceed specified requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that water repellent admixture manufacturer has certified masonry unit manufacturer as an approved user of water repellent admixture in the manufacture of concrete block.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with provisions of TMS 402/602, except where exceeded by requirements of Contract Documents.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, handle, and store masonry units by means that will prevent mechanical damage and contamination by other materials.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Concrete Block: Comply with referenced standards and as follows:
 - 1. Size: Standard units with nominal face dimensions of 16 by 8 inches and nominal depth of 8 inches.
 - 2. Load-Bearing Units: ASTM C90, normal weight.
 - a. Hollow block, as indicated.

2.02 BRICK UNITS

- A. Hollow Facing and Building Brick: ASTM C652, Grade SW; Type HBS; Class H40V.
 - 1. Color and texture: to match existing.
 - 2. Modular size: to match existing.
 - 3. Compressive strength: Suitable for location and use as intended, measured in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M.

2.03 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M, Type N.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I. Match existing mortar color in color and texture. Provide sanded grout if required.
 - 1. Not more than 0.60 percent alkali.
- C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- D. Mortar Aggregate: ASTM C144.
- E. Grout Aggregate: ASTM C404.
- F. Pigments for Colored Mortar: Pure, concentrated mineral pigments specifically intended for mixing into mortar and complying with ASTM C979/C979M.
 - 1. Color(s): to match existing unless specifically noted otherwise.

- G. Water: Clean and potable.
- H. Integral Water Repellent Admixture for Mortar: Polymeric liquid admixture added to mortar at the time of manufacture.
 - 1. Use only in combination with masonry units manufactured with integral water repellent admixture.
 - 2. Use only water repellent admixture for mortar from the same manufacturer as water repellent admixture in masonry units.
 - 3. Meet or exceed performance specified for water repellent admixture used in masonry units.

2.04 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Blok-Lok Limited: www.blok-lok.com/#sle.
 - 2. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; X-Seal Anchor: www.h-b.com/#sle.
 - 3. WIRE-BONDwww.wirebond.com/#sle.
 - 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 40 (40,000 psi), deformed billet bars; galvanized.
- C. Joint Reinforcement: Use ladder type joint reinforcement where vertical reinforcement is involved and truss type elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Single Wythe Joint Reinforcement: ASTM A951/A951M.
 - 1. Type: Truss.
 - 2. Material: ASTM A1064/A1064M steel wire, mill galvanized to ASTM A641/A641M Class 3.
 - 3. Size: 0.1483 inch side rods with 0.1483 inch cross rods; width as required to provide not less than 5/8 inch of mortar coverage on each exposure.
- E. Flexible Anchors: 2-piece anchors that permit differential movement between masonry and building frame, sized to provide not less than 5/8 inch of mortar coverage from masonry face.

2.05 FLASHINGS

- A. Metal Flashing Materials:
 - 1. Stainless Steel Flashing: ASTM A666, Type 304, soft temper; 26 gauge, 0.0187 inch thick; finish 2B to 2D.
- B. Flashing Sealant/Adhesives: Silicone, polyurethane, or silyl-terminated polyether/polyurethane or other type required or recommended by flashing manufacturer; type capable of adhering to type of flashing used.
- C. Drip Edge: Stainless steel; angled drip with hemmed edge; compatible with membrane and adhesives.
- D. Lap Sealants and Tapes: As recommended by flashing manufacturer; compatible with membrane and adhesives.

2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Weeps:
 - 1. Type: as noted on plans - polyethylene tubes.
 - 2. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Cleaning Solution: Non-acidic, not harmful to masonry work or adjacent materials.

2.07 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXING

- A. Mortar for Unit Masonry: ASTM C270, using the Proportion Specification.
 - 1. Masonry below grade and in contact with earth: Type S.
 - 2. Exterior, loadbearing masonry: Type N.
 - 3. Exterior, non-loadbearing masonry: Type N.
- B. Colored Mortar: Provide samples for selection by Architect.

- C. New Mortar for Old Brick: Proportion by volume only; no more than 20 percent of the total volume of Portland cement and lime combined to be Portland cement.
 - 1. Sand: Match original mortar as closely as possible in color, size, and texture, without use of other additives.
 - 2. Repointing Mortar: Use proportions from 1 part lime to 2 parts sand with no Portland cement, up to 2 parts Portland cement to 3 parts lime to 6 parts sand.
- D. Grout: ASTM C476; consistency required to fill completely volumes indicated for grouting; fine grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension of 2 inches or less; coarse grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension greater than 2 inches.
- E. Admixtures: Add to mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; mix uniformly.
- F. Mixing: Use mechanical batch mixer and comply with referenced standards.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive masonry.
- B. Verify that related items provided under other sections are properly sized and located.
- C. Verify that built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into masonry work.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Direct and coordinate placement of metal anchors supplied for installation under other sections.
- B. Provide temporary bracing during installation of masonry work. Maintain in place until building structure provides permanent bracing.

3.03 COLD AND HOT WEATHER REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements of TMS 402/602 or applicable building code, whichever is more stringent.

3.04 COURSING

- A. Establish lines, levels, and coursing indicated. Protect from displacement.
- B. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.
- C. Concrete Masonry Units:
 - 1. Bond: Running.
 - 2. Coursing: One unit and one mortar joint to equal 8 inches.
 - 3. Mortar Joints: Concave.
- D. Brick Units:
 - 1. Bond: Match existing.
 - 2. Coursing: Units and mortar joints to match existing.
 - 3. Mortar Joints: Match existing.

3.05 PLACING AND BONDING

- A. Lay solid masonry units in full bed of mortar, with full head joints, uniformly jointed with other work.
- B. Lay hollow masonry units with face shell bedding on head and bed joints.
- C. Buttering corners of joints or excessive furrowing of mortar joints is not permitted.
- D. Remove excess mortar and mortar smears as work progresses.
- E. Remove excess mortar with water repellent admixture promptly. Do not use acids, sandblasting or high pressure cleaning methods.
- F. Interlock intersections and external corners.
- G. Do not shift or tap masonry units after mortar has achieved initial set. Where adjustment must be made, remove mortar and replace.

- H. Perform job site cutting of masonry units with proper tools to provide straight, clean, unchipped edges. Prevent broken masonry unit corners or edges.

3.06 WEEPS/CAVITY VENTS

- A. Install weeps in veneer and cavity walls at 32 inches on center horizontally on top of through-wall flashing above shelf angles and lintels and at bottom of walls.

3.07 CAVITY MORTAR CONTROL

- A. Do not permit mortar to drop or accumulate into cavity air space or to plug weep/cavity vents.

3.08 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE - GENERAL, SINGLE WYTHE MASONRY, AND CAVITY WALL MASONRY

- A. Unless otherwise indicated on drawings or specified under specific wall type, install horizontal joint reinforcement 16 inches on center.
- B. Fasten anchors to structural framing and embed in masonry joints as masonry is laid. Unless otherwise indicated on drawings or closer spacing is indicated under specific wall type, space anchors at maximum of 36 inches horizontally and 24 inches vertically.
- C. Embed ties and anchors in mortar joint and extend into masonry unit a minimum of 1-1/2 inches with at least 5/8 inch mortar cover to the outside face of the anchor.

3.09 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE - MASONRY VENEER

- A. Masonry Back-Up: Embed anchors to bond veneer at maximum 16 inches on center vertically and 36 inches on center horizontally. Place additional anchors at perimeter of openings and ends of panels, so maximum spacing of anchors is 8 inches on center.

3.10 MASONRY FLASHINGS

- A. Whether or not specifically indicated, install masonry flashing to divert water to exterior at all locations where downward flow of water will be interrupted.
- B. Extend metal flashings through exterior face of masonry and terminate in an angled drip with hemmed edge. Install joint sealer below drip edge to prevent moisture migration under flashing.

3.11 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Do not continue horizontal joint reinforcement through control or expansion joints.
- B. Form control joint with a sheet building paper bond breaker fitted to one side of the hollow contour end of the block unit. Fill the resultant core with grout fill. Rake joint at exposed unit faces for placement of backer rod and sealant.
- C. Size control joints as indicated on drawings; if not indicated, 3/4 inch wide and deep.

3.12 BUILT-IN WORK

- A. As work progresses, install built-in metal door frames and glazed frames and other items to be built into the work and furnished under other sections.
- B. Install built-in items plumb, level, and true to line.
- C. Bed anchors of metal door and glazed frames in adjacent mortar joints. Fill frame voids solid with grout.
1. Fill adjacent masonry cores with grout minimum 12 inches from framed openings.
- D. Do not build into masonry construction organic materials that are subject to deterioration.

3.13 TOLERANCES

- A. Install masonry within the site tolerances found in TMS 402/602.
- B. Maximum Variation from Alignment of Columns: 1/4 inch.
- C. Maximum Variation From Unit to Adjacent Unit: 1/16 inch.
- D. Maximum Variation from Plane of Wall: 1/4 inch in 10 ft and 1/2 inch in 20 ft or more.
- E. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch per story non-cumulative; 1/2 inch in two stories or more.

- F. Maximum Variation from Level Coursing: 1/8 inch in 3 ft and 1/4 inch in 10 ft; 1/2 inch in 30 ft.
- G. Maximum Variation of Mortar Joint Thickness: Head joint, minus 1/4 inch, plus 3/8 inch.
- H. Maximum Variation from Cross Sectional Thickness of Walls: 1/4 inch.

3.14 CUTTING AND FITTING

- A. Cut and fit for chases. Coordinate with other sections of work to provide correct size, shape, and location.
- B. Obtain approval prior to cutting or fitting masonry work not indicated or where appearance or strength of masonry work may be impaired.

3.15 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess mortar and mortar droppings.
- B. Replace defective mortar. Match adjacent work.
- C. Clean soiled surfaces with cleaning solution.
- D. Use non-metallic tools in cleaning operations.

3.16 PROTECTION

- A. Without damaging completed work, provide protective boards at exposed external corners that are subject to damage by construction activities.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 12 00
STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION OF WORK: Work under this section consists of furnishing labor, materials, equipment and services necessary for the fabrication, delivery and erection of structural steel, as shown on the drawings and specified herein.

1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Firms regularly engaged in the fabrication of structural steel for similar type and size projects showing at least 10 years of experience or are in conformance with the AISC Quality Certification Program.
- B. Erector Qualifications: Firms regularly engaged in the erection of structural steel for similar type and size projects having at least 10 years of experience.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Quality welding procedures and welding operators in accordance with the ANSI/AWS "D1.1 Structural Welding Code - Steel".
- D. Applicable Codes and Standards:
 - 1. Conform to the current edition of the following codes and standards:

AISC	"Specifications for Structural Steel Buildings", March 9, 2005 including "Commentary" and "Supplements"
AISC	"Specification for Structural Joints using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts," June 30, 2004, including "Commentary" and "Supplements"
AISC	"Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges", March 18, 2005
ANSI/AWS	"D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel"
ANSI/AWS	"C5.4 - Recommended Practices for Stud Welding"
ASTM	Standards as referenced
SSPC	Systems and Specifications as referenced
- E. Erection of Structural Steel: The steel fabricator shall be responsible for coordinating the erection of structural steel, metal fabrications and metal deck with the steel erector.

1.03 SUBMITTALS:

- A. General: Submit in accordance with Section 01 30 00, Submittals.
- B. Product Data: Submit copies of producer's or manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for the following items. Include laboratory test reports and other data as required to show compliance with specified requirements, including standards.
 - 1. Structural steel (each type), including certified copies of mill reports covering the chemical and physical properties.
 - 2. High strength bolts and nuts.
 - 3. Unfinished bolts and nuts.
 - 4. Structural steel primer paint.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Submit shop drawings and erection drawings for structural steel work. Contract drawings shall not be copied for use as shop or erection drawings. Drawing size, once established, shall remain consistent throughout submittals. Manufacturing, fabricating or

- performing of any work prior to the Architect-Engineer's review and approval of shop drawings shall be entirely at the risk of the Contractor.
- 2. Shop drawings shall include information necessary for the fabrication and erection of the component parts of the structure. They shall indicate size and weight of members, cambers, holes and location of shop and field connections, the type, size and extent of welds, and the welding sequence when required. Welding symbols used on the shop drawings shall be as adopted by the American Welding Society. The proposed shop primer shall be indicated on the shop drawings. Detailing shall be in accordance with AISC "Manual of Steel Construction", Thirteenth Edition.
 - 3. In general, the contract drawings are drawn to scale, but scale measurements shall not be used in locating or arranging members. The fabricator shall check the contract drawings and obtain field measurements of existing conditions before proceeding with detailing and report errors or inconsistencies discovered therein to the Architect-Engineer before starting shop drawings.
 - 4. Corrections or comments made on the shop drawings during the Architect-Engineer's review do not relieve the Contractor from compliance with requirements of the contract drawings and specifications. The review is only for general conformance with the design concept of the project and with the information given in the Contract Documents. The Contractor is responsible for confirming and correlating quantities and dimensions; coordinating his work with that of other trades; and performing his work in a safe and satisfactory manner.
 - 5. Revisions shown on the shop drawings shall be considered as changes necessary to meet specified requirements as shown on Contract Documents and shall not be taken as the basis of claims for extra work.
 - 6. Erection drawings shall describe necessary temporary supports and connections, including the sequence of installation and removal of temporary supports.
 - 7. Provide setting drawings, templates, and directions for installation of anchor bolts and other anchorages to be installed by others.
- D. Architect-Engineer's Approval: The Architect-Engineer shall be entitled to rely upon the accuracy and completeness of shop drawings and certifications when reviewing and approving shop drawings.
- E. Welding Certifications: Provide certification that welders employed have satisfactorily passed ANSI/AWS qualifications tests. The welder's qualification as specified in ANSI/AWS Code shall be considered as remaining in effect indefinitely unless (1) the welder is not engaged in a given process of welding for which the welder is qualified for a period exceeding six months or unless (2) there is some specific reason to question a welder's ability. In case one (1), the requalification test needs to be made only in the 3/8" (9.5 mm) thickness. Submit certification to Architect-Engineer in a minimum of 15 days prior to performing any welding.
- F. Welding Procedure Qualification: Except for prequalified (per ANSI/AWS D1.1) and previously qualified procedures, each Contractor performing welding shall record in detail and shall qualify the welding procedure specification for any welding procedure followed in the fabrication of weldments. Qualification of welding procedures shall conform to ANSI/AWS D1.1 and to the specifications in this section. Copies of the welding procedure specification and the results of the procedure qualification test for each type of welding which requires procedure qualification shall be submitted for approval. Approval of any welding procedure, however, will not relieve the contractor of the sole responsibility for constructing a structure meeting all the requirements of these specifications. In case of conflict between this specification and ANSI/AWS D1.1, the more stringent shall govern.
- G. Erection Sequence: The steel erector shall be responsible for submitting an erection sequence plan with details for approval by the Architect-Engineer prior to erection of steel. The submittal

shall include proposed method of lifting, securing and bracing structural steel necessary to accommodate erection and in place forces that may be imposed on partially completed structure and be within allowable stresses. Should additional framing or bracing or anchorage not shown on the plans be required to accommodate the imposed loads, the fabricator shall furnish the materials and labor required at no additional cost to the Owner.

- H. Certification of Steel and Bolts: The fabricator shall certify that the material furnished for structural steel and the type of bolts furnished for this project are in accordance with the specified materials. Material application and identification shall be visible at least through the "fit up" operation of the main stress carrying elements of a shipping piece. The identification method shall be capable of verifying proper material application including the following:
1. Material specification designation
 2. Heat number
 3. Material test reports
- I. Fabricator Qualifications: Submit data verifying compliance with the requirements of paragraph 1.2.A above.
- J. Erector Qualifications: Submit data verifying compliance with requirements of Paragraph 1.2 B above.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING:

- A. Handling: Handle steel in such a manner to prevent damage to steel members and shop primer.
- B. Delivery: Deliver structural steel to conform to erection schedules. Deliver anchor bolts and loose bearing plates in advance of other steel as required.
- D. Storage: Store steel above ground on platforms, skids or other support and keep free from dirt, grease and other foreign matter. Store welding rods and bolts in a dry location and per AISC and AWS requirements. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification.
- E. Do not store materials on the structure in a manner that might cause distortion or damage to the members or the supporting structure. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.05 REJECTING MATERIAL: Damaged material and material not conforming to the Contract Documents may be rejected by the Architect-Engineer at any time nonconformities are discovered until final acceptance of the work. Remove rejected materials and replace without additional cost to the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS:

- A. Structural Steel Shapes, Plates and Bars:
 1. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 36.
 2. High-Strength Low-Allow Steel: ASTM A 992, Grade 50
- B. Heavy Shapes and Plates:
 1. ASTM A6 Groups 4 and 5 rolled shapes, other than column sections, shall be supplied with Charpy V-Notch testing in accordance with ASTM A 6, Supplementary Requirement S5. The impact test shall meet a minimum average value of 20 ft-lbs. absorbed energy at +70 degrees F and shall be conducted in accordance with ASTM A 673, Frequency P, with the following exceptions:
 - a. The center longitudinal axis of the specimens shall be located as near as practical to midway between the inner flange surface and the center of the flange thickness at the

intersection with the web mid-thickness.

- b. Tests shall be conducted by the producer on material selected from a location representing the top of each ingot or part of an ingot used to produce the product represented by these tests.
2. Plates exceeding 2" thickness, other than base plates, shall be supplied with Charpy V-Notch testing in accordance with ASTM A 6, Supplementary Requirement S5. The impact test shall be conducted by the producer in accordance with ASTM A 673, Frequency P, and shall meet a minimum average value of 20 ft-lbs. absorbed energy at +70 degrees F.
3. ASTM A 6 Groups 4 and 5 rolled shapes, other than column sections, and plates exceeding 2" thickness, other than base plates, shall be fabricated from steel that has been silicon-killed and manufactured to fine-grained practice.
- C. Cold-formed Structural Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade B
- D. Hot-Formed Structural Steel Tubing: ASTM A501
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade B

2.02 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:

- A. Anchor bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36.
- B. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 325, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Welding Electrodes: Comply with ANSI/AWS Code.
- D. Shear Connectors: ASTM A108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed stud type, cold finished carbon steel, AWS D1.1, Type B.
- E. Deformed Bar Anchors: ASTM A 108, cold rolled, deformed wire, meeting the mechanical properties of ASTM A 496.
- F. Prime Paint: Steel Structures Painting Council Specification 15-68T, Type 1 (grey oxide) or a shop primer paint which meets the same minimum performance requirements.
- G. Prime Paint for Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Series 90-97 "Tneme-Zinc," by the Tnemec Co., Inc. or approved equal.
- H. Galvanizing Repair Paint: Tnemec 90-97, "Tneme-zinc", zinc-rich urethane primer.

2.03 FABRICATION:

- A. Details shown are typical; similar details apply to similar conditions, unless otherwise indicated. Verify dimensions at the site whenever possible without causing delay in the work.
- B. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble steel to conform to current edition of AISC "Specifications for Structural Steel" and AISC "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" using LRFD methodologies and as indicated on final shop drawings. Fabricate and assemble structural assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible.
- C. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Comply with fabrication requirements, including tolerance limits, of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for structural steel identified as architecturally exposed structural steel.
 1. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square and free of surface blemishes including pitting, rust, scale, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names and roughness.
 2. Remove blemishes by filling or grinding or by welding and grinding, before cleaning, treating and shop priming.
- D. Holes:

1. Punching: Punch holes clean without torn or ragged edges. Remove sharp fins before bolting. Punch steel for attachments, anchors or for other purposes as shown.
2. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to metal surfaces. Do not flame-cut holes or enlarge holes by burning. Drill holes in bearing plates.
3. Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel framing as shown on the final shop drawings. Provide threaded nuts welded to framing, and other specialty items as shown to receive other work.

E. Connections:

1. General: Weld or bolt shop and field connections as indicated.
2. Bolted Connections:
 - a. Provide high-strength threaded fasteners and hardened washers for principal bolted connections, except where unfinished bolts are shown. Assemble high strength bolted connections in accordance with "Allowable Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
 - b. Washers: Use a hardened washer under the element turned in tightening for high strength bolts, regardless of method of tightening. When an outer face of bolted parts has a slope greater than 1:20 with respect to a plane normal to the bolt axis, use a beveled washer to compensate for lack of parallelism.
 - c. Methods of Tightening: Tighten bolts by "Turn-of-Nut Tightening", "Calibrated Wrench Tightening" or "Installation of Alternate Design Bolts" as per "Allowable Stress Design Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
 - d. Provide not less than two bolts per connection. Remove burrs (greater than 1/16" in height), pits, heavy rust, dirt, loose mill scale, other foreign materials and defects from contact surfaces of steel where members are joined.
 - e. Reuse of Bolts: Galvanized A 325 bolts shall not be reused. Other A 325 bolts may be reused if approved by the Architect-Engineer.
3. Welded Connections: Execute welding with welders qualified in accordance with requirements outlined in Part 1 of this section. Comply with ANSI/AWS Code for equipment, procedures, appearance and quality of welds and methods used in correcting welding work. Clean surfaces as outlined in ANSI/AWS D1.1. Remove fins and burrs from joint surfaces. Finish member true to line and free from twists, bends, and open joints.

F. Provide camber in structural members where indicated on Contract Documents.

- G. Complete structural steel assemblies, including welding of units, before start of shop-priming operations. Provide finish surfaces of members exposed in final structure free of markings, burrs, and other defects.
- H. Properly mark and match mark materials for field assembly. Fabricate for delivery sequence which will expedite erection and minimize field handling of materials.

2.04 SHOP PAINTING:

A. General:

1. Shop prime structural steel work, except those members or portions of members to be embedded in concrete or mortar. Prime embedded steel which is partially exposed on the exposed portions and the initial 2" of embedded areas only.
2. Do not paint the following contract surfaces:

- a. Those to be welded.
 - b. Those to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
 - c. Those to be hot-dip galvanized.
 - d. Those to receive sprayed-on fireproofing.
- B. Surface Preparation: After inspection and before shipping, clean steel work to be prime painted. Remove loose rust, loose mill scale, and spatter, slag or flux deposits. Remove grease and oil in accordance with Steel Structures Painting Council SP-1, "Solvent Cleaning".
- 1. All structural steel except Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Final clean interior steel with SSPC SP-3, "Power Tool Cleaning" or SSPC SP-7, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning".
 - 2. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- C. Prime Painting: Immediately after surface preparation, apply structural steel primer paint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and at a rate to provide a uniform minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 to 2.0 mil. Use painting methods which will result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges and all exposed surfaces.
- 1. For Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel, primer shall be applied according to manufacturer's written instructions to provide a dry film thickness of 2.5 to 3.5 mils.
- D. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/ A 123M.
- 1. Fill vent holes and grind smooth after galvanizing.
 - 2. Galvanize shelf angles attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 ERECTION:

- A. General: Comply with the AISC Specifications and "Code of Standard Practice" and as herein specified. Comply with AISC Specifications for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment and the removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
- B. With respect to the AISC "Code of Standard Practice" Paragraph 7.9.3, other elements not classified as structural steel, but which are essential to provide non-self-supporting steel frame stability are as follows:
 - 1. Cast in Place concrete shear walls and deck.
 - 2. All roof deck.
 - 3. Composite metal decking and concrete.
 - 4. Bracing angles
- C. Members forming parts of the assembled structure shall be aligned properly, plumbed accurately, and then secured. Tolerance in the alignment shall conform to those specified in the AISC "Code of Standard Practice". The erector shall furnish to the Architect-Engineer certification in writing that the structure has been checked for alignment and meets the above requirements.
- D. Check elevations of concrete bearing surfaces and locations of anchor bolts and similar devices, before erection work proceeds. Report discrepancies to the Architect-Engineer.
- E. Temporary Shoring and Bracing: Provide temporary shoring, guying, and bracing members with connections of sufficient strength to bear imposed loads as required for erection. Remove temporary members and connections when permanent members and other elements listed in Paragraph 3.1 B are in place and final connections are made except that temporary members

and connections may be left in place when they will not interfere with final construction and when approved by Architect-Engineer. Provide temporary guy lines to achieve proper alignment of the structures as erection proceeds.

- F. Temporary Planking: Provide temporary planking and working platforms as necessary to safely and effectively complete the work.
- G. Anchor Bolts and Embed Plates: Furnish anchor bolts, embed plates and other connectors required for securing structural steel to foundations and other in-place work. Furnish templates and other devices as necessary for presetting bolts and other anchors to accurate locations.
- H. Field Assembly: Set structural members accurately to lines and elevations indicated. Align and adjust the various members forming a part of a complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces which will be in permanent contact before assembly. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of the structure within specified AISC tolerances.
 - 2. Splice members only where shown or specified.
- I. Erection Bolts: On exposed welded construction, remove erection bolts, restore base metal by welding in accordance with ANSI/AWS D1.1, requirements for welded restoration of base metal with mislocated holes, and grind smooth.
- J. Do not enlarge holes in members by burning or by the use of drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts. Excessive reaming of holes may reduce the load-carrying capacity of the connection. All connections that require reaming of holes for fit-up purposes shall be subsequently submitted to the Architect-Engineer for approval. Modified connections that do not have the required load-carrying capacity shall be further modified at the direction of the Architect-Engineer at no additional cost to the Owner.
- K. Gas Cutting: Do not use gas cutting torches in the field for correcting fabrication errors in the structural framing. Cutting will be permitted only on secondary members which are not under stress, as acceptable to the Architect-Engineer. Finish gas-cut sections equal to a sheared appearance when permitted.
- L. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end-welding of headed stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instruction.

3.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE PROGRAM:

- A. The Owner will engage an independent testing and inspection agency to inspect welded connections and to prepare inspection reports. Independent inspection will be required both at the fabrication plant and in the field.
 - 1. The testing agency may inspect structural steel at fabrication plant before shipment; however, the Architect-Engineer reserves right, at any time before final acceptance, to reject material not complying with specified requirements.
- B. Independent Testing Agency inspection responsibilities:
 - 1. Testing agency shall conduct weld inspections and state in each report whether welds comply with requirements, and specifically state any deviations there from.
 - 2. Weld inspections: To the extent possible, shop welds shall be inspected at the fabrication shop. However, the owner reserves the right to conduct inspection of shop welds in either the shop or the field. Field welds shall be inspected in the field.
 - a. Fillet Welds: Fifty percent of all fillet welds shall be visually inspected. The welds shall be visually inspected prior to application of prime paint.
 - b. Partial or Complete Penetration Welds: All complete or partial penetration welds

shall be inspected along their entire length using the Ultrasonic Testing Method. Where access or discontinuities preclude the use of Ultrasonic Testing, the Radiographic Testing Method shall be used.

3.03 QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM:

- A. Contractor testing and inspection responsibilities:
 - 1. Provide access for testing agency to places where structural steel work is being fabricated or produced so that required inspection and testing can be accomplished.
 - 2. Before fabrication begins, the Mill Test Reports shall be provided to the inspection agency for all material to be welded.
 - 3. Structural steel shall be identified by heat or melt numbers.
 - a. In case of inability to provide the foregoing identification, commercial stock may be used without further testing, provided that the fabricator's stock purchases are demonstrated to conform to the material specifications set forth herein and are accompanied by mill analyses, test reports and certified affidavits.
 - b. If the steel cannot be identified, or its source is questionable, one set of physical tests shall be made on each unit quantity or weight of materials as required to establish the quality of the steel. Testing, inspecting and sampling required shall be done by an independent testing and inspection agency approved by the Architect-Engineer and shall be done at no additional cost to the Owner.
- B. Weld Inspection: The contractor shall be responsible for 100% visual inspection of all welds in accordance with ANSI/AWS D1.1.
- C. High-Strength Bolt Calibration and Inspection: The contractor shall adhere to the requirements outlined in Section 8 of the AISC "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" requiring that a "tension measuring device" be maintained on the jobsite and jobsite calibration/confirmation testing of the high-strength bolt assemblies be performed.

3.04 CORRECTIONS AND REPAIRS:

- A. Correct deficiencies in structural steel work which inspections and laboratory test reports have indicated to be not in compliance with specified requirements. Perform additional tests, at Contractor's expense, as may be necessary to reconfirm any noncompliance of original work, and as may be necessary to show compliance of corrected work.
- B. Welds shall be repaired using a qualified welder or welding operator as applicable. Corrections shall be in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/AWS D1.1 and these specifications. Defects shall be repaired in accordance with the approved procedures. Defects discovered between passes shall be repaired before additional weld material is deposited. Wherever a defect is removed and repair by welding is not required, the affected area shall be blended into the surrounding surface to eliminate sharp notches, crevices, or corners. After a defect is thought to have been removed, and before rewelding, the area shall be examined by suitable methods to insure that the defect has been eliminated. Repair welds shall meet the inspection requirements for the original welds. Any indication of a defect shall be regarded as a defect, unless revaluation by non-destructive methods or by surface conditioning shows that no unacceptable defect is present.
- C. Mislocated bolt holes and abandoned erection holes shall be repaired in accordance with the recommendations of ANSI/AWS D1.1, requirements for welded restoration of base metal with mislocated holes. The repair weld soundness shall be verified by ultrasonic or radiographic testing. The testing cost shall be paid by the contractor.
- D. Rejecting Material: Damaged material and material not conforming to the Contract Documents may be rejected by the Architect-Engineer at any time nonconformities are discovered until final acceptance of the work. Remove rejected materials and replace without additional cost to the

Owner.

- 3.05 TOUCH-UP PAINTING:** Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint. Apply paint to exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness equal to specified prime coat. Touch up galvanized areas with galvanizing repair paint specified.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 30 00
METAL DECK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY: Metal decking and accessories as specified and as shown on Contract Drawings.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS:

Section 05 12 00 – Structural Steel

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the current edition of the following codes and standards, except as otherwise shown or specified:

AISI "Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members"

ANSI/AWS "D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel"

ANSI/AWS "D1.3 - Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel"

SDI "Steel Deck Institute Design Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks, Roof Decks, and Cellular Metal Floor Deck with Electrical Distribution" and "Commentary"

- B. Qualification of Welding Work: Qualify welding processes and welding operators in accordance with the applicable provisions of ANSI/AWS "D1.1 - Structural Welding Code - Steel and ANSI/AWS "D1.3 - Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel".

1.04 SUBMITTALS:

- A. General: Submit number of copies required by Section 01 30 00.
1. Whenever possible, submit data in reproducible tracing form as specified for Shop Drawings.
 2. Contract Drawings shall not be copied for use as shop or erection drawings.
 3. Manufacturing, fabricating, or performing of any work prior to the Architect-Engineer's review and approval of shop drawings shall be entirely at the risk of the Contractor.
- B. Manufacturer's Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for each type of decking and accessories. Include manufacturer's certifications as may be required to show compliance with these specifications. Indicate by transmittal form that a copy of each instruction has been distributed to the Installer.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit detailed drawings showing layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, and conditions requiring closure panels, ridge plates, valley plates, supplementary framing, cut openings, special jointing or other accessories.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS:

- A. Steel for Galvanized Roof Deck: ASTM A 611, Grade C, D, or E or ASTM A653-94, Structural Quality Grade 33 or higher. Fy = 33 KSI, minimum.
- B. Steel for Galvanized Composite Form Deck: ASTM A 611, Grade C or D or ASTM A653-94, Structural Quality Grade 50 or higher. Fy = 50 KSI, minimum

2.02 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:

- A. Sheet Metal Accessories: ASTM A 653, commercial quality, galvanized.
- B. Welding Electrodes: Comply with ANSI/AWS Codes.
- C. Mechanical Fasteners: ITW Buildex - Traxx Fastening System or equal approved by the Architect-Engineer. Fastener size shall comply with the requirements specified in Paragraph

1.04 and 1.05.D.

D. Shear Connectors: Refer Section 05 12 00.

2.03 FABRICATION:

- A. General: Form deck units in lengths to span 3 or more supports, with flush, telescoped or nested end laps and interlocking or nested side laps, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Provide deck configurations complying with the SDI Design Manual of the gage, depth and width as shown.
- C. Refer to Contract Drawings for location of deck units and finishes.
- D. Metal decking shall be supplied free of amounts of lubricant and oils which would impact the adhesion of finish paint or spray-applied fireproofing.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION:

- A. Installer shall examine the areas and conditions under which metal decking is to be installed and notify the Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the Installer.
- B. The Owner reserves the right to engage an independent testing and inspection agency to inspect the installation of the deck for conformance with the Construction Documents.

3.02 INSTALLATION:

- A. General:
 1. Install deck units and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, final shop drawings, and as specified herein. Place deck units on supporting steel framework and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting members before being permanently fastened. Overlap deck units a minimum of 2" at ends and stagger end laps unless noted otherwise on Contract Drawings.
 2. Place deck units in straight alignment for entire length of run of cells and with close alignment between cells at ends of abutting units. Place deck units flat and square, secured to adjacent framing without warp or excessive deflection. Do not stretch or contract side lap interlocks.
 3. Coordinate and cooperate with structural steel erector in locating decking bundles to prevent overloading of structural members. Do not use deck units for storage or working platforms until permanently secured.
- B. Fastening Deck Units:
 1. Fasten steel composite deck units to supporting steel members as indicated on the Contract Drawings. No substitution of fastener type or pattern shall be made without prior written approval by the Architect-Engineer. If attachment is not shown on the Contract Drawings, attach form deck units with not less than 5/8" diameter puddle welds spaced not more than 12" o.c. with a minimum of two welds per unit at each support or fasten using mechanical fasteners with identical spacing. Tack weld or use machine screws at 2'-0" o.c. for fastening end closures.
 2. Fasten steel roof deck units to supporting steel members as indicated on the Contract Drawings. No substitution of fastener type or pattern shall be made without prior written approval by the Architect-Engineer. If attachment is not shown on the Contract Drawings, attach form deck units with not less than No. 12 mechanical fasteners at 6" on center for 1½" wide rib and intermediate rib deck units. Provide sidelap attachment with No. 10 mechanical fasteners at 12" on center, maximum. The use of puddle welds for roof deck attachment is not permitted unless the thickness of substrate steel exceeds ½". In this instance, provide two (2) puddle welds for each mechanical fastener typically specified. Tack weld or use machine screws at 2'-0" o.c. for fastening end closures.
 3. Overlap end joints at supports and attach as specified above.
 4. Comply with ANSI/AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding (SMAW), the appearance and quality of welds, and the methods used in

- correcting welding work.
- C. Cutting and Fitting: Cut and neatly fit deck units and accessories around other work projecting through or adjacent to the decking, as shown on the Contract Drawings.
- D. Reinforcement at Openings: Provide additional metal reinforcement and closure pieces as required for strength, continuity of decking and support of other work shown.
1. 6" to 12" Openings: Provide a flat galvanized steel sheet placed over opening on top of decking and fusion welded to surface of deck. Sheet shall be minimum 15 gage steel of same quality as deck units and at least 12" wider and longer than opening. Reinforcing sheet shall extend a minimum of 6" on each side of opening. Space welds at each corner and not more than 12" o.c. along each side. At the discretion of the Architect-Engineer, an angle frame may be required where a group of holes are spaced close together.
 2. Openings Exceeding 12": Provide an angle frame around openings as shown on the Contract Drawings.
- E. Deck Closures. Where fire rated partitions abut the underside of the deck above perpendicular to the flutes or deformations, provide 20 gage sheet metal closures shaped to fit the contours of the deck.
- 3.03 TOUCH-UP PAINTING:** Immediately after erection, clean field welds and abraded areas. For painted deck, touch-up exposed areas with the same material used for shop painting. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness equal to specified prime coat.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 40 00
COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
 2. Soffit joist framing.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 1. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
 1. Design Loads: Design loads shall be calculated components and cladding load per ASCE/SEI 7 edition indicated on the drawings.
 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
 - a. Exterior Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/600 of wall height at areas backing up brick veneer, and 1/360 of wall height at areas backing up other materials.
 - b. Soffit Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.
 - c. Roof Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.
 3. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
 - a. Upward and downward movement of 5/8 inch.
- B. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
 1. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
 2. Design wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For cold-formed metal framing.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

- B. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
 - 1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
 - 2. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Manufactures offering products complying with the requirements for cold-formed metal framing components and members of the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association or Steel Framing Industry Association.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
 - 1. Grade: ST33H (ST230H).
 - 2. Coating: G60 (Z180).
- B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
 - 1. Grade: 50 (340), Class 1 or 2.
 - 2. Coating: G90 (Z275).

2.03 WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inches (1.09 mm), unless noted otherwise on drawings or required per delegated design.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Not less than engaged wall stud.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-1/2 inches.
- C. Vertical Deflection Clip Option: At non-load bearing walls, manufacturer's standard bypass clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
- D. Single Deflection Track Option: At non-load bearing walls, manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm).
 - 2. Flange Width: 1 inch (25 mm) plus the design gap for 1-story structures and 1 inch (25 mm) plus twice the design gap for other applications.
- E. Headers: Provide steel box headers, or L-headers as required.

2.04 SOFFIT JOIST FRAMING

- A. Steel Ceiling Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depth indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on drawings.
 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) minimum.

2.05 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
 1. Supplementary framing.
 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
 3. Web stiffeners.
 4. Anchor clips.
 5. End clips.
 6. Foundation clips.
 7. Gusset plates.
 8. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
 10. Hole reinforcing plates.
 11. Backer plates.

2.06 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel headless bolts, with encased end threaded, and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C or mechanically deposition according to ASTM B 695, Class 50.
- B. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.07 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.
- B. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- C. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.
- D. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

2.08 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
 - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
 - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
 - 1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
 - 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
 - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- D. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
 - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.

- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.03 WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. At Load-Bearing Walls, squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding 1/8 inch. Fasten both flanges to top and bottom tracks.
- C. At Non-Load Bearing Walls, fasten both flanges of studs to bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Fast both flanges to top track if required by deflection option selected.
- D. Space studs 16 inches (406 mm), unless indicated otherwise or required by delegated design.
- E. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- F. Install headers over wall openings. Fabricate headers of compounds shapes or L-headers as required to support the load.
- G. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Single Deflection Track Option: Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 - 2. Deflection Clip Option: Connect vertical deflection clips to infill studs and anchor to building structure.
- H. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten at each stud intersection, and anchor along the length of the wall for the accumulated bridging force.
 - 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track Option: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches (305 mm) of single deflection track. Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 - a. Install solid blocking at maximum 96-inch (2440-mm) centers and as shown on approved Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Bridging Options:
 - a. Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.

- b. Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
- c. Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.
- J. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps as indicated. Terminate at and fasten to gussets as indicated. Install designed clip anchors at chord studs.

3.04 JOIST INSTALLATION

- A. Install perimeter joist track sized to match joists. Align and securely anchor or fasten track to supporting structure at corners, ends, and each supporting stud.
- B. Install joists bearing on supporting frame, level, straight, and plumb; adjust to final position, brace, and reinforce. Fasten joists to both flanges of joist track.
 - 1. Unless shown otherwise in drawings, install joists over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
 - 2. Reinforce ends and bearing points of joists with web stiffeners, end clips, joist hangers, steel clip angles, or steel-stud sections as required.
- C. Space joists not more than 2 inches (51 mm) from abutting walls, and as indicated.
- D. Frame openings with built-up joist headers consisting of joist and joist track, nesting joists, or another combination of connected joists if indicated.
- E. Install bridging at intervals indicated. Fasten bridging at each joist intersection as follows:
 - 1. Bridging: Joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated, secured to joist webs.
- F. Install miscellaneous joist framing and connections, including web stiffeners, closure pieces, clip angles, continuous angles, hold-down angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable joist-framing assembly.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.06 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 055213
PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Interior stair railings and ramp railings.
- B. Exterior free-standing railings at steps and ramps.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Placement of anchors in concrete.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum 2020.
- B. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- C. AISC 201 - AISC Certification Program for Structural Steel Fabricators, Standard for Steel Building Structures 2006.
- D. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless 2022.
- E. ASTM B241/B241M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube 2016.
- F. ASTM B429/B429M - Standard Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Structural Pipe and Tube 2020.
- G. ASTM B483/B483M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Tube and Drawn Pipe for General Purpose Applications 2021.
- H. ASTM E935 - Standard Test Methods for Performance of Permanent Metal Railing Systems and Rails for Buildings 2021.
- I. AWS A2.4 - Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing, and Nondestructive Examination 2020.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate material, finish, profiles, sizes, connection attachments, anchorage, size and type of fasteners, and accessories.
 - 1. Indicate welded connections using standard AWS A2.4 welding symbols. Indicate net weld lengths.
 - 2. Include the design engineer's seal and signature on each sheet of shop drawings.
- C. Samples: Submit two, 4" long samples of handrail. Submit two samples of elbow, Tee, wall bracket, escutcheon, and end stop.
- D. Fabricator's Qualification Statement.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Designer Qualifications: Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located, or personnel under direct supervision of such an engineer.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications:
 - 1. A qualified steel fabricator that is certified by the American Institute for Steel Construction (AISC) under AISC 201.
 - 2. A company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than ten years of documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Handrails and Railings:

1. The Wagner Companies: www.wagnercompanies.com.
2. Inpro Corporation: www.inprocorp.com
3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 RAILINGS - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design, fabricate, and test railing assemblies in accordance with the most stringent requirements of applicable local code.
- B. Distributed Loads: Design railing assembly, wall rails, and attachments to resist distributed force of 75 pounds per linear foot applied to the top of the assembly and in any direction, without damage or permanent set. Test in accordance with ASTM E935
- C. Concentrated Loads: Design railing assembly, wall rails, and attachments to resist a concentrated force of 200 pounds applied at any point on the top of the assembly and in any direction, without damage or permanent set. Test in accordance with ASTM E935
- D. Allow for expansion and contraction of members and building movement without damage to connections or members.
- E. Dimensions: See drawings for configurations and heights.
 1. Top Rails and Wall Rails: 1-1/2 inches diameter, round.
 2. Intermediate Rails: 1-1/2 inches diameter, round.
 3. Posts: 1-1/2 inches diameter, round.
- F. Provide anchors and other components as required to attach to structure, made of same materials as railing components unless otherwise indicated; where exposed fasteners are unavoidable provide flush countersunk fasteners.
 1. For anchorage to concrete, provide inserts to be cast into concrete, for bolting anchors.
 2. Posts: Provide adjustable flanged brackets.
- G. Provide welding fittings to join lengths, seal open ends, and conceal exposed mounting bolts and nuts, including but not limited to elbows, T-shapes, splice connectors, flanges, escutcheons, and wall brackets.

2.03 ALUMINUM MATERIALS (EXTERIOR RAILINGS)

- A. Aluminum Pipe: Schedule 40; ASTM B429/B429M, ASTM B241/B241M, or ASTM B483/B483M.
- B. Aluminum Tube: Minimum wall thickness of 0.127 inch; ASTM B429/B429M, ASTM B241/B241M, or ASTM B483/B483M.
- C. Welding Fittings: No exposed fasteners; cast aluminum.
- D. Provide escutcheon plates in dark bronze anodized finish to match exterior railings.
- E. Shop and Touch-Up Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.04 STAINLESS STEEL RAILING SYSTEM (INTERIOR RAILINGS)

- A. Stainless Steel Pipe:
 1. 1-1/2" (38mm) gripping diameter
 2. Type 304 alloy
 3. Number 4, Satin Finish
- B. Stainless Steel Mounting Brackets:
 1. Type 304 alloy
 2. Number 4, Satin Finish
 3. Stainless steel cover plate to conceal fasteners.
- C. Welding Fittings: Factory- or shop-welded from matching pipe or tube; seams continuously welded; joints and seams ground smooth.
- D. Exposed Fasteners: No exposed bolts or screws.

2.05 FABRICATION

- A. Accurately form components to suit specific project conditions and for proper connection to building structure.
- B. Fit and shop assemble components in largest practical sizes for delivery to site.
- C. Fabricate components with joints tightly fitted and secured. Provide spigots and sleeves to accommodate site assembly and installation.
- D. Welded Joints:
 - 1. Exterior Components: Continuously seal joined pieces by intermittent welds and plastic filler. Drill condensate drainage holes at bottom of members at locations that will not encourage water intrusion.
 - 2. Interior Components: Continuously seal joined pieces by intermittent welds and plastic filler.
 - 3. Grind exposed joints flush and smooth with adjacent finish surface. Make exposed joints butt tight, flush, and hairline. Ease exposed edges to small uniform radius.

2.06 ALUMINUM FINISHES (EXTERIOR RAILINGS)

- A. Class I Color Anodized Finish: AAMA 611 AA-M12C22A44 Electrolytically deposited colored anodic coating not less than 0.7 mils thick.
- B. Color: Dark Bronze.
- C. Touch-Up Materials: As recommended by coating manufacturer for field application.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and strip primed steel items to bare metal where site welding is required.
- B. Supply items required to be cast into concrete or embedded in masonry with setting templates, for installation as work of other sections.
- C. Apply one coat of bituminous paint to concealed aluminum surfaces that will be in contact with cementitious or dissimilar materials.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to drawings for locations.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install components plumb and level, accurately fitted, free from distortion or defects, with tight joints.
- D. Install railings in compliance with ADA Standards for accessible design at applicable locations.
- E. Anchor railings securely to structure.
- F. Field weld anchors as indicated on drawings. Touch-up welds with primer. Grind welds smooth.
- G. Conceal anchor bolts and screws whenever possible. Where not concealed, use flush countersunk fastenings.
- H. Provide escutcheon plates in dark bronze anodized finish to match exterior railings.

3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4 inch per floor level, non-cumulative.
- B. Maximum Offset From True Alignment: 1/4 inch.
- C. Maximum Out-of-Position: 1/4 inch.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 061000
ROUGH CARPENTRY**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Roof-mounted curbs.
- B. Roofing nailers.
- C. Roofing cant strips.
- D. Preservative treated wood materials.
- E. Fire retardant treated wood materials.
- F. Communications and electrical room mounting boards.
- G. Concealed wood blocking, nailers, and supports.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware 2016a.
- B. ASTM C557 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing 2003 (Reapproved 2017).
- C. ASTM D2898 - Standard Practice for Accelerated Weathering of Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood for Fire Testing 2010 (Reapproved 2017).
- D. ASTM D3498 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Field-Gluing Wood Structural Panels (Plywood or Oriented Strand Board) to Wood Based Floor System Framing 2019a.
- E. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2022.
- F. AWPA U1 - Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood 2022.
- G. PS 1 - Structural Plywood 2009 (Revised 2019).
- H. PS 20 - American Softwood Lumber Standard 2021.
- I. SPIB (GR) - Grading Rules 2014.

1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. General: Cover wood products to protect against moisture. Support stacked products to prevent deformation and to allow air circulation.
- B. Fire Retardant Treated Wood: Prevent exposure to precipitation during shipping, storage, or installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Dimension Lumber: Comply with PS 20 and requirements of specified grading agencies.
 - 1. Species: Douglas Fir-Larch, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. If no species is specified, provide any species graded by the agency specified; if no grading agency is specified, provide lumber graded by any grading agency meeting the specified requirements.
 - 3. Grading Agency: Any grading agency whose rules are approved by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standard Committee (www.alsc.org) and who provides grading service for the species and grade specified; provide lumber stamped with grade mark unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Lumber of other species or grades is acceptable provided structural and appearance characteristics are equivalent to or better than products specified.

2.02 DIMENSION LUMBER FOR CONCEALED APPLICATIONS

- A. Grading Agency: Southern Pine Inspection Bureau, Inc; SPIB (GR).

- B. Sizes: Nominal sizes as indicated on drawings, S4S.
- C. Moisture Content: Kiln-dry or MC15.
- D. Miscellaneous Framing, Blocking, Nailers, Grounds, and Furring:
 - 1. Lumber: S4S, No. 2 or Standard Grade.
 - 2. Boards: Standard or No. 3.

2.03 CONSTRUCTION PANELS

- A. Wall Sheathing: Plywood, PS 1, Grade CDX.
- B. Communications and Electrical Room Mounting Boards: PS 1 A-D plywood, or medium density fiberboard; 3/4 inch thick; flame spread index of 25 or less, smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- C. Other Applications:
 - 1. Plywood Concealed From View But Located Within Exterior Enclosure: PS 1, C-C Plugged or better, Exterior grade.
 - 2. Plywood Exposed to View But Not Exposed to Weather: PS 1, A-D, or better.
 - 3. Other Locations: PS 1, C-D Plugged or better.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors:
 - 1. Metal and Finish: Hot-dipped galvanized steel complying with ASTM A153/A153M for high humidity and preservative-treated wood locations, unfinished steel elsewhere.
 - 2. Drywall Screws: Bugle head, hardened steel, power driven type, length three times thickness of sheathing.
- B. Construction Adhesives: Adhesives complying with ASTM C557 or ASTM D3498.

2.05 FACTORY WOOD TREATMENT

- A. Treated Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements of AWPA U1 - Use Category System for wood treatments determined by use categories, expected service conditions, and specific applications.
 - 1. Fire-Retardant Treated Wood: Mark each piece of wood with producer's stamp indicating compliance with specified requirements.
 - 2. Preservative-Treated Wood: Provide lumber and plywood marked or stamped by an ALSC-accredited testing agency, certifying level and type of treatment in accordance with AWPA standards.
- B. Fire Retardant Treatment:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Lonza Group: www.wolmanizedwood.com/#sle.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 - 2. Exterior Type: AWPA U1, Category UCFB, Commodity Specification H, chemically treated and pressure impregnated; capable of providing a maximum flame spread index of 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, with no evidence of significant combustion when test is extended for an additional 20 minutes both before and after accelerated weathering test performed in accordance with ASTM D2898.
 - a. Kiln dry wood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 15 percent for plywood.
 - b. Do not use treated wood in direct contact with the ground.
 - 3. Interior Type A: AWPA U1, Use Category UCFA, Commodity Specification H, low temperature (low hygroscopic) type, chemically treated and pressure impregnated; capable of providing a maximum flame spread index of 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, with no evidence of significant combustion when test is extended for an additional 20 minutes.
 - a. Kiln dry wood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 15 percent for plywood.
 - b. Treat rough carpentry items as indicated .

- c. Do not use treated wood in applications exposed to weather or where the wood may become wet.
- C. Preservative Treatment:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Lonza Group: www.wolmanizedwood.com/#sle.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 - 2. Preservative Pressure Treatment of Lumber Above Grade: AWPA U1, Use Category UC3B, Commodity Specification A using waterborne preservative.
 - a. Kiln dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
 - b. Treat lumber exposed to weather.
 - c. Treat lumber in contact with roofing, flashing, or waterproofing.
 - d. Treat lumber in contact with masonry or concrete.
 - e. Treat lumber less than 18 inches above grade.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate installation of rough carpentry members specified in other sections.

3.02 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Select material sizes to minimize waste.
- B. Reuse scrap to the greatest extent possible; clearly separate scrap for use on site as accessory components, including: shims, bracing, and blocking.
- C. Where treated wood is used on interior, provide temporary ventilation during and immediately after installation sufficient to remove indoor air contaminants.

3.03 BLOCKING, NAILERS, AND SUPPORTS

- A. Provide framing and blocking members as indicated or as required to support finishes, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- B. In walls, provide blocking attached to studs as backing and support for wall-mounted items, unless item can be securely fastened to two or more studs or other method of support is explicitly indicated.
- C. Where ceiling-mounting is indicated, provide blocking and supplementary supports above ceiling, unless other method of support is explicitly indicated.
- D. Provide the following specific non-structural framing and blocking:
 - 1. Cabinets and shelf supports.
 - 2. Wall brackets.
 - 3. Handrails.
 - 4. Grab bars.
 - 5. Towel and bath accessories.
 - 6. Wall-mounted door stops.
 - 7. Chalkboards and marker boards.
 - 8. Wall paneling and trim.
 - 9. Joints of rigid wall coverings that occur between studs.

3.04 ROOF-RELATED CARPENTRY

- A. Coordinate installation of roofing carpentry with deck construction, framing of roof openings, and roofing assembly installation.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF CONSTRUCTION PANELS

- A. Wall Sheathing: Secure with long dimension perpendicular to wall studs, with ends over firm bearing and staggered, using nails, screws, or staples.
 - 1. Use plywood or other acceptable structural panels at building corners, for not less than 96 inches, measured horizontally.

- B. Communications and Electrical Room Mounting Boards: Secure with screws to studs with edges over firm bearing; space fasteners at maximum 24 inches on center on all edges and into studs in field of board.
 - 1. At fire-rated walls, install board over wall board indicated as part of the fire-rated assembly.
 - 2. Where boards are indicated as full floor-to-ceiling height, install with long edge of board parallel to studs.
 - 3. Install adjacent boards without gaps.
 - 4. Size and Location: As indicated on drawings.

3.06 SITE APPLIED WOOD TREATMENT

- A. Apply preservative treatment compatible with factory applied treatment at site-sawn cuts, complying with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Allow preservative to dry prior to erecting members.

3.07 TOLERANCES

- A. Framing Members: 1/4 inch from true position, maximum.
- B. Variation from Plane (Other than Floors): 1/4 inch in 10 feet maximum, and 1/4 inch in 30 feet maximum.

3.08 CLEANING

- A. Waste Disposal: Comply with the requirements of Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal.
 - 1. Comply with applicable regulations.
 - 2. Do not burn scrap on project site.
 - 3. Do not burn scraps that have been pressure treated.
 - 4. Do not send materials treated with pentachlorophenol, CCA, or ACA to co-generation facilities or "waste-to-energy" facilities.
- B. Do not leave any wood, shavings, sawdust, etc. on the ground or buried in fill.
- C. Prevent sawdust and wood shavings from entering the storm drainage system.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 062000
FINISH CARPENTRY**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Finish carpentry items.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Support framing, grounds, and concealed blocking.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards, 2nd Edition 2014, with Errata (2016).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data:
 - 1. Provide manufacturer's product data, storage and handling instructions for factory-fabricated units.
 - 2. Provide data on fire retardant treatment materials and application instructions.
 - 3. Provide instructions for attachment hardware and finish hardware.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, and accessories.
 - 1. Provide the information required by AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS).
 - 2. Include certification program label.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples of wood trim shop finished on one side for each species, cut, and finish; 4 by 12 inches minimum each piece.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.
 - 1. Accredited participant in the specified certification program prior to the commencement of fabrication and throughout the duration of the project.
 - 2. Single Source Responsibility: Provide and install this work from single fabricator.
- B. Quality Certification:
 - 1. Comply with AWI (QCP) woodwork association quality certification service/program in accordance with requirements for work specified in this section: www.awiqcp.org/#sle.
 - 2. Provide labels or certificates indicating that the work complies with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade or grades specified.
 - 3. Provide designated labels on shop drawings as required by certification program.
 - 4. Provide designated labels on installed products as required by certification program.
 - 5. Submit certifications upon completion of installation that verifies this work is in compliance with specified requirements.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store finish carpentry items under cover, elevated above grade, and in a dry, well-ventilated area not exposed to heat or sunlight.
- B. Protect from moisture damage.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FINISH CARPENTRY ITEMS

- A. Quality Standard: Premium Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
- B. Surface Burning Characteristics: Provide materials having fire and smoke properties as required by applicable code.

C. Interior Woodwork Items:

1. Moldings, Bases, Casings, and Miscellaneous Trim: Walnut; prepare for stain finish.

2.02 LUMBER MATERIALS

- A. Hardwood Lumber: Walnut species, Plain sawn, maximum moisture content of 6 percent ; with vertical grain .

2.03 FASTENINGS

- A. Adhesive for Purposes Other Than Laminate Installation: Suitable for the purpose; not containing formaldehyde or other volatile organic compounds.
- B. Concealed Joint Fasteners: Threaded steel.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Type recommended by fabricator to suit application.
- B. Primer: Alkyd primer sealer.
- C. Wood Filler: Solvent base, tinted to match surface finish color.

2.05 FABRICATION

- A. Shop assemble work for delivery to site, permitting passage through building openings.
- B. Shop prepare and identify components for book match grain matching during site erection.
- C. When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting.
Provide trim for scribing and site cutting.

2.06 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.
- B. Apply wood filler in exposed nail and screw indentations.
- C. On items to receive transparent finishes, use wood filler that matches surrounding surfaces and is of type recommended for the applicable finish.
- D. Color to match Architect's sample.
- E. Finish work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), Section 5 - Finishing for grade specified and as follows:
 1. Transparent:
 - a. System - 1, Lacquer, Nitrocellulose.
 - b. Sheen: Flat.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.
- B. Verify mechanical, electrical, and building items affecting work of this section are placed and ready to receive this work.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install custom fabrications in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade indicated.
- B. Install factory-fabricated units in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions.
- C. Set and secure materials and components in place, plumb and level.
- D. Carefully scribe work abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim to conceal larger gaps.

3.03 PREPARATION FOR SITE FINISHING

- A. Set exposed fasteners. Apply wood filler in exposed fastener indentations. Sand work smooth.

- B. Before installation, prime paint surfaces of items or assemblies to be in contact with cementitious materials.

3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from True Position: 1/16 inch.
- B. Maximum Offset from True Alignment with Abutting Materials: 1/32 inch.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 064100
ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Specially fabricated cabinet units.
- B. Hardware.
- C. Factory finishing.
- D. Preparation for installing electrical and plumbing.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Support framing, grounds, and concealed blocking.
- B. Section 123600 - Countertops.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AWI (QCP) - Quality Certification Program Current Edition.
- B. BHMA A156.9 - Cabinet Hardware 2020.
- C. HPVA HP-1 - American National Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood 2020.
- D. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates 2005.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, and accessories.
 - 1. Scale of Drawings: 1-1/2 inch to 1 foot, minimum.
- C. Product Data: Provide data for hardware accessories.
- D. Samples: Submit actual sample items of proposed pulls, plastic laminate, PVC edging band(s), demonstrating hardware design, quality, and finish.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.
 - 1. Accredited participant in the specified certification program prior to the commencement of fabrication and throughout the duration of the project.
- B. Quality Certification:
 - 1. Provide labels or certificates indicating that the installed work complies with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade or grades specified.
 - 2. Provide designated labels on shop drawings as required by certification program.
 - 3. Provide designated labels on installed products as required by certification program.
 - 4. Submit certifications upon completion of installation that verifies this work is in compliance with specified requirements.
 - 5. Replace, repair, or rework all work for which certification is refused.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect units from moisture damage.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. During and after installation of custom cabinets, maintain temperature and humidity conditions in building spaces at same levels planned for occupancy.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Premium Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
- B. Plastic Laminate Faced Cabinets: Custom grade.

2.02 WOOD-BASED COMPONENTS

- A. Wood fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.

2.03 LAMINATE MATERIALS

- A. High Pressure Decorative Laminate (HPDL): NEMA LD 3, types as recommended for specific applications.

2.04 COUNTERTOPS

- A. Countertops are specified in Section 123600.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Type recommended by fabricator to suit application.
- B. Plastic Edge Banding: Plastic laminate or melamine.
 - 1. Color: As indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Use at all exposed plywood edges.
 - 3. Use at all exposed shelf edges.
- C. Fasteners: Size and type to suit application.
- D. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, Lags, Pins, and Screws: Of size and type to suit application; galvanized or chrome-plated finish in concealed locations and stainless steel or chrome-plated finish in exposed locations.
- E. Concealed Joint Fasteners: Threaded steel.
- F. Grommets: Standard plastic grommets for cut-outs, in color Black.

2.06 HARDWARE

- A. Hardware: BHMA A156.9, types as recommended by fabricator for quality grade specified.
- B. Adjustable Shelf Supports: Standard side-mounted system using recessed metal shelf standards or multiple holes for pin supports and coordinated self rests, polished chrome finish, for nominal 1 inch spacing adjustments.
- C. Fixed Standard Shelf, Countertop, and Workstation Brackets:
 - 1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, factory-applied, textured powder coat.
 - 2. Finish: Brushed; with clear, factory-applied coating.
 - 3. Color: Black.
- D. Fixed Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)-Compliant Vanity and Countertop Brackets:
 - 1. Material: Steel.
- E. Drawer and Door Pulls: As indicated on drawings.
- F. Cabinet Locks: Keyed cylinder, two keys per lock, master keyed, steel with chrome finish.
- G. Drawer Slides:
 - 1. Type: Extension types as required.
 - 2. Static Load Capacity: As required by drawer size.
 - 3. Mounting: Side mounted.
 - 4. Stops: Integral type.
 - 5. Features: Provide self closing/stay closed type.
 - 6. Manufacturers:
 - a. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- H. Hinges: European style concealed self-closing type, steel with polished finish, 120 degree opening.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Blum, Inc: www.blum.com/#sle.
 - b. Grass America Inc: www.grassusa.com/#sle.
 - c. Hardware Resources: www.hardwareresources.com/#sle.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.07 FABRICATION

- A. Assembly: Shop assemble cabinets for delivery to site in units easily handled and to permit passage through building openings.
- B. Edging: Fit shelves, doors, and exposed edges with specified edging. Do not use more than one piece for any single length.
- C. Fitting: When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide matching trim for scribing and site cutting.
- D. Plastic Laminate: Apply plastic laminate finish in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes. Fit corners and joints hairline; secure with concealed fasteners. Slightly bevel arises.
 1. Apply laminate backing sheet to reverse side of plastic laminate finished surfaces.
 2. Cap exposed plastic laminate finish edges with material of same finish and pattern.
- E. Mechanically fasten back splash to countertops as recommended by laminate manufacturer at 16 inches on center.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.
- B. Verify location and sizes of electrical and plumbing rough-in associated with work of this section.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Set and secure custom cabinets in place, assuring that they are rigid, plumb, and level.
- B. Use fixture attachments in concealed locations for wall mounted components.
- C. Use concealed joint fasteners to align and secure adjoining cabinet units.
- D. Carefully scribe casework abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim for this purpose.
- E. Secure cabinets to floor using appropriate angles and anchorages.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust installed work.
- B. Adjust moving or operating parts to function smoothly and correctly.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean casework, counters, shelves, hardware, fittings, and fixtures.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 072100
THERMAL INSULATION**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Board insulation at cavity wall construction, perimeter foundation wall, underside of floor slabs, over roof deck, and over roof sheathing.
- B. Batt insulation in exterior wall and roof construction.
- C. Batt insulation for filling perimeter window and door shim spaces and crevices in exterior wall and roof.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation 2022.
- B. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing 2017.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2022.
- D. ASTM E136 - Standard Test Method for Assessing Combustibility of Materials Using a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 °C 2022.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 APPLICATIONS

- A. Insulation Under Concrete Slabs: Extruded polystyrene (XPS) board.
- B. Insulation at Perimeter of Foundation: Extruded polystyrene (XPS) board.
- C. Insulation Inside Masonry Cavity Walls: Expanded polystyrene (EPS) board.
- D. Insulation in Metal Framed Walls: Batt insulation with no vapor retarder.

2.02 FOAM BOARD INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C578.
 - 1. Flame Spread Index (FSI): Class A - 0 to 25, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 2. Smoke Developed Index (SDI): 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Extruded Polystyrene (XPS) Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C578 with either natural skin or cut cell surfaces.
 - 1. Flame Spread Index (FSI): Class A - 0 to 25, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 2. Smoke Developed Index (SDI): 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 3. Type and Thermal Resistance, R-value: Type IV, 5.0 (0.88), minimum, per 1 inch thickness at 75 degrees F mean temperature.

2.03 MINERAL FIBER BLANKET INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Glass Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation: Preformed insulation, complying with ASTM C665; friction fit.
 - 1. Flame Spread Index: 75 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 2. Smoke Developed Index: 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 3. Combustibility: Non-combustible, when tested in accordance with ASTM E136.
- B. Mineral Wool Blanket Thermal Insulation: Flexible or semi-rigid preformed insulation, complying with ASTM C665.
 - 1. Smoke Developed Index: 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Flashing Tape: Special reinforced film with high performance adhesive.
 - 1. Application: Window and door opening flashing tape.
 - 2. Width: As required for application.

- B. Insulation Fasteners: Impaling clip of unfinished steel with washer retainer and clips, to be adhered to surface to receive insulation, length to suit insulation thickness and substrate, capable of securely and rigidly fastening insulation in place.
- C. Nails or Staples: Steel wire; electroplated or galvanized; type and size to suit application.
- D. Adhesive: Gun grade, interior and exterior, and compatible with insulation and substrates; complies with ASTM C557.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation materials are dry and that substrates are ready to receive insulation.
- B. Verify substrate surfaces are flat, free of honeycomb, fins, irregularities, or materials or substances that may impede adhesive bond.

3.02 BOARD INSTALLATION AT FOUNDATION PERIMETER

- A. Install boards horizontally on foundation perimeter.
 - 1. Place boards to maximize adhesive contact.
 - 2. Install in running bond pattern.
 - 3. Butt edges and ends tightly to adjacent boards and to protrusions.
- B. Cut and fit insulation tightly to protrusions or interruptions to the insulation plane.

3.03 BOARD INSTALLATION AT CAVITY WALLS

- A. Install boards to fit snugly between wall ties.
- B. Install boards horizontally on walls.
- C. Cut and fit insulation tightly to protrusions or interruptions to the insulation plane.

3.04 BOARD INSTALLATION UNDER CONCRETE SLABS

- A. Place insulation under slabs on grade after base for slab has been compacted.
- B. Cut and fit insulation tightly to protrusions or interruptions to the insulation plane.
- C. Prevent insulation from being displaced or damaged while placing vapor retarder and placing slab.

3.05 BATT INSTALLATION

- A. Install insulation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in exterior wall spaces without gaps or voids. Do not compress insulation.
- C. Trim insulation neatly to fit spaces. Insulate miscellaneous gaps and voids.
- D. Fit insulation tightly in cavities and tightly to exterior side of mechanical and electrical services within the plane of the insulation.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Do not permit installed insulation to be damaged prior to its concealment.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 072400
EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Composite wall and soffit cladding of rigid insulation and reinforced finish coating (Class PB).

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM B117 - Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus 2019.
- B. ASTM C578 - Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation 2022.
- C. ASTM C1063 - Standard Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-Based Plaster 2022.
- D. ASTM C1397 - Standard Practice for Application of Class PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) and EIFS with Drainage 2013 (Reapproved 2019).
- E. ASTM D968 - Standard Test Methods for Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by Falling Abrasive 2022.
- F. ASTM D2247 - Standard Practice for Testing Water Resistance of Coatings in 100% Relative Humidity 2015 (Reapproved 2020).
- G. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber 2021.
- H. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2022.
- I. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference 2000 (Reapproved 2016).
- J. ASTM E2486/E2486M - Standard Test Method for Impact Resistance of Class PB and PI Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) 2022.
- K. ASTM G153 - Standard Practice for Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials 2013 (Reapproved 2021).
- L. ASTM G155 - Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Lamp Apparatus for Exposure of Materials 2021.
- M. NFPA 259 - Standard Test Method for Potential Heat of Building Materials 2018.
- N. NFPA 268 - Standard Test Method for Determining Ignitability of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source 2022.
- O. NFPA 285 - Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components 2023.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on system materials, product characteristics, performance criteria, and system limitations.
- C. Selection Samples: Submit manufacturer's standard range of samples illustrating available coating colors and textures.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. EIFS Manufacturer Qualifications: Provide EIFS products other than insulation from the same manufacturer with qualifications as follows:
- B. Insulation Manufacturer Qualifications: Approved by manufacturer of EIFS and approved and labeled under third party quality program as required by applicable building code.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in the type of work specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

1.05 MOCK-UP

- A. Construct mock-up of typical EIFS application on specified substrate, size as indicated on drawings, and including flashings, joints, and edge conditions.
- B. Coordinate with Architect for location of mock-up.
- C. Mock-up may remain as part of the Work.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver materials to project site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers with labels intact. Inspect materials and notify manufacturer of any discrepancies.
- B. Storage: Store materials as directed by manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Protect adhesives and finish materials from freezing, temperatures below 40 degrees F and temperatures in excess of 90 degrees F.
 - 2. Protect insulation materials from exposure to sunlight.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not prepare materials or apply EIFS under conditions other than those described in the manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not prepare materials or apply EIFS during inclement weather unless areas of installation are protected. Protect installed EIFS areas from inclement weather until dry.
- C. Do not install coatings or sealants when ambient temperature is below 40 degrees F.
- D. Do not leave installed insulation board exposed to sunlight for extended periods of time.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide manufacturer's standard material warranty, covering a period of not less than 5 years.
- C. Provide separate warranty from installer covering labor for repairs or replacement for a period of not less than 5 years.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems Manufacturers:
 - 1. Dryvit Systems, Inc; Dryvit Outsulation EIFS, Class PB: www.dryvit.com.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM

- A. Exterior Insulation and Finish System: BARRIER type; reinforced finish coating on insulation board adhesive-applied direct to substrate; provide a complete system that has been tested to show compliance with the following characteristics; include all components of specified system and substrate in tested samples.
- B. Fire Characteristics:
 - 1. Flammability: Pass, when tested in accordance with NFPA 285.
 - 2. Ignitability: No sustained flaming when tested in accordance with NFPA 268.
 - 3. Potential Heat of Foam Plastic Insulation Tested Independently of Assembly: No portion of the assembly having potential heat that exceeds that of the insulation sample tested for flammability (above), when tested in accordance with NFPA 259 with results expressed in Btu per square foot.
- C. Water Penetration Resistance: No water penetration beyond the plane of the base coat/insulation board interface after 15 minutes, when tested in accordance with ASTM E331 at 6.24 psf differential pressure with tracer dye in the water spray; include in tested sample at least two vertical joints and one horizontal joint of same type to be used in construction; disassemble sample if necessary to determine extent of water penetration.
- D. Salt Spray Resistance: No cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, blistering, peeling, delamination, or corrosion of finish coating after 300 hours exposure in accordance with ASTM

B117, using at least three samples matching intended assembly, at least 4 by 6 inches in size.

- E. Freeze-Thaw Resistance: No cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, blistering, peeling, delamination, or corrosion of finish coating when viewed under 5x magnification after 10 cycles, when tested in accordance with ICC-ES AC219 or ICC-ES AC235.
- F. Weathering Resistance: No cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, blistering, peeling, delamination, or corrosion of finish coating when viewed under 5x magnification after 2000 hours of accelerated weathering conducted in accordance with ASTM G153 Cycle 1 or ASTM G155 Cycles 1, 5, or 9.
- G. Water Degradation Resistance: No cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, blistering, peeling, delamination, or corrosion of finish coating after 14 days exposure, when tested in accordance with ASTM D2247.
- H. Mildew Resistance: No growth supported on finish coating during 28 day exposure period, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
- I. Abrasion Resistance Of Finish: No cracking, checking or loss of film integrity when tested in accordance with ASTM D968 with 113.5 gallons of sand.
- J. Impact Resistance: Construct system to provide the following impact resistance without exposure of broken reinforcing mesh, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2486/E2486M:
 - 1. Medium: 50 to 89 in-lb, for all locations minimum - refer below.
 - 2. High: 90 to 150 in-lb, for areas with general access to public.

2.03 MATERIALS

- A. Finish Coating Top Coat: Water-based, air curing, acrylic or polymer-based finish with integral color and texture.
 - 1. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect.
- B. Base Coat: Fiber-reinforced, acrylic or polymer-based product compatible with insulation board and reinforcing mesh, Class PB.
- C. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, open weave glass fiber fabric, treated for compatibility and improved bond with coating, weight, strength, and number of layers as required to meet required system impact rating.
- D. Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Board Insulation: Complies with ASTM C578.
 - 1. Board Size Tolerance: Plus/minus 1/16 inch from square and dimension.
 - 2. Board Thickness: As indicated on drawings.
 - 3. Board Edges: Square.
 - 4. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread/Smoke developed index of 25/450, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.04 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Insulation Adhesive: Type required by EIFS manufacturer for project substrate.
- B. Trim: EIFS manufacturer's standard PVC or galvanized steel trim accessories, as required for a complete project and including starter track and drainage accessories.
- C. Sealant Materials: Compatible with EIFS materials and as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
- D. Exterior Soffit Vents: One piece, perforated, ASTM A653/A653M galvanized steel with G90 coating, with edge suitable for direct application to gypsum board and manufactured especially for soffit application. Provide continuous vent.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate is sound and free of oil, dirt, other surface contaminants, efflorescence, loose materials, or protrusions that could interfere with EIFS installation and is of a type and construction that is acceptable to EIFS manufacturer. Do not begin work until substrate and adjacent materials are complete and thoroughly dry.

- B. Verify that substrate surface is flat, with no deviation greater than 1/4 in when tested with a 10 ft straightedge.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Install self-furring metal lath over solid substrates that are deemed unacceptable to receive adhesively applied insulation. Install in accordance with ASTM C1063, except for butt-lapping instead of overlapping.
1. Attach to concrete and concrete masonry using corrosion-resistant power or powder actuated fasteners or hardened concrete stub nails not less than 3/4 inch long and with heads not less than 3/8 inch wide. Ensure that fasteners are securely attached to substrate and spaced at maximum 16 inches on center horizontally and 7 inches vertically.
- B. Apply primer to substrate as recommended by EIFS manufacturer for project conditions.

3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install in accordance with EIFS manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C1397.
1. Where different requirements appear in either document, comply with the most stringent.
 2. Neither of these documents supercedes provisions of Contract Documents that defines contractual relationships between parties or scope of this work.

3.04 INSTALLATION - INSULATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Prior to installation of boards, install starter track and other trim level and plumb and securely fastened. Install only in full lengths, to minimize moisture intrusion; cut horizontal trim tight to vertical trim.
- C. Install back wrap reinforcing mesh at all openings and terminations that are not to be protected with trim.
- D. On wall surfaces, install boards horizontally.
- E. Place boards in a method to maximize tight joints. Stagger vertical joints and interlock at corners. Butt edges and ends tight to adjacent board and to protrusions. Achieve a continuous flush insulation surface, with no gaps in excess of 1/16 inch.
- F. Fill gaps greater than 1/16 inch with strips or shims cut from the same insulation material.
- G. Rasp irregularities off surface of installed insulation board.
- H. Adhesive Attachment: Use method recommended by EIFS manufacturer.

3.05 INSTALLATION - CLASS PB FINISH

- A. Base Coat: Apply in thickness as necessary to fully embed reinforcing mesh, wrinkle free, including back-wrap at terminations of EIFS. Install reinforcing fabric as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
 1. Lap reinforcing mesh edges and ends a minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
 2. Allow base coat to dry a minimum of 24 hours before next coating application.
- B. At areas subject to abuse, install second layer of reinforcing mesh embedded in second coat of base coating, tightly butting ends and edges of mesh.
- C. Install expansion joints at floor lines as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
- D. Apply finish coat after base coat has dried not less than 24 hours, embed finish aggregate, and finish to a uniform texture and color.
- E. Finish Coat Thickness: As recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Seal control and expansion joints within the field of exterior finish and insulation system, using procedures recommended by sealant and finish system manufacturers.

3.06 CLEANING

- A. Clean EIFS surfaces and work areas of foreign materials resulting from EIFS operations.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Protect completed work from damage and soiling by subsequent work.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 072500
WEATHER BARRIERS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Water-Resistive Barrier: Under exterior wall cladding, over sheathing or other substrate; not air tight or vapor retardant.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Weather Barrier: Assemblies that form either water-resistive barriers, air barriers, or vapor retarders.
- B. Air Barrier: Air tight barrier made of material that is relatively air impermeable but water vapor permeable, both to the degree specified, with sealed seams and with sealed joints to adjacent surfaces. Note: For the purposes of this specification, vapor impermeable air barriers are classified as vapor retarders.
- C. Water-Resistive Barrier: Water-shedding barrier made of material that is moisture resistant, to the degree specified, intended to be installed to shed water without sealed seams.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D1970/D1970M - Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection 2021.
- B. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2022.
- C. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials 2022.
- D. ASTM E2178 - Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate and Calculation of Air Permeance of Building Materials 2021a.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on material characteristics.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain temperature and humidity recommended by the materials manufacturers before, during and after installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 AIR BARRIER MATERIALS (WATER VAPOR PERMEABLE AND WATER-RESISTIVE)

- A. Air Barrier, Fluid Applied: Vapor permeable, elastomeric waterproofing.
 - 1. Air Barrier Coating:
 - a. Dry Film Thickness (DFT): 10 mil, 0.010 inch, minimum.
 - b. Air Permeance: 0.004 cfm/sq ft, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
 - c. Water Vapor Permeance: 18 perms, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M Procedure B (Water Method) at 73.4 degrees F.
 - d. Ultraviolet (UV) and Weathering Resistance: Approved in writing by manufacturer for up to six months of weather exposure after application.
 - e. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25 or less, smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - f. VOC Content: 100 g per L or less.
 - g. Sealants, Tapes and Accessories: As recommended by coating manufacturer.
 - h. Manufacturers:
 - 1) DuPont de Nemours, Inc; Tyvek Fluid Applied WB+ with Tyvek Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound, Sealant for Tyvek Fluid Applied System and StraightFlash: www.dupont.com/#sle.

- 2) Henry Company; Air-Bloc 17MR: www.henry.com/#sle.
- 3) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sealants, Tapes, and Accessories for Sealing Weather Barrier and Sealing Weather Barrier to Adjacent Substrates: As specified or as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Self-adhesive sheet flashing complying with ASTM D1970/D1970M, except slip resistance requirement is waived if not installed on a roof.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to accept the work of this section.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove projections, protruding fasteners, and loose or foreign matter that might interfere with proper installation.
- B. Clean and prime substrate surfaces to receive adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Air Barriers: Install continuous air tight barrier over surfaces indicated, with sealed seams and with sealed joints to adjacent surfaces.
- C. Apply sealants and adhesives within recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer if temperature is out of this range.
- D. Coatings:
 1. Prepare substrate in manner recommended by coating manufacturer; treat joints in substrate and between dissimilar materials as recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Where exterior masonry veneer is to be installed, install masonry anchors before installing weather barrier over masonry; seal around anchors air tight.
 3. Use flashing to seal to adjacent construction and to bridge joints.
- E. Openings and Penetrations in Exterior Weather Barriers:
 1. Install flashing over sills, covering entire sill frame member, extending at least 5 inches onto weather barrier and at least 6 inches up jambs; mechanically fasten stretched edges.
 2. At openings to be filled with frames having nailing flanges, seal head and jamb flanges using a continuous bead of sealant compressed by flange and cover flanges with sealing tape at least 4 inches wide; do not seal sill flange.
 3. At openings to be filled with non-flanged frames, seal weather barrier to each side of opening framing, using flashing at least 9 inches wide, covering entire depth of framing.
 4. At head of openings, install flashing under weather barrier extending at least 2 inches beyond face of jambs; seal weather barrier to flashing.
 5. At interior face of openings, seal gap between window/door frame and rough framing, using joint sealant over backer rod.
 6. Service and Other Penetrations: Form flashing around penetrating item and seal to weather barrier surface.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Do not leave materials exposed to weather longer than recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 075300
ELASTOMERIC MEMBRANE ROOFING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Elastomeric roofing membrane, adhered conventional application.
- B. Deck sheathing.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C1278/C1278M - Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Panel 2017.
- B. ASTM D4637/D4637M - Standard Specification for EPDM Sheet Used in Single-Ply Roof Membrane 2015, with Editorial Revision (2022).

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate with installation of associated counterflashings installed under other sections.
- B. Coordinate with required Tremco roofing contractor to maintain warranty, re: A4.0.
- C. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers; review preparation and installation procedures and coordination and scheduling necessary for related work.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data indicating membrane materials, flashing materials, insulation, and fasteners.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate joint or termination detail conditions, conditions of interface with other materials, and setting plan for tapered insulation.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original containers, dry and undamaged, with seals and labels intact.
- B. Store materials in weather protected environment, clear of ground and moisture.
- C. Ensure storage and staging of materials does not exceed static and dynamic load-bearing capacities of roof decking.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not apply roofing membrane during unsuitable weather.
- B. Do not apply roofing membrane when ambient temperature is below 40 degrees F.
- C. Do not apply roofing membrane to damp or frozen deck surface or when precipitation is expected or occurring.
- D. Do not expose materials vulnerable to water or sun damage in quantities greater than can be weatherproofed the same day.
- E. Schedule applications so that no partially completed sections of roof are left exposed at end of workday.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.

- B. Correct defective work within a two year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Provide five year manufacturer's material and labor warranty to cover failure to prevent penetration of water.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. TPA Membrane Materials:
 - 1. Tremco; TPA Single Ply Roof Membrane: www.tremcoroofing.com..
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 ROOFING MEMBRANE AND ASSOCIATED MATERIALS

- A. Membrane: Thermoplastic Tri-Polymer Alloy (TPA); externally reinforced with fabric; complying with minimum properties of ASTM D4637/D4637M.
 - 1. Thickness: 0.060 inch (60 mil).
 - 2. Color: White.
- B. Seaming Materials: As recommended by membrane manufacturer.
- C. Membrane Fasteners: As recommended by and approved by membrane manufacturer.
- D. Flexible Flashing Material: Same material as membrane.

2.03 DECK SHEATHING

- A. Deck Sheathing: Fiber-reinforced gypsum roofing boards, ASTM C1278/C1278M, fire-resistant type, mold-resistant, 3/8 inch thick.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. USG Corporation; Securock Gypsum-Fiber Roof Board: www.usg.com/#sle.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and site conditions are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify deck is supported and secure.
- C. Verify deck is clean and smooth, flat, free of depressions, waves, or projections, properly sloped and suitable for installation of roof system.
- D. Verify deck surfaces are dry and free of snow or ice.
- E. Verify that roof openings, curbs, and penetrations through roof are solidly set, and cant strips are in place.

3.02 PREPARATION - METAL DECK

- A. Install deck sheathing on metal deck.
 - 1. Lay with long side at right angle to flutes; stagger end joints; provide support at ends.
 - 2. Cut sheathing cleanly and accurately at roof breaks and protrusions to provide smooth surface.
 - 3. Tape joints.
- B. Mechanically fasten sheathing to roof deck, in accordance with Factory Mutual recommendations and roofing manufacturer's instructions.
 - 1. Over entire roof area, fasten sheathing using six fasteners with washers per sheathing board.

3.03 INSTALLATION - MEMBRANE

- A. Install elastomeric membrane roofing system in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and NRCA (WM) applicable requirements.
- B. Roll out membrane, free from wrinkles or tears. Place sheet into place without stretching.
- C. Shingle joints on sloped substrate in direction of drainage.

- D. Fully Adhered Application: Apply adhesive to substrate at rate per manufacturer recommendations . Fully embed membrane in adhesive except in areas directly over or within 3 inches of expansion joints. Fully adhere one roll before proceeding to adjacent rolls.
- E. Overlap edges and ends and seal seams by contact adhesive, minimum 3 inches. Seal permanently waterproof. Apply uniform bead of sealant to joint edge.
- F. At intersections with vertical surfaces:
 - 1. Extend membrane over cant strips and up a minimum of 4 inches onto vertical surfaces.
 - 2. Fully adhere flexible flashing over membrane and up to nailing strips.
- G. Around roof penetrations, seal flanges and flashings with flexible flashing.
- H. Coordinate installation of roof drains and sumps and related flashings.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will provide testing services in accordance with Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, Contractor to provide temporary construction and materials for testing.
- B. Require site attendance of roofing and insulation material manufacturers bi-weekly during installation of the work.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Remove bituminous markings from finished surfaces.
- B. In areas where finished surfaces are soiled by work of this section, consult manufacturer of surfaces for cleaning advice and comply with their documented instructions.
- C. Repair or replace defaced or damaged finishes caused by work of this section.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed roofing and flashings from construction operations.
- B. Where traffic must continue over finished roof membrane, protect surfaces using durable materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 076200
SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fabricated sheet metal items, including flashings and counterflashings.
- B. Sealants for joints within sheet metal fabrications.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 2603 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Pigmented Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix) 2022.
- B. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix) 2022.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process 2020.
- D. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate 2014.
- E. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric) 2014.
- F. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants 2018.
- G. ASTM D4586/D4586M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free 2007 (Reapproved 2018).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Pre-Finished Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating; minimum 24 gage, (0.0239) inch thick base metal, shop pre-coated with PVDF coating.
 - 1. Color: As indicated on drawings.
- B. Pre-Finished Aluminum: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M); 20 gage, (0.032 inch) thick; plain finish shop pre-coated with modified silicone coating.
 - 1. Color: As indicated on drawings.

2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Form sections true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects.
- B. Form pieces in longest possible lengths.
- C. Hem exposed edges on underside 1/2 inch; miter and seam corners.
- D. Form material with flat lock seams, except where otherwise indicated; at moving joints, use sealed lapped, bayonet-type or interlocking hooked seams.
- E. Fabricate corners from one piece with minimum 18 inch long legs; seam for rigidity, seal with sealant.
- F. Fabricate flashings to allow toe to extend 2 inches over roofing gravel. Return and brake edges.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Galvanized steel, with soft neoprene washers.
- B. Primer: Zinc chromate type.
- C. Protective Backing Paint: Zinc molybdate alkyd.
- D. Concealed Sealants: Non-curing butyl sealant.
- E. Exposed Sealants: ASTM C920; elastomeric sealant, with minimum movement capability as recommended by manufacturer for substrates to be sealed; color to match adjacent material.

F. Plastic Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, Type I.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify roof openings, curbs, pipes, sleeves, ducts, and vents through roof are solidly set, reglets in place, and nailing strips located.
- B. Verify roofing termination and base flashings are in place, sealed, and secure.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Install starter and edge strips, and cleats before starting installation.
- B. Install surface mounted reglets true to lines and levels, and seal top of reglets with sealant.
- C. Back paint concealed metal surfaces with protective backing paint to a minimum dry film thickness of 15 mil.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Secure flashings in place using concealed fasteners, and use exposed fasteners only where permitted..
- B. Apply plastic cement compound between metal flashings and felt flashings.
- C. Fit flashings tight in place; make corners square, surfaces true and straight in planes, and lines accurate to profiles.
- D. Seal metal joints watertight.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 079200 JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nonsag gunnable joint sealants.
- B. Self-leveling pourable joint sealants.
- C. Joint backings and accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C661 - Standard Test Method for Indentation Hardness of Elastomeric-Type Sealants by Means of a Durometer 2015 (Reapproved 2022).
- B. ASTM C834 - Standard Specification for Latex Sealants 2017.
- C. ASTM C919 - Standard Practice for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications 2022.
- D. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants 2018.
- E. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants 2016.
- F. ASTM C1248 - Standard Test Method for Staining of Porous Substrate by Joint Sealants 2022.
- G. ASTM C1330 - Standard Specification for Cylindrical Sealant Backing for Use with Cold Liquid-Applied Sealants 2018.
- H. SCAQMD 1168 - Adhesive and Sealant Applications 1989, with Amendment (2017).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data for Sealants: Submit manufacturer's technical data sheets for each product to be used, that includes the following.
 - 1. Physical characteristics, including movement capability, VOC content, hardness, cure time, and color availability.
 - 2. List of backing materials approved for use with the specific product.
 - 3. Substrates that product is known to satisfactorily adhere to and with which it is compatible.
 - 4. Substrates the product should not be used on.
- C. Color Cards for Selection: Where sealant color is not specified, submit manufacturer's color cards showing standard colors available for selection.

1.04 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Warranty: Include coverage for installed sealants and accessories that fail to achieve watertight seal , exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Non-Sag Sealants: Permits application in joints on vertical surfaces without sagging or slumping.
 - 1. Bostik Inc: www.bostik-us.com.
 - 2. Dow Chemical Company: consumer.dow.com/en-us/industry/ind-building-construction.html.
 - 3. Hilti, Inc: www.us.hilti.com.
 - 4. Sherwin-Williams Company: www.sherwin-williams.com.
 - 5. Sika Corporation: www.usa-sika.com.
 - 6. Tremco Commercial Sealants & Waterproofing: www.tremcosealants.com.
 - 7. W.R. Meadows, Inc: www.wrmeadows.com.
 - 8. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

- B. Self-Leveling Sealants: Pourable or self-leveling sealant that has sufficient flow to form a smooth, level surface when applied in a horizontal joint.
1. Bostik Inc: www.bostik-us.com/#sle.
 2. Dow Chemical Company: consumer.dow.com/en-us/industry/ind-building-construction.html/#sle.
 3. Sika Corporation: www.usa-sika.com/#sle.
 4. Tremco Commercial Sealants & Waterproofing: www.tremcosealants.com/#sle.
 5. W.R. Meadows, Inc: www.wrmeadows.com/#sle.
 6. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 JOINT SEALANT APPLICATIONS

- A. Scope:
1. Exterior Joints: Seal open joints, whether or not the joint is indicated on drawings, unless specifically indicated not to be sealed. Exterior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
 - a. Wall expansion and control joints.
 - b. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
 - c. Joints between different exposed materials.
 - d. Openings below ledge angles in masonry.
 - e. Other joints indicated below.
 2. Interior Joints: Do not seal interior joints unless specifically indicated to be sealed. Interior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
 - a. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
 - b. In sound-rated wall and ceiling assemblies, gaps at electrical outlets, wiring devices, piping, and other openings; between wall/ceiling and other construction; and other flanking sound paths.
 - c. Other joints indicated below.
 3. Do not seal the following types of joints.
 - a. Intentional weepholes in masonry.
 - b. Joints indicated to be treated with manufactured expansion joint cover or some other type of sealing device.
 - c. Joints where sealant is specified to be provided by manufacturer of product to be sealed.
 - d. Joints where installation of sealant is specified in another section.
 - e. Joints between suspended panel ceilings/grid and walls.
- B. Exterior Joints: Use non-sag non-staining silicone sealant, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Interior Joints: Use non-sag polyurethane sealant, unless otherwise indicated.
1. In Sound-Rated Assemblies: Acrylic emulsion latex sealant.
- D. Sound-Rated Assemblies: Walls and ceilings identified as "STC-rated", "sound-rated", or "acoustical".

2.03 JOINT SEALANTS - GENERAL

- A. Sealants and Primers: Provide products having lower volatile organic compound (VOC) content than indicated in SCAQMD 1168.

2.04 NONSAG JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus 25 percent, minimum.
 2. Color: Match adjacent finished surfaces.
- B. Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; single component, mildew resistant; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
1. Color: White.

- C. Polymer Sealant: ASTM C920; single component, cured sealant is paintable and mold/mildew resistant, low odor and VOC, and ultraviolet (UV) resistant.
 - 1. Color: White.
- D. Non-Sag "Traffic-Grade" Polyurethane Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; single or multi-component; explicitly approved by manufacturer for continuous water immersion and traffic without the necessity to recess sealant below traffic surface.
 - 1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus 25 percent, minimum.
 - 2. Hardness Range: 40 to 50, Shore A, when tested in accordance with ASTM C661.
 - 3. Color: Match adjacent finished surfaces.
- E. Acrylic Emulsion Latex: Water-based; ASTM C834, single component, non-staining, non-bleeding, non-sagging; not intended for exterior use.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Backer Rod: Cylindrical cellular foam rod with surface that sealant will not adhere to, compatible with specific sealant used, and recommended by backing and sealant manufacturers for specific application.
 - 1. Type for Joints Not Subject to Pedestrian or Vehicular Traffic: ASTM C1330; Type O - Open Cell Polyurethane.
 - 2. Type for Joints Subject to Pedestrian or Vehicular Traffic: ASTM C1330; Type B - Bi-Cellular Polyethylene.
 - 3. Open Cell: 40 to 50 percent larger in diameter than joint width.
 - 4. Closed Cell and Bi-Cellular: 25 to 33 percent larger in diameter than joint width.
- B. Backing Tape: Self-adhesive polyethylene tape with surface that sealant will not adhere to and recommended by tape and sealant manufacturers for specific application.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that joints are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify that backing materials are compatible with sealants.
- C. Verify that backer rods are of the correct size.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter that could impair adhesion of sealant.
- B. Clean joints, and prime as necessary, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C1193.
- D. Mask elements and surfaces adjacent to joints from damage and disfigurement due to sealant work; be aware that sealant drips and smears may not be completely removable.
- E. Concrete Floor Joints That Will Be Exposed in Completed Work: Test joint filler in inconspicuous area to verify that it does not stain or discolor slab.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation of surfaces and material installation instructions.
- B. Perform installation in accordance with ASTM C1193.
- C. Perform acoustical sealant application work in accordance with ASTM C919.
- D. Measure joint dimensions and size joint backers to achieve the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Width/depth ratio of 2:1.
 - 2. Neck dimension no greater than 1/3 of the joint width.
 - 3. Surface bond area on each side not less than 75 percent of joint width.
- E. Install bond breaker backing tape where backer rod cannot be used.

- F. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags, and without getting sealant on adjacent surfaces.
- G. Do not install sealant when ambient temperature is outside manufacturer's recommended temperature range, or will be outside that range during the entire curing period, unless manufacturer's approval is obtained and instructions are followed.
- H. Nonsag Sealants: Tool surface concave, unless otherwise indicated; remove masking tape immediately after tooling sealant surface.
- I. Concrete Floor Joint Filler: After full cure, shave joint filler flush with top of concrete slab.

3.04 POST-OCCUPANCY

- A. Post-Occupancy Inspection: Perform visual inspection of entire length of project sealant joints at a time that joints have opened to their greatest width; i.e. at low temperature in thermal cycle. Report failures immediately and repair.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 081113
HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Non-fire-rated hollow metal doors and frames.
- B. Hollow metal frames for wood doors.
- C. Thermally insulated hollow metal doors with frames.
- D. Hollow metal lites glazing frames.

1.02 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. ANSI: American National Standards Institute.
- B. ASCE: American Society of Civil Engineers.
- C. HMMA: Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association.
- D. NAAMM: National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers.
- E. NFPA: National Fire Protection Association.
- F. SDI: Steel Door Institute.
- G. UL: Underwriters Laboratories.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- B. ANSI/SDI A250.4 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors, Frames and Frame Anchors 2018.
- C. ANSI/SDI A250.6 - Recommended Practice for Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel Doors and Frames 2020.
- D. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames (SDI-100) 2017.
- E. ANSI/SDI A250.10 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames 2020.
- F. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process 2020.
- G. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Required Hardness, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable 2021a.
- H. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength 2018a.
- I. ASTM C143/C143M - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete 2020.
- J. ASTM C476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry 2022.
- K. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2022.
- L. BHMA A156.115 - Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Steel Frames 2016.
- M. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.
- N. NAAMM HMMA 830 - Hardware Selection for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 2002.
- O. NAAMM HMMA 831 - Hardware Locations for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 2011.
- P. NAAMM HMMA 840 - Guide Specifications For Receipt, Storage and Installation of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 2017.
- Q. NAAMM HMMA 861 - Guide Specifications for Commercial Hollow Metal Doors and Frames 2014.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Materials and details of design and construction, hardware locations, reinforcement type and locations, anchorage and fastening methods, and finishes.
- C. Shop Drawings: Details of each opening, showing elevations, glazing, frame profiles, and any indicated finish requirements.
- D. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's published instructions, including any special installation instructions relating to this project.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with NAAMM HMMA 840 or ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100) in accordance with specified requirements.
- B. Protect with resilient packaging; avoid humidity build-up under coverings; prevent corrosion and adverse effects on factory applied painted finish.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Requirements for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
 - 1. Steel Sheet: Comply with one or more of the following requirements; galvannealed steel complying with ASTM A653/A653M, cold-rolled steel complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M, or hot-rolled pickled and oiled (HRPO) steel complying with ASTM A1011/A1011M, commercial steel (CS) Type B, for each.
 - 2. Accessibility: Comply with ICC A117.1 and ADA Standards.
 - 3. Exterior Door Top Closures: Flush end closure channel, with top and door faces aligned.
 - 4. Door Edge Profile: Manufacturers standard for application indicated.
 - 5. Typical Door Face Sheets: Flush.
 - 6. Glazed Lights: Non-removable stops on non-secure side; sizes and configurations as indicated on drawings. Style: Manufacturers standard.
 - 7. Hardware Preparations, Selections and Locations: Comply with NAAMM HMMA 830 and NAAMM HMMA 831 or BHMA A156.115 and ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100) in accordance with specified requirements.
 - 8. Zinc Coating for Typical Interior and/or Exterior Locations: Provide metal components zinc-coated (galvanized) and/or zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) by the hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with manufacturer's standard coating thickness, unless noted otherwise for specific hollow metal doors and frames.
 - a. Based on SDI Standards: Provide at least A40/ZF120 (galvannealed) when necessary, coating not required for typical interior door applications, and at least A60/ZF180 (galvannealed) for corrosive locations.
- B. Combined Requirements: If a particular door and frame unit is indicated to comply with more than one type of requirement, comply with the specified requirements for each type; for instance, an exterior door that is also indicated as being sound-rated must comply with the requirements specified for exterior doors and for sound-rated doors; where two requirements conflict, comply with the most stringent.

2.02 HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. Door Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
- B. Exterior Doors: Thermally insulated.
 - a. Model 1 - Full Flush.
 - b. Door Face Metal Thickness: 20 gauge, 0.032 inch, minimum.
 - c. Zinc Coating: A60/ZF180 galvannealed coating; ASTM A653/A653M.
- 2. Door Core Material: Polystyrene, 1 lbs/cu ft minimum density.
 - a. Foam Plastic Insulation: Manufacturer's standard board insulation with maximum flame spread index (FSI) of 75, and maximum smoke developed index (SDI) of 450 in accordance with ASTM E84, and completely enclosed within interior of door.

3. Door Thermal Resistance: R-Value of 6.0 minimum, for installed thickness of polystyrene.
 4. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inches, nominal.
- C. Interior Doors, Non-Fire-Rated:
- a. Model 1 - Full Flush.
 - b. Door Face Metal Thickness: 20 gauge, 0.032 inch, minimum.
2. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inches, nominal.

2.03 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

- A. Comply with standards and/or custom guidelines as indicated for corresponding door in accordance with applicable door frame requirements.
- B. Frame Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
- C. Exterior Door Frames: Full profile/continuously welded type.
 1. Galvanizing: Components hot-dipped zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with A40/ZF120 coating.
 2. Frame Metal Thickness: 18 gauge, 0.042 inch, minimum.
 3. Weatherstripping: Separate, see Section 087100.
- D. Interior Door Frames, Non-Fire Rated: Full profile/continuously welded type.
 1. Terminated Stops: Provide at interior doors; closed end stop terminated 1 inch, maximum, above floor at 90 degree angle.
 2. Frame Metal Thickness: 18 gauge, 0.042 inch, minimum.
- E. Frames for Wood Doors: Comply with frame requirements in accordance with corresponding door.
- F. Provide mortar guard boxes for hardware cut-outs in frames to be installed in masonry or to be grouted.
- G. Frames in Masonry Walls: Size to suit masonry coursing with head member 4 inches high to fill opening without cutting masonry units.
- H. Frames Wider than 48 inches: Reinforce with steel channel fitted tightly into frame head, flush with top.

2.04 FINISHES

- A. Primer: Rust-inhibiting, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10, door manufacturer's standard.
- B. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15 mil, 0.015 inch dry film thickness (DFT) per coat; provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Glazing: As specified in Section 088000.
- B. Removable Stops: Formed sheet steel, shape as indicated on drawings, mitered or butted corners; prepared for countersink style tamper proof screws.
- C. Grout for Frames: Mortar grout complying with ASTM C476 with maximum slump of 4 inches as measured in accordance with ASTM C143/C143M for hand troweling in place; plaster grout and thinner pumpable grout are prohibited.
- D. Silencers: Resilient rubber, fitted into drilled hole; provide three on strike side of single door, three on center mullion of pairs, and two on head of pairs without center mullions.
- E. Temporary Frame Spreaders: Provide for factory- or shop-assembled frames.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Verify that finished walls are in plane to ensure proper door alignment.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Coat inside of frames to be installed in masonry or to be grouted, with bituminous coating, prior to installation.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors and frames in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and related requirements of specified door and frame standards or custom guidelines indicated.
- B. Coordinate frame anchor placement with wall construction.
- C. Grout frames in masonry construction, using hand trowel methods; brace frames so that pressure of grout before setting will not deform frames.
- D. Install door hardware as specified in Section 087100.
 - 1. Comply with recommended practice for hardware placement of doors and frames in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6 or NAAMM HMMA 861.
- E. Coordinate installation of electrical connections to electrical hardware items.

3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Diagonal Distortion: 1/16 inch measured with straight edge, corner to corner.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust for smooth and balanced door movement.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 081116
ALUMINUM DOORS AND FRAMES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Glazed aluminum doors.
- B. Aluminum frames.
- C. Glazing.
- D. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between door frames and adjacent construction.
- E. Section 087100 - Door Hardware: Hardware for aluminum doors.
- F. Section 088000 - Glazing: Glazing materials for aluminum doors and frames.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 609 & 610 - Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum (Combined Document) 2015.
- B. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- C. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products 2017.
- D. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate 2014.
- E. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric) 2014.
- F. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes 2021.
- G. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric) 2021.
- H. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's descriptive literature for each type of door; include information on fabrication methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include elevations of each opening type.
 - 1. Verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate on shop drawings.
- D. Selection Samples: Complete set of color and finish options, using actual materials, for Architect's selection.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with not less than five years of documented experience.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver aluminum components in manufacturer's standard protective packaging, palleted, crated, or banded together.
- B. Inspect delivered components for damage and replace. Repaired components will not be accepted.
- C. Store components in clean, dry, indoor area, under cover in manufacturer's packaging until installation.
- D. Protect materials and finish from damage during handling and installation.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not begin installation of interior aluminum components until space has been enclosed and ambient thermal conditions are being maintained at levels consistent with final project requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Glazed Aluminum Doors:
 - 1. Basis of Design: Tubelite Medium Stile.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Aluminum Frames:
 - 1. Basis of Design: Tubelite 4500.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Accessibility: Comply with ICC A117.1 and ADA Standards.
- B. Glazed Aluminum Doors: Extruded aluminum tube frame, full glazed, with middle rail; factory glazed.
 - 1. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches, nominal.
 - 2. Stile Width: As indicated on drawings.
 - 3. Texture: Smooth.
 - 4. Seals: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 5. Glazing, Interior Doors: Clear, thickness varies as indicated on drawings, fully tempered glass.
- C. Aluminum Frames for Doors, Sidelights, or Transoms: Extruded aluminum, non-thermally broken hollow or C-shaped sections; no steel components.
 - 1. Frame Depth: 4 1/2" inches.
 - 2. Finish: Same as doors.
 - 3. Sidelight/Transom Glazing: Clear, single pane, thickness varies as indicated on drawings, fully tempered glass.
- D. Dimensions and Shapes: As indicated on drawings; dimensions indicated are nominal.
 - 1. Provide vision lites as indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Provide the following clearances:
 - a. Hinge and Lock Stiles: 1/8 inch.
 - b. Between Meeting Stiles: 1/4 inch.
 - c. At Top Rail and Bottom Rail: 1/8 inch.

2.03 COMPONENTS

- A. Frames: Extruded aluminum shapes, not less than 0.062 inch thick, reinforced at hinge and strike locations.
 - 1. Corner Brackets: Extruded aluminum, fastened with stainless steel screws.
 - 2. Trim: Extruded aluminum, not less than 0.062 inch thick, removable snap-in type without exposed fasteners.
- B. Door Window Frames: Door window frames with glazing securely fastened within door opening.
- C. Vision Lites: Extruded aluminum framed, gasket glazed.
 - 1. Glazing: Clear, single pane, thickness varies as indicated on drawings, fully tempered glass.

2.04 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), alloy 5005, temper H14, stretcher leveled.
- B. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), alloy 6063, temper T5, or alloy 6463, temper T5.

2.05 FINISHES

- A. Color: As indicated on drawings.
- B. Touch-Up Materials: As recommended by coating manufacturer for field application.

2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Aluminum, non-magnetic stainless steel, or other material warranted by manufacturer as non-corrosive and compatible with aluminum components.
- B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's high-strength aluminum units where feasible, otherwise, non-magnetic stainless steel or steel hot-dip galvanized in compliance with ASTM A123/A123M.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that wall surfaces and openings are ready to receive frames and are within tolerances specified in manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Verify that frames installed by other trades for installation of doors of this section are in strict accordance with recommendations and approved shop drawings and within tolerances specified in manufacturer's instructions.
- C. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Perform cutting, fitting, forming, drilling, and grinding of frames as required for project conditions.
- B. Replace components with damage to exposed finishes.
- C. Separate dissimilar metals to prevent electrolytic action between metals.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors and frames in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings.
- B. Set frames plumb, square, level, and aligned to receive doors. Anchor frames to adjacent construction in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and within specified tolerances.
- C. Where aluminum surfaces contact metals other than stainless steel, zinc, or small areas of white bronze, protect from direct contact by painting dissimilar metal with heavy coating of bituminous paint.
- D. Hang doors and adjust hardware to achieve specified clearances and proper door operation.
- E. Install door hardware as specified in Section 087100.
- F. Install glazing; set glazing stops and glazing gaskets flush with face of door or frame.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Upon completion of installation, thoroughly clean door and frame surfaces in accordance with AAMA 609 & 610.
- B. Do not use abrasive, caustic, or acid cleaning agents.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect products of this section from damage caused by subsequent construction until Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Replace damaged or defective components that cannot be repaired to a condition indistinguishable from undamaged components.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081416 FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Flush wood doors; flush configuration; non-rated.
- B. Section 081113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards, 2nd Edition 2014, with Errata (2016).
- B. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards 2021, with Errata.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Indicate door core materials and construction; veneer species, type and characteristics.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show doors and frames, elevations, sizes, types, swings, undercuts, beveling, blocking for hardware, factory machining, factory finishing, cutouts for glazing and other details.
- D. Samples: Submit manufacturer standard samples of door veneer for selection by Architect illustrating wood grain, stain color, and sheen.
- E. Warranty, executed in Owner's name.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package, deliver and store doors in accordance with specified quality standard.
- B. Accept doors on site in manufacturer's packaging, and inspect for damage.
- C. Protect doors with resilient packaging sealed with heat shrunk plastic; do not store in damp or wet areas or areas where sunlight might bleach veneer; seal top and bottom edges with tinted sealer if stored more than one week, and break seal on site to permit ventilation.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Wood Veneer Faced Doors:
 - 1. VT Industries, Inc: www.vtindustries.com.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 DOORS AND PANELS

- A. Doors: See drawings for locations and additional requirements.
 - 1. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, Heavy Duty performance, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
 - 2. Wood Veneer Faced Doors: 5-ply unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Interior Doors: 1-3/4 inches thick unless otherwise indicated; flush construction.
 - 1. Provide solid core doors at each location.

2.03 DOOR AND PANEL CORES

- A. Non-Rated Solid Core and 20 Minute Rated Doors: Type particleboard core (PC), plies and faces as indicated.

2.04 DOOR FACINGS

- A. Veneer Facing for Transparent Finish: Natural birch, veneer grade in accordance with quality standard indicated, plain sliced (flat cut), with book match between leaves of veneer, running match of spliced veneer leaves assembled on door or panel face.

2.05 DOOR CONSTRUCTION

- A. Fabricate doors in accordance with door quality standard specified.
- B. Cores Constructed with stiles and rails:
 - 1. Provide solid blocks at lock edge for hardware reinforcement.
 - 2. Provide solid blocking for other throughbolted hardware and hinges.
- C. Factory machine doors for hardware other than surface-mounted hardware, in accordance with hardware requirements and dimensions.
- D. Factory fit doors for frame opening dimensions identified on shop drawings, with edge clearances in accordance with specified quality standard.
- E. Provide edge clearances in accordance with the quality standard specified.

2.06 FINISHES - WOOD VENEER DOORS

- A. Finish work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), Section 5 - Finishing for grade specified and as follows:
 - 1. Transparent:
 - a. System - 1, Lacquer, Nitrocellulose.
 - b. Sheen: Flat.
 - c. Finish: RA18, Ravine
- B. Factory finish doors in accordance with approved sample.
- C. Seal door top and bottom edge with color sealer to match door facing.

2.07 ACCESSORIES

- A. Hollow Metal Door Frames: See Section 081113.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and specified quality standard.
- B. Factory-Finished Doors: Do not field cut or trim; if fit or clearance is not correct, replace door.
- C. Field-Finished Doors: Trimming to fit is acceptable.
 - 1. Adjust width of non-rated doors by cutting equally on both jamb edges.
 - 2. Trim maximum of 3/4 inch off bottom edges.
- D. Use machine tools to cut or drill for hardware.
- E. Coordinate installation of doors with installation of frames and hardware.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with specified quality standard for fit and clearance tolerances.
- B. Comply with specified quality standard for telegraphing, warp, and squareness.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors for smooth and balanced door movement.
- B. Adjust closers for full closure.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 083100
ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Ceiling mounted access units.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide sizes, types, finishes, hardware, scheduled locations, and details of adjoining work.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of each access unit.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS ASSEMBLIES

- A. Ceiling-Mounted Units:
 - 1. Location: As indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Panel Material: Steel.
 - 3. Size - Lay-In Grid Ceilings: To match module of ceiling grid.
 - 4. Size - Other Ceilings: 24" x 24"
 - 5. Door/Panel: Hinged, standard duty, with tool-operated spring or cam lock and no handle.

2.02 CEILING MOUNTED ACCESS UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. ACUDOR Products Inc: www.acudor.com.
 - a. Air-Tight, Water-Tight, Wall and Ceiling Mounted Units: ACUDOR ADWT.
 - 2. Milcor, Inc: www.milcorinc.com.
 - 3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Ceiling Mounted Units: Factory fabricated door and frame, fully assembled units with corner joints welded, filled and ground flush; square and without rack or warp; coordinate requirements with type of installation assembly being used for each unit.
 - 1. Style: Exposed frame with door surface flush with frame surface.
 - a. Gypsum Board Mounting Criteria: Use drywall bead type frame.
 - 2. Door Style: Single thickness with rolled or turned in edges.
 - 3. Frames: 16 gauge, 0.0598 inch, minimum thickness.
 - 4. Heavy Duty Frames: 14 gauge, 0.0747 inch, minimum thickness.
 - 5. Single Steel Sheet Door Panels: 1/16 inch, minimum thickness.
 - 6. Heavy Duty Single Steel Sheet Door Panels: 14 gauge, 0.0747 inch, minimum thickness.
 - 7. Insulation: Non-combustible mineral wool or glass fiber.
 - 8. Door/Panel Size: As indicated on the drawings.
 - 9. Hardware:
 - a. Hinges for Non-Fire-Rated Units: Concealed, constant force closure spring type.
 - b. Latch/Lock: Screw driver slot for quarter turn cam latch.
 - c. Number of Locks/Latches Required: As recommended by manufacturer for size of unit.
 - d. Gasketing: Extruded neoprene, around perimeter of door panel.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that rough openings are correctly sized and located.
- B. Begin installation only after substrates have been properly prepared, and if the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to proceeding with this work.
- B. Prepare surfaces using methods recommended by manufacturer for applicable substrates in accordance with project conditions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install frames plumb and level in openings, and secure units rigidly in place.
- C. Position units to provide convenient access to concealed equipment when necessary.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 084313
ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aluminum-framed storefront, with vision and spandrel glass.
- B. Aluminum doors and frames.
- C. Weatherstripping.
- D. Door hardware.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between frames and adjacent construction.
- B. Section 087100 - Door Hardware: Hardware items other than specified in this section.
- C. Section 088000 - Glazing: Glass and glazing accessories.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA CW-10 - Care and Handling of Architectural Aluminum from Shop to Site 2015.
- B. AAMA 501.2 - Quality Assurance and Diagnostic Water Leakage Field Check of Installed Storefronts, Curtain Walls, and Sloped Glazing Systems 2015.
- C. AAMA 609 & 610 - Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum (Combined Document) 2015.
- D. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum 2020.
- E. AAMA 1503 - Voluntary Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Condensation Resistance of Windows, Doors and Glazed Wall Sections 2009.
- F. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.
- G. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate 2014.
- H. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric) 2014.
- I. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes 2021.
- J. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric) 2021.
- K. ASTM E283/E283M - Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Skylights, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen 2019.
- L. ASTM E283 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen 2004 (Reapproved 2012).
- M. ASTM E330/E330M - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference 2014 (Reapproved 2021).

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate with installation of other components that comprise the exterior enclosure.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide component dimensions, describe components within assembly, anchorage and fasteners, glass and infill, door hardware, and internal drainage details.

- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate system dimensions, framed opening requirements and tolerances, affected related work, expansion and contraction joint location and details, and field welding required.
- D. Samples: Submit two samples 6 x 6 inches in size illustrating finished aluminum surface, glass, glazing materials.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that the products supplied meet or exceed the specified requirements.
- F. Hardware Schedule: Complete itemization of each item of hardware to be provided for each door, cross-referenced to door identification numbers in Contract Documents.
- G. Field Quality Control Submittals: Report of field testing for water penetration and air leakage.
- H. Installer's Qualification Statement.
- I. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least ten years of documented experience.
 - 1. Provide certified glass products through ANSI accredited certifications that include plant audits and independent laboratory performance testing.
 - a. Insulating Glass Certification Council (IGCC).
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified and with at least five years of documented experience.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle products of this section in accordance with AAMA CW-10.
- B. Protect finished aluminum surfaces with wrapping. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to aluminum when exposed to sunlight or weather.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F. Maintain this minimum temperature during and 48 hours after installation.

1.09 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective Work within a five year period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Provide five year manufacturer warranty against failure of glass seal on insulating glass units, including interpane dusting or misting. Include provision for replacement of failed units.
- D. Provide five year manufacturer warranty against excessive degradation of exterior finish. Include provision for replacement of units with excessive fading, chalking, or flaking.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: Tubelite T14000.
- B. Other Acceptable - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts Manufacturers:
 - 1. Kawneer North America: www.kawneer.com.
 - 2. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope: www.oldcastlebe.com.
 - 3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 BASIS OF DESIGN -- FRAMING FOR INSULATING GLAZING

- A. Front-Set Style, Thermally-Broken:
 - 1. Basis of Design: Tubelite T14000 I/O Series.
 - 2. Vertical Mullion Dimensions: 2 inches wide by 4-1/2 inches deep.

- B. Other Manufacturers: Provide either the product identified as "Basis of Design" or an equivalent product of another manufacturer.
- C. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 - 1. For any product not identified as "Basis of Design", submit information as specified for substitutions.

2.03 BASIS OF DESIGN -- SWINGING DOORS

- A. Medium Stile, Insulating Glazing, Thermally-Broken:
 - 1. Basis of Design: Tubelite.
 - 2. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
- B. Other Manufacturers: Provide either the product identified as "Basis of Design" or an equivalent product of another manufacturer.
- C. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 - 1. For any product not identified as "Basis of Design", submit information as specified for substitutions.

2.04 ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONT

- A. Aluminum-Framed Storefront: Factory fabricated, factory finished aluminum framing members with infill, and related flashings, anchorage and attachment devices.
 - 1. Glazing Rabbet: For 1 inch insulating glazing.
 - 2. Finish: Class I color anodized.
 - a. Factory finish all surfaces that will be exposed in completed assemblies.
 - b. Touch-up surfaces cut during fabrication so that no natural aluminum is visible in completed assemblies, including joint edges.
 - c. Coat concealed metal surfaces that will be in contact with cementitious materials or dissimilar metals with bituminous paint.
 - 3. Finish Color: Dark bronze.
 - 4. Fabrication: Joints and corners flush, hairline, and weatherproof, accurately fitted and secured; prepared to receive anchors and hardware; fasteners and attachments concealed from view; reinforced as required for imposed loads.
 - 5. Construction: Eliminate noises caused by wind and thermal movement, prevent vibration harmonics, and prevent "stack effect" in internal spaces.
 - 6. System Internal Drainage: Drain to the exterior by means of a weep drainage network any water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channel, and migrating moisture occurring within system.
 - 7. Expansion/Contraction: Provide for expansion and contraction within system components caused by cycling temperature range of 170 degrees F over a 12 hour period without causing detrimental effect to system components, anchorages, and other building elements.
 - 8. Movement: Allow for movement between storefront and adjacent construction, without damage to components or deterioration of seals.
 - 9. Perimeter Clearance: Minimize space between framing members and adjacent construction while allowing expected movement.
 - 10. Air and Vapor Seal: Maintain continuous air barrier and vapor retarder throughout assembly, primarily in line with inside pane of glazing and inner sheet of infill panel and heel bead of glazing compound.
- B. Performance Requirements
 - 1. Wind Loads: Design and size components to withstand the specified load requirements without damage or permanent set, when tested in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M, using loads 1.5 times the design wind loads and 10 second duration of maximum load.
 - a. Design Wind Loads: Comply with requirements of ASCE 7.
 - b. Member Deflection: Limit member deflection to flexure limit of glass in any direction, with full recovery of glazing materials.
 - 2. Air Leakage: 0.06 cfm/sq ft maximum leakage of storefront wall area when tested in accordance with ASTM E283/E283M at 1.57 psf pressure difference.

3. Condensation Resistance Factor of Framing: 50, minimum, measured in accordance with AAMA 1503.

2.05 COMPONENTS

- A. Aluminum Framing Members: Tubular aluminum sections, thermally broken with interior section insulated from exterior, drainage holes and internal weep drainage system.
 1. Framing members for interior applications need not be thermally broken.
 2. Glazing Stops: Flush.
 3. Cross-Section: As indicated on drawings.
- B. Swing Doors: Glazed aluminum.
 1. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 2. Top Rail: 4 inches wide.
 3. Vertical Stiles: 4-1/2 inches wide.
 4. Bottom Rail: 10 inches wide.
 5. Glazing Stops: Square.
 6. Finish: Same as storefront.

2.06 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Sheet Aluminum: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M).
- C. Fasteners: Stainless steel.
- D. Exposed Flashings: Aluminum sheet, 20 gauge, 0.032 inch minimum thickness; finish to match framing members.
- E. Concealed Flashings: Galvanized steel, 26 gauge, 0.0179 inch minimum base metal thickness.
- F. Concealed Flashings: Sheet aluminum, 26 gauge, 0.017 inch minimum thickness.
- G. Sill Flashing Sealant: Elastomeric, silicone or polyurethane, compatible with flashing material.
- H. Sealant for Setting Thresholds: Non-curing butyl type.
- I. Glazing Gaskets: Type to suit application to achieve weather, moisture, and air infiltration requirements.

2.07 FINISHES

- A. Color: Dark bronze.
- B. Touch-Up Materials: As recommended by coating manufacturer for field application.

2.08 HARDWARE

- A. For each door, include weatherstripping, sill sweep strip, and threshold.
- B. Other Door Hardware: As specified on the Plans.
- C. Weatherstripping: Wool pile, continuous and replaceable; provide on all doors.
- D. Sill Sweep Strips: Resilient seal type, retracting, of neoprene; provide on all doors.
- E. Threshold: Extruded aluminum, one piece per door opening, ribbed surface; provide on all doors.
- F. Hinges: Butt type, swing clear; top, intermediate, and bottom.
 1. Provide on doors as indicated.
- G. Push/Pull Set: Refer Door Hardware Schedule on Construction Plans.
 1. Provide on doors as indicated.
- H. Exit Devices: Panic type.
 1. Provide on doors as indicated.
- I. Door Closers: Concealed overhead.
 1. Provide on doors as indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other work.
- B. Verify that wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive work of this section.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- C. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
- D. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.
- E. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation.
- F. Install sill flashings. Set subsill flashings in full bed of sealant. Turn up ends and edges; seal to adjacent work to form water tight dam.
- G. Where fasteners penetrate sill flashings, make watertight by seating and sealing fastener heads to sill flashing.
- H. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.
- I. Set thresholds in bed of sealant and secure.
- J. Touch-up minor damage to factory applied finish; replace components that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 0.06 inch per 3 feet non-cumulative or 0.06 inch per 10 feet, whichever is less.
- B. Maximum Misalignment of Two Adjoining Members Abutting in Plane: 1/32 inch.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Provide services of storefront manufacturer's field representative to observe for proper installation of system and submit report.
- B. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for general testing and inspection requirements.
- C. Water-Spray Test: Provide water spray quality test of installed storefront components in accordance with AAMA 501.2 during construction process and before installation of interior finishes.
 - 1. Perform a minimum of two tests in each designated area as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Conduct tests in each area prior to 10 percent and 50 percent completion of this work.
- D. Repair or replace storefront components that have failed designated field testing, and retest to verify performance complies with specified requirements.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating hardware for smooth operation.

3.06 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from pre-finished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths, and take care to remove dirt from corners and to wipe surfaces clean.
- C. Upon completion of installation, thoroughly clean aluminum surfaces in accordance with AAMA 609 & 610.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage until Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 087100 DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Hardware for wood, aluminum, and hollow metal doors.
- B. Electrically operated and controlled hardware.
- C. Lock cylinders for doors that hardware is specified in other sections.
- D. Thresholds.
- E. Weatherstripping and gasketing.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 084313 - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts: Door hardware, except as noted in section.
- B. Section 281000 - Access Control: Electronic access control devices.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- B. BHMA A156.16 - Auxiliary Hardware 2018.
- C. BHMA A156.21 - Thresholds 2019.
- D. BHMA A156.22 - Standard for Gasketing 2021.
- E. BHMA A156.115 - Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Steel Frames 2016.
- F. BHMA A156.115W - Hardware Preparation in Wood Doors with Wood or Steel Frames 2006.
- G. DHI (H&S) - Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule 2019.
- H. DHI (LOCS) - Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames 2004.
- I. DHI WDHS.3 - Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Flush Wood Doors 1993; also in WDHS-1/WDHS-5 Series, 1996.
- J. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.
- K. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate the manufacture, fabrication, and installation of products that door hardware is installed on.
- B. Sequence installation to ensure utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.
- C. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting two week prior to commencing work of this section; attendance is required by affected installers and the following:
 1. Architect.
 2. Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
 3. Hardware Installer.
 4. Owner's Security Consultant.
- D. Furnish templates for door and frame preparation to manufacturers and fabricators of products requiring internal reinforcement for door hardware.
- E. Keying Requirements Meeting:
 1. Architect will schedule meeting at project site prior to Contractor occupancy.
 2. Attendance Required:
 - a. Contractor.
 - b. Owner.
 - c. Architect.

- d. Owner's Security Consultant.
- 3. Agenda:
 - a. Establish keying requirements.
 - b. Verify locksets and locking hardware are functionally correct for project requirements.
 - c. Verify that keying and programming complies with project requirements.
 - d. Establish keying submittal schedule and update requirements.
- 4. Incorporate "Keying Requirements Meeting" decisions into keying submittal upon review of door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Access control requirements.
 - b. Key control system requirements.
 - c. Schematic diagram of preliminary key system.
 - d. Flow of traffic and extent of security required.
- 5. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Architect, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.
- 6. Deliver established keying requirements to manufacturers.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog literature for each type of hardware, marked to clearly show products to be furnished for this project, and includes construction details, material descriptions, finishes, and dimensions and profiles of individual components.
- C. Shop Drawings - Door Hardware Schedule: Submit detailed listing that includes each item of hardware to be installed on each door. Use door numbering scheme as included in Contract Documents.
 - 1. Prepared by or under supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
 - 2. Comply with DHI (H&S) using door numbers and hardware set numbers as indicated in construction documents.
 - 3. List groups and suffixes in proper sequence.
 - 4. Provide complete description for each door listed.
 - 5. Provide manufacturer's and product names, and catalog numbers; include functions, types, styles, sizes and finishes of each item.
 - 6. Include account of abbreviations and symbols used in schedule.
- D. Shop Drawings - Electrified Door Hardware: Submit diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring for electrified door hardware that include details of interface with building safety and security systems. Provide elevations and diagrams for each electrified door opening as follows:
 - 1. Prepared by or under supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) and Electrified Hardware Consultant (EHC).
 - 2. Elevations: Submit front and back elevations of each door opening showing electrified devices with connections installed and an operations narrative describing how opening operates from either side at any given time.
 - 3. Diagrams: Submit point-to-point wiring diagram that shows each device in door opening system with related colored wire connections to each device.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include data on operating hardware, lubrication requirements, and inspection procedures related to preventative maintenance.
- G. Keying Schedule:
 - 1. Submit three (3) copies of Keying Schedule in compliance with requirements established during Keying Requirements Meeting unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- I. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of concealed equipment, services, and conduit.

- J. Maintenance Materials and Tools: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
 2. Lock Cylinders: Ten for each master keyed group.
 3. Tools: One set of each special wrench or tool applicable for each different or special hardware component, whether supplied by hardware component manufacturer or not.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package hardware items individually; label and identify each package with door opening code to match door hardware schedule.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Warranty against defects in material and workmanship for period indicated, from Date of Substantial Completion.
 1. Closers: Five years, minimum.
 2. Locksets and Cylinders: Three years, minimum.
 3. Other Hardware: Two years, minimum.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Provide specified door hardware as required to make doors fully functional, compliant with applicable codes, and secure to extent indicated.
- B. Provide individual items of single type, of same model, and by same manufacturer.
- C. Provide door hardware products that comply with the following requirements:
 1. Applicable provisions of federal, state, and local codes.
 2. Accessibility: ADA Standards and ICC A117.1.
 3. Auxiliary Hardware: BHMA A156.16.
 4. Hardware Preparation for Steel Doors and Steel Frames: BHMA A156.115.
 5. Hardware Preparation for Wood Doors with Wood or Steel Frames: BHMA A156.115W.
 6. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by UL (DIR) as suitable for the purpose specified.
- D. Electrically Operated and/or Controlled Hardware: Provide necessary power supplies, power transfer hinges, relays, and interfaces as required for proper operation; provide wiring between hardware and control components and to building power connection in compliance with NFPA 70.
 1. Refer to Section 281000 for additional access control system requirements.
- E. Fasteners:
 1. Provide fasteners of proper type, size, quantity, and finish that comply with commercially recognized standards for proposed applications.
 - a. Aluminum fasteners are not permitted.
 - b. Provide phillips flat-head screws with heads finished to match door surface hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Provide machine screws for attachment to reinforced hollow metal and aluminum frames.
 - a. Self-drilling (Tek) type screws are not permitted.
 3. Provide stainless steel machine screws and lead expansion shields for concrete and masonry substrates.
 4. Provide wall grip inserts for hollow wall construction.
 5. Provide spacers or sex bolts with sleeves for through bolting of hollow metal doors and frames.
 6. Concealed Fasteners: Do not use through or sex bolt type fasteners on door panel sides indicated as concealed fastener locations, unless otherwise indicated.

2.02 THRESHOLDS

- A. Thresholds: Comply with BHMA A156.21.
 - 1. Provide threshold at each exterior door, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Type: Flat surface, field verify existing conditions.
 - 3. Material: Aluminum.
 - 4. Threshold Surface: Fluted horizontal grooves across full width.
 - 5. Field cut threshold to profile of frame and width of door sill for tight fit.
 - 6. Provide non-corroding fasteners at exterior locations.

2.03 WEATHERSTRIPPING AND GASKETING

- A. Weatherstripping and Gasketing: Comply with BHMA A156.22.
 - 1. Head and Jamb Type: Adjustable.
 - 2. Door Sweep Type: Encased in retainer.
 - 3. Material: Aluminum, with brush weatherstripping.

2.04 FINISHES

- A. Finishes: Identified in Door Hardware Schedule on the Construction Documents.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that doors and frames are ready to receive this work; labeled, fire-rated doors and frames are properly installed, and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that electric power is available to power operated devices and of correct characteristics.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and applicable codes.
- B. Use templates provided by hardware item manufacturer.
- C. Do not install surface mounted items until application of finishes to substrate are fully completed.
- D. Door Hardware Mounting Heights: Distance from finished floor to center line of hardware item. As indicated in following list; unless noted otherwise in Door Hardware Schedule or on drawings.
 - 1. For Steel Doors and Frames: Install in compliance with DHI (LOCS) recommendations.
 - 2. For Wood Doors: Install in compliance with DHI WDHS.3 recommendations.
 - 3. Mounting heights in compliance with ADA Standards:
- E. Set exterior door thresholds with full-width bead of elastomeric sealant at each point of contact with floor providing a continuous weather seal; anchor thresholds with stainless steel countersunk screws.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust work under provisions of Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- B. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.
- C. Adjust gasketing for complete, continuous seal; replace if unable to make complete seal.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean finished hardware in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after final adjustments have been made.
- B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware installation.
- C. Replace items that cannot be cleaned to manufacturer's level of finish quality at no additional cost.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finished Work under provisions of Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.

B. Do not permit adjacent work to damage hardware or finish.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 088000 GLAZING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Insulating glass units.
- B. Glazing units.
- C. Plastic films.
- D. Glazing compounds and accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C864 - Standard Specification for Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers 2005 (Reapproved 2019).
- B. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass 2021.
- C. ASTM C1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass 2018.
- D. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants 2016.
- E. ASTM C1376 - Standard Specification for Pyrolytic and Vacuum Deposition Coatings on Flat Glass 2021a.
- F. ASTM E1300 - Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings 2016.
- G. ASTM E2190 - Standard Specification for Insulating Glass Unit Performance and Evaluation 2019.
- H. GANA (SM) - GANA Sealant Manual 2008.
- I. NFRC 100 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors 2020.
- J. NFRC 200 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence 2020.
- K. NFRC 300 - Test Method for Determining the Solar Optical Properties of Glazing Materials and Systems 2020.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by each of the affected installers.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data on Insulating Glass Unit, Glazing Unit, Plastic Sheet Glazing Unit, and Plastic Film Glazing Types: Provide structural, physical and environmental characteristics, size limitations, special handling and installation requirements.
- C. Product Data on Glazing Compounds and Accessories: Provide chemical, functional, and environmental characteristics, limitations, special application requirements, and identify available colors.
- D. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum five years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least five years documented experience.

1.06 MOCK-UPS

- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for additional mock-up requirements.

- B. Provide mock-up of applied plastic film including glass.
- C. Locate where directed.
- D. Mock-ups may remain as part of the Work.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature before, during and 24 hours after installation of glazing compounds.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Plastic Films Manufacturers:
 - 1. Avery Dennison: <https://graphics.averydennison.com>.
 - 2. Substitutions: Refer to Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS - EXTERIOR GLAZING ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide type and thickness of exterior glazing assemblies to support assembly dead loads, and to withstand live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of glass.
 - 1. Comply with ASTM E1300 for design load resistance of glass type, thickness, dimensions, and maximum lateral deflection of supported glass.
 - 2. Provide glass edge support system sufficiently stiff to limit the lateral deflection of supported glass edges to less than 1/175 of their lengths under specified design load.
 - 3. Glass thicknesses listed are minimum.
- B. Thermal and Optical Performance: Provide exterior glazing products with performance properties as indicated. Performance properties are in accordance with manufacturer's published data as determined with the following procedures and/or test methods:
 - 1. Center of Glass U-Value: Comply with NFRC 100 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
 - 2. Center of Glass Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Comply with NFRC 200 using Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory (LBNL) WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
 - 3. Solar Optical Properties: Comply with NFRC 300 test method.

2.03 GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Float Glass: Provide float glass based glazing unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Annealed Type: ASTM C1036, Type I - Transparent Flat, Class 1 - Clear, Quality - Q3.

2.04 INSULATING GLASS UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Guardian Glass, LLC: www.guardianglass.com.
 - 2. Viracon, Apogee Enterprises, Inc: www.viracon.com.
 - 3. Vitro Architectural Glass (formerly PPG Glass): www.vitroglazings.com.
 - 4. Substitutions: Refer to Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Insulating Glass Units: Types as indicated.
 - 1. Durability: Certified by an independent testing agency to comply with ASTM E2190.
 - 2. Coated Glass: Comply with requirements of ASTM C1376 for pyrolytic (hard-coat) or magnetic sputter vapor deposition (soft-coat) type coatings on flat glass; coated vision glass, Kind CV; coated overhead glass, Kind CO; or coated spandrel glass, Kind CS.
 - 3. Spacer Color: Black.
 - 4. Edge Seal:
 - a. Color: Black.
 - 5. Purge interpane space with dry air, hermetically sealed.

- C. Insulating Glass Units: Vision glass, double glazed.
 - 1. Applications: Exterior glazing unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Space between lites filled with air.
 - 3. Outboard Lite: Annealed float glass, 1/4 inch thick, minimum.
 - a. Tint: Clear.
 - b. Coating: Low-E (passive type), on #2 surface.
 - 4. Inboard Lite: Annealed float glass, 1/4 inch thick, minimum.
 - a. Tint: Clear.
 - 5. Total Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 6. Thermal Transmittance (U-Value), Summer - Center of Glass: 27, nominal.

2.05 PLASTIC FILMS

- A. Decorative Plastic Film: Polyester type.
 - 1. Application: Locations as indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Series Type: Frost.
 - 3. Color: Acid Etch.
 - 4. Manufacturers:
 - a. Avery Dennison; SC900 Series: <https://graphics.averydennison.com>.
 - b. Substitutions: Refer to Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.06 GLAZING COMPOUNDS

- A. Silicone Sealant: Single component; neutral curing; capable of water immersion without loss of properties; non-bleeding, non-staining; ASTM C920 Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses M, A, and G; with cured Shore A hardness range of 15 to 25; color as selected.

2.07 ACCESSORIES

- A. Setting Blocks: Silicone, with 80 to 90 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Length of 0.1 inch for each square foot of glazing or minimum 4 inch by width of glazing rabbet space minus 1/16 inch by height to suit glazing method and pane weight and area.
- B. Spacer Shims: Neoprene, 50 to 60 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Continuous by one half the height of the glazing stop by thickness to suit application, self adhesive on one face.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
- B. Verify that the minimum required face and edge clearances are being provided.
- C. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions that may impede moisture movement, weeps are clear, and support framing is ready to receive glazing system.
- D. Verify that sealing between joints of glass framing members has been completed effectively.
- E. Proceed with glazing system installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean contact surfaces with appropriate solvent and wipe dry within maximum of 24 hours before glazing. Remove coatings that are not tightly bonded to substrates.
- B. Seal porous glazing channels or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer.
- C. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant where required for proper sealant adhesion.

3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install glazing in compliance with written instructions of glass, gaskets, and other glazing material manufacturers, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in

glazing referenced standards.

- B. Install glazing sealants in accordance with ASTM C1193, GANA (SM), and manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Do not exceed edge pressures around perimeter of glass lites as stipulated by glass manufacturer.
- D. Set glass lites of system with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- E. Set glass lites in proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as indicated.
- F. Prevent glass from contact with any contaminating substances that may be the result of construction operations such as, and not limited to the following; weld splatter, fire-safing, plastering, mortar droppings, etc.

3.04 INSTALLATION - PLASTIC FILM

- A. Install plastic film with adhesive, applied in accordance with film manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Place without air bubbles, creases or visible distortion.
- C. Install film tight to perimeter of glass and carefully trim film with razor sharp knife. Provide 1/16 inch to 1/8 inch gap at perimeter of glazed panel unless otherwise required. Do not score the glass.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. See Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal, for additional requirements.
- B. Remove excess glazing materials from finish surfaces immediately after application using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.
- C. Remove non-permanent labels immediately after glazing installation is complete.
- D. Clean glass and adjacent surfaces after sealants are fully cured.
- E. Clean glass on both exposed surfaces not more than 4 days prior to Date of Substantial Completion in accordance with glass manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, mark pane with an 'X' by using removable plastic tape or paste; do not mark heat absorbing or reflective glass units.
- B. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period prior to Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 092116
GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Performance criteria for gypsum board assemblies.
- B. Metal stud wall framing.
- C. Metal channel ceiling framing.
- D. Acoustic insulation.
- E. Gypsum sheathing.
- F. Gypsum wallboard.
- G. Joint treatment and accessories.
- H. Textured finish system.
- I. Water-resistive barrier over exterior wall sheathing.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking product and execution requirements.
- B. Section 072500 - Weather Barriers: Water-resistive barrier over sheathing.
- C. Section 093000 - Tiling: Tile backing board.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AISI S100-12 - North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members 2012.
- B. ANSI A108.11 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units 2018.
- C. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel 2019.
- D. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process 2020.
- E. ASTM A1003/A1003M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic- and Nonmetallic-Coated for Cold-Formed Framing Members 2015.
- F. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes 2021.
- G. ASTM C475/C475M - Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board 2017 (Reapproved 2022).
- H. ASTM C645 - Standard Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members 2018.
- I. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing 2017.
- J. ASTM C754 - Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products 2020.
- K. ASTM C840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board 2020.
- L. ASTM C954 - Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness 2022.
- M. ASTM C1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs 2022.
- N. ASTM C1047 - Standard Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base 2019.

- O. ASTM C1280 - Standard Specification for Application of Exterior Gypsum Panel Products for Use as Sheathing 2018.
- P. ASTM C1396/C1396M - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board 2017.
- Q. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber 2021.
- R. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements 2009 (Reapproved 2016).
- S. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation 2022.
- T. GA-216 - Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products 2021.
- U. GA-226 - Application of Gypsum Board to Form Curved Surfaces 2019.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate special details associated with acoustic seals.
- C. Product Data: Provide data on metal framing, gypsum board, accessories, and joint finishing system.
- D. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data on partition head to structure connectors, showing compliance with requirements.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing gypsum board installation and finishing, with minimum ten years of experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide completed assemblies complying with ASTM C840 and GA-216.

2.02 METAL FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturers - Metal Framing, Connectors, and Accessories:
 1. ClarkDietrich: www.clarkdietrich.com.
 2. Marino: www.marinoware.com.
 3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Non-structural Framing System Components: ASTM C645; galvanized sheet steel, of size and properties necessary to comply with ASTM C754 for the spacing indicated, with maximum deflection of wall framing of L/120 at 5 psf.
 1. Studs: C-shaped with knurled or embossed faces.
 2. Paired Studs for Sound-Rated Assemblies: Engineered single-piece assemblies comprised of paired studs coupled by sound isolators, designed to replace conventional side-by-side, parallel, double-wall partition framing.
 - a. Widths: As indicated on drawings.
 3. Runners: U shaped, sized to match studs.
 4. Ceiling Channels: C-shaped.
 5. Furring Members: Hat-shaped sections, minimum depth of 7/8 inch.
 6. Resilient Furring Channels: Single or double leg configuration; 1/2 inch channel depth.
- C. Partition Head to Structure Connections: Provide mechanical anchorage devices that accommodate deflection using slotted holes, screws, and anti-friction bushings, preventing rotation of studs while maintaining structural performance of partition.
 1. Structural Performance: Maintain lateral load resistance and vertical movement capacity required by applicable code, when evaluated in accordance with AISI S100-12.
 2. Material: ASTM A653/A653M steel sheet, SS Grade 50/340, with G60/Z180 hot-dipped galvanized coating.
- D. Non-structural Framing Accessories:

1. Ceiling Hangers: Type and size as specified in ASTM C754 for spacing required.
 2. Partial Height Wall Framing Support: Provides stud reinforcement and anchored connection to floor.
 - a. Materials: ASTM A36/A36M formed sheet steel support member with factory-welded ASTM A1003/A1003M steel plate base.
 3. Framing Connectors: ASTM A653/A653M G90 galvanized steel clips; secures cold rolled channel to wall studs for lateral bracing.
- E. Grid Suspension Systems: Steel grid system of main tees and support bars connected to structure using hanging wire.

2.03 BOARD MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturers - Gypsum-Based Board:
 1. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com.
 2. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum: www.gpgypsum.com.
 3. USG Corporation: www.usg.com.
 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Gypsum Wallboard: Paper-faced gypsum panels as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut. Note: all GWB to be Type "X"
 1. Application: Use for vertical surfaces and ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Mold Resistance: Type "X"
 - a. Mold resistant board is required Above tile wainscot in restroom walls to ceiling.
 3. Thickness:
 - a. Vertical Surfaces: 5/8 inch.
 - b. Ceilings: 5/8 inch.
 - c. Multi-Layer Assemblies: Thicknesses as indicated on drawings.
- C. Exterior Sheathing Board: Sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.
 1. Application: Exterior sheathing, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Edges: Square.
- D. Exterior Soffit Board: Exterior gypsum soffit board as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.
 1. Application: Ceilings and soffits in protected exterior areas, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Edges: Tapered.

2.04 GYPSUM WALLBOARD ACCESSORIES

- A. Acoustic Insulation: ASTM C665; preformed glass fiber, friction fit type, unfaced. Thickness: As scheduled on drawings.
- B. Acoustic Sealant: Acrylic emulsion latex or water-based elastomeric sealant; do not use solvent-based non-curing butyl sealant.
- C. Water-Resistive Barrier: As specified in Section 072500.
- D. Beads, Joint Accessories, and Other Trim: ASTM C1047, rigid plastic, galvanized steel, or rolled zinc, unless noted otherwise.
 1. Corner Beads: Low profile, for 90 degree outside corners.
 2. Corner Beads: Low profile, for archways.
 3. L-Trim with Tear-Away Strip: Sized to fit 1/2 inch thick gypsum wallboard.
 4. Architectural Reveal Beads:
 - a. Shapes: As indicated on drawings.
 5. Expansion Joints:
- E. Decorative Metal Trim:
 1. Material: Extruded aluminum alloy 6063-T5 temper.
 2. Finish: Anodized, clear.
 3. Type: Profile as selected from manufacturer's standard range.
- F. Joint Materials: ASTM C475/C475M and as recommended by gypsum board manufacturer for project conditions.

1. Fiberglass Tape: 2 inch wide, coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners, except as otherwise indicated.
 2. Joint Compound: Drying type, vinyl-based, ready-mixed.
 3. Joint Compound: Setting type, field-mixed.
- G. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Cold-Formed Steel Studs Less than 0.033 inches in Thickness and Wood Members: ASTM C1002; self-piercing tapping screws, corrosion-resistant.
- H. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Steel Members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch in Thickness: ASTM C954; steel drill screws, corrosion-resistant.
- I. Exterior Soffit Vents: One piece, perforated, ASTM B221 6063 T5 alloy aluminum, with edge suitable for direct application to gypsum board and manufactured especially for soffit application. Provide continuous vent.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that project conditions are appropriate for work of this section to commence.

3.02 FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Framing: Install in accordance with ASTM C754 and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Suspended Ceilings and Soffits: Space framing and furring members as indicated.
 1. Level ceiling system to a tolerance of 1/1200.
 2. Laterally brace entire suspension system.
 3. Install bracing as required at exterior locations to resist wind uplift.
- C. Studs: Space studs at 16 inches on center.
 1. Extend partition framing to structure where indicated and to ceiling in other locations.
 2. Partitions Terminating at Ceiling: Attach ceiling runner securely to ceiling track in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 3. Partitions Terminating at Structure: Attach top runner to structure, maintain clearance between top of studs and structure, and connect studs to track using specified mechanical devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; verify free movement of top of stud connections; do not leave studs unattached to track.
- D. Openings: Reinforce openings as required for weight of doors or operable panels, using not less than double studs at jambs.
- E. Blocking: Install wood blocking for support of:
 1. Framed openings.
 2. Wall-mounted cabinets.
 3. Plumbing fixtures.
 4. Toilet partitions.
 5. Toilet accessories.
 6. Wall-mounted door hardware.

3.03 ACOUSTIC ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Acoustic Insulation: Place tightly within spaces, around cut openings, behind and around electrical and mechanical items within partitions, and tight to items passing through partitions.
- B. Sound Isolation Tape: Apply to vertical studs and top and bottom tracks/runners in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Acoustic Sealant: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 1. Place one bead continuously on substrate before installation of perimeter framing members.
 2. Seal around all penetrations by conduit, pipe, ducts, and rough-in boxes, except where firestopping is provided.

3.04 BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with ASTM C840, GA-216, and manufacturer's instructions. Install to minimize butt end joints, especially in highly visible locations.
- B. Single-Layer Nonrated: Install gypsum board in most economical direction, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing.
 - 1. Exception: Tapered edges to receive joint treatment at right angles to framing.
- C. Double-Layer, Nonrated: Use gypsum board for first layer, placed parallel to framing or furring members, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing. Use glass mat faced gypsum board at exterior walls and at other locations as indicated. Place second layer perpendicular to framing or furring members. Offset joints of second layer from joints of first layer.
- D. Exposed Gypsum Board in Interior Wet Areas: Seal joints, cut edges, and holes with water-resistant sealant.
- E. Exterior Sheathing: Comply with ASTM C1280. Install sheathing vertically, with edges butted tight and ends occurring over firm bearing.
 - 1. Paper-Faced Sheathing: Immediately after installation, protect from weather by application of water-resistive barrier.
- F. Exterior Soffits: Install exterior soffit board perpendicular to framing, with staggered end joints over framing members or other solid backing.
- G. Cementitious Backing Board: Install over steel framing members and plywood substrate where indicated, in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Installation on Metal Framing: Use screws for attachment of gypsum board except face layer of nonrated double-layer assemblies, which may be installed by means of adhesive lamination.
- I. Curved Surfaces: Apply gypsum board to curved substrates in accordance with GA-226.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Control Joints: Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and as indicated.
- B. Corner Beads: Install at external corners, using longest practical lengths.
- C. Decorative Trim: Install at locations shown on drawings and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Exterior Soffit Vents: Install according to manufacturer's written instructions and in locations indicated on drawings. Provide vent area as noted on the plans.

3.06 JOINT TREATMENT

- A. Glass Mat Faced Gypsum Board and Exterior Glass Mat Faced Sheathing: Use fiberglass joint tape, embed and finish with setting type joint compound.
- B. Finish gypsum board in accordance with levels defined in ASTM C840, as follows:
 - 1. Level 5: Walls and ceilings to receive semi-gloss or gloss paint finish or vinyl wallcoverings and other areas specifically indicated.
 - 2. Level 4: Walls and ceilings to receive paint finish, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Level 2: Behind cabinetry, and on backing board to receive tile finish.
 - 4. Level 1: Wall areas above finished ceilings, whether or not accessible in the completed construction.
- C. Tape, fill, and sand exposed joints, edges, and corners to produce smooth surface ready to receive finishes.
 - 1. Feather coats of joint compound so that camber is maximum 1/32 inch.
 - 2. Taping, filling, and sanding are not required at surfaces behind adhesive applied ceramic tile and fixed cabinetry.
- D. Where Level 5 finish is indicated, spray apply high build drywall surfacer over entire surface after joints have been properly treated; achieve a flat and tool mark-free finish.
- E. Fill and finish joints and corners of cementitious backing board as recommended by manufacturer.

3.07 TEXTURE FINISH

- A. Apply finish texture coating on all walls and ceilings, unless otherwise indicated, by means of spraying apparatus in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide light and medium orange peel texture mock-ups for Architect to review.

3.08 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation of Finished Gypsum Board Surface from True Flatness: 1/8 inch in 10 feet in any direction.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 093000
TILING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Tile for floor applications.
- B. Tile for wall applications.
- C. Cementitious backer board as tile substrate.
- D. Ceramic accessories.
- E. Ceramic trim.
- F. Non-ceramic trim.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI A108.1a - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar 2017.
- B. ANSI A108.1b - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar 2017.
- C. ANSI A108.1c - Contractor's Option: Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method with Portland Cement Mortar or Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar 1999 (Reaffirmed 2021).
- D. ANSI A108.2 - American National Standard General Requirements: Materials, Environmental and Workmanship 2019.
- E. ANSI A108.4 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesive or Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive 2019.
- F. ANSI A108.5 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar 2021.
- G. ANSI A108.6 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grout Epoxy 1999 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- H. ANSI A108.8 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant Furan Resin Mortar and Grout 1999 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- I. ANSI A108.9 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout 1999 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- J. ANSI A108.10 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Grout in Tilework 2017.
- K. ANSI A108.11 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units 2018.
- L. ANSI A108.12 - American National Standard for Installation of Ceramic Tile with EGP (Exterior Glue Plywood) Latex-Portland Cement Mortar 1999 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- M. ANSI A108.13 - American National Standard for Installation of Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone 2005 (Reaffirmed 2021).
- N. ANSI A108.19 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Gauged Porcelain Tiles and Gauged Porcelain Tile Panels/Slabs by the Thin-Bed Method Bonded with Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar or Improved Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar 2020.
- O. ANSI A118.4 - American National Standard Specifications for Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar 2019.
- P. ANSI A118.7 - American National Standard Specifications for High Performance Cement Grouts for Tile Installation 2019.

- Q. ANSI A118.9 - American National Standard Specifications for Test Methods and Specifications for Cementitious Backer Units 2019.
- R. ANSI A118.12 - American National Standard Specifications for Crack Isolation Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation 2014 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- S. ANSI A118.15 - American National Standard Specifications for Improved Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar 2019.
- T. ANSI A137.1 - American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile 2022.
- U. ASTM F710 - Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring 2021.
- V. ASTM F1869 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride 2022.
- W. TCNA (HB) - Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation 2022.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by affected installers.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturers' data sheets on tile, mortar, grout, and accessories. Include instructions for using grouts and adhesives.
- C. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
 - 2. Extra Tile: As scheduled on drawings, re: A9.0.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Company specializing in performing tile installation, with minimum of five years of documented experience.

1.06 MOCK-UP

- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for mock-up.
- B. Field locate tile mock-up with Architect and Owner, incorporating all components specified for the location.
 - 1. Minimum size of mock-up is 10' x 10' unless otherwise directed.
 - 2. Approved mock-up may remain as part of the Work.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect adhesives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install solvent-based products in an unventilated environment.
- B. Maintain ambient and substrate temperature above 50 degrees F and below 100 degrees F during installation and curing of setting materials.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 TILE

- A. Manufacturers: All products by the same manufacturer, as scheduled on the drawings .
- B. Glazed Wall Tile: ANSI A137.1 standard grade.
 - 1. Color(s): As indicated on drawings.
- C. Porcelain Wall and Floor: ANSI A137.1 standard grade.
 - 1. Color(s): As indicated on drawings.

2.02 TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Ceramic Accessories: Glazed finish, same color and finish as adjacent field tile; same manufacturer as tile.
- B. Ceramic Trim: Matching bullnose, double bullnose, cove base, and cove ceramic shapes in sizes coordinated with field tile.
 - 1. Applications:
 - a. Open Edges: Bullnose.
 - b. Inside Corners: Jointed.
 - c. Floor to Wall Joints: Cove base.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Same as for tile.
- C. Non-Ceramic Trim: Satin brass anodized extruded aluminum, style and dimensions to suit application, for setting using tile mortar or adhesive.
 - 1. Applications:
 - a. Open edges of wall tile.
 - b. Open edges of floor tile.
 - c. Transition between floor finishes of different heights.
 - d. Thresholds at door openings.
 - 2. Manufacturers:
 - a. Schluter-Systems: www.schluter.com.

2.03 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Provide setting and grout materials from same manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturers:
 - 1. ARDEX Engineered Cements: www.ardexamericas.com.
 - 2. LATICRETE International, Inc: www.laticrete.com.
 - 3. Mapei: www.mapei.com.
 - 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- C. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar Bond Coat: ANSI A118.4.
- D. Improved Latex-Portland Cement Mortar Bond Coat: ANSI A118.15.
 - 1. Applications: Use this type of bond coat where indicated and where no other type of bond coat is indicated.

2.04 GROUTS

- A. Provide setting and grout materials from same manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturers:
 - 1. ARDEX Engineered Cements: www.ardexamericas.com.
 - 2. LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE PERMACOLOR Grout: www.laticrete.com.
 - 3. Mapei: www.mapei.com.
 - 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- C. High Performance Polymer Modified Grout: ANSI A118.7 polymer modified cement grout.
 - 1. Applications: Use this type of grout where indicated and where no other type of grout is indicated.
 - 2. Use sanded grout for joints 1/8 inch wide and larger; use unsanded grout for joints less than 1/8 inch wide.
 - 3. Color(s): As indicated on drawings.
 - 4. Products:
 - a. ARDEX Engineered Cements; ARDEX FL: www.ardexamericas.com.
 - b. LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE PERMACOLOR Grout: www.laticrete.com.
 - c. Mapei; Ultracolor Plus: www.mapei.com.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

- A. Tile Sealant: Gunnable, silicone, siliconized acrylic, or urethane sealant; moisture and mildew resistant type.
 - 1. Applications: Between tile and plumbing fixtures.
 - 2. At movement joints, use sanded sealant to match grout.
 - 3. Color(s): As indicated on drawings to match grout.
 - 4. Products:
 - a. ARDEX Engineered Cements; ARDEX SX: www.ardexamericas.com.
 - b. LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE LATASIL: www.laticrete.com.
 - c. Mapei; Keracaulk: www.mapei.com.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.06 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Concrete Floor Slab Crack Isolation Membrane: Material complying with ANSI A118.12; not intended as waterproofing.
 - 1. Crack Resistance: No failure at 1/8 inch gap, minimum.
 - 2. Fluid or Trowel Applied Type:
 - a. Material: Synthetic rubber or Acrylic.
 - b. Thickness: 20 mils, maximum.
 - c. Products:
 - 1) LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE Blue 92 Anti-Fracture Membrane: www.laticrete.com.
 - 2) Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete Fracture Guard: www.merkrete.com.
 - 3) Mapei; Mapelastic Cl: www.mapei.com.
 - 4) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Backer Board: Cementitious type complying with ANSI A118.9; high density, glass fiber reinforced, 1/2 inch thick; 2 inch wide coated glass fiber tape for joints and corners.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subfloor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive tile.
- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive tile.
- C. Verify that subfloor surfaces are dust free and free of substances that could impair bonding of setting materials to subfloor surfaces.
- D. Cementitious Subfloor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are ready for tiling installation by testing for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
 - 1. Test as Follows:
 - a. Alkalinity (pH): ASTM F710.
 - b. Moisture Vapor Emission: ASTM F1869.
 - 2. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by tiling material manufacturer and setting material manufacturer.
- E. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protect surrounding work from damage.
- B. Vacuum clean surfaces and damp clean.
- C. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances.
- D. Install backer board in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and board manufacturer's instructions. Tape joints and corners, cover with skim coat of setting material to a feather edge.

3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install tile, thresholds, and stair treads and grout in accordance with applicable requirements of ANSI A108.1a through ANSI A108.19 , manufacturer's instructions, and TCNA (HB) recommendations.
- B. Lay tile to pattern indicated. Do not interrupt tile pattern through openings.
- C. Cut and fit tile to penetrations through tile, leaving sealant joint space. Form corners and bases neatly. Align floor joints.
- D. Place tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make grout joints without voids, cracks, excess mortar or excess grout, or too little grout.
- E. Form internal angles square and external angles bullnosed.
- F. Install ceramic accessories rigidly in prepared openings.
- G. Install non-ceramic trim in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding units.
- I. Keep control and expansion joints free of mortar, grout, and adhesive.
- J. Prior to grouting, allow installation to completely cure; minimum of 48 hours.
- K. Grout tile joints unless otherwise indicated. Use standard grout unless otherwise indicated.
- L. At changes in plane and tile-to-tile control joints, use tile sealant instead of grout, with either bond breaker tape or backer rod as appropriate to prevent three-sided bonding.

3.04 INSTALLATION - FLOORS - THIN-SET METHODS

- A. Over interior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F113, dry-set or latex-Portland cement bond coat, with standard grout, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install tile-to-tile floor movement joints in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method EJ171F.

3.05 INSTALLATION - WALL TILE

- A. Over cementitious backer units on studs, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W244, using membrane at toilet rooms.
- B. Over gypsum wallboard on wood or metal studs install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W243, thin-set with dry-set or latex-Portland cement bond coat, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Where mortar bed is indicated, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W222, one coat method.
- C. Over interior concrete and masonry install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W202, thin-set with dry-set or latex-Portland cement bond coat.
- D. Over metal studs without backer install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W241, mortar bed, with membrane where indicated.

3.06 CLEANING

- A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Do not permit traffic over finished floor surface for 4 days after installation.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 095100
ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Suspended metal grid ceiling system.
- B. Acoustical units.
- C. Supplementary acoustical insulation above ceiling.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process 2020.
- B. ASTM C635/C635M - Standard Specification for Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings 2022.
- C. ASTM C636/C636M - Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels 2019.
- D. ASTM E580/E580M - Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions 2022.
- E. ASTM E1264 - Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products 2022.
- F. CHPS (HPPD) - High Performance Products Database Current Edition.
- G. UL (GGG) - GREENGUARD Gold Certified Products Current Edition.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sequence work to ensure acoustical ceilings are not installed until building is enclosed, sufficient heat is provided, dust generating activities have terminated, and overhead work is completed, tested, and approved.
- B. Do not install acoustical units until after interior wet work is dry.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on suspension system components and acoustical units.
- C. Samples: Submit two full size samples illustrating material and finish of acoustical units.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Suspension System Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Acoustical Unit Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain uniform temperature of minimum 60 degrees F, and maximum humidity of 40 percent prior to, during, and after acoustical unit installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acoustic Tiles/Panels:
 - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc: www.armstrongceilings.com.
 - 2. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com.
 - 3. USG Corporation: www.usg.com/ceilings.
 - 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

- B. Suspension Systems:
 - 1. Same as for acoustical units.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 ACOUSTICAL UNITS

- A. Acoustical Units - General: ASTM E1264, Class A.
 - 1. VOC Content: Certified as Low Emission by one of the following:
 - a. Product listing in UL (GGG).
 - b. Product listing in CHPS (HPPD).
- B. Acoustical Panels: Painted mineral fiber, with the following characteristics:
 - 1. Classification: ASTM E1264 Type III.
 - 2. Size: 24 by 24 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 3/4 inch.
 - 4. Panel Edge: Tegular.
 - 5. Products:
 - a. USG Corporation; Orion 60 Acoustical Panels: www.usg.com/ceilings.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.03 SUSPENSION SYSTEM(S)

- A. Metal Suspension Systems - General: Complying with ASTM C635/C635M; die cut and interlocking components, with perimeter moldings, hold down clips, stabilizer bars, clips, and splices as required.
 - 1. Materials:
 - a. Steel Grid: ASTM A653/A653M, G30 coating, unless otherwise indicated.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Support Channels and Hangers: Galvanized steel; size and type to suit application, seismic requirements, and ceiling system flatness requirement specified.
- B. Hanger Wire: 12-gage 0.08 inch galvanized steel wire.
- C. Hold-Down Clips: Manufacturer's standard clips to suit application.
- D. Wood Veneer Panel Safety Clips: Galvanized 1-9/16 by 5-1/2 inch bent sheet metal clips screw anchored to back of adjacent panels and spanning over top of suspended tee grid.
 - 1. Wire Ties: No. 12 galvanized wire.
- E. Wood Veneer Perimeter Trim: Field cut wood veneer panels to match acoustic ceiling panels.
- F. Perimeter Moldings: Same metal and finish as grid.
 - 1. Angle Molding: L-shaped, for mounting at same elevation as face of grid.
 - 2. Acoustical Sealant For Perimeter Moldings: Non-hardening, non-skimming, for use in conjunction with suspended ceiling system.
- G. Touch-up Paint: Type and color to match acoustical and grid units.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that layout of hangers will not interfere with other work.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Install after major above-ceiling work is complete.
- B. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.

3.03 INSTALLATION - SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Install suspension system in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M, ASTM E580/E580M, and manufacturer's instructions and as supplemented in this section.

- B. Rigidly secure system, including integral mechanical and electrical components, for maximum deflection of 1:360.
- C. Locate system on room axis according to reflected plan.
- D. Perimeter Molding: Install at intersection of ceiling and vertical surfaces and at junctions with other interruptions.
 - 1. Install in bed of acoustical sealant.
 - 2. Use longest practical lengths.
 - 3. Overlap and rivet corners.
- E. Suspension System, Non-Seismic: Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Where carrying members are spliced, avoid visible displacement of face plane of adjacent members.
- F. Where ducts or other equipment prevent the regular spacing of hangers, reinforce the nearest affected hangers and related carrying channels to span the extra distance.
- G. Do not support components on main runners or cross runners if weight causes total dead load to exceed deflection capability.
- H. Support fixture loads using supplementary hangers located within 6 inches of each corner, or support components independently.
- I. Do not eccentrically load system or induce rotation of runners.

3.04 INSTALLATION - ACOUSTICAL UNITS

- A. Install acoustical units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Fit acoustical units in place, free from damaged edges or other defects detrimental to appearance and function.
- C. Fit border trim neatly against abutting surfaces.
- D. Install acoustical units level, in uniform plane, and free from twist, warp, and dents.
- E. Cutting Acoustical Units:
 - 1. Make field cut edges of same profile as factory edges.
 - 2. Double cut and field paint exposed reveal edges.
- F. Where round obstructions occur, provide preformed closures to match perimeter molding.
- G. Install hold-down clips on panels within 20 ft of an exterior door.

3.05 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Flat and Level Surface: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
- B. Maximum Variation from Plumb of Grid Members Caused by Eccentric Loads: 2 degrees.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 095126 WALL UNITS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Flat Veneer Wall Panels- refer plans

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 07 21 16 - Blanket Insulation.
- B. Section 07 90 00 - Joint Protection.
- C. Section 08 31 13 - Access Doors and Frames.
- D. Section 28 31 00 - Fire Detection and Alarm.
- E. Section 21 00 00 - Fire Suppression.

1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM E 84 - Title; 2001.

1.04 DESIGN / PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wood is a natural product that will undergo changes with variations in the environment. Therefore, all dimensional tolerances are plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 3. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: Provide layout of wood wall panels, z-clips, and furring strips coordinated with other trades that will penetrate the wood walls or interfere with the installation and recessed or surface mounted devices located within the wall panels. Indicate method of attachments where interference exists.
- D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color brochures representing the manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.
- E. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples, minimum size 12 inches (305 mm) square, representing actual product, color, and patterns.
- F. Manufacturer's Certificates: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- G. Closeout Submittals: Provide manufacturer's maintenance instructions that include recommendations for periodic checking and adjustment and periodic cleaning and maintenance of all components.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Minimum 2 years documented experience installing projects of similar size and complexity.
- C. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.
 1. Finish areas designated by Architect.
 2. Do not proceed with remaining work until workmanship, color, and sheen are approved by Architect.
 3. Refinish mock-up area as required to produce acceptable work.
 4. Accepted mock-ups shall be comparison standard for remaining Work

- D. Pre-Installation Conference: Convene minimum two weeks prior to starting work of this section. Agenda shall include project conditions, coordination with work of other trades, and layout of items that penetrate walls.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver material in the manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- B. Store products off the floor in manufacturer's unopened packaging protected from exposure to harmful environmental conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions as recommended by the manufacturer.
- C. A minimum of 72 hours prior to wall installation, wood wall panels shall be stored in the room in which they will be installed. Temperature and humidity of the room during this period shall closely approximate those conditions that will exist when the building is occupied.
- D. Handle materials to avoid damage.

1.08 SEQUENCING

- A. Ensure that locating templates and other information required for installation of products of this section are furnished to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.
- B. Ensure that products of this section are supplied to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.

1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
- B. Space shall be fully enclosed with all exterior windows and doors in place, glazed, and weather-stripped. Roof is to be watertight, and all wet trades' work is to be completed, and thoroughly dry.
- C. Mechanical, electrical, and other utility services behind the wall / ceiling plane shall be completed. No materials should rest against, or wrap around, the wall attachment components or connecting z-clips.
- D. Install only when the temperature and humidity closely approximate the interior conditions that will exist when the building is occupied. Heating and cooling systems shall be operating before, during, and after installation, with the humidity of the interior spaces maintained between 25 and 55 percent, and a temperature between 60 to 90 degrees F.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of the wood wall panels with other work penetrating the wall including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and fire suppression system components.

PART 1 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Rulon International, which is located at: 2000 Ring Way Rd.; St Augustine, FL 32092; Toll Free Tel: 800-227-8566; Tel: 904-584-1400; Fax: 904-584-1499; Email: request info (info@rulonco.com); Web:rulonco.com
- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 MATERIALS - GENERAL

- A. Wood is a natural product that will undergo changes with variations in the environment. Therefore, all dimensional tolerances are plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).

2.03 FLAT VENEER PANELS

- A. Flat Veneer Panels are made with a face veneer applied to a 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick core material.

1. Panel Size: Refer plans
2. Trim and Border Treatment: Provide end caps or junction trims as indicated.
3. Veneer Species:
 - a. Walnut
4. Finish:
 - a. Custom Stain

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Z-Clips: Male/female aluminum attachment clips, similar to a French cleat but with a thinner profile, used to hang wood wall panels on furring strips.

2.05 ATTACHMENT SYSTEMS

- A. Furring Strips: Thin strips of fire-treated plywood or other non-combustible or limited combustible material shall be used in conjunction with fire treated or other non-combustible or limited combustible shims to level or raise z-clip attachment points so that, when installed, wood wall panels are flush and plumb.

2.06 FABRICATION

- A. Edges, borders, and perimeter trims shall be indicated on the Drawings in accordance with the manufacturer's standard design details. All wood wall panel products specified shall be supplied by the wood wall panel manufacturer.

PART 1 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. Verify that furring strips are in place, attached and shimmed in a direction parallel to the floor.
- C. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Work shall not begin until the space is fully enclosed and glazed and all wet work is completed and dried out to the satisfaction manufacturer.
- C. Temperature shall be at least 65 degrees Fahrenheit during the installation and thereafter.
- D. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and in proper relationship with adjacent construction.
- B. Install furring strips attached and shimmed in a direction parallel to the floor.
- C. Make final adjustments to level or contours as required.
- D. Joint treatment: Black.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Technical Service: Manufacturer shall provide a local Technical Service Representative for on-site training and assistance during the installation process.
- B. Environmental Monitoring: Manufacturer shall provide a temperature and humidity sensor to actively monitor the room in which the wood wall panels shall be installed for a minimum of one week before and up to two weeks after installation has been completed including all of the weeks in between.
- C. Upon completion of wall installation, the owner's representative shall inspect all finished surfaces to ensure that the work has been completed in a manner satisfactory to the owner. Any deficiencies in the install of the wall shall be corrected prior to substantial completion.

3.05 ADJUSTMENTS AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of wall panels in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Remove and replace panels and tiles, which cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 096500
RESILIENT FLOORING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Resilient tile flooring.
- B. Resilient base.
- C. Installation accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM F710 - Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring 2021.
- B. ASTM F1066 - Standard Specification for Vinyl Composition Floor Tile 2004 (Reapproved 2018).
- C. ASTM F1700 - Standard Specification for Solid Vinyl Floor Tile 2020.
- D. ASTM F1869 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride 2022.
- E. ASTM F2170 - Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using *in situ* Probes 2019a.
- F. RFCI (RWP) - Recommended Work Practices for Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings 2011.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Selection Samples: Submit manufacturer's complete set of color samples for Architect's initial selection.
- C. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning, stripping, and re-waxing.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 TILE FLOORING

- A. Vinyl Composition Tile: Homogeneous, with color extending throughout thickness.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Armstrong Flooring, Inc; Standard Execelon Imperial Texture: www.armstrongflooring.com.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 - 2. Minimum Requirements: Comply with ASTM F1066, of Class corresponding to type specified.
 - 3. Size: 12 by 12 inch.
 - 4. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
 - 5. Color: As indicated on drawings.
- B. Vinyl Tile: Heavy Commercial Luxury Vinyl Tile With Acoustic Backing.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Shaw Contract Group: www.shawcontract.com.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 - 2. Minimum Requirements: Comply with ASTM F1700, of Class corresponding to type specified.
 - 3. Plank Tile Size: 6 by 48 inch.
 - 4. Wear Layer Thickness: 0.020 inch.
 - 5. Total Thickness: 5 mm.
 - 6. Pattern: As indicated on drawings.
 - 7. Color: As indicated on drawings.

2.02 RESILIENT BASE

- A. Resilient Base: ASTM F1861, Type TS rubber, vulcanized thermoset; top set Style B, Cove.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Johnsonite, a Tarkett Company: www.johnsonite.com.
 - b. Roppe Corp: www.roppe.com.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 - 2. Height: 4 inch.
 - 3. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
 - 4. Finish: Satin.
 - 5. Length: Roll.
 - 6. Color: As indicated on drawings.
 - 7. Accessories: Premolded external corners and internal corners.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Subfloor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by adhesive material manufacturer.
- B. Primers, Adhesives, and Seam Sealer: Waterproof; types recommended by flooring manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are flat to tolerances acceptable to flooring manufacturer, free of cracks that might telegraph through flooring, clean, dry, and free of curing compounds, surface hardeners, and other chemicals that might interfere with bonding of flooring to substrate.
- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive resilient base.
- C. Cementitious Subfloor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are ready for resilient flooring installation by testing for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
 - 1. Test as Follows:
 - a. Alkalinity (pH): ASTM F710.
 - b. Internal Relative Humidity: ASTM F2170.
 - c. Moisture Vapor Emission: ASTM F1869.
 - 2. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by resilient flooring manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.
- D. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove existing resilient flooring and flooring adhesives; follow the recommendations of RPCI (RWP).
- B. Prepare floor substrates as recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers.
- C. Remove subfloor ridges and bumps. Fill minor low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with subfloor filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface.
- D. Prohibit traffic until filler is fully cured.
- E. Clean substrate.

3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of subfloor conditions.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Adhesive-Applied Installation:
 - 1. Spread only enough adhesive to permit installation of materials before initial set.
 - 2. Fit joints and butt seams tightly.
 - 3. Set flooring in place, press with heavy roller to attain full adhesion.

3.04 INSTALLATION - TILE FLOORING

- A. Mix tile from container to ensure shade variations are consistent when tile is placed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Install plank tile with a random offset of at least 6 inches from adjacent rows.

3.05 INSTALLATION - RESILIENT BASE

- A. Fit joints tightly and make vertical. Maintain minimum dimension of 18 inches between joints.
- B. Miter internal corners. At external corners, use premolded units. At exposed ends, use premolded units.
- C. Install base on solid backing. Bond tightly to wall and floor surfaces.
- D. Scribe and fit to door frames and other interruptions.

3.06 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive from floor, base, and wall surfaces without damage.
- B. Clean in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Prohibit traffic on resilient flooring for 48 hours after installation.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 096813
TILE CARPETING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Carpet tile, fully adhered.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; sizes, patterns, colors available, and method of installation.
- C. Samples: Submit two carpet tiles illustrating color and pattern design for each carpet color selected.
- D. Concrete Subfloor Test Report: Submit a copy of the moisture and alkalinity (pH) test reports.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing carpet tile with minimum three years documented experience and approved by carpet tile manufacturer.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Store materials in area of installation for minimum period of 24 hours prior to installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Tile Carpeting:
 - 1. Shaw Contract Group: www.shawcontract.com.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Tile Carpeting: Fusion bonded, manufactured in one color dye lot.
 - 1. Refer to drawings for style, type, size & locations.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Subfloor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by flooring material manufacturer.
- B. Edge Strips: Rubber, color as selected by Architect.
- C. Carpet Tile Adhesive: Recommended by carpet tile manufacturer; releasable type.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subfloor surfaces are smooth and flat within tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive carpet tile.
- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive carpet tile.
- C. Verify that subfloor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances that could impair bonding of adhesive materials to subfloor surfaces.
- D. Cementitious Subfloor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are ready for flooring installation by testing for moisture and alkalinity (pH).
 - 1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by flooring material manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare floor substrates as recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers.

- B. Remove subfloor ridges and bumps. Fill minor or local low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with subfloor filler.
- C. Apply, trowel, and float filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured.
- D. Vacuum clean substrate.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of subfloor conditions.
- B. Install carpet tile in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Blend carpet from different cartons to ensure minimal variation in color match.
- D. Cut carpet tile clean. Fit carpet tight to intersection with vertical surfaces without gaps.
- E. Lay carpet tile in square pattern, with pile direction parallel to next unit, set parallel to building lines.
- F. Locate change of color or pattern between rooms under door centerline.
- G. Fully adhere carpet tile to substrate.
- H. Trim carpet tile neatly at walls and around interruptions.
- I. Complete installation of edge strips, concealing exposed edges.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive without damage, from floor, base, and wall surfaces.
- B. Clean and vacuum carpet surfaces.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 099113
EXTERIOR PAINTING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Surface preparation.
- B. Field application of paints.
- C. Scope: Finish exterior surfaces exposed to view, unless fully factory-finished and unless otherwise indicated, including the following:
 1. Exposed surfaces of steel lintels and ledge angles.
- D. Do Not Paint or Finish the Following Items:
 1. Items factory-finished unless otherwise indicated; materials and products having factory-applied primers are not considered factory finished.
 2. Items indicated to receive other finishes.
 3. Items indicated to remain unfinished.
 4. Fire rating labels, equipment serial number and capacity labels, and operating parts of equipment.
 5. Floors, unless specifically indicated.
 6. Glass.
 7. Concealed pipes, ducts, and conduits.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency current edition.
- B. SCAQMD 1113 - Architectural Coatings 1977, with Amendment (2016).
- C. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning 2015, with Editorial Revision (2016).
- D. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning 2018.
- E. SSPC-SP 6 - Commercial Blast Cleaning 2007.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide complete list of products to be used, with the following information for each:
 1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category (e.g. "alkyd enamel").
 2. MPI product number (e.g. MPI #47).
 3. Cross-reference to specified paint system(s) product is to be used in; include description of each system.
- C. Samples: Submit three paper "draw down" samples, 8-1/2 by 11 inches in size, illustrating range of colors available for each finishing product specified.
 1. Where sheen is specified, submit samples in only that sheen.
 2. Where sheen is not specified, discuss sheen options with Architect before preparing samples, to eliminate sheens definitely not required.
- D. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
 2. Extra Paint and Finish Materials: 1 gallon of each color; from the same product run, store where directed, Re: A9.0.
 3. Label each container with color in addition to the manufacturer's label.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified with minimum 10 years experience and approved by manufacturer.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.
- B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- C. Paint Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results, including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.
- C. Do not apply exterior paint and finishes during rain or snow, or when relative humidity is outside the humidity ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- D. Provide lighting level of 80 ft candles measured mid-height at substrate surface.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide paints and finishes used in any individual system from the same manufacturer; no exceptions.
- B. Paints:
 - 1. Base Manufacturer: Sherwin Williams.
 - 2. Behr Process Corporation: www.behr.com.
 - 3. PPG Paints: www.ppgpaints.com.
- C. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 PAINTS AND FINISHES - GENERAL

- A. Paints and Finishes: Ready mixed, unless required to be a field-catalyzed paint.
 - 1. Provide paints and finishes of a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating, with good flow and brushing properties, and capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
 - 2. Supply each paint material in quantity required to complete entire project's work from a single production run.
 - 3. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute paint or finishes or add materials unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.
- B. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content:
 - 1. Provide paints and finishes that comply with the most stringent requirements specified in the following:
 - a. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D--National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings.
 - b. SCAQMD 1113 Rule.
 - 2. Determination of VOC Content: Testing and calculation in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), exclusive of colorants added to a tint base and water added at project site; or other method acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Flammability: Comply with applicable code for surface burning characteristics.
- D. Sheens: Provide the sheens specified; where sheen is not specified, sheen will be selected later by Architect from the manufacturer's full line.
- E. Colors: As indicated in Color Schedule.
 - 1. Extend colors to surface edges; colors may change at any edge as directed by Architect.

2.03 PAINT SYSTEMS - EXTERIOR

- A. Paint E-OP - Exterior Surfaces to be Painted, Unless Otherwise Indicated: Including primed metal.
 - 1. Two top coats and one coat primer.
 - 2. Top Coat(s): Exterior Light Industrial Coating, DTM, Water Based; MPI #161, 163, or 164.
 - 3. Top Coat Sheen:
 - a. Semi-Gloss: MPI gloss level 5; use this sheen at metals.
 - 4. Primer: As recommended by top coat manufacturer for specific substrate.

2.04 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Provide the following unless other primer is required or recommended by manufacturer of top coats.

2.05 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Accessory Materials: Provide primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials as required for final completion of painted surfaces.
- B. Patching Material: Latex filler.
- C. Fastener Head Cover Material: Latex filler.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- B. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially effect proper application.
- C. Test shop-applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to application.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Remove or repair existing paints or finishes that exhibit surface defects.
- D. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces for finishing.
- E. Seal surfaces that might cause bleed through or staining of topcoat.
- F. Remove mildew from impervious surfaces by scrubbing with solution of tetra-sodium phosphate and bleach. Rinse with clean water and allow surface to dry.
- G. Galvanized Surfaces:
 - 1. Remove surface contamination and oils and wash with solvent according to SSPC-SP 1.
 - 2. Prepare surface according to SSPC-SP 2.
- H. Ferrous Metal:
 - 1. Solvent clean according to SSPC-SP 1.
 - 2. Remove rust, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer and blast cleaning according to SSPC-SP 6 "Commercial Blast Cleaning". Protect from corrosion until coated.
- I. Metal Doors to be Painted: Prime metal door top and bottom edge surfaces.

3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual".
- B. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat is applied.

- C. Apply each coat to uniform appearance.
- D. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just prior to applying next coat.
- E. Reinstall electrical cover plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings removed prior to finishing.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged finishes after Substantial Completion.

3.06 COLOR SCHEDULE

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 099123
INTERIOR PAINTING**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Surface preparation.
- B. Field application of paints.
- C. Scope: Finish interior surfaces exposed to view, unless fully factory-finished and unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Both sides and edges of plywood backboards for electrical and telecom equipment before installing equipment.
 - 2. Prime surfaces to receive wall coverings.
 - 3. Mechanical and Electrical:
 - a. In finished areas, paint insulated and exposed pipes, conduit, boxes, insulated and exposed ducts, hangers, brackets, collars and supports, mechanical equipment, and electrical equipment, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. In finished areas, paint shop-primed items.
 - c. Paint dampers exposed behind louvers, grilles, and convector and baseboard cabinets to match face panels.
- D. Do Not Paint or Finish the Following Items:
 - 1. Items factory-finished unless otherwise indicated; materials and products having factory-applied primers are not considered factory finished.
 - 2. Items indicated to receive other finishes.
 - 3. Items indicated to remain unfinished.
 - 4. Fire rating labels, equipment serial number and capacity labels, bar code labels, and operating parts of equipment.
 - 5. Floors, unless specifically indicated.
 - 6. Glass.
 - 7. Concealed pipes, ducts, and conduits.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency current edition.
- B. ASTM D4442 - Standard Test Methods for Direct Moisture Content Measurement of Wood and Wood-Based Materials 2020.
- C. SCAQMD 1113 - Architectural Coatings 1977, with Amendment (2016).
- D. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning 2015, with Editorial Revision (2016).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide complete list of products to be used, with the following information for each:
 - 1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category (e.g. "alkyd enamel").
 - 2. MPI product number (e.g. MPI #47).
 - 3. Cross-reference to specified paint system(s) product is to be used in; include description of each system.
- C. Samples: Submit three paper "draw down" samples, 8-1/2 by 11 inches in size, illustrating range of colors available for each finishing product specified.
 - 1. Where sheen is specified, submit samples in only that sheen.
 - 2. Where sheen is not specified, discuss sheen options with Architect before preparing samples, to eliminate sheens definitely not required.
- D. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.

1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
2. Extra Paint and Finish Materials: 1 gallon of each color; from the same product run, store where directed, Re: A9.0.
3. Label each container with color in addition to the manufacturer's label.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified with minimum ten years experience and approved by manufacturer.

1.05 MOCK-UP

- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for mock-up.
- B. Provide panel, ten feet long by ten feet wide, illustrating paint color, texture, and finish.
- C. Locate where directed by Architect.
- D. Mock-up may remain as part of the work.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.
- B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- C. Paint Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results, including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.
- C. Provide lighting level of 80 ft candles measured mid-height at substrate surface.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide paints and finishes used in any individual system from the same manufacturer; no exceptions.
- B. Paints:
 1. Base Manufacturer: Sherwin-Williams.
 2. Behr Process Corporation: www.behr.com.
 3. PPG Paints: www.ppgpaints.com/#.
- C. Primer Sealers: Same manufacturer as top coats.
- D. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 PAINTS AND FINISHES - GENERAL

- A. Paints and Finishes: Ready mixed, unless intended to be a field-catalyzed paint.
 1. Provide paints and finishes of a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating, with good flow and brushing properties, and capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
 2. Supply each paint material in quantity required to complete entire project's work from a single production run.
 3. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute paint or finishes or add materials unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.
- B. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content:
 1. Provide paints and finishes that comply with the most stringent requirements specified in the following:

- a. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D--National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings.
- b. SCAQMD 1113 Rule.
- 2. Determination of VOC Content: Testing and calculation in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), exclusive of colorants added to a tint base and water added at project site; or other method acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Flammability: Comply with applicable code for surface burning characteristics.
- D. Sheens: Provide the sheens specified; where sheen is not specified, sheen will be selected later by Architect from the manufacturer's full line.
- E. Colors: As indicated on drawings.
 - 1. Extend colors to surface edges; colors may change at any edge as directed by Architect.
 - 2. In finished areas, finish pipes, ducts, conduit, and equipment the same color as the wall/ceiling they are mounted on/under.
 - 3. In utility areas, finish equipment, piping, conduit, and exposed duct work in colors according to the color schedule.

2.03 PAINT SYSTEMS - INTERIOR

- A. Paint I-OP - Interior Surfaces to be Painted, Unless Otherwise Indicated: Including gypsum board, wood, galvanized steel, aluminum, and acoustical ceilings.
 - 1. Two top coats and one coat primer.
 - 2. Top Coat(s): High Performance Architectural Interior Latex; MPI #138, 139, 140, or 141.
 - 3. Top Coat Sheen:
 - a. Flat: MPI gloss level 1; use this sheen for ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
 - b. Eggshell: MPI gloss level 3; use this sheen at all locations.
 - c. Satin: MPI gloss level 4; use this sheen for items subject to frequent touching by occupants, including door frames and railings.
 - 4. Primer: As recommended by top coat manufacturer for specific substrate.

2.04 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Provide the following unless other primer is required or recommended by manufacturer of top coats.

2.05 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Accessory Materials: Provide primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials as required for final completion of painted surfaces.
- B. Patching Material: Latex filler.
- C. Fastener Head Cover Material: Latex filler.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- B. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially effect proper application.
- C. Test shop-applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.
- D. Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not apply finishes unless moisture content of surfaces are below the following maximums:
 - 1. Gypsum Wallboard: 12 percent.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to application.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

- C. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.
- D. Seal surfaces that might cause bleed through or staining of topcoat.
- E. Gypsum Board: Fill minor defects with filler compound. Spot prime defects after repair.
 1. Remove surface contamination and oils and wash with solvent according to SSPC-SP 1.
 2. Prepare surface according to SSPC-SP 2.
- F. Metal Doors to be Painted: Prime metal door top and bottom edge surfaces.

3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Remove unfinished louvers, grilles, covers, and access panels on mechanical and electrical components and paint separately.
- B. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual".
- C. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat is applied.
- D. Apply each coat to uniform appearance in thicknesses specified by manufacturer.
- E. Dark Colors and Deep Clear Colors: Regardless of number of coats specified, apply as many coats as necessary for complete hide.
- F. Sand wood and metal surfaces lightly between coats to achieve required finish.
- G. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just prior to applying next coat.
- H. Reinstall electrical cover plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings removed prior to finishing.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged finishes after Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 102100
TOILET COMPARTMENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Solid plastic toilet compartments including the following:
 - 1. Floor mounted overhead-braced toilet compartments - Base Bid
 - 2. Ceiling hung toilet compartments - Alternate
 - 3. Privacy screens.
- B. RELATED SECTIONS
 - 1. Section 05 50 00 - Metal Fabrications.
 - 2. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry.
- C. REFERENCES
 - 1. ASTM A 666 - Standard Specification for Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip.
 - 2. ASTM B 221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes.
 - 3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 286 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth.
 - 4. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- D. SUBMITTALS
 - 1. Submit under provisions of Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements.
 - 2. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 - a. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 - b. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - c. Installation methods.
 - 3. Shop Drawings: Provide layout drawings and installation details with location and type of hardware required.
 - 4. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples representing actual product, color, and patterns.
- E. QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - 1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A company regularly engaged in manufacture of products specified in this section, and whose products have been in satisfactory use under similar service conditions for not less than 5 years.
 - 2. Installer Qualifications: A company regularly engaged in installation of products specified in this Section, with a minimum of 5 years experience.
 - 3. Materials: Doors, panels and pilasters, constructed from high density polyethylene (HDPE) resins. Partitions to be fabricated from polymer resins compounded under high pressure, forming a single component which is waterproof, nonabsorbent and has a self-lubricating surface that resists marks from pens, pencils, markers and other writing instruments. Cover all plastic components with a protective plastic masking.
 - 4. Performance Requirements:
 - a. Fire Resistance: Partition materials shall comply with the following requirements, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84:
 - 1) Class A flame spread/smoke developed rating.
 - 2) Class B flame spread/smoke developed rating.
 - b. Material Fire Ratings:
 - 1) National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 286: Pass.
 - 2) International Code Council (ICC): Class B.
- F. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
 - 1. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- G. PROJECT CONDITIONS

1. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
- H. WARRANTY
 1. Manufacturer guarantees its plastic against breakage, corrosion, and delamination under normal conditions for 25 years from the date of receipt by the customer. If materials are found to be defective during that period for reasons listed above, the materials will be replaced free of charge. Labor not included in warranty.

1.02 PART 1 PRODUCTS

A. MANUFACTURERS

1. Acceptable Manufacturer: Scranton Products, which is located at: 801 E. Corey St.; Scranton, PA 18505; Toll Free Tel: 800-445-5148; Fax: 855-376-6161; Email:request info (info@scrantonproducts.com); Web:www.scrantonproducts.com
 - a. Fabricator: Santana Toilet Partitions.
 - b. Fabricator: Comtec Toilet Partitions.
 - c. Fabricator: Capitol Toilet Partitions.
2. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

B. MATERIAL

1. Plastic Panels: High density polyethylene (HDPE) suitable for exposed applications, waterproof, non-absorbent, and graffiti-resistant textured surface.
 - a. Recycled Content; Post Industrial: 25 percent.
2. Zinc Aluminum Magnesium and Copper Alloy (Zamac): ASTM B 86.
3. Stainless Steel Castings: ASTM A167, Type 304.
4. Aluminum: ASTM 6463-T5 alloy.

C. SOLID PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

1. Basis of Design: Hiny Hiders Toilet Partitions as manufactured by and supplied by Scranton Products.
 - a. Style: Ceiling hung toilet compartments
2. Doors, Panels, and Pilasters: 1 inch thick with all edges rounded to a radius. Mount doors and dividing panels based on height of specified system. Refer to plans for all heights and configurations.
3. Headrail: Heavy-duty extruded 6463-T5 alloy aluminum with anti-grip design. Finish to be clear anodized. Fastened to headrail brackets with stainless steel tamper resistant Torx head sex bolt, and fastened at the top of the pilaster with stainless steel tamper resistant Torx head screws.
 - a. Headrail Brackets: 20 gauge stainless steel with satin finish. Secured to the wall with stainless steel tamper resistant Torx head screws.
4. Wall Brackets:
 - a. Stainless Steel Brackets: Stainless steel type 304.
 - b. Brackets are fastened to pilasters with stainless steel tamper resistant Torx head screws and fastened to the panels with stainless steel tamper resistant Torx head sex bolts.
 - c. Bracket Type: Stirrup stainless steel double ear.
5. Door Hardware:
 - a. Continuous Stainless Steel Spring Loaded Hinge:
 - b. Door Strike/Keeper: Heavy-duty extruded aluminum 6436-T5 alloy with a bright dip anodized finish. Secured to pilasters with stainless steel tamper resistant Torx head sex bolts. Bumper shall be made of extruded black vinyl.
 - 1) Style: 3 inches stainless steel emergency access.
 - c. Stainless Steel Paddle Latch and Housing: Heavy-duty stainless steel type 304. Bright finish.
 - d. Provide occupancy indicator.
 - e. Equip outswing handicapped doors with second door pull and door stop.

D. SOLID PLASTIC PRIVACY SCREENS

1. Provide plastic privacy screens in urinal and entry toilet room applications as indicated.
2. Panels, and pilasters, if required, 1 inch thick with edges rounded to a radius. Screens to be mounted at 14 inches above the finished floor. Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line of current colors.
 - a. Aluminum heat sink fastened to bottom edges.
 - b. Recycled content: Minimum 25 percent.

1.03 PART 1 EXECUTION

A. EXAMINATION

1. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
2. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

B. PREPARATION

1. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
2. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
3. Examine areas to receive toilet partitions, screens, and shower compartments for correct height and spacing of anchorage/blocking and plumbing fixtures that affect installation of partitions. Report discrepancies to the architect.

C. INSTALLATION

1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
2. Install partitions rigid, straight, plumb, and level manor, with plastic laid out as shown on shop drawings.
3. Clearance at vertical edges of doors shall be uniform top to bottom and shall not exceed 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
4. No evidence of cutting, drilling, and/or patching shall be visible on the finished work.
5. Finished surfaces shall be cleaned after installation and be left free of imperfections.

D. PROTECTION

1. Protect installed products until completion of project.
2. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 102600
WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Corner guards.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Placement of supports in stud wall construction.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D256 - Standard Test Methods for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics 2010 (Reapproved 2018).
- B. ASTM D543 - Standard Practices for Evaluating the Resistance of Plastics to Chemical Reagents 2021.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2022.
- D. ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials 2022.
- E. ASTM F476 - Standard Test Methods for Security of Swinging Door Assemblies 2014.
- F. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi 2015, with Editorial Revision (2021).
- G. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities 2017.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Indicate physical dimensions and anchorage details.
- C. Samples: Submit samples illustrating component design, configurations, joinery, color and finish.
 - 1. Submit two sections of corner guards, 24 inches long.
- D. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- E. Maintenance Data: Manufacturer's instructions for care and cleaning of each type of product. Include information about both recommended and potentially detrimental cleaning materials and methods.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver wall and door protection items in original, undamaged protective packaging. Label items to designate installation locations.
- B. Protect work from moisture damage.
- C. Protect work from UV light damage.
- D. Store products in either horizontal or vertical position, in compliance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Corner Guards:
 - 1. Inpro; 150 High Impact Corner Guard: www.inprocorp.com.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Impact Strength: Unless otherwise noted, provide protection products and assemblies that have been successfully tested for compliance with applicable provisions of ASTM D256 and/or ASTM F476.
- B. Chemical and Stain Resistance: Unless otherwise noted, provide protection products and assemblies with chemical and stain resistance complying with applicable provisions of ASTM D543.
- C. Fungal Resistance: Unless otherwise noted, provide protection products and assemblies which pass ASTM G21 testing.

2.03 PRODUCT TYPES

- A. Corner Guards - Surface Mounted:
 - 1. Material:
 - a. Vinyl: Snap on cover of 0.080 inch (2mm) thickness shall be extruded from chemical and stain resistant polyvinyl chloride with the addition of impact modifiers. No plasticizers shall be added (plasticizers may aid in bacterial growth).
 - b. Aluminum: Continuous aluminum retainer of 0.070 inch (1.8mm) thickness shall be fabricated from 6063-T5 aluminum, with a mill finish.
 - 2. Components:
 - a. Top caps and bottom caps shall be made of injection molded thermoplastics.
 - b. Fasteners: All mounting system accessories appropriate for substrates indicated on the drawings shall be provided.
 - c. Optional flexible top caps shall be made of injection molded Biopolymer Flex PVC.
 - 3. Size: 3 inches X 3 inches, 90 degree.
 - 4. Corner: Radiused.
 - 5. Color: As indicated on drawings.
 - a. Vinyl Covers, Top and Bottom Caps shall be of a matching color.
 - 6. Length: As indicated on drawings.
 - 7. Substitutions: See Section 016000-Product Requirements.

2.04 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate components with tight joints, corners and seams.
- B. Pre-drill holes for attachment.
- C. Form end trim closure by capping and finishing smooth.

2.05 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Provide wall and door protection systems of each type from a single source and manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that rough openings, concealed blocking, and anchors are correctly sized and located.
- B. Verify that substrate surfaces for adhered items are clean and smooth.
 - 1. Test painted or wall covering surfaces for adhesion in inconspicuous area, as recommended by manufacturer. Follow adhesive manufacturer's recommendations for remedial measures at locations and/or application conditions where adhesion test's results are unsatisfactory.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install components in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, level and plumb, secured rigidly in position to supporting construction.
- B. Position above finished floor at height as indicated on drawings.

3.03 CLEANING

- A. Clean wall and door protection items of excess adhesive, dust, dirt, and other contaminants.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 102800
TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Commercial toilet accessories.
- B. Utility room accessories.
- C. Refer to plans for detailed manufacturer names, model numbers, etc.
 - 1. Owner's vendor provides PTD, SND, SD and TPD. Installed by Contractor
 - 2. All other accessories are furnished by Contractor and installed by Contractor
 - 3. Mop holders are included in the plumbing specs as an accessory to the mop sinks

1.02 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. PPE: Personal Protective Equipment.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design 2010.
- B. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products 2017.

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate the work with the placement of internal wall reinforcement, concealed ceiling supports, and reinforcement of toilet partitions to receive anchor attachments.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit data on accessories describing size, finish, details of function, and attachment methods.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and conditions requiring special attention.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Commercial Toilet Accessories:
 - 1. American Specialties, Inc: www.americanspecialties.com/#sle.
 - 2. Bradley Corporation: www.bradleycorp.com/#sle.
 - 3. Substitutions: Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Provide products of each category type by single manufacturer.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Accessories - General: Shop assembled, free of dents and scratches and packaged complete with anchors and fittings, steel anchor plates, adapters, and anchor components for installation.
 - 1. Grind welded joints smooth.
 - 2. Fabricate units made of metal sheet of seamless sheets with flat surfaces.
- B. Adhesive: Two component epoxy type, waterproof.
- C. Fasteners, Screws, and Bolts: Hot dip galvanized; tamper-proof; security type.
- D. Expansion Shields: Fiber, lead, or rubber as recommended by accessory manufacturer for component and substrate.

2.03 FINISHES

- A. Stainless Steel: Satin finish, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Powder-Coated Steel: Clean, degrease, and neutralize. Follow immediately with a phosphatizing treatment, prime coat, and two finish coats of powder coat enamel.

- C. Galvanizing for Items Other than Sheet: Comply with ASTM A123/A123M; galvanize ferrous metal and fastening devices.
- D. Shop Primed Ferrous Metals: Pretreat and clean, spray apply one coat primer and bake.
- E. Back paint components where contact is made with building finishes to prevent electrolysis.

2.04 COMMERCIAL TOILET ACCESSORIES

- A. Refer to plans for detailed manufacturer names, model numbers, etc. for basis of design.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify exact location of accessories for installation.
- C. For electrically-operated accessories, verify that electrical power connections are ready and in the correct locations.
- D. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on drawings.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Deliver inserts and rough-in frames to site for timely installation.
- B. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturers' instructions in locations indicated on drawings.
- B. Install plumb and level, securely and rigidly anchored to substrate.
- C. Mounting Heights: As required by accessibility regulations, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Grab Bars: As indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Other Accessories: As indicated on drawings.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed accessories from damage due to subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 104400
FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fire extinguishers.
- B. Fire extinguisher cabinets.
- C. Accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FM (AG) - FM Approval Guide current edition.
- B. NFPA 10 - Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers 2022.
- C. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory Current Edition.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide extinguisher operational features.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate cabinet physical dimensions, rough-in measurements for recessed cabinets, and accessories required for complete installation.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special criteria and wall opening coordination requirements.

1.04 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install extinguishers when ambient temperature may cause freezing of extinguisher ingredients.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers:
 1. Ansul, a Tyco Business: www.ansul.com.
 2. Kidde, a unit of United Technologies Corp: www.kidde.com.
 3. Pyro-Chem, a Tyco Business: www.pyrochem.com.
 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets and Accessories:
 1. Larsen's Manufacturing Co: www.larsensmfg.com.
 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers - General: Comply with product requirements of NFPA 10 and applicable codes, whichever is more stringent.
 1. Provide extinguishers labeled by UL (DIR) or FM (AG) for purpose specified and as indicated.
- B. Multipurpose Dry Chemical Type Fire Extinguishers: Carbon steel tank, with pressure gauge.
 1. Class: A:B:C type.
 2. Size: 10 pound.
 3. Temperature range: Minus 40 degrees F to 120 degrees F.

2.03 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

- A. Cabinet Construction: Non-fire rated.
 1. Formed aluminum.
- B. Cabinet Configuration: Semi-recessed type.
 1. Size to accommodate accessories.
 2. Trim: Flat square edge.

3. Provide cabinet enclosure with right angle inside corners and seams, and with formed perimeter trim and door stiles.
- C. Door: 0.036 inch metal thickness, reinforced for flatness and rigidity with nylon catch. Hinge doors for 180 degree opening with two butt hinges.
- D. Door Glazing: Acrylic plastic, clear, 1/8 inch thick, flat shape and set in resilient channel glazing gasket.
- E. Cabinet Mounting Hardware: Appropriate to cabinet, with pre-drilled holes for placement of anchors.
- F. Fabrication: Weld, fill, and grind components smooth.
- G. Finish of Cabinet Exterior Trim and Door: Anodized to clear satin color.
- H. Finish of Cabinet Interior: White colored enamel.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Extinguisher Brackets: Formed steel, chrome-plated.
- B. Lettering: FIRE EXTINGUISHER decal, or vinyl self-adhering, pre-spaced black lettering in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify rough openings for cabinet are correctly sized and located.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Secure rigidly in place.
- C. Place extinguishers in cabinets.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 107316.13 METAL CANOPIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Hanger rod supported shop fabricated aluminum canopy - refer plans for location.
- B. Definition: Extruded Aluminum Canopy System shall consist entirely of extruded aluminum sections (roll-formed decking not acceptable). System shall consist of heli-arc welded, rigid structural bents, decking, fascia, accessory items and hardware to provide a complete system.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.
- B. ASTM E2950 - Standard Specification for Metal Canopy Systems 2014 (Reapproved 2020).
- C. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel 2020, with Errata (2022).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit product data sheets, including material descriptions and finishes, and preparation instructions and recommendations.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prior to commencement of fabrication, submit detailed shop drawings, showing profiles, sections of components, finishes, and fastening details.
- D. Calculations: Provide signed and sealed structural calculations for the canopy, by a professional engineer registered in the State of Oklahoma.
- E. Manufacturer's Qualification Statement.
- F. Erector's Qualification Statement.
- G. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
 - 1. Manufacturer shall warrant the entire system against defects in labor and materials for a period of one (1) year commencing on the date of substantial completion as established in Division One of these specifications.
 - 2. Intention of this warranty is the manufacturer will come onto the jobsite and do all necessary to effect corrections of any deficiencies.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Designer Qualifications: Perform design under direct supervision of a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
 - 1. Comply with applicable code for submission of design calculations as required for acquiring permits.
 - 2. Cooperate with regulatory agency or authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ), and provide data as requested.
- B. Perform work in accordance with AISC 303.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in the manufacture of products similar to those required for this project.
 - 1. Not less than three years of documented experience.
- D. Erector Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section.
 - 1. Not less than five years of documented experience and approved by canopy manufacturer.
- E. Field Measurements: Take field measurements prior to preparation of shop drawings and fabrication where possible, to insure proper fitting of work. However, allow for adjustments within specified tolerances wherever taking of field measurements before fabrication might

- delay work.
- F. Shop Assembly: Pre-assemble units in shop to greatest extent possible and disassemble as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for re-assembly and coordinated installation.
 - G. Coordination: Coordinate work of this section with work of other sections which abut or interface with canopy system.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to project site ready for erection.
- B. Package using methods that prevent damage during shipping and storage on site.
- C. Store materials under cover and elevated above grade.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Refer above for Submittal Requirements.
- C. Metal Canopies: Correct defective work within a one (1) period after Date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Finish Warranty: Provide manufacturer's one year warranty on factory finish against cracking, peeling, and blistering.
- E. Manufacturer shall warrant the entire system against defects in labor and materials for a period of one (1) year commencing on the date of substantial completion as established in Division One of these specifications.
- F. Intention of this warranty is the manufacturer will come onto the jobsite and do all necessary to effect corrections of any deficiencies.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Metal Canopies:
 - 1. Mapes Architectural Canopies: www.mapescanopies.com
 - 2. Victory Awning: www.victoryawning.net
 - 3. Canopy Solutions: www.canopy-solutions.com
 - 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 METAL CANOPIES

- A. Shop Fabricated Metal Canopy
 - 1. Pre-engineered system complying with ASTM E2950.
 - 2. Design and fabricate metal canopy system to resist wind, snow, live, and seismic loads without failure, damage, or permanent deflection in accordance with ASCE 7:
 - a. Loads: In compliance with local building codes.
 - 3. Thermal Movement: Design canopy system to accommodate thermal movement caused by ambient temperature range of 120 degrees F and surface temperature range of 180 degrees F without buckling, failure of joint seals, undue stress on fasteners or other detrimental effects on assembly components.
- B. Configuration: Canopy clearance, fascia profile, and roof covering design as indicated on drawings.

2.03 COMPONENTS

- A. All aluminum extrusions shall be 6063 or 6061 alloy heat treated to a T-6 temper:
 - 1. Framing: 6" X 6" extruded aluminum gutter beams with welded angle clips to support 1-1/2" X 16-gauge min. hat sections.
 - 2. Decking: 2-3/4" X 6" X .078" th. min. extruded aluminum corrugated decking
 - 3. Soffits: MBCI or equal pre-finished Kynar coated sheet metal. 12" wide panels attached to 16 ga min. galvanized hat sections. Minimum soffit panel thickness to be 24-gauge steel or .032" th. aluminum.

4. Fascia: Flat aluminum 5052 alloy sheet .063 to .125 thickness depending on height:
 - a. Thickness:
 - 1) .063" th. min. to accommodate up to 18" vertical fascia height max
 5. Connections: 7" X 7" wall brackets and canopy mounting brackets are to be extruded aluminum.
 6. Hardware: Nuts, bolts, washers, pins, and anchors to be stainless steel or galvanized. Pipe compression sleeves (if required) for building wall attachments to be extruded aluminum. All items shall be sized and specified as required to suit application and per pre-engineered canopy load reactions.
 7. Fasteners:
 - a. Deck Screws – as sized for local wind and load requirements (rivets not permitted)
 - b. Fascia Screws or Rivets: #12, decorative 18-8 non-magnetic stainless steel or size 3/16" by 1/2" grip range aluminum rivets with aluminum mandrel.
 - c. Bolts: All bolts, nuts and washers to be 18-8 non-magnetic stainless steel.
 8. Flashing and sealant: Shall be minimum 0.040-inch aluminum, fabricated to prevent leakage and sealed with Vulkem 116 sealant in gray or color match. Other equivalent sealants are acceptable upon substitution.
- B. Finishes shall Comply with AAMA:
1. AAMA 611 CLASS I COLOR ANODIC FINISH (ANO-215R1) AA-M12C22A41
(Nonspecular, medium etched matte finish with dark bronze anodic coating .7 mils or thicker)

2.04 SHOP FABRICATION

- A. Provide a complete system ready for erection at project site.
- B. Shop fabricate to the greatest extent possible; disassemble if necessary for shipping.
- C. Perform welding in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- D. Fabricate connections for bolt, nut, and washer connectors.
- E. Comply with indicated profiles, dimensional requirements and structural requirements.
- F. Use sections true to details with clean, straight sharply defined profiles and smooth surfaces of uniform color and texture, free from defects impairing strength and durability.
- G. All welding to be done by heli-arc process.
- H. Mechanical joints shall consist of stainless-steel bolts with a minimum of two (2) bolts per fastening. Bolts and nuts shall be installed in a concealed manner utilizing 1/2" thick by 1 1/2" aluminum bolt bars welded to structural members. All such mechanical joints must be detailed on shop drawings showing all locations.
- I. Roof Deck: Extruded aluminum shapes, interlocking self-flashing sections. Shop fabricate to lengths and panel widths required for field assembly. Depth of sections to comply with structural requirements. Provide shop induced camber in deck units to offset dead load deflections as required to meet job specific loads. Internal dams are to be used at non-draining ends of deck.
- J. Expansion joints, design structure for thermal expansion and contraction. Provide expansion joints as required.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Field verify bent locations, dimensions and elevations shown on shop drawings prior to fabrication.
- B. Examine substrates and site area for conditions that might prevent satisfactory installation.
- C. Verify that foundation, electrical utilities, and placed anchors are in correct position.
- D. Verify that bearing surfaces are ready to receive this work.
- E. Do not proceed with installation until all conditions are satisfactory.

3.02 INSTALLATION - FRAMING

- A. Erect framing in accordance with AISC 303.
- B. Provide for erection and wind loads. Provide temporary bracing to maintain structure plumb and in alignment until completion of erection and installation.
- C. Do not field cut or alter structural members without approval.
- D. After erection, prime welds, abrasions, and surfaces not shop primed.

3.03 INSTALLATION - CANOPY COVERING

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Fasten metal decking to steel support members, aligned level and plumb.
- C. Install roof deck sections, accessories and related flashing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide roof slope for rain drainage without ponding water. Align and anchor roof deck units to structural support frames.
- D. Install fascia panels, trim, and flashing.
- E. Separate dissimilar metals using concealed bituminous paint.
- F. Touch-up damaged finish coating using material provided by manufacturer to match original coating.
- G. Replace roof deck panels and other components of the work which have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful minor repair.

3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Level: Plus/Minus 1/8 inch.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Cleaning: Remove protective coverings at time in project construction sequence which will afford greatest protection of work. Clean finished surfaces as recommended by manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect canopy after installation to prevent damage due to other work until Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 122400 WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Interior manual roller shades.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. WCMA A100.1 - Safety of Window Covering Products 2018.

1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week prior to commencing work related to products of this section; require attendance of affected installers.
- B. Sequencing:
 - 1. Do not fabricate shades until field dimensions for each opening have been taken with field conditions in place.
 - 2. Do not install shades until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets, including materials, finishes, fabrication details, dimensions, profiles, mounting requirements, and accessories.
- C. Selection Samples: Include fabric samples in full range of available colors and patterns.
- D. Verification Samples: Minimum size 6 inches square, representing actual materials, color and pattern.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than five years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of this type with minimum five years of documented experience with shading systems of similar size and type.

1.06 MOCK-UP

- A. Mock-Up: Provide full size mock-up of window shade system complete with selected shade fabric including example of seams and batten pockets when applicable.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of light and privacy characteristics of fabric prior to fabrication.
 - 2. Full-sized mock-up may become part of the final installation.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver shades in manufacturer's unopened packaging, labeled to identify each shade for each opening.
- B. Handle and store shades in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

1.09 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's warranty from Date of Substantial Completion, covering the following:
 - 1. Shade Hardware: One year.
 - 2. Fabric: One year.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Interior Manually Operated Roller Shades:
 - 1. SWFcontract, a division of Springs Window Fashions, LLC.: www.swfcontract.com.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 ROLLER SHADES

- A. General:
 - 1. Provide shade system components that are easy to remove or adjust without removal of mounted shade brackets.
 - 2. Provide shade system that operates smoothly when shades are raised or lowered.
- B. Roller Shades:
 - 1. Basis of Design: Refer Sheet A9.0 for Basis of Design.
 - 2. Description - Interior Roller Shades: Single roller, manually operated fabric window shade system complete with mounting brackets, roller tubes, hembars, hardware, and accessories.
 - a. Mounting: As indicated on drawings..
 - b. Size: As indicated on drawings.
 - c. Fabric: Per Sheet A9.0
 - 3. Brackets and Mounting Hardware: As recommended by manufacturer for mounting indicated and to accommodate shade fabric roll-up size and weight.
 - 4. Roller Tubes: As required for type of shade operation.
 - 5. Hembars: Designed to maintain bottom of shade straight and flat.
 - 6. Manual Operation for Interior Shades:
 - a. Clutch Operator: Manufacturer's standard material and design, permanently lubricated.
 - b. Drive Chain: Continuous loop beaded ball chain, 95 pounds minimum breaking strength. Provide upper and lower limit stops.
 - c. Chain Retainer:
 - 1) Chain tensioning device complying with WCMA A100.1.
 - 7. Accessories:
 - a. Fascia: Extruded aluminum, size as required to conceal shade mounting, attachable to brackets without exposed fasteners; baked enamel finish.
 - 1) Color: Clear Anodized.
 - 2) Profile: Square.
 - b. End Caps: Provide manufacturer's standard end caps to cover exposed ends of brackets.
 - c. Lifting Cables: Nylon coated cable for lifting bottom-up type shades.
 - d. Fasteners: Noncorrosive, and as recommended by shade manufacturer.

2.03 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Field measure finished openings prior to ordering or fabrication.
- B. Dimensional Tolerances: Fabricate shades to fit openings within specified tolerances.
 - 1. Vertical Dimensions: Fill openings from head to sill with 1/2 inch space between bottom bar and window stool.
 - 2. Horizontal Dimensions - Inside Mounting: Fill openings from jamb to jamb.
- C. At openings requiring continuous multiple shade units with separate rollers, locate roller joints at window mullion centers; butt rollers end-to-end.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine finished openings for deficiencies that may preclude satisfactory installation.

- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- C. Start of installation shall be considered acceptance of substrates.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces using methods recommended by manufacturer for achieving best result for substrate under the project conditions.
- B. Coordinate with window installation and placement of concealed blocking to support shades.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings, using mounting devices as indicated.
- B. Replace shades that exceed specified dimensional tolerances at no extra cost to Owner.
- C. Adjust level, projection, and shade centering from mounting bracket. Verify there is no telescoping of shade fabric. Ensure smooth shade operation.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean soiled shades and exposed components as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Replace shades that cannot be cleaned to "like new" condition.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from subsequent construction operations.
- B. Touch-up, repair, or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 123600 COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Countertops for architectural cabinet work.
- B. Wall-hung counters and vanity tops.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI A208.1 - American National Standard for Particleboard 2022.
- B. ASTM B211/B211M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Rolled or Cold Finished Bar, Rod, and Wire 2019.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2022.
- D. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards, 2nd Edition 2014, with Errata (2016).
- E. ISFA 3-01 - Classification and Standards for Quartz Surfacing Material 2013.
- F. MIA (DSDM) - Dimensional Stone Design Manual, Version VIII 2016.
- G. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates 2005.
- H. PS 1 - Structural Plywood 2009 (Revised 2019).

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 3. Specimen warranty.
- C. Shop Drawings: Complete details of materials and installation ; combine with shop drawings of cabinets and casework specified in other sections.
- D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.
- E. Test Reports: Chemical resistance testing, showing compliance with specified requirements.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 COUNTERTOPS

- A. Quality Standard: Premium Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
- B. Plastic Laminate Countertops: High-pressure decorative laminate (HPDL) sheet bonded to substrate.
 1. Laminate Sheet: NEMA LD 3, Grade HGS, 0.048 inch nominal thickness.
 - a. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25, maximum; smoke developed index of 450, maximum; when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

- b. Finish: Matte or suede, gloss rating of 5 to 20.
- 2. Exposed Edge Treatment: Hardwood nosing as indicated on drawings, natural spar varnish finish; back and end splashes with square top covered with matching laminate.
- 3. Back and End Splashes: Same material, same construction.
- C. Natural Quartz and Resin Composite Countertops: Sheet or slab of natural quartz and plastic resin over continuous substrate.
 - 1. Flat Sheet Thickness: 3/4 inch, minimum.
 - 2. Natural Quartz and Resin Composite Sheets, Slabs and Castings: Complying with ISFA 3-01 and NEMA LD 3; orthophthalic polyester resin, mineral filler, and pigments; homogenous, non-porous and capable of being worked and repaired using standard woodworking tools; no surface coating; color and pattern consistent throughout thickness.
 - a. Manufacturers:
 - 1) Dal-Tile Corporation: www.daltile.com.
 - 2) Wilsonart: www.wilsonart.com.
 - 3) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 - b. Factory fabricate components to the greatest extent practical in sizes and shapes indicated; comply with the MIA Dimension Stone Design Manual.
 - c. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25, maximum; smoke developed index of 450, maximum; when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - d. Finish on Exposed Surfaces: Polished.
 - e. Color and Pattern: As indicated on drawings.
 - 3. Other Components Thickness: 3/4 inch, minimum.
 - 4. Exposed Edge Treatment: Refer to drawings.
 - 5. Back and End Splashes: Same sheet material, square top; minimum 4 inches high.
 - 6. Skirts: As indicated on drawings.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B211/B211M, 6463 alloy, T5 temper.
- B. Wood-Based Components:
 - 1. Wood fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.
- C. Plywood for Supporting Substrate: PS 1 Exterior Grade, A-C veneer grade, minimum 5-ply; minimum 3/4 inch thick; join lengths using metal splines.
- D. Particleboard for Supporting Substrate: ANSI A208.1 Grade 2-M-2, 45 pcf minimum density; minimum 3/4 inch thick; join lengths using metal splines.
- E. Adhesives: Chemical resistant waterproof adhesive as recommended by manufacturer of materials being joined.

2.03 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate tops and splashes in the largest sections practicable, with top surface of joints flush.
 - 1. Join lengths of tops using best method recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Fabricate to overhang fronts and ends of cabinets 1 inch except where top butts against cabinet or wall.
 - 3. Prepare all cutouts accurately to size; replace tops having improperly dimensioned or unnecessary cutouts or fixture holes.
- B. Provide back/end splash wherever counter edge abuts vertical surface unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Secure to countertop with concealed fasteners and with contact surfaces set in waterproof glue.
 - 2. Height: 4 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solid Surfacing: Fabricate tops and wall panels up to 144 inches long in one piece; join pieces with adhesive sealant in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.
- D. Wall-Mounted Counters: Provide skirts, aprons, brackets, and braces as indicated on drawings, finished to match.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- C. Verify that wall surfaces have been finished and mechanical and electrical services and outlets are installed in proper locations.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install vanities in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings
- B. Securely attach countertops to cabinets using concealed fasteners. Make flat surfaces level; shim where required.
- C. Attach plastic laminate countertops using screws with minimum penetration into substrate board of 5/8 inch.
- D. Seal joint between back/end splashes and vertical surfaces.

3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Variation From Horizontal: 1/8 inch in 10 feet, maximum.
- B. Offset From Wall, Countertops: 1/8 inch maximum; 1/16 inch minimum.
- C. Field Joints: 1/8 inch wide, maximum.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean countertops surfaces thoroughly.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 131010
BULLET RESISTANT PARTITIONS AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Bullet Resistant Transaction Windows.
- B. Bullet Resistant Opaque Fiberglass Armor.
- C. Deal Trays.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry.
- B. Section 08 70 00 - Hardware.
- C. Section 08 81 00 - Glass.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A 666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate and Flat Bar.
- B. ASTM B 209/B 209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.
- C. NIJ Standard 0108.01 - (National Institute of Justice) Standard for Ballistic Resistant Protective Materials.
- D. Underwriters Laboratories: UL 752 - Standard for Bullet Resisting Equipment.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design, fabricate and install all partition materials specified in this section to meet or exceed the requirements of UL 752.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 013000.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 3. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit Manufacturer approved shop drawings detailing plan, section and elevation views as necessary to ensure proper field installation procedures. Coordinate locations with those listed in the Contract Drawings.
- D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.
- E. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples, minimum size 6 inches square, representing actual product, color, and patterns.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: All primary products specified in this section will be supplied by a single manufacturer with a minimum of ten (10) years experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section are to be installed by a single installer with a minimum of five (5) years demonstrated experience in installing products of the same type and scope as specified.
- C. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.
 1. Finish areas designated by Architect.
 2. Do not proceed with remaining work until workmanship, color, and sheen are approved by Architect.
 3. Refinish mock-up area as required to produce acceptable work.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store and dispose of hazardous materials, and materials contaminated by hazardous materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

1.09 WARRANTY

- A. At project closeout, provide to Owner or Owners Representative an executed copy of the manufacturer's standard limited warranty against manufacturing defect, outlining its terms, conditions, and exclusions from coverage.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Bullet Resistant Transaction Windows & Deal Tray:
 - 1. Acceptable Manufacturer: Total Security Solutions, which is located at: 935 Garden Ln.; Fowlerville, MI 48836; Toll Free Tel: 866-304-5070; Tel: 517-223-7807; Fax: 517-223-0805; Email: request info (info@tssbulletproof.com);
- B. Bullet Resistant Opaque Fiberglass Armor.
 - 1. Acceptable Manufacturer: Amortex, which is located at 5926 Corridor Pkwy, Schertz, TX 78154; 210-661-8306; www.armortex.com.
- C. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 016000.

2.02 COMPONENTS

- A. Glazing: Bullet Resistant Glazing:
 - 1. Glazing Type: Laminated polycarbonate.
 - 2. Rating: UL 752 Level 3.
 - 3. Glazing Thickness: 1 1/4 inch
 - 4. All panels finish 48 inches above the teller riser, 60 inches above the teller counter or to the underside of an existing soffit if lower than 100 inches Above the Finished Floor (A.F.F.).
- B. Aluminum Sections: Extruded aluminum alloy 6063 T5 manufactured in accordance with ASTM B209. Anodized or powder coated finish to match the existing decor and be free of sharp edges or burrs when in place.
 - 1. Glazing Channel: U-Channel specifically designed for securing transparencies tightly in place. Angles and stops are only acceptable for top attachment.

2.03 BULLET RESISTANT TRANSPARENCIES

- A. Scope: Bullet-resistant barrier system which maintains an open environment. For use in applications where optical quality, cleanability and long term performance are important.
- B. Glazing: Meets Underwriters Laboratories Standard 752 for bullet resistance and/or tested by H.P. White Laboratory for specified bullet resistance.
 - 1. Glazing Type: Laminated polycarbonate.
 - 2. Glazing Thickness: 1.25 inches (31.7mm).
 - 3. Rating: UL 752 Level 3.

2.04 BULLET RESISTANT OPAQUE FIBERGLASS ARMOR

- A. Bullet resistant fiberglass armor tested and approved to meet U.L. 752 for the level of protection specified.
 - 1. Basis of Design: Amortex O.F. 300 Opaque Fiberglass. www.armortex.com
 - a. Rating: UL 752 Level 3, UN Listed.
 - b. Panel Thickness: 3/8 inch (10mm).

c. Panel Weight: 4.0 Lbs per square foot (19.53 kg/sm).

2.05 DEAL TRAYS

- A. Mounting: Recessed.
 - 1. Dimension: 12 inches by 10 inches by 3 inches, custom.
- B. Finish:
 - 1. Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel.

2.06 STRUCTURAL SUPPORTS

- A. Where installation requires lateral bracing, locate braces no wider than 96 inches on centerlines. The depth of the brace below the counter and vertical support (brace) above the counter must maintain a ratio of at least 20 percent of the total installation height.
- B. Install 1 1/2 inch square steel tube braces below the counter and hoods with a minimum wall thickness of 1/8 inch. Welded in place and include two vertical and horizontal members. Bolt or weld a diagonal member between the two horizontal members.
- C. Extend braces located above the counter and hoods to the top of the acrylic slotted jump shield. Material to be of the specified bullet resistant material. At no time shall the vertical supports be less than 10 inches in depth.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
 - 2. Zurn Industries, LLC
 - 3. (Owner Selection)
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Advanced Products and Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company
 - 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Advanced Products and Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company
 - 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: PVC-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 PVC-pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 PVC-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 210517

SECTION 210518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with finish.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
 - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 210518

SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

1. Section Includes:

1. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
2. Bronze butterfly valves with indicators.
3. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
4. Check valves.
5. Bronze OS&Y gate valves.
6. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
7. NRS gate valves.
8. Indicator posts.
9. Trim and drain valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
2. NRS: Nonrising stem.
3. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
4. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

1. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
 3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
2. Use the following precautions during storage:
 1. Maintain valve end protection.

2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
3. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.
4. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

1. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
 1. Main Level: HAMV - Fire Main Equipment.
 - a. Level 1: HCBZ - Indicator Posts, Gate Valve.
 - b. Level 1: HLOT - Valves.
 - 1) Level 3: HLUG - Ball Valves, System Control.
 - 2) Level 3: HLXS - Butterfly Valves.
 - 3) Level 3: HMER - Check Valves.
 - 4) Level 3: HMRZ - Gate Valves.
 2. Main Level: VDGT - Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices.
 - a. Level 1: VQGU - Valves, Trim and Drain.
 2. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
 1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
 - a. Indicator posts.
 - b. Valves.
 - 1) Gate valves.
 - 2) Check valves.
 - a) Single check valves.
 - 3) Miscellaneous valves.
 3. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.
 4. ASME Compliance:
 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 2. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
 5. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.

6. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for valves.
7. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher as required by system pressures.
8. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
9. Valve Actuator Types:
 1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
 2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 and smaller.

2.2 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS

1. Manufacturers:
 1. Nibco Inc.
 2. Victaulic Company
2. Description:
 1. UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global standard for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 3. Body Design: Two piece.
 4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
 5. Port Size: Full or standard.
 6. Seats: PTFE.
 7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
 8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 9. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
 10. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
 11. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
 12. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

2.3 BRONZE BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

1. Manufacturers:
 1. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corp.
 2. Fivalco Inc.
 3. Milwaukee Valve Company
2. Description:
 1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
 2. Minimum: Pressure rating: 175 psig.
 3. Body Material: Bronze.
 4. Seat Material: EPDM.
 5. Stem Material: Bronze or stainless steel.
 6. Disc: Bronze or Stainless steel with EPDM coating.
 7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.

8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
10. Ends Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

2.4 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

1. Manufacturers:
 1. Nibco Inc.
 2. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corp.
 3. Victaulic Company
2. Description:
 1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron with nylon.
 4. Seat Material: EPDM.
 5. Stem: Stainless steel.
 6. Disc: Ductile iron.
 7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
 8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
 9. Body Design: Lug or wafer, Grooved-end connections.

2.5 CHECK VALVES

1. Manufacturers:
 1. Victaulic Company
 2. Viking Corp.
 3. Nibco Inc.
2. Description:
 1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 3. Type: Single swing check.
 4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
 5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
 6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
 7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
 8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
 9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

2.6 BRONZE OS&Y GATE VALVES

1. Manufacturers:
 1. Nibco Inc.
 2. Zurn Industries, LLC
 3. United Brass Works
2. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Bronze or brass.
4. Wedge: One-piece bronze or brass.
5. Wedge Seat: Bronze.
6. Stem: Bronze or brass.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Threaded.

2.7 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

1. Manufacturers:
 1. Zurn Industries
 2. Nibco Inc.
 3. Victaulic Company
2. Description:
 1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
 3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
 4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
 5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
 6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
 7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
 8. Supervisory Switch: External.
 9. End Connections: Grooved or Threaded.

2.8 NRS GATE VALVES

1. Manufacturers:
 1. Zurn Industries
 2. Nibco Inc.
 3. Victaulic Company
2. Description:
 1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
 4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron with elastomeric coating.
 5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coatin].
 6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
 7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
 8. Supervisory Switch: External.
 9. End Connections: Grooved or Threaded.

2.9 INDICATOR POSTS

1. Manufacturers:
 1. Mueller Co.
 2. Nibco Inc.
2. Description:
 1. Standard: UL 789 and FM Global standard for indicator posts.
 2. Type: Wall.
 3. Base Barrel Material: Cast or ductile iron.
 4. Extension Barrel: Cast or ductile iron.
 5. Cap: Cast or ductile iron.
 6. Operation: Handwheel.

2.10 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

1. Ball Valves:
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Victaulic Company
 - b. Nibco Inc.
 - c. Potter Roemer
 2. Description:
 - a. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
 - b. Body Design: Two piece.
 - c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
 - d. Port size: Full or standard.
 - e. Seats: PTFE.
 - f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
 - g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - h. Actuator: Handlever.
 - i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2-1/2: Threaded ends.
 - j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.
2. Angle Valves:
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Nibco Inc.
 - b. United Brass Works, Inc.
 2. Description:
 - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 - b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
 - c. Ends: Threaded.
 - d. Stem: Bronze.
 - e. Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

3. Globe Valves:
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Nibco Inc.
 - b. United Brass Works, Inc
 2. Description:
 - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 - b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - c. Ends: Threaded.
 - d. Stem: Bronze.
 - e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
 - f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

1. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
2. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
3. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
4. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
5. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE INSTALLATION

1. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve installation requirements and applications:
 1. Division 21 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for application of valves in fire-suppression water-service piping outside the building.
 2. Division 21 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for application of valves in fire-suppression standpipes.
 3. Division 21 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
2. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

3. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
4. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
5. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
6. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
7. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Division 21 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.
8. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections.
9. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

END OF SECTION 210523

SECTION 210533 - HEAT TRACING FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes heat tracing for fire-suppression piping with the following electric heating cables:
 1. Plastic insulated, series resistance.
 2. Self-regulating, parallel resistance.
- B. Related Requirements:
 1. Division 22 "Heat Tracing for Plumbing Piping."
 2. Division 23 "Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 2. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.
- B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable.
 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric heating cables to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-INSULATED, SERIES-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Easy Heat
 - 2. Delta-Therm Corp.
 - 3. Watts Radian
 - 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. Comply with IEEE 515.1.
- C. Heating Element: Single- or dual-stranded resistor wire. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled nonheating leads with connectors at both ends.
- D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Minimum 4.0-mil Kapton with silicone, Tefzel, or polyolefin.
- E. Cable Cover: Aluminum braid hylar outer jacket.
- F. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 150 deg F.
- G. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F.
- H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 and NFPA 13, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- I. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Maximum Heat Output: 6 W/ft..
 - 2. Piping Diameter: NPS.
 - 3. Spiral Wrap Pitch: 1 inch.
 - 4. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Circuit Connection:
 - a. Volts: 120.
 - b. Phase: 1.
 - c. Hertz: 60.
 - d. Full-Load Amperes: 1.
 - e. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: 20.
 - f. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: 20.

2.2 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Easy Heat
 - 2. Delta-Therm Corp.

3. Brisk Heat
4. (Owner Selection)

B. Comply with IEEE 515.1.

C. Heating Element: Pair of parallel No. 16 AWG, nickel-coated, stranded copper bus wires embedded in crosslinked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable shall be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.

D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.

E. Cable Cover: Stainless-steel braid and polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.

F. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 150 deg F.

G. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F.

H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

I. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Maximum Heat Output: 8 W/ft.
2. Piping Diameter: NPS.
3. Spiral Wrap Pitch: 1 inch.
4. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Circuit Connection:

- a. Volts: 120.
- b. Phase: 1.
- c. Hertz: 60.
- d. Full-Load Amperes: 1.
- e. Minimum Circuit Ampacity: 20.
- f. Maximum Overcurrent Protection: 20.

2.3 CONTROLS

- A. Remote bulb unit with adjustable temperature range from 30 to 50 deg F.
- B. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected cable.
- C. Remote bulb on capillary, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing pipe-wall temperature.
- D. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

- B. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.
1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches, 3/4 inch minimum.
 2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches or Larger: 1-1/2 inches minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install electric heating cable where indicated and according to NFPA 70 and NFPA 13.
- B. Install electric heating cable across expansion joints according to manufacturer's written instructions; use cable to allow movement without damage to cable.
- C. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.
- D. Install electric heating cables according to IEEE 515.1.
- E. Install insulation over piping with electric cables according to Division 21 "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
- F. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.
- G. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Connect heat-tracing controls to fire-alarm system according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements in Division 28 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System." "Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
 - 2. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
 - 3. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.
- D. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounted cables.
- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed heating cables, including nonheating leads, from damage during construction.
- B. Remove and replace damaged heat-tracing cables.

END OF SECTION 210533

SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Stencils.
5. Valve tags.
6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve Schedules: Valve numbering scheme.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brady Corp.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Craftmark Pipe Markers
 - d. (Owner Selection)
2. Material and Thickness: anodized aluminum, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: White.
4. Background Color: Red.

5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. **Manufacturers:**
 - a. Brady Corp.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Craftmark Pipe Markers
 - d. (Owner Selection)
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: White.
4. Background Color: Red.
5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment-Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. **Manufacturers:**
 - a. Brady Corp.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Craftmark Pipe Markers
 - d. (Owner Selection)
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: White.

- D. Background Color: Red.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brady Corp.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Craftmark Pipe Markers
 - d. (Owner Selection)
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
- F. Pipe-Label Colors:
 - 1. Background Color: Safety Red.
 - 2. Letter Color: White.

2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Piping:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brimar Industries, Inc.

- b. Craftmark Pipe Markers
 - c. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
 - d. (Owner Selection)
2. Lettering Size: At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
 3. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
 4. Stencil Paint: Safety Red, exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 5. Identification Paint: White, exterior, acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brady Corp.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Craftmark Pipe Markers
 - d. (Owner Selection)
- B. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 1. Tag Material: Stainless steel, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Fasteners: Brass beaded chain or S-hook.
 3. Valve-Tag Color: Safety Red.
 4. Letter Color: White.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inchond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brady Corp.
 - b. LEM Products Inc.
 - c. Craftmark Pipe Markers
 - d. (Owner Selection)
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches.
 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Color: Safety Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe-Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

- D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Fire-Suppression Standpipe: 2 inches, round.
 - b. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: 2 inches, round.
 - c. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: 2 inches, round.
 - d. Foam-Water System: 2 inches, round.
 - e. Clean-Agent Fire-Extinguishing System: 2 inches, round.

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 210553

SECTION 210700 - FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Insulating indoor engine coolant piping for remote radiator of engine-driven fire pump.
2. Insulating indoor engine exhaust piping and silencer.
3. Insulating indoor and outdoor equipment.
4. Insulating outdoor piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties and equipment connections.
 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
 8. Detail field application for fire-suppression water storage tanks.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
 2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
 3. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
 4. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
 5. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
 - 1. Piping Mockups:
 - a. One 10-foot section of NPS 2 straight pipe.
 - b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.
 - c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
 - d. One NPS 2 or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 or larger valve.
 - e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
 - f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
 - g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
 - h. One pressure temperature tap.
 - i. One mechanical coupling.
 - 2. Equipment Mockups:
 - a. One tank or vessel.
 - 3. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
 - 4. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
 - 6. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

7. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
8. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application and equipment Installer for equipment insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Calcium Silicate:
 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Industrial Insulation Group, LLC
 - b. (Owner Selection)
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 3. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corp.
 - b. (Owner Selection)
 - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
 - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 - 4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
 - 5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
 - 6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
 - 7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
 - b. Armacell LLC
 - c. (Owner Selection)
- I. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Owen Corning
 - d. (Owner Selection)
- J. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide insulation without factory-applied jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Owen Corning
 - d. (Owner Selection)
- K. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Knauf Insulation
 - b. Owen Corning
 - c. (Owner Selection)
 2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 3. Type II, 1200 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- L. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Owen Corning
 - d. (Owner Selection)
- M. Phenolic:
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Kingspan Tarec Industrial Insulation
 - b. (Owner Selection)
 2. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
 3. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
 4. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
 5. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - a. Preformed Pipe Insulation: None.
 - b. Board for Equipment Applications: None.
- N. Polyisocyanurate: Unfaced, preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Duna USA Inc.
 - b. Dyplast Products
 - c. Elliott Company.
 - d. (Owner Selection)
 2. Comply with ASTM C 591, Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F after 180 days of aging.
 3. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thickness up to 1 inch (25 mm) as tested by ASTM E 84.
 4. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
 5. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

- a. Pipe Applications: None.
 - b. Equipment Applications: None.
- O. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Armacell LLC.
 - b. Nomaco Insulation
 - c. (Owner Selection)
- P. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company
 - b. (Owner Selection)

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, INC.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, INC.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Eagle Bridges
 - c. Vimasco Corp.
- C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Foster Brand
 - b. (Owner Selection)
- D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.
 - b. Armacell LLC
 - c. Foster Brand
 - d. (Owner Selection)
- E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Eagle Brand
 - c. Foster Brand
 - d. (Owner Selection)
- F. Phenolic and Polyisocyanurate Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. (Owner Selection)
- G. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. (Owner Selection)

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Foster Brand
 - b. Knauf Insulation
 - c. Vimasco Corp.
 - d. (Owner Selection)
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Eagle Bridges
 - d. (Owner Selection)
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

D. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Eagle Bridges
 - d. (Owner Selection)
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Vimasco Corp.
 - d. (Owner Selection)
2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment and pipe insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Products:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Eagle Bridges
 - d. (Owner Selection)
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.

B. Joint Sealants for Polystyrene Products:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Eagle Bridges
 - d. (Owner Selection)
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.

C. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
 - b. Foster Brand
 - c. Eagle Bridges
 - d. (Owner Selection)
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.

D. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 - a. Manufacturers:

1. ITW Insulation Systems

5. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 - a. Manufacturers:
 1. ITW Insulation Systems
6. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
 - a. Manufacturers:
 - aa. ITW Insulation Systems

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Pipe Insulation: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
- B. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric for Equipment Insulation: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering equipment.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Childers Brand
- C. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Foster Brand
 - b. Vimasco Corp.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Alpha Associates.
 - b. (Owner Selection)

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Johns Manville
- b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.
- c. Proto Corp.
- d. (Owner Selection)

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.

3. Color: Color as selected by Architect].

4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.

- a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

5. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

C. Metal Jacket:

1. Manufacturers:

- a. ITW Insulation Systems
- b. RPR Products, Inc.
- c. (Owner Selection)

2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

- a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
- b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
- c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:

- 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
- 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
- 3) Tee covers.
- 4) Flange and union covers.
- 5) End caps.
- 6) Beveled collars.
- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.

- a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
- b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
- c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corp.
 - b. Compac Corp.
 - c. Knauf Insulation
 - d. (Owner Selection)
 - 2. Width: 3 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. SK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corp.
 - b. Compac Corp.
 - c. Venture Tape.
 - d. (Owner Selection)
 - 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 - 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
 - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 - 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Compac Corp.

- b. Ideal Tape Co.
 - c. Venture Tape
 - d. (Owner Selection)
 - 2. Width: 2 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Avery Dennison Corp.
 - b. Compac Corp.
 - c. Knauf Insulation
 - d. (Owner Selection)
 - 2. Width: 2 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 - 4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 5 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.
- E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems
 - 2. Width: 3 inches.
 - 3. Film Thickness: 4 mils.
 - 4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
 - 5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.
- F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems
 - b. (Owner Selection)
 - 2. Width: 3 inches.
 - 3. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
 - 5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
 - a. Manufacturers:
 - aa. AGM Industries
 - bb. Gemco
 - cc. Midwest Fasteners
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel, Aluminum or Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 2. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
 - a. Manufacturers:
 - aa. AGM Industries
 - bb. Gemco
 - cc. Midwest Fasteners
 - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, Aluminum, Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
 3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, aluminum or stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

Manufacturers:

 - aa. AGM Industries
 - bb. Gemco
 - cc. Midwest Fasteners
 - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. C & F Wire

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Manholes.
 5. Handholes.
 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Below-Grade Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
 - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
 - 2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
 - 3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
 - 4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
 - a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
 - b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
 - c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
 - f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
 - g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 - 5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
 - 6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
 - 7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.

8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
 9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
 10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

3.6 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and

- unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.7 CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
 3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
 4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
 - 3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 - 3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.8 CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
 - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 - 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
 - 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.10 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
 - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.11 PHENOLIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and applicable insulation joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

- D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
- E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
 - 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.12 POLYISOCYANURATE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
 - 2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch thickness.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
- C. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
 - 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.13 POLYOLEFIN INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.14 POLYSTYRENE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, and make thickness same as adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch thickness.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation.

- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.15 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.
- E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
 2. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
 3. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
 4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch- circumference limit allows for 2-inch- overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket

- to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.16 FINISHES

- A. Equipment and Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 "Exterior Painting" and "Interior Painting."
 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
 2. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.18 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.
- C. Fire-suppression water storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - 2. Flexible Elastomeric: [1 inch (25 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: [1 inch (25 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick and [2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m)] [3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m)] [6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m)] nominal density.
 - 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: [1 inch (25 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 5. Phenolic: [1 inch (25 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 6. Polyisocyanurate: [1 inch (25 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - 7. Polyolefin: [1 inch (25 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.

3.19 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Indoor fire-suppression piping.
 - 2. Underground piping.

3.20 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Indoor Engine Coolant Piping for Remote Radiator of Engine-Driven Fire Pump:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Calcium Silicate: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - b. Cellular Glass: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
- B. Indoor Engine Exhaust Piping and Silencer, All Pipe Sizes: Calcium silicate, 4 inches thick.

3.21 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Fire-Suppression Water Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - c. Phenolic: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
- B. Outdoor Engine Coolant Piping for Remote Radiator of Engine-Driven Fire Pump:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:

- a. Calcium Silicate: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - b. Cellular Glass: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
- C. Outdoor Engine Exhaust Piping and Silencer, All Pipe Sizes: Calcium silicate, 4 inches thick.
- D. Outdoor Fire-Suppression Piping Filled with Water:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - d. Phenolic: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.
 - g. Polystyrene: [2 inches (50 mm)] <Insert dimension> thick.

3.22 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
 - 2. Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 3. Painted Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 4. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish or Corrugated: 0.016 inch thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. None.
 - 2. PVC: 20 mils thick.
 - 3. Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 5. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish or Corrugated: 0.016 inch thick.

3.23 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Equipment, Concealed:

1. None.
2. PVC: 20 mils thick.
3. Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated: 0.020 inch thick.
4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated: 0.020 inch thick.
5. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish or Corrugated: 0.016 inch thick.

D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated: 0.020 inch thick.
2. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish or Corrugated: 0.016 inch thick.

E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:

1. Aluminum, Smooth with 1-1/4-Inch- Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch thick.
2. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth, with 1-1/4-Inch- Deep Corrugations Box Ribs: 0.024 inch thick.

F. Outdoor Exposed Piping:

1. PVC: 20 mils thick.
2. Aluminum, Smooth or Corrugated: 0.020 inch thick.
3. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish or Corrugated: 0.016 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 210700

SECTION 211119 - FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Flush-type fire-department connections.
 2. Yard-type fire-department connections.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each fire-department connection. Contractor to coordinate type of FDC, location and finish with local AHJ.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLUSH-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co.
 2. American Fire Hose and Cabinet
 3. Fire End & Croker Corp.
 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. Standard: UL 405.
- C. Type: Flush, for wall mounting.
- D. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- E. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
- F. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
- G. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
- H. Escutcheon Plate: Rectangular, brass, wall type.

- I. Outlet: With pipe threads.
- J. Body Style: Horizontal.
- K. Number of Inlets: Two.
- L. Outlet Location: Back.
- M. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR"
- N. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
- O. Outlet Size: NPS 4 or NPS 5 or NPS 6 or NPS 8.

2.2 YARD-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co.
 - 2. American Fire Hose and Cabinet
 - 3. Fire End & Croker Corp.
 - 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. Standard: UL 405.
- C. Type: Exposed, freestanding.
- D. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- E. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
- F. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
- G. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
- H. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, floor type.
- I. Outlet: Bottom, with pipe threads.
- J. Number of Inlets: Two.
- K. Sleeve: Not required.
- L. Sleeve Height: 18 inches.
- M. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE"
- N. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
- O. Outlet Size: [NPS 4] [NPS 5] [NPS 6].

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire-department connections.
- B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression standpipe system to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-department connection installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-type fire-department connections.
- B. Install yard-type fire-department connections in concrete slab support. Comply with requirements for concrete in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Install two protective pipe bollards around each fire-department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Division 05 "Metal Fabrications."
- D. Install automatic (ball-drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

END OF SECTION 211119

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Cover system for sprinkler piping.
3. Specialty valves.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Alarm devices.
6. Manual control stations.
7. Control panels.
8. Pressure gages.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 21 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.
2. Division 23 "General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping" for ball, butterfly, check, gate, post-indicator, and trim and drain valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. High-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure higher than standard 175 psig, but not higher than 250 psig.
- B. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

- C. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Domestic water piping.
 2. Compressed air piping.
 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer.
- C. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- F. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- G. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:

1. NFPA 13.
- B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- C. High-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 250-psig minimum working pressure.
- D. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 5 PSI percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
- b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated or determined by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1) Automobile Parking Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - 2) Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - 3) Churches: Light Hazard.

- 4) Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
- 5) Dry Cleaners: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
- 6) General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
- 7) Laundries: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
- 8) Libraries except Stack Areas: Light Hazard.
- 9) Library Stack Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
- 10) Machine Shops: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
- 11) Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
- 12) Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.
- 13) Plastics Processing Areas: Extra Hazard, Group 2.
- 14) Printing Plants: Extra Hazard, Group 1.
- 15) Repair Garages: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
- 16) Residential Living Areas: Light Hazard.
- 17) Restaurant Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
- 18) Solvent Cleaning Areas: Extra Hazard, Group 2.
- 19) Upholstering Plants: Extra Hazard, Group 1.

2. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design: According to NFPA 13 recommendations & UL listing unless otherwise indicated or determined by authorities having jurisdiction

- a. Residential (Dwelling) Occupancy: 0.05 gpm over 400-sq. ft. area.
- b. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
- c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
- d. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
- e. Extra-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.30 gpm over 2500-sq. ft. area.
- f. Extra-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.40 gpm over 2500-sq. ft. area.
- g. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to NFPA 13 recommendations & UL listing unless otherwise indicated or determined by authorities having jurisdiction.

- a. Residential Areas: 400 sq. ft.
- b. Office Spaces: 120 sq. ft.
- c. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
- d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
- e. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
- f. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.

E. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and ASCE/SEI 7.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Galvanized and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.
- C. Galvanized and Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- D. Galvanized and Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.

- E. Galvanized and Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- H. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
 - 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or EPDM rubber gasket.
 - a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
 - b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
 - 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.
 - 1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- J. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Anvil International
 - b. Tyco Fire Products
 - c. Victaulic Company
 - d. Approved Equal
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
 - 3. Painted Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 - 4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.
- K. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM Global-approved, 175-psig pressure rating with steel housing, rubber O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Victaulic Company
 - b. Approved Equal
- L. Alarm Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co, Inc.
 - b. Victaulic Company
 - c. Viking Corp.
 - d. Approved Equal
 - 2. Standard: UL 193.
 - 3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.

4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
6. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.
7. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

M. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co, Inc.
 - b. Tyco Fire Products
 - c. (Owner Selection)
2. Standard: UL 1726.
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: NPS 3/4 .
6. End Connections: Threaded.

N. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co, Inc.
 - b. Tyco Fire Products
 - c. Victaulic Company
 - d. Approved Equal
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

O. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Tyco Fire Products
 - b. Victaulic Company
 - c. Viking Corp.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

P. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Victaulic
 - b. Approved Equal

2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
5. Style 108 Coupling

2.3 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Victaulic Company
 2. Tyco Fire Products
 3. Viking Company
- B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig maximum.
- D. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- E. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: 250-psig minimum.
- F. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
 1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.
 2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
 3. Residential Applications: UL 1626.
 4. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- G. Open Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element Removed: UL 199.
 1. Nominal Orifice: 1/2 inch, with discharge coefficient K between 5.3 and 5.8.
 2. Nominal Orifice: 17/32 inch with discharge coefficient K between 7.4 and 8.2.
- H. Sprinkler Finishes: **Chrome plated, bronze and painted.**
- I. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
 1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat, Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch vertical adjustment.
 2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
- J. Sprinkler Guards:
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Victaulic Company
 - b. Tyco Fire Products
 - c. Viking Company
 2. Standard: UL 199.

3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.4 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Victaulic Company
- b. Tyco Fire Products
- c. Viking Company

2. Standard: UL 753.

3. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.

4. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.

5. Size: 8-1/2-inches diameter.

6. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.

7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.

8. Outlet: NPS 1 drain connection.

C. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.
- b. Notifier
- c. Potter Electric Signal Company
- d. Approved Equal

2. Standard: UL 464.

3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.

4. Size: 6" diameter.

5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.

6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers:

- a. System Sensor
- b. Viking Corp.
- c. Potter Electric Signal Company
- d. Approved Equal

2. Standard: UL 346.

3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.

4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.

5. Type: Paddle operated.

6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.

7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

E. Pressure Switches:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. System Sensor
 - b. Viking Corp.
 - c. Potter Electric Signal Company
 - d. Approved Equal
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

F. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.
 - b. Potter Electric Signal Company
 - c. System Sensor
 - d. (Owner Selection)
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.5 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Ashcroft, Inc.
2. AMETEK, Inc.
3. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
4. Approved Equal

B. Standard: UL 393.

C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.

D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.

E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Division 21 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for exterior piping.
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Division 21 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water service.

3.3 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water supply.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
 - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Division 21 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- N. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- O. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Division 21 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 21 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 21 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 21 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join lightwall steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- I. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
 - 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
- J. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- K. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

3.6 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
 - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 - 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
 - 3. Install deluge valves in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

3.7 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install heat trace on sprinkler piping subject to freezing. Upon approval from AHJ and Engineer, contractor may elect to provide dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space if the contractor coordinates and accepts all additional cost associated with this change from all

affected disciplines. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.

- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required under the direction of low voltage technician.
 6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required under the direction of low voltage technician.
 7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves and pressure-maintenance pumps.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Copper-tube, extruded-tee connections may be used for tee branches in copper tubing instead of specified copper fittings. Branch-connection joints must be brazed.
- D. CPVC pipe, Schedule 40 CPVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints may be used for light-hazard and residential occupancies.
- E. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; uncoated, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
 - 4. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with plain ends; galvanized, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
 - 5. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with [cut-] [or] [roll-]grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 6. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 7. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- F. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with [cut-] [or] [roll-]grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 4. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 5. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- G. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 and larger, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with cut or roll grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

4. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
5. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.

3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Recessed sprinklers unless indicated otherwise.
 3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
 4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Sidewall, dry sprinklers unless indicated otherwise.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
 1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
 2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
 3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
 4. Residential Sprinklers: Dull chrome.
 5. Upright, Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 211313

SECTION 211316 – PRE-ACTION SPRINKLER SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Sprinkler specialty pipe fittings.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Alarm devices.
6. Manual control stations.
7. Control panels.
8. Pressure gages.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 21 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.
2. Division 23 "General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping" for ball, butterfly, check, gate, post-indicator, and trim and drain valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Dry-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Domestic water piping.
 - 2. Compressed air piping.
 - 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
 - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- C. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- E. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Architect's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Double-Interlock Preaction Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing low-pressure air. Actuation of a fire-detection system, located in same area as sprinklers, opens deluge valve, permitting water to flow into sprinkler piping. A closed solenoid valve in the sprinkler piping is opened by another fire-detection device; water will then discharge from opened sprinklers.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
 - 1. NFPA 13.
 - 2. NFPA 13R.
- B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
- D. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: [10] [20] <Insert number> percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
 - 2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
 - a. Automobile Parking Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - b. Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - c. Churches: Light Hazard.
 - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - e. Dry Cleaners: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
 - f. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - g. Laundries: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - h. Libraries except Stack Areas: Light Hazard.
 - i. Library Stack Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
 - j. Machine Shops: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
 - k. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - l. Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.

- m. Plastics Processing Areas: Extra Hazard, Group 2.
 - n. Printing Plants: Extra Hazard, Group 1.
 - o. Repair Garages: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
 - p. Restaurant Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - q. Solvent Cleaning Areas: Extra Hazard, Group 2.
 - r. Upholstering Plants: Extra Hazard, Group 1.
3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
- a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - d. Extra-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.30 gpm over 2500-sq. ft. area.
 - e. Extra-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.40 gpm over 2500-sq. ft. area.
 - f. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.
5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
- a. Office Spaces: 120 sq. ft.
 - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
 - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
 - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
 - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
6. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:
- a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm for 30 minutes.
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm for 60 to 90 minutes.
 - c. Extra-Hazard Occupancies: 500 gpm for 90 to 120 minutes

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
- C. Plain-End-Pipe Fittings: UL 213, ductile-iron body with retainer lugs that require one-quarter turn or screwed retainer pin to secure pipe in fitting.
- D. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 2. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 - 3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.4 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

- B. Pressure Rating:
 - 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Dry-Pipe Valves:
 - 1. Standard: UL 260.
 - 2. Design: Differential-pressure type.
 - 3. Include UL 1486, quick-opening devices, trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
 - 4. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device:
 - 5. Standard: UL 260.
 - 6. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
 - 7. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range, and 175-psig outlet pressure.
 - 8. Air Compressor:
 - a. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - b. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
 - c. Power: 120-V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
- G. Deluge Valves:
 - 1. Standard: UL 260.
 - 2. Design: Hydraulically operated, differential-pressure type.
 - 3. Include trim sets for alarm-test bypass, drain, electrical water-flow alarm switch, pressure gages, drip cup assembly piped without valves and separate from main drain line, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
 - 4. Dry, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include dry, pilot-line actuator; air- and water-pressure gages; low-air-pressure warning switch; air relief valve; and actuation device. Dry, pilot-line actuator includes cast-iron, operated, diaphragm-type valve with resilient facing plate, resilient diaphragm, and replaceable bronze seat. Valve includes threaded water and air inlets and water outlet. Loss of air pressure on dry, pilot-line side allows pilot-line actuator to open and causes deluge valve to open immediately.
 - 5. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device:
 - a. Standard: UL 260.
 - b. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
 - c. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range, and 175-psig outlet pressure.
 - 6. Air Compressor:
 - 7. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - 8. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
 - 9. Power: 120-V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.

10. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

H. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Standard: UL 1726.
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
4. Size: NPS 3/4.
5. End Connections: Threaded.

2.5 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. General Requirements for Dry-Pipe System Fittings: UL listed for dry-pipe service.

B. Branch Outlet Fittings:

1. Standard: UL 213.
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

C. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Pressure Rating: n175-psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Standard: UL 1474.
2. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.6 SPRINKLERS

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

B. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig maximum.

C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.

- D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
 - 1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
 - 2. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- E. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated.
- F. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
 - 1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
 - 2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
- G. Sprinkler Guards:
 - 1. Standard: UL 199.
 - 2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.7 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:
 - 1. Standard: UL 464.
 - 2. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
 - 3. Size: 6-inch minimum diameter.
 - 4. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
 - 5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Pressure Switches:
 - 1. Standard: UL 346.
 - 2. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
 - 3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 - 4. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.
- D. Valve Supervisory Switches:
 - 1. Standard: UL 346.
 - 2. Type: Electrically supervised.
 - 3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 - 4. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
 - 5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

2.8 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" for hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve.

- B. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.9 CONTROL PANELS

- A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned type control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves.
1. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring.
 2. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application
- B. Manual Control Stations: Electric operation, metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- C. Manual Control Stations: Hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 (DN 15) pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- D. Panels Components:
1. Power supply.
 2. Battery charger.
 3. Standby batteries.
 4. Field-wiring terminal strip.
 5. Electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell.
 6. Lamp test facility.
 7. Single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts.
 8. Rectifier.

2.10 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Standard: UL 393.
- B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- C. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.
- D. Label: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.
- E. Air System Piping Gage: Include "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements in Division 21 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for exterior piping.
- B. Install shutoff valve, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping.
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water service.

3.3 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Division 21 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping.
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water supply.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.

- F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- I. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valves to drain piping between fire department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or to outside building.
- K. Connect compressed-air supply to dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- L. Connect air compressor to the following piping and wiring:
 - 1. Pressure gages and controls.
 - 2. Electrical power system.
 - 3. Fire-alarm devices, including low-pressure alarm.
- M. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- N. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Division 21 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- O. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- P. Drain dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- Q. Pressurize and check dry-pipe sprinkler system piping and air compressors.
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 21 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 21 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 21 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.
- I. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- J. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.
- K. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of tube according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- L. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- M. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- N. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.6 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
 - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 - 2. Install [dry-pipe] [and] [deluge] valves with trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
 - a. Install air compressor and compressed-air-supply piping.
 - b. Install air-pressure maintenance device with shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler system; bypass valve for quick system filling; pressure regulator or switch to maintain system pressure; strainer; pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range; and 175-psig maximum inlet pressure.
 - c. Install compressed-air-supply piping from building's compressed-air piping system.

3.7 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 5. Start and run air compressors.
 - 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 - 7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
 - 8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train] [Train] Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with [threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded] [grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved] joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
- D. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
 1. [Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.]
- E. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 and NPS 6, shall be one of the following:
 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.

3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Dry pendent sprinklers or Dry recessed sprinklers.
 3. Wall Mounting: Dry sidewall sprinklers.
 4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Dry pendent sprinklers.
 5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage and quick-response sprinklers where indicated.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
4. Upright,Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 211316

SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 1. Motor controllers.
 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.

3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220513

SECTION 220516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Rubber union connector packless expansion joints.
2. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
3. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
4. Externally pressurized metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
5. Rubber packless expansion joints.
6. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
7. Alignment guides and anchors.
8. Pipe loops and swing connections.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

2.2 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Rubber Union Connector Expansion Joints:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Flex-Hose Co., Inc.](#)
 - b. [Flexicraft Industries.](#)
 - c. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
2. Material: Twin reinforced-rubber spheres with external restraining cables.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 170 deg F, unless otherwise indicated.
4. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

- B. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Flex-Hose Co., Inc.](#)
 - b. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Metraflex Company \(The\).](#)
2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
 - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
 - b. Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
9. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 14 and Larger: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

C. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Company (The).
2. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
3. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Configuration: double joint with base class(es), unless otherwise indicated.
6. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: multi-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.

- a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: threaded.
 - c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.
7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: multi- ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe ends, and carbon-steel shroud.
 - a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

D. Externally Pressurized Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Flex-Hose Co., Inc.](#)
 - b. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Metraflex Company \(The\)](#).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Description:
 - a. Totally enclosed, externally pressurized, multi-ply, stainless-steel bellows isolated from fluid flow by an internal pipe sleeve.
 - b. Carbon-steel housing.
 - c. Drain plugs and lifting lug for NPS 3 and larger.
 - d. Bellows shall have operating clearance between the internal pipe sleeves and the external shrouds.
 - e. Joints shall be supplied with a built-in scale to confirm the starting position and operating movement.
 - f. Joint Axial Movement: 4 inches of compression and 0.75 inch of extension.
4. Permanent Locking Bolts: Set locking bolts to maintain joint lengths during installation. Temporary welding tabs that are removed after installation in lieu of locking bolts are not acceptable.
5. End Connection Configuration: Flanged; one raised, fixed and one floating flange.

E. Rubber Packless Expansion Joints:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Flex-Hose Co., Inc.](#)
 - b. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Metraflex Company \(The\)](#).
2. Standards: ASTM F 1123 and FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
3. Material: Fabric-reinforced rubber complying with FSA-PSJ-703.
4. Arch Type: multiple arches with external control rods.
5. Spherical Type: multiple spheres with external control rods.
6. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
7. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 140 psig at 200 deg F.
8. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 140 psig at 180 deg F.

9. Material for Fluids Containing Acids, Alkalies, or Chemicals: Chlorosulfonyl-polyethylene rubber.
10. Material for Fluids Containing Gas, Hydrocarbons, or Oil: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
11. Material for Water: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
12. End Connections: Full-faced, integral steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

2.3 GROOVED-JOINT EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 1. Anvil International.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled expansion joint made of several grooved-end pipe nipples, couplings, and grooved joints.
- C. Standard: AWWA C606, for grooved joints.
- D. Nipples: Galvanized, ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, steel pipe with grooved ends.
- E. Couplings: 12, flexible type for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber gasket suitable for cold and hot water, and bolts and nuts.

2.4 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

- A. Alignment Guides:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Company (The).
 2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding slider for bolting to pipe.
- B. Anchor Materials:
 1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
 3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
 4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- C. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-PSJ-703.
- D. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping.

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install two guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:

1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 22016

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Galvanized-steel wall sleeves
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - 5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plate finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
 - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 220518

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Filled-system thermometers.
3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
4. Light-activated thermometers.
5. Thermowells.
6. Dial-type pressure gages.
7. Gage attachments.
8. Test plugs.
9. Test-plug kits.
10. Sight flow indicators.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 22 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for domestic water meters and combined domestic and fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
2. Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for water meters.
3. Division 22 "General-Service Compressed-Air Piping" for compressed air gages.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- B. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch 5-inch nominal diameter.
- C. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F and deg C.
- D. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- E. Connector Size: 1/2 inch with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- F. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- G. Window: Plain glass.
- H. Ring: Stainless steel.
- I. Element: Bimetal coil.
- J. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- K. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 - 3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 - 4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 7. Window: Glass.
 - 8. Ring: Stainless steel.
 - 9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Sealed type, plastic 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 - 3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 - 4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.

5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 7. Window: Glass.
 8. Ring: Metal.
 9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with flange and holes for panel mounting.
 3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 7. Window: Glass.
 8. Ring: Stainless steel.
 9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Case: Sealed type, plastic 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with flange and holes for panel mounting.
 3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 7. Window: Glass.
 8. Ring: Metal.
 9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, threaded, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.3 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch nominal size.
 - 3. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 6. Window: Glass.
 - 7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 8. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- B. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Plastic; 6-inch nominal size.
 - 3. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
 - 7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 8. Connector: 3/4 inch with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- C. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Cast aluminum 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 - 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 6. Window: Glass.
 - 7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- D. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Plastic 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.

5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
6. Window: Glass.
7. Stem: Stainless steel and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.4 LIGHT-ACTIVATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Direct-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
 1. Case: Metal 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Scale(s): Deg F and deg C.
 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle
 4. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 5. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 6. Display: Digital.
 7. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
- B. Remote-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
 1. Case: Plastic, for wall mounting.
 2. Scale(s): Deg F and deg C.
 3. Sensor: Bulb and thermister wire.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 4. Display: Digital.
 5. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F.

2.5 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES CSA.
 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.6 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 - 2. Case: Liquid-filled or Sealed; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 - 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 8. Window: Glass.
 - 9. Ring: Stainless steel.
 - 10. Accuracy: plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.
- B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 - 2. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 - 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 8. Window: Glass.
 - 9. Accuracy: plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.
- C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 - 2. Case: Liquid-filled or Sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with flange and holes for panel mounting.
 - 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 8. Window: Glass.
 - 9. Ring: Stainless steel.
 - 10. Accuracy: plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.
- D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 - 2. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with flange and holes for panel mounting.
 - 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 8. Window: Glass.

9. Accuracy: plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.7 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.8 TEST PLUGS

- A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- E. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.9 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- B. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.
- C. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- D. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- E. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

2.10 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

- A. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
- B. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
- C. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- D. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.
- E. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

F. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- J. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- K. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
 - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
 - 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
- L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F.
- C. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F
- D. Retain one or more of first three paragraphs below. If retaining more than one scale range, indicate location of each on Drawings.
- E. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg.
- F. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F.
- G. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.
- H. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg.
- I. Scale Range for Domestic Cooled-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F.

3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- B. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi.
- C. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 200 psi.
- D. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- E. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160.
- F. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi.
- G. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi.

END OF SECTION 220519

SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
4. Bronze swing check valves.
5. Iron swing check valves.
6. Iron gate valves.
7. Iron globe valves.
8. Chainwheels.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 22 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
2. Division 22 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
3. Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
4. Division 22 "General-Service Compressed-Air Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
5. Division 22 "Compressed-Air Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for valves applicable only to this piping.
6. Division 22 "Vacuum Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for valves applicable only to this piping.
7. Division 22 "Gas Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for valves applicable only to this piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.

- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
1. Maintain valve end protection.
 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- B. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
 4. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- D. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- E. Valve-End Connections:
1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- F. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.

- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.

2.4 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - b. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

2.5 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.6 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - c. Hammond Valve.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Composition.
 - g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
 - h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
 - i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.7 IRON GATE VALVES

- A. Class 125, NRS, Iron Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.

- d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.8 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.9 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
 2. Roto Hammer Industries.
 3. Trumbull Industries.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
 1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
 2. Attachment: For connection to butterfly valve stems.
 3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve.

4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for butterfly, gate, and globe valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 1. Shutoff Service: Ball valves.
 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.

3. Throttling Service: Globe , ball, or butterfly valves.
 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
 3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.
 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
 3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
 4. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
 5. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

END OF SECTION 220523

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Pipe positioning systems.
10. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 05 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 22 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 2. Metal framing systems.
 3. Fiberglass strut systems.
 4. Pipe stands.
 5. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel or stainless steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 2. Standard: MFMA-4.
 3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
 4. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
 6. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized.
 7. Paint Coating: Epoxy.
 8. Plastic Coating: Epoxy.
- B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
 3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
 4. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
 6. Coating: Zinc.

2.4 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly similar to MFMA-4 for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
1. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass channel with inturned lips.
 2. Channel Nuts: Fiberglass nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.7 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.

3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.8 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.9 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
- F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- G. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Division 07 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- I. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- J. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- K. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- L. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- M. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- N. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- O. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- P. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- Q. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.

- b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.

3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 "Exterior Painting." "Interior Painting." "High-Performance Coatings."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.

2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- S. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Pipe positioning systems.
10. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 05 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 22 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 2. Metal framing systems.
 3. Fiberglass strut systems.
 4. Pipe stands.
 5. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel or stainless steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 2. Standard: MFMA-4.
 3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
 4. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
 6. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized.
 7. Paint Coating: Epoxy.
 8. Plastic Coating: Epoxy.
- B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
 3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
 4. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
 6. Coating: Zinc.

2.4 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly similar to MFMA-4 for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
1. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass channel with inturned lips.
 2. Channel Nuts: Fiberglass nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.7 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.

3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.8 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.9 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
- F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- G. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Division 07 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- I. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- J. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- K. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- L. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- M. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- N. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- O. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- P. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- Q. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.

- b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.

3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 "Exterior Painting." "Interior Painting." "High-Performance Coatings."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.

2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- S. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220533 - HEAT TRACING FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes plumbing piping heat tracing for freeze prevention, domestic hot-water-temperature maintenance, and snow and ice melting on roofs and in gutters and downspouts with the following electric heating cables:

1. Plastic insulated, series resistance.
2. Self-regulating, parallel resistance.
3. Constant wattage.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 21 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping."
2. Division 23 "Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Schedule heating capacity, length of cable, spacing, and electrical power requirement for each electric heating cable required.

- B. Shop Drawings: For electric heating cable.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric heating cables to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace electric heating cable that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-INSULATED, SERIES-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [Delta-Therm Corporation](#).
 - 2. [Raychem; a brand of nVent](#).
 - 3. [Watts Radiant; A WATTS Brand](#).
- B. Comply with IEEE 515.1.
- C. Heating Element: Single- or dual-stranded resistor wire. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at both ends.
- D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Minimum 4.0-mil Kapton with silicone, Tefzel, or polyolefin.
- E. Cable Cover: Aluminum braid and silicone or Hylar outer jacket.
- F. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 300 deg F.
- G. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F.
- H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- I. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Maximum Heat Output: Per manufacturer's recommendations
 - 2. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Circuit Connection: Per Electrical plans.

2.2 SELF-REGULATING, PARALLEL-RESISTANCE HEATING CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. [Raychem; a brand of nVent](#).
- B. Comply with IEEE 515.1.
- C. Heating Element: Pair of parallel stranded copper bus wires embedded in crosslinked conductive polymer core, which varies heat output in response to temperature along its length. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight. Cable shall be capable of crossing over itself once without overheating.

- D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant polyolefin.
- E. Cable Cover: Stainless-steel braid and polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.
- F. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 150 deg F.
- G. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F.
- H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- I. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Maximum Heat Output: Per manufacturer's recommendations
 - 2. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Circuit Connection: Per Electrical plans.

2.3 CONSTANT-WATTAGE HEATING CABLES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [Chromalox, Inc.](#)
 - 2. [Delta-Therm Corporation.](#)
 - 3. [Raychem; a brand of nVent.](#)
- B. Comply with IEEE 515.1.
- C. Heating Element: Pair of parallel stranded copper bus wires with single-stranded resistor wire connected between bus wires. Terminate with waterproof, factory-assembled, nonheating leads with connectors at one end, and seal the opposite end watertight.
- D. Electrical Insulating Jacket: Flame-retardant fluoropolymer.
- E. Cable Cover: Stainless-steel braid and polyolefin outer jacket with ultraviolet inhibitor.
- F. Maximum Operating Temperature (Power On): 392 deg F.
- G. Maximum Exposure Temperature (Power Off): 185 deg F.
- H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- I. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Maximum Heat Output: Per manufacturer's recommendations
 - 2. Electrical Characteristics for Single-Circuit Connection: Per Electrical plans.

2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Pipe-Mounted Thermostats for Freeze Protection:
 - 1. Remote bulb unit with adjustable temperature range from 30 to 50 deg F.

2. Snap action; open-on-rise, single-pole switch with minimum current rating adequate for connected cable.
 3. Remote bulb on capillary, resistance temperature device, or thermistor for directly sensing pipe-wall temperature.
 4. Corrosion-resistant, waterproof control enclosure.
- B. Precipitation and Temperature Sensor for Snow Melting on Roofs and in Gutters:
1. Automatic control with manual on, automatic, and standby/reset switch.
 2. Precipitation and temperature sensors shall sense the surface conditions of roof and gutters and shall be programmed to energize the cable as follows:
 - a. Temperature Span: 34 to 44 deg F.
 - b. Adjustable Delay-Off Span: 30 to 90 minutes.
 - c. Energize Cables: Following two-minute delay if ambient temperature is below set point and precipitation is detected.
 - d. De-Energize Cables: On detection of a dry surface plus time delay.
 3. Corrosion-proof and waterproof enclosure suitable for outdoor mounting, for controls and precipitation and temperature sensors.
 4. Minimum 30-A contactor to energize cable or close other contactors.
 5. Precipitation sensor shall be freestanding.
 6. Provide relay with contacts to indicate operational status, on or off, for interface with central HVAC control-system workstation.
- C. Programmable Timer for Domestic Hot-Water-Temperature Maintenance:
1. Microprocessor based.
 2. Minimum of four separate schedules.
 3. Minimum 24-hour battery carryover.
 4. On-off-auto switch.
 5. 365-day calendar with 20 programmable holidays.
 6. Relays with contacts to indicate operational status, on or off, and for interface with central HVAC control-system workstation.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Cable Installation Accessories: Fiberglass tape, heat-conductive putty, cable ties, silicone end seals and splice kits, and installation clips all furnished by manufacturer, or as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Warning Labels: Refer to Division 22 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Warning Tape: Continuously printed "Electrical Tracing"; vinyl, at least 3 mils thick, and with pressure-sensitive, permanent, waterproof, self-adhesive back.
1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: 3/4 inch minimum.
 2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches or Larger: 1-1/2 inches minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces and substrates to receive electric heating cables for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Ensure surfaces and pipes in contact with electric heating cables are free of burrs and sharp protrusions.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Install the following types of electric heating cable for the applications described:
 - 1. Snow and Ice Melting on Roofs and in Gutters and Downspouts: Self-regulating, parallel-resistance heating cable.
 - 2. Temperature Maintenance for Domestic Hot Water: Self-regulating, parallel-resistance heating cable.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install electric heating cable across expansion, construction, and control joints according to manufacturer's written instructions; use cable-protection conduit and slack cable to allow movement without damage to cable.
- B. Electric Heating-Cable Installation for Snow and Ice Melting on Roofs and in Gutters and Downspouts: Install on roof and in gutters and downspouts with clips furnished by manufacturer that are compatible with roof, gutters, and downspouts.
- C. Electric Heating-Cable Installation for Freeze Protection for Piping:
 - 1. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.
 - 2. Install electric heating cables according to IEEE 515.1.
 - 3. Install insulation over piping with electric cables according to Division 22 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
 - 4. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.
- D. Electric Heating-Cable Installation for Temperature Maintenance for Domestic Hot Water:
 - 1. Install electric heating cables after piping has been tested and before insulation is installed.
 - 2. Install insulation over piping with electric heating cables according to Division 22 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
 - 3. Install warning tape on piping insulation where piping is equipped with electric heating cables.
- E. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 1. Perform tests after cable installation but before application of coverings such as insulation, wall or ceiling construction, or concrete.
 2. Test cables for electrical continuity and insulation integrity before energizing.
 3. Test cables to verify rating and power input. Energize and measure voltage and current simultaneously.
- D. Repeat tests for continuity, insulation resistance, and input power after applying thermal insulation on pipe-mounted cables.
- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed heating cables, including nonheating leads, from damage during construction.
- B. Remove and replace damaged heat-tracing cables.

END OF SECTION 220533

SECTION 220548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
9. Resilient pipe guides.
10. Elastomeric hangers.
11. Spring hangers.
12. Snubbers.
13. Restraint channel bracings.
14. Restraint cables.
15. Seismic-restraint accessories.
16. Mechanical anchor bolts.
17. Adhesive anchor bolts.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 21 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
2. Division 23 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for devices for HVAC equipment and systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning & Development (for the State of California).

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic-restraint component required.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation and seismic-restraint device.
 - 1. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, due to seismic forces required to select vibration isolators, and due to seismic restraints.
 - 3. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.
 - 4. Seismic-Restraint Details:
 - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
 - c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 - d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are unavailable, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: Refer to plans.
 - 2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: Refer to plans.
 - a. Component Importance Factor: Refer to plans.
 - b. Component Response Modification Factor: Refer to plans.
 - c. Component Amplification Factor: Refer to plans.
 - d. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second): Refer to plans.
 - e. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period: Refer to plans.
 - 3. Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- a. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they are subjected.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Surface Pattern: Smooth pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: elastomeric.
 - a. Surface Pattern: Smooth pattern.
 - b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

2.3 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
2. Mounting Plates:
 - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
 - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.4 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: .

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [CADDY; a brand of nVent.](#)
 - b. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
2. Description: All-directional isolator with seismic restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
 - a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
 - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.5 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators: .
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [CADDY; a brand of nVent.](#)
 - b. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 6. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 7. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

2.6 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing: .
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [CADDY; a brand of nVent.](#)
 - b. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.

5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
 - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - b. Top housing with threaded mounting holes and internal leveling device.

2.7 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint: .
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [CADDY; a brand of nVent](#).
 - b. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
 - a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
 - b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes.
 - c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
 3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.8 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing: .
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [CADDY; a brand of nVent](#).
 - b. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 2. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.

- a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
- b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
- 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
- 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
- 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
- 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.9 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

- A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene.
 - 1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
 - 2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

2.10 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

- A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene.
 - 1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.11 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

- A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods: .
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - 3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

2.12 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
- .
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [CADDY; a brand of nVent.](#)
 - b. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 - 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
 - 8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
 - 9. Self-centering hanger-rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.13 SNUBBERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 1. [CADDY; a brand of nVent.](#)
 - 2. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
- B. Description: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
- 1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.
 - 2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
 - 3. Maximum 1/4-inch air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch-thick resilient cushion.

2.14 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
- 1. [CADDY; a brand of nVent.](#)
- B. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the

other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.15 RESTRAINT CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 1. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
- B. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

2.16 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
 2. Mason Industries, Inc.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.17 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Mason Industries, Inc.
 2. Powers Fasteners.
- B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.18 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 2. [Powers Fasteners.](#)
- B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 VIBRATION CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

D. Equipment Restraints:

1. Install seismic snubbers on plumbing equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.

E. Piping Restraints:

1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.

F. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

G. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.

H. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

I. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

J. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

K. Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping" for piping flexible connections.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
 6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
 7. Measure isolator deflection.
 8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

END OF SECTION 220548

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Stencils.
5. Valve tags.
6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for

- greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Letter Color: White.
 3. Background Color: Black.
 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Piping:
 - 1. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.
 - 2. Stencil Material: Aluminum.
 - 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 4. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 - 2. Fasteners: Reinforced grommet and wire or string.

3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Safety yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 "Interior Painting." or "High-Performance Coatings."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1 on each piping system.
 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 1. Near each valve and control device.
 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.

6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- D. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- E. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
1. Low-Pressure Compressed Air Piping:
 - a. Background: Safety blue.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
 2. High-Pressure Compressed Air Piping:
 - a. Background: Safety blue.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
 3. Domestic Water Piping
 - a. Background: Safety green.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
 4. Sanitary Waste Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Safety black.
 - b. Letter Color: White.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 2 inches round.
 - b. Hot Water: 2 inches round.
 - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: 2 inches round.
 - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: 2 inches round.
 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
 - a. Cold Water: Safety green.
 - b. Hot Water: Safety green.
 - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Safety blue.
 - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural.
 3. Letter Colors:

- a. Cold Water: White.
- b. Hot Water:[White.
- c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: White.
- d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: White.

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220716 - PLUMBING EQUIPMENT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing equipment:

1. Domestic water boiler breechings.
2. Domestic water heat exchangers.
3. Domestic water converters.
4. Domestic water, hot-water pumps.
5. Domestic water storage tanks.
6. Domestic water filter housings.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 22 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 3. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections and access panels.
 4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 5. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
 6. Detail field application for each equipment type.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
 1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
 2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
 3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 22 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. The material descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Insulation Material Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedule and specifications, the drawing schedule shall take precedent.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Domestic Water Boiler Breeching Insulation Schedule" and "Equipment Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- C. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- D. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- E. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- F. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- G. Calcium Silicate:
 - 1. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
- H. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
 - 2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 - 3. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
 - 4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
 - 5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
 - 6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- I. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
- J. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- K. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type V, without factory-applied jacket.
- L. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For equipment applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

- M. High-Temperature, Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type III, without factory-applied jacket.
- N. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- O. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied FSK jacket complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- P. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.
- C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- F. Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a low VOC content.
 2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over insulation.
 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
 4. Color: White or gray.
- B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 4. Color: Aluminum.
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

4. Color: White.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 4. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 5. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 6. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in.) for covering equipment.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. in a Leno weave, for equipment.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 2. Color: White or Color as selected by Architect.
 3. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
- C. Metal Jacket:

1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
 - a. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - b. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 1. Width: 2 inches.
 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 1. Width: 2 inches.
 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.
- E. PVDC Tape: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
 1. Width: 3 inches.

2. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
5. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
 - a.
 - b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

- d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
 - 6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick, stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a.
 - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
 - 7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch wide, stainless steel or Monel.
 - D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- O. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Manholes.
 5. Handholes.
 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe, and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
 2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
 3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
 4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
 - a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
 - b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
 - c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
 - d. Do not over compress insulation during installation.

- e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
 - f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
 - g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
 6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
 7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
 8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
 9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
 10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.
1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
 2. Fabricate boxes from stainless steel, at least 0.050 inch thick.
 3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Domestic Water Boiler Breechings:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation material.
2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

3. On exposed applications without metal jacket, finish insulation surface with a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.
- E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. 33-1/2-inch circumference limit allows for 2-inch overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
 2. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.8 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 "Exterior Painting" and "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.10 DOMESTIC WATER BOILER BREECHING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Round, exposed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches thick.
 - 2. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- B. Round, concealed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches thick.
 - 2. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- C. Rectangular, exposed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches thick.

2. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- D. Rectangular, concealed breeching and connector insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Calcium Silicate: 4 inches thick.
 2. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. High-Temperature Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

3.11 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.
- C. Heat-exchanger (water-to-water for domestic water heating service) insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches thick.
 2. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Mineral-Fiber Board: 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 5. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.
 6. Mineral-Fiber Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
- D. Steam-to-hot-water converter insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Calcium Silicate: inches thick.
 2. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 4. Mineral-Fiber Board: 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 5. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.
 6. Mineral-Fiber Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.
- E. Domestic water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1 inch thick 6-lb/cu. Ft nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Domestic chilled-water (potable) pump insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- G. Domestic hot-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1 inch thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

- H. Domestic water, domestic chilled-water (potable), and domestic hot-water hydropneumatic tank insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1 inch thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 5. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.
 - 6. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- I. Domestic hot-water storage tank insulation shall be one of the following, of thickness to provide an R-value of 12.5.
 - 1. Cellular glass.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Mineral-fiber pipe and tank.
- J. Domestic water storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - 2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1 inch thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 5. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.
 - 6. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- K. Domestic chilled-water (potable) storage tank insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - 2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1 inch thick 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 5. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.
 - 6. Polyolefin: 1 inch thick.
- L. Domestic water filter-housing insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 6-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
 - 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.

3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Equipment, Concealed:
 - 1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils thick.
 - 2. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.020 inch thick.
 - 3. Painted Aluminum, Embossed: 0.020 inch thick.

4. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Stucco Embossed: 0.020 inch 0.024 inch thick.
- D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches
 1. None.
 2. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils thick.
 3. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.032 inch thick.
 4. Painted Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.032 inch thick.
 5. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Stucco Embossed: 0.024 inch thick.
- E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:
 1. Painted Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.032 inch thick.
 2. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Stucco Embossed: 0.024 inch thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Equipment, Concealed:
 1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils thick.
 2. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.032 inch thick.
 3. Painted Aluminum, Stucco Embossed 0.032 inch thick.
 4. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Stucco Embossed: 0.024 inch thick.
- D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.032 inch thick.
 2. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Stucco Embossed with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.024 inch thick.
- E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:
 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.032 inch thick.
 2. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Stucco Embossed 0.024 inch thick.
 3. <Insert jacket type>.

END OF SECTION 220716

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:

1. Domestic cold-water piping.
2. Domestic hot-water piping.
3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
4. Domestic chilled-water piping for drinking fountains.
5. Sanitary waste piping exposed to freezing conditions.
6. Storm-water piping exposed to freezing conditions.
7. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
8. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
2. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
3. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.

4. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.
 1. Piping Mockups:
 - a. One 10-foot section of NPS 2 straight pipe.
 - b. One each of a 90-degree threaded, welded, and flanged elbow.
 - c. One each of a threaded, welded, and flanged tee fitting.
 - d. One NPS 2 or smaller valve, and one NPS 2-1/2 or larger valve.
 - e. Four support hangers including hanger shield and insert.
 - f. One threaded strainer and one flanged strainer with removable portion of insulation.
 - g. One threaded reducer and one welded reducer.
 - h. One pressure temperature tap.
 - i. One mechanical coupling.
 2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.

5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.
- D. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 22 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. The product descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Piping Insulation Material Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedule and specifications, the drawing schedule shall take precedent.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
 - 2. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 - 3. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
 - 4. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
 - 5. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- J. Phenolic:
 - 1. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
 - 2. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
 - 3. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
 - 4. Factory-Applied Jacket: ASJ. Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- K. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- E. Phenolic Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
- F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F
 - 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
 - 4. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
 - 4. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 - 4. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass and Phenolic Products:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
 - 4. Color: White or gray.
- B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 4. Color: Aluminum.
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 4. Color: White.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 2. Color: Color-code jackets based on system or Color as selected by Architect.
 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:
1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
 2. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

- 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- D. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 1. Width: 2 inches.
 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 1. Width: 2 inches.
 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with closed seal.
 2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch closed seal.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.13 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers
1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures
1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.

- a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
 - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 - 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 - 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.

8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.11 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.12 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 "Exterior Painting" and "Interior Painting."
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

- a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
3. Galvanized steel pipe and fittings.
4. Stainless-steel piping
5. CPVC piping.
6. PVC pipe and fittings.
7. PP pipe and fittings.
8. Piping joining materials.
9. Encasement for piping.
10. Transition fittings.
11. Dielectric fittings.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 22 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner's representative no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
2. Do not interrupt water service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. The product descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Piping Material Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedule and specifications, the drawing schedule shall take precedent.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61 Annex G. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."
- C. Comply with NSF Standard 372 for low lead.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and ASTM B 88, Type M water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Copper Unions:
 1. MSS SP-123.
 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- G. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 1. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
 2. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
- H. Copper Push-on-Joint Fittings:
 1. Description:
 - a. Cast-copper fitting complying with ASME B16.18 or wrought-copper fitting complying with ASME B 16.22.
 - b. Stainless-steel teeth and EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end instead of solder-joint ends.

- I. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
 - 1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.
- J. Appurtenances for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
 - 1. Bronze Fittings for Grooved-End, Copper Tubing: ASTM B 75/B 75M copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
 - 2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
 - a. Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606.
 - b. Ferrous housing sections.
 - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
 - d. Bolts and nuts.
 - e. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
 - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- C. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
 - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- D. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
 - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51.
 - 2. Push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
- E. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
 - 2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
- F. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile iron.
 - 2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
- G. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.
- H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe:

1. Fittings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron castings or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron castings with dimensions that match pipe.
2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron-Piping:
 - a. AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe dimensions.
 - b. Ferrous housing sections.
 - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
 - d. Bolts and nuts.
 - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
 - 1) NPS 14 to NPS 18: 250 psig.
 - 2) NPS 20 to NPS 46: 150 psig.

2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
 1. ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Standard Weight.
 2. Include ends matching joining method.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- C. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions:
 1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
 2. Hexagonal-stock body.
 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.
 4. Threaded ends.
- E. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.
- F. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
 1. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Galvanized, ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106/A 106M, steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
 - a. AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions.
 - b. Ferrous housing sections.
 - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
 - d. Bolts and nuts.
 - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
 - 1) NPS 8 and Smaller: 600 psig.
 - 2) NPS 10 and NPS 12: 400 psig.
 - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24: 250 psig..

2.5 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPING

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Schedule 40.
- C. Stainless-Steel Pipe Fittings: ASTM A 815/A 815M.
- D. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
 - 1. Fittings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe: Stainless-steel casting with dimensions matching stainless-steel pipe.
 - 2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
 - a. AWWA C606 for stainless-steel-pipe dimensions.
 - b. Stainless-steel housing sections.
 - c. Stainless-steel bolts and nuts.
 - d. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
 - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
 - 1) NPS 8 and Smaller: 600 psig.
 - 2) NPS 10 and NPS 12 : 400 psig.
 - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24: 250 psig.

2.6 CPVC PIPING

- A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
 - 1. CPVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 and ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80.
 - 2. CPVC Threaded Fittings: ASTM F 437, Schedule 80.
- B. CPVC Piping System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, pipe and socket fittings.
- C. CPVC Tubing System: ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, SDR 11, tube and socket fittings.
- D. Fittings: ASTM F 1807, metal insert and copper crimp rings ASTM F 1960, cold expansion fittings and reinforcing rings.
- E. Fittings: ASSE 1061, push-fit fittings.
- F. Manifold: Multiple-outlet, plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal assembly complying with ASTM F 876; with plastic or corrosion-resistant-metal valve for each outlet.

2.7 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 and ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80.
- C. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D 2464.

2.8 PP PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PP Pipe: ASTM F 2389, SDR 7.4 and SDR 11.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F 2389.

2.9 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F 493.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- H. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.10 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

2.11 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. CPVC or PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
 - b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.

E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Description:

- a. CPVC or PVC four-part union.
- b. Brass or stainless-steel threaded end.
- c. Solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end.
- d. Rubber O-ring.
- e. Union nut.

2.12 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 2. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
 3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F 300 psig.
 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 3. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 4. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 5. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
1. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 2. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
 3. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 4. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 5. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and

calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Division 22 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- H. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Division 22 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- L. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- M. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- N. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- O. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- P. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- Q. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- S. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

- T. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Division 22 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- U. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Division 22 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- G. Push-on Joints for Copper Tubing: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.
- H. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- I. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.

- J. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- K. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Steel Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of pipe as specified. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- L. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- M. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- N. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits or nipples.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Division 22 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Division 22 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
 8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- I. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 7. NPS 6 :12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

8. NPS 8 to NPS 12:12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- J. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 15 feet.
- K. Install vinyl-coated hangers for CPVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 36 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 4. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 5. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 6. NPS 8: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- L. Install supports for vertical CPVC piping every 60 inches for NPS 1 and smaller, and every 72 inches for NPS 1-1/4 and larger.
- M. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 5. NPS 8: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- N. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.
- O. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PP piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: 36 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 4. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 5. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 6. NPS 8: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- P. Install supports for vertical PP piping every 60 inches for NPS 1 and smaller, and every 72 inches for NPS 1-1/4 and larger.
- Q. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-58 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Division 22 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Piping Tests:
 - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
- 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 - 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
- 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.

- d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.

3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
 - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Outlet boxes.
8. Hose stations.
9. Hose bibbs.
10. Wall hydrants.
11. Ground hydrants.
12. Post hydrants.
13. Drain valves.
14. Water-hammer arresters.
15. Air vents.
16. Trap-seal primer valves.
17. Trap-seal primer systems.
18. Specialty valves.
19. Flexible connectors.
20. Water meters.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 22 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
3. Division 22 "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
4. Division 22 "Medical Plumbing Fixtures" for thermostatic mixing valves for sitz baths, thermostatic mixing-valve assemblies for hydrotherapy equipment, and outlet boxes for dialysis equipment.
5. Division 22 "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 14.
- B. The product descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Product Schedules and details on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products shown on the schedule for a specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedule and specifications, the drawing schedule shall take precedent.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1001.
 - 2. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
 - 3. Body: Bronze.
 - 4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
 - 5. Finish: Chrome plated.
- B. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1020.
 - 2. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 3. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
 - 4. Pressure Loss at Design Flow Rate: 5 psi max.
 - 5. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

2.4 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

- A. Water Regulators:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1003.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
 - 3. Design Flow Rate: See Drawings.
 - 4. Design Inlet Pressure: See Drawings.
 - 5. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: See Drawings:
 - 6. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
 - 7. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
 - 8. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
- B. Water-Control Valves:
 - 1. Description: Pilot-operated, diaphragm-type, single-seated, main water-control valve.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig minimum with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot-control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
 - 3. Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
 - a. Pattern: Angle or Globe-valve design.
 - b. Trim: Stainless steel.
 - 4. Design Flow: See Drawings.
 - 5. Design Inlet Pressure: See Drawings.
 - 6. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: See Drawings.
 - 7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

2.5 BALANCING VALVES

- A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
 - 2. Body: Brass or bronze.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
 - 4. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- B. Cast-Iron Calibrated Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Type: Adjustable with Y-pattern globe valve, two readout ports, and memory-setting indicator.
 - 2. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2.
- C. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- D. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
 - 3. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
 - 4. Body: Copper alloy.
 - 5. Port: Standard or full port.
 - 6. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - 7. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
 - 8. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
 - 9. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

2.6 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
 - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.033 inch.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 0.045 inch.
 - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

2.7 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS $\frac{3}{4}$.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

B. Gate-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: Class 125.
3. Size: NPS $\frac{3}{4}$.
4. Body: ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Inlet: NPS $\frac{3}{4}$ threaded or solder joint.
6. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

C. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for ball valves or MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 200-psig minimum CWP or Class 125.
3. Size: NPS $\frac{3}{4}$.
4. Body: Copper alloy or ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Drain: NPS 1/8 side outlet with cap.

2.8 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [AMTROL, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Josam Company](#).
 - c. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.](#)
 - f. [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.](#)
 - g. [Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.](#)
 - h. [Watts Drainage Products](#).
 - i. [Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products](#).
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.9 AIR VENTS

- A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:
 1. Body: Bronze.
 2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
 3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
 4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
 5. Size: NPS 1/2 minimum inlet.
 6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.
- B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:
 1. Body: Stainless steel.
 2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig minimum pressure rating.
 3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
 4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
 5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
 6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

2.10 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Comply with requirements for general-duty metal valves in Division 22 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. CPVC Union Ball Valves:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-122.
 - b. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 150 psig 73 deg F.
 - c. Body Material: CPVC.
 - d. Body Design: Union type.
 - e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Detachable, socket or threaded.
 - f. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Detachable, socket or threaded.

- g. Ball: CPVC; full port.
- h. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- i. Handle: Tee shaped.

C. PVC Union Ball Valves:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-122.
- b. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 150 psig at 73 deg F.
- c. Body Material: PVC.
- d. Body Design: Union type.
- e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Detachable, socket or threaded.
- f. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Detachable, socket or threaded.
- g. Ball: PVC; full port.
- h. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- i. Handle: Tee shaped.

D. CPVC Non-union Ball Valves:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-122.
- b. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 150 psig at 73 deg F.
- c. Body Material: CPVC.
- d. Body Design: Non-union type.
- e. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
- f. Ball: CPVC; full or reduced port.
- g. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- h. Handle: Tee shaped.

E. PVC Non-union Ball Valves:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-122.
- b. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 150 psig at 73 deg F.
- c. Body Material: PVC.
- d. Body Design: Non-union type.
- e. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
- f. Ball: PVC; full or reduced port.
- g. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- h. Handle: Tee shaped.

F. CPVC Butterfly Valves:

1. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 150 psig at 73 deg F.
- b. Body Material: CPVC.
- c. Body Design: Lug or wafer type.
- d. Seat: EPDM rubber.
- e. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- f. Disc: CPVC.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Handle: Lever.

G. PVC Butterfly Valves:

1. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 150 psig at 73 deg F Insert temperature.
- b. Body Material: PVC.
- c. Body Design: Lug or wafer type.
- d. Seat: EPDM rubber.
- e. Seals: PTFE or EPDM-rubber O-rings.
- f. Disc: PVC.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Handle: Lever.

H. CPVC Ball Check Valves:

1. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 150 psig at 73 deg F.
- b. Body Material: CPVC.
- c. Body Design: Union-type ball check.
- d. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Detachable, socket or threaded.
- e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 Detachable, socket or threaded.
- f. Ball: CPVC.
- g. Seals: EPDM- or FKM-rubber O-rings.

I. PVC Ball Check Valves:

1. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 150 psig at 73 deg F.
- b. Body Material: PVC.
- c. Body Design: Union-type ball check.
- d. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Detachable, socket or threaded.
- e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Detachable, socket or threaded.
- f. Ball: PVC.
- g. Seals: EPDM- or FKM-rubber O-rings.

J. CPVC Gate Valves:

1. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 150 psig at 73 deg F.
- b. Body Material: CPVC.
- c. Body Design: Nonrising stem.
- d. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: socket or threaded.
- e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Socket or threaded.
- f. Gate and Stem: Plastic.
- g. Seals: EPDM rubber.
- h. Handle: Wheel.

K. PVC Gate Valves:

1. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 150 psig at 73 deg F.
- b. Body Material: PVC.
- c. Body Design: Nonrising stem.
- d. End Connections for Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Socket or threaded.
- e. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Socket or threaded.
- f. Gate and Stem: Plastic.
- g. Seals: EPDM rubber.
- h. Handle: Wheel.

2.11 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 250 psig.
 - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
 - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- B. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 250 psig.
 - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
 - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.12 WATER METERS

- A. Displacement-Type Water Meters:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C700.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
 - c. Body Design: Nutating disc; totalization meter.
 - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - e. Case: Bronze.
 - f. End Connections: Threaded.
- B. Turbine-Type Water Meters:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C701.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
 - c. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
 - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - e. Case: Bronze.
 - f. End Connections for Meters NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - g. End Connections for Meters NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.
- C. Compound-Type Water Meters:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C702.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150-psig working pressure.
 - c. Body Design: With integral mainline and bypass meters; totalization meter.
 - d. Registration: In gallons or cubic feet as required by utility company.
 - e. Case: Bronze.
 - f. Pipe Connections: Flanged.
- D. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

- E. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- C. Install water-control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- E. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- G. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Division 06 "Rough Carpentry."
- H. Install hose stations with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with thermometer on outlet.
 1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Division 06 "Rough Carpentry."
- I. Install ground hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set ground hydrants with box flush with grade.
- J. Install draining-type post hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. of concrete block at grade.
- K. Set nonfreeze, nondraining-type post hydrants in concrete or pavement.

- L. Set freeze-resistant yard hydrants with riser pipe in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.
- M. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- N. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.
- O. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- P. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.
- Q. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Division 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 26 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
 - 3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
 - 4. Double-check, backflow-prevention assemblies.
 - 5. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
 - 6. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
 - 7. Reduced-pressure-detector, fire-protection, backflow-preventer assemblies.
 - 8. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
 - 9. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 10. Calibrated balancing valves.
 - 11. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
 - 12. Manifold, thermostatic, water mixing-valve assemblies.
 - 13. Photographic-process, thermostatic, water mixing-valve assemblies.
 - 14. Primary water tempering valves.
 - 15. Outlet boxes.
 - 16. Hose stations.
 - 17. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
 - 18. Trap-seal primer systems.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker and backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.
2. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.
3. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
4. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 22 "Domestic-Water Packaged Booster Pumps" for booster systems.
2. Division 33 "Potable Water Supply Wells" for well pumps.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction materials, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Detail pumps and adjacent equipment. Show support locations, type of support, weight on each support, required clearances, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Structural members to which pumps will be attached.
 2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for inline, domestic-water pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For inline, domestic-water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

- A. The equipment descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Equipment Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedules and specifications, the drawing schedules shall take precedent

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.
- C. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- D. Seismic Performance: Inline, domestic-water pumps shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2.3 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
- B. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to requirements on plans.
- C. Pump Construction:

1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.
3. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 220 deg F.
4. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
5. Impeller: stainless steel.
6. Motor: Three speed.

2.4 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, SEPARATELY COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, separately coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontal.
- A. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to requirements on plans.
- B. Pump Construction:
 1. Casing:
 - a. Radially split bronze with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
 - b. Built to permit servicing of pump internals without disturbing the casing or the suction and discharge piping.
 - c. Gauge port tappings at suction and discharge nozzles.
 2. Impeller: Bronze, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
 4. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
 5. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
 6. Bearings: permanently lubricated ball type.
 7. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.
 8. Continuous Operating Temperature: 200 deg F.
- C. Motor: Single speed, with permanently lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently mounted to pump casing.

2.5 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted horizontal.
- A. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to requirements on plans.
- B. Pump Construction:
 1. Casing:

- a. Radially split bronze with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
 - b. Built to permit servicing of pump internals without disturbing the casing or the suction and discharge piping.
 - c. Gauge port tappings at suction and discharge nozzles.
2. Impeller: Bronze, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft with deflector, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 4. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
 5. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
 6. Bearings: permanently lubricated ball type.
 7. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.
 8. Continuous Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.
- C. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; resiliently mounted to pump casing.

2.6 VERTICALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted vertical.
- A. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to requirements on plans.
- B. Pump Construction:
 1. Casing: Radially split bronze, with wear rings and threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections. Include pump manufacturer's base attachment for mounting pump on concrete base.
 2. Impeller: Bronze, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: stainless-steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
 4. Shaft Coupling: Flexible or rigid type if pump is provided with coupling.
 5. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 6. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
 7. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.
 8. Continuous Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.
- C. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; rigidly mounted to pump casing.

2.7 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.8 CONTROLS

- A. Pressure Switches: Electric, adjustable for control of water-supply pump.
 - 1. Type: Water-immersion pressure sensor, for installation in piping.
 - 2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
 - 3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 - 4. Transformer: Provide if required.
 - 5. Power Requirement: 120 V ac.
 - 6. Settings: Start pump at adjustable pressure and stop pump at adjustable pressure.
- B. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
 - 1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
 - 2. Range: 50 to 200 deg F.
 - 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
 - 4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 - 5. Transformer: Provide if required.
 - 6. Power Requirement: 120 V ac.
 - 7. Settings: Start pump at adjustable temperature and stop pump at adjustable temperature.
- C. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
 - 1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
 - 2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, suitable for wall mounting.
 - 3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 - 4. Transformer: Provide if required.
 - 5. Power Requirement: 120 V ac.
 - 6. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.
- D. Time-Delay Relays: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump between water heater and connected hot-water storage tank.
 - 1. Type: Adjustable time-delay relay.
 - 2. Range: Up to five minutes.
 - 3. Setting: Five minutes.
 - 4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
 - 5. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 - 6. Transformer: Provide if required.
 - 7. Power Requirement: 120 V ac.
 - 8. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Limit pump operation to periods of burner operation, plus maximum five minutes after the burner stops.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Mount pumps in orientation complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Pump Mounting:
 - 1. Install vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with cast-iron base mounted on concrete base using vibration isolation type and deflection as specified in Division 22 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." & "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- D. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolation of size required to support pump weight.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 22 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." & "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Division 22 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- E. Install pressure switches in water-supply piping.
- F. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.
- G. Install timers on wall in engineer's office.
- H. Install time-delay relays in piping between water heaters and hot-water storage tanks.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to inline, domestic-water pumps, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic-water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
 - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
 - a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, separately coupled centrifugal pumps.

- b. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - c. Vertically mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - d. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for strainers specified in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties." Comply with requirements for valves specified in the following Division 22:
- 1. "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 3. "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 4. "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 5. Install pressure gauge and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gauge and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gauge tappings where provided or install pressure-gauge connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges and snubbers specified in Division 22 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring between temperature controllers and devices.
- C. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. Inline, domestic-water pump will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 4. Set pressure switches, thermostats, timers, and time-delay relays for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 7. Start motor.
 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
 10. Adjust timer settings.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust inline, domestic-water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123.21

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.
3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 22 "Facility Sanitary Sewers" for sanitary sewerage piping and structures outside the building.
2. Division 22 "Sanitary Sewerage Pumps" for effluent and sewage pumps.
3. Division 22 "Chemical-Waste Systems for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for chemical-waste and vent piping systems.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For hubless, single-stack drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For waste and vent piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Detailed description of piping anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner's Representative no fewer than 5 days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
 - 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 100 psig.
- B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. The product descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Piping Material Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedule and specifications, the drawing schedule shall take precedent.

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy class(es).
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Single-Stack Aerator Fittings: ASME B16.45, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
- C. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
 2. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- D. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 2. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- E. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
1. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
 2. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.5 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Standard Weight class. Include square-cut-grooved or threaded ends matching joining method.
- B. Cast-Iron Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, threaded.
- C. Steel Pipe Pressure Fittings:
 1. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Schedule 40, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
 2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
 3. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- D. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Grooved-Joint, Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 1. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings, ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable-iron castings, ASTM A 234/A 234M forged steel fittings, or ASTM A 106/A 106M steel pipes with dimensions matching ASTM A 53/A 53M steel pipe, and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
 2. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

2.6 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASME A112.3.1, drainage pattern with socket and spigot ends.
- B. Internal Sealing Rings: Elastomeric gaskets shaped to fit socket groove.

2.7 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping:
 - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot ends unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, mechanical-joint, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
 - 3. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint Piping:
 - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot ends unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, push-on-joint, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
 - 3. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
- C. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping: AWWA C151/A21.51, with round-cut-grooved ends according to AWWA C606.
- D. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-End Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings, with dimensions matching AWWA C110/A 21.10 ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A 21.53 ductile-iron fittings, and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
 - 2. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

2.8 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Type DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M, water tube, drawn temper.
- D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- E. Copper Pressure Fittings:
 - 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 - 2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 - 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.9 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.
- C. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
- D. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2235.

2.10 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- C. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
- D. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- E. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
- F. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

2.11 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 1. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 2. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - d. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

3. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
4. Pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - b. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
 - c. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's Standard.
 - d. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Dielectric Unions:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
2. Dielectric Flanges:
 - a.
 - b. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
3. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
4. Dielectric Nipples:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 - 2) Electroplated steel nipple.

- 3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
- 4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- 5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.12 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- B. Material: high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- C. Form: tube.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
 - 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
 - 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
 - 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
 - 2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.
 - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.
 - 3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
 - 4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
 - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
 - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
 - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
 - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Waste: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- O. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
- P. Install stainless-steel piping according to ASME A112.3.1 and applicable plumbing code.
- Q. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- R. Install aboveground ABS piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- S. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- T. Install underground ABS and PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- U. Install engineered soil and waste and vent piping systems as follows:

1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Hubless, Single-Stack Drainage System: Comply with ASME B16.45 and hubless, single-stack aerator fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- V. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600.
1. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside building with restrained joints.
 2. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
 3. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- W. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- X. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- Y. Plumbing Specialties:
1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Division 22 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
 - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 3. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- Z. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- AA. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- BB. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- CC. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
- C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 - 2. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
 - c. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Join stainless-steel pipe and fittings with gaskets according to ASME A112.3.1.
- F. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- G. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- H. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
- I. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendixes.
 - 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendixes.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
 - 2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
 - 3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 - 4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
 - a. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.

- b. NPS 2 and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
 - 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
 - 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples or unions.
 - 3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 Use dielectric flange kits or nipples.
 - 4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty valve installation requirements.
- B. Shutoff Valves:
 - 1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
 - 2. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
 - 3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
 - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
 - 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
 - 4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Division 22 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 - 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 - 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.

7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls.
Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
 6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 7. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
 8. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- J. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 2: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 96 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 10 feet.
- L. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.

6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- M. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- N. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- O. Install supports for vertical ABS and PVC piping every 48 inches.
- P. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-58 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 5. Install horizontal backwater valves in pit with pit cover flush with floor.
 6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts, and drains specified in Division 22 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 7. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.
 - a. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection.
 - b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main.
 2. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
 - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
 - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water.
 - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
 - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.

- a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg.
 - b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
 - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
 - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
- 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.
 - a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours.
 - b. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed ABS and PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.
- E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

END OF SECTION 221316

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Backwater valves.
2. Cleanouts.
3. Air-admittance valves.
4. Roof flashing assemblies.
5. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
6. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
7. FOG disposal systems.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 22 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for trench drains for storm water, channel drainage systems for storm water, roof drains, and catch basins.
2. Division 33 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping" for storm drainage piping and piping specialties outside the building.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
 1. FOG disposal systems.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.
 2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For FOG disposal systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Cultures: Provide 1-gal. bottles of bacteria culture recommended by manufacturer of FOG disposal systems equal to 200 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than two 1-gal. bottles.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 The product descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Equipment Schedules and details on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule or details for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedule and specifications, the drawing schedule shall take precedent.

2.2 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:

1. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
2. Size: Same as connected piping.
3. Body: Cast iron.
4. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
5. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
6. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled, or field modified to hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
7. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

1. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
2. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
3. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
4. Inlet: Threaded.
5. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

C. Horizontal, Plastic Backwater Valves:

1. Size: Same as connected piping.
2. Body: ABS or PVC.
3. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
4. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
5. End Connections: Socket type.

2.4 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping per the piping schedules on drawings.
4. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

B. Stainless-Steel Exposed Cleanouts:

1. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
3. Body Material: Stainless-steel tee with side cleanout as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

C. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M heavy-duty, adjustable housing, adjustable housing cleanout.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
4. Clamping Device: Required.
5. Outlet Connection: Same type as pipe.
6. Closure: Brass plug.
7. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads, setscrews or other device.

8. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Polished bronze material and finish.
9. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
10. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy Duty.
11. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

D. Stainless-Steel Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

1. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Housing: Stainless steel.
4. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
5. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
6. Body or Ferrule: Stainless steel.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet Connection: Same as pipe.
9. Closure: Brass plug.
10. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads, setscrews or other device.
11. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Polished bronze.
12. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
13. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy Duty.

E. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
3. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure Plug:
 - a. Brass.
 - b. Countersunk or raised head.
 - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
 - d. Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
5. Wall Access: Round, stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

F. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:

1. Size: Same as connected branch.
2. Body: PVC.
3. Closure Plug: PVC.
4. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

2.5 AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES

A. Fixture Air-Admittance Valves:

1. Standard: ASSE 1051, Type A for single fixture or Type B for branch piping.
2. Housing: Plastic.
3. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
4. Size: Same as connected fixture or branch vent piping.

B. Stack Air-Admittance Valves:

1. Standard: ASSE 1050 for vent stacks.
2. Housing: Plastic.
3. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
4. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

C. Wall Box for Air-Admittance Valves:

1. Description: White plastic housing with white plastic grille, made for recessed installation. Include bottom pipe connection and space to contain one air-admittance valve.
2. Size: Approximately 9 inches wide by 8 inches high by 4 inches deep.

2.6 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch-thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 8 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
 - a. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.

2.7 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve-and-stack fitting with firestopping plug.
2. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
3. Sleeve: Molded-PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
4. Stack Fitting for plastic stacks: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
5. Special Coating for corrosion-resistant plastic stacks: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564 rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

B. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

- a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.
- C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:
 - 1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
 - 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.
- D. Air-Gap Fittings:
 - 1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
 - 2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
 - 3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
 - 4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
 - 5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- E. Sleeve Flashing Device:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 2 inches above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
 - 2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.
- F. Stack Flashing Fittings:
 - 1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
 - 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- G. Vent Caps:
 - 1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
 - 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- H. Frost-Resistant Vent Terminals:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured or shop-fabricated assembly constructed of copper, lead-coated copper, or galvanized steel.
 - 2. Design: To provide 1-inch enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.
- I. Expansion Joints:
 - 1. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
 - 2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
 - 3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
 - 4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

2.9 FOG DISPOSAL SYSTEMS

A. FOG Disposal Systems:

1. Standard: ASME A112.14.6, for removing solids from and breaking down and digesting suspended fats, oils, and greases from food-preparation or processing wastewater.
2. Flow-Control Fitting: Matching unit size.
3. Strainer Unit: Stainless-steel housing with aluminum cover and removable-basket-type, stainless-steel, wire-mesh strainer. Include pressure plug instead of cover. Include extra basket. Include stainless-steel extension.
4. Media Chamber: Stainless-steel housing and aluminum cover, with internal baffles, piping, plastic coalescing surfaces, and clarifier section with test ports. Include stainless-steel extension.
5. Shelf: Stainless steel, 19-1/2 inches wide by 13 inches high by 8-3/4 inches deep, for metering pump, control devices, and culture bottle.
6. Culture Metering Pump, Timer, Control, and Tubing: Proprietary.
7. Culture: Include 1-gal. bottle, as recommended by unit manufacturer.
8. Piping: Waste and vent piping is specified in Division 22 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

2.10 MOTORS

- ### A. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 22 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, motor shall be large enough, so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.11 SUPPORTS

A. Water Closet Carrier:

1. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
2. Description: Waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install FOG disposal systems on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
 - a. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 33 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for vibration-isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Division 22 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3. Comply with requirements for vibration-isolation devices specified in Division 22 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install backwater valves in building drain piping.
 1. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- C. Support Installation:
 1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
 2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
 3. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate, onto waste-fitting seals; and attach to support.
 4. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.
- D. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- E. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- F. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- G. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- H. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.
 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."
- I. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 2 inches above floor.
- J. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- K. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- L. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.

- M. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- N. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- O. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch (25-mm) clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- P. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- Q. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- R. Assemble components of FOG disposal systems and install on floor.
 - 1. Install trap, vent, fresh-air inlet, and flow-control fitting according to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Install shelf fastened to reinforcement in wall construction and adjacent to unit, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Install culture bottle, culture metering pump, timer, and control on shelf. Install tubing between culture bottle, metering pump, and chamber.
- S. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- T. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. FOG Disposal Systems: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, connect flow-control fitting and fresh-air inlet piping to unit inlet piping, and connect vent piping between trap and media chamber. Connect electrical power.
- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- B. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.
- C. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- D. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- E. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- F. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 07 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- G. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
1. FOG disposal systems.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
1. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 07 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections, and prepare test reports.
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled FOG disposal systems and their installation, including piping and electrical connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain FOG disposal systems. Refer to Division 01 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 221413 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.
3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 22 "Sump Pumps" for storm drainage pumps.
2. Division 33 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping" for storm drainage piping outside the building.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.
2. Storm Drainage, Force-Main Piping: 100 psig.

- B. Seismic Performance: Storm drainage piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For controlled-flow or siphonic roof drainage system. Include calculations, plans, and details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For storm drainage piping, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

2. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm-Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Owner' Representative no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of storm-drainage service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of storm-drainage service without Owner Representative's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. The product descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Piping Material Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedule and specifications, the drawing schedule shall take precedent.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service and Extra Heavy classes.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.

- 2. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
 - 2. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- D. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
 - 2. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Standard Weight. Include square-cut-grooved or threaded ends matching joining method.
- B. Galvanized-Cast-Iron Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12 threaded.
- C. Steel-Pipe Pressure Fittings:
 - 1. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Schedule 40, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
 - 2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
 - 3. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- D. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
 - 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Grooved-Joint, Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings, ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable-iron castings, ASTM A 234/A 234M forged-steel fittings, or ASTM A 106/A 106M steel pipes with dimensions matching ASTM A 53/A 53M steel pipe, and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
 - 2. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Galvanized-Steel Piping: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

2.5 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron, Mechanical-Joint Piping:
 - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, mechanical-joint ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.

3. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Ductile-Iron, Push-On-Joint Piping:
 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, push-on-joint ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
 3. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
- C. Ductile-Iron, Grooved-Joint Piping:
 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51 with round-cut-grooved ends according to AWWA C606.
 2. Ductile-Iron-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - a. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Fittings: ASTM A 536 ductile-iron castings with dimensions matching AWWA C110/A21.10 ductile-iron pipe or AWWA C153/A21.53 ductile-iron fittings and complying with AWWA C606 for grooved ends.
 - b. Grooved Mechanical Couplings for Ductile-Iron Pipe: ASTM F 1476, Type I. Include ferrous housing sections with continuous curved keys; EPDM-rubber center-leg gasket suitable for hot and cold water; and bolts and nuts.

2.6 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast-copper fittings or ASME B16.29, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- E. Copper Pressure Fittings:
 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy fittings or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.7 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.

- B. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
- C. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2235.

2.8 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
- C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

2.9 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
 - 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
 - 4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - 5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - b. Description: Metal, sleeve-type couplings same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
 - c. Center-Sleeve Material: To match pipe type.
 - d. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
3. Dielectric Flanges:
 - a.
 - b. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel-backing washers.
5. Dielectric Nipples:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
 - 3) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - 4) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.10 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Material: High-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch or LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet or tube.
- D. Color: Black.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- K. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Building Storm Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.

- N. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- O. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
- P. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- Q. Install aboveground ABS piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- R. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- S. Install underground ABS and PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- T. Install engineered controlled-flow and siphonic drain specialties and storm drainage piping in locations indicated.
- U. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to storm sewer piping outside building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
 - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- V. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
 - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- W. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- X. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Division 22 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
 - 3. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- Y. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- Z. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- AA. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- BB. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Calked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
- C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828 procedure. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- F. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fittings. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- G. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
- H. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendices.
 - 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendices.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
 - 2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
 - 3. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 - 4. In Underground Force-Main Piping:
 - a. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 - b. NPS 2 and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
 - 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges or flange kits.
4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
 1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
 2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing-check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Division 22 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 6. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
 6. Spacing for 10-foot pipe lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 7. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
 8. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- J. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- L. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 48 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- M. Install supports for vertical ABS and PVC piping every 48 inches.
- N. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
 - 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 2. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor or in pit with pit cover flush with floor.
 - 3. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts, and drains specified in Division 22 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
 - 1. Storm Sewer: To exterior force main.
 - 2. Sump Pumps: To sump pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221413

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Roof drains.
2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
3. Cleanouts.
4. Backwater valves.
5. Trench drains.
6. Channel drainage systems.
7. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
8. Flashing materials.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - See "Writing Guide" Article in the Evaluations for a discussion of this Section's organization and the most efficient way to revise this Section.

- 3.1 The product descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Equipment Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedules and specifications, the drawing schedules shall take precedent.

3.2 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Downspout Adaptors:

1. Description: Manufactured, gray-iron casting, for attaching to horizontal-outlet, parapet roof drain and to exterior, sheet metal downspout.
 2. Size: Inlet size to match parapet drain outlet.
- B. Downspout Boots:
 1. Description: Manufactured, ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron casting, with strap or ears for attaching to building; NPS 4 outlet; and shop-applied bituminous coating.
 2. Size: Inlet size to match downspout and NPS 4 outlet.
- C. Conductor Nozzles:
 1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
 2. Size: Same as connected conductor.
- D. Test Tees:
 1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A 74, ASTM A 888, or CISPI 301, for cleanout test tees.
 2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
 3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
 4. Closure Plug: Countersunk or raised head, brass.
 5. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

3.3 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Cast-Iron, Horizontal Backwater Valves:
 1. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
 2. Size: Same as connected piping.
 3. Body Material: Cast iron.
 4. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
 5. End Connections: Match pipe type.
 6. Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
 7. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.
- B. Cast-Iron, Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:
 1. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
 2. Body Material: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
 3. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
 4. Inlet: Threaded.
 5. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.
- C. Plastic, Horizontal Backwater Valves:
 1. Standard: ASME A112.14.1, for backwater valves.
 2. Size: Same as connected piping.
 3. Body Material: ABS or PVC.
 4. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
 5. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
 6. End Connections: Socket type.

3.4 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

- A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:
 - 1. Standard: ASTM E 814, for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
 - 2. Certification and Listing: Intertek Testing Service NA for through-penetration firestop assemblies.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected pipe.
 - 4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - 5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
 - 6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

3.5 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, 12 oz./sq. ft.
- B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

PART 4 - EXECUTION

4.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 - 2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
 - 3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- B. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.
- C. Install downspout boots at grade with top 12 inches above grade. Secure to building wall.
- D. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.

- E. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 - 2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 - 3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 - 4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- F. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- G. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- H. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.
- I. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in outlet of drains.
- J. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
- K. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- L. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Assemble channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- N. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors at concrete floor penetrations.
- O. Install sleeve flashing device with each conductor passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

4.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

4.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. lead sheets, 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. lead sheets, 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
 - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching the pipe size, with a minimum length of 10 inches and with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
 - D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
 - E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

4.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221423

SECTION 223400 - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial, atmospheric, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
2. Commercial, power-burner, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
3. Commercial, power-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
4. Commercial, gas-fired, high-efficiency, storage, domestic-water heaters.
5. Commercial, coil-type, finned-tube, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters.
6. Commercial, grid-type, finned-tube, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters.
7. Gas-fired, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
8. Residential, atmospheric, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
9. Residential, direct-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
10. Residential, power-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
11. Commercial, oil-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
12. Commercial, large-volume, oil-fired, domestic-water heaters.
13. Residential, oil-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
14. Commercial, gas- and oil-fired, domestic-water heaters.
15. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Commercial domestic-water heaters shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Shop Drawings:
 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of equipment domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.
- C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
 - 2. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, finned-tube, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
- b. Faulty operation of controls.
- c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

a. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
- 2) Controls and Other Components: Two year(s).

b. Commercial, Finned-Tube, Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Heat Exchanger: Five years.
- 2) Controls and Other Components: Two year(s).
- 3) Separate Hot-Water Storage Tanks: Five years.

c. Gas-Fired, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Heat Exchanger: Five years.
- 2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.

d. Residential, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
- 2) Controls and Other Components: One years.

e. Commercial, Oil-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
- 2) Burner: Two year(s).
- 3) Controls and Other Components: Two Three year(s).

f. Residential, Oil-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
- 2) Burner: One year(s).
- 3) Controls and Other Components: One years.

g. Commercial, Gas- and Oil-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters:

- 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
- 2) Burner: Two year(s).
- 3) Controls and Other Components: Two years.

h. Compression Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 The equipment descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Equipment Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedules and specifications, the drawing schedules shall take precedent.
- 2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES
- A. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.
 - B. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.
 - C. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.
 - D. Manifold Kits: Domestic-water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping for field installation, for multiple domestic-water heater installation. Include ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves to isolate each domestic-water heater and calibrated balancing valves to provide balanced flow through each domestic-water heater.
 - E. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1-M, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
 - F. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include pressure rating as required to match gas supply.
 - G. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21/CSA 6.5, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.
 - H. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
 - 2. Oil-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped.
 - I. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.
 - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
 - 2. Oil-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ASME rated and stamped.
 - J. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
 - K. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

- L. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect assembled domestic-water heaters and storage tanks specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters and storage tanks to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Division 01 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Residential, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install residential domestic-water heaters on water-heater stand on floor or domestic-water heater mounting bracket as indicated on plans.
 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- C. Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install tankless, domestic-water heaters at least 18 inches, or as indicated on plans, above floor on wall bracket.

1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- D. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Division 22 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters according to NFPA 54.
 1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
 2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
 3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.
 4. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Division 22 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." or "Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping."
- F. Install oil-fired, domestic-water heaters according to NFPA 31.
 1. Install shutoff valves on fuel-oil supply piping to oil-fired water-heater burners without shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Division 23 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
- G. Install commercial domestic-water heaters with seismic-restraint devices. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 22 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- H. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- I. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- J. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

- K. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- L. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple domestic-water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each domestic-water heater. Include shutoff valve and thermometer in each domestic-water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each domestic-water heater outlet. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping," and comply with requirements for thermometers specified in "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- M. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- N. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.
- O. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for fuel-oil piping specified in Division 23 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
- C. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Division 22 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Or "Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping."
- D. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Division 01 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage, gas-fired, tankless, commercial, oil-fired, and commercial, gas- and oil-fired, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 223400

SECTION 224100 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Bathtubs.
2. Faucets.
3. Lavatories.
4. Showers.
5. Bar sinks.
6. Kitchen sinks.
7. Dishwasher air-gap fittings.
8. Laminar-flow, faucet-spout outlets.
9. Disposers.
10. Hot-water dispensers.
11. Water closets.
12. Toilet seats.
13. Supply fittings.
14. Waste fittings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted plumbing fixtures.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures and faucets to include in emergency, operation, and operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Servicing and adjustments of whirlpool and walk-in baths.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 - 3. Flushometer-Tank Repair Kits: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than two of each type.
 - 4. Toilet Seats: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of walk-in baths and whirlpool baths that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures of unit shell.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls, blowers, pumps, heaters, and timers.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Shells: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Pumps and Blowers: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 4. Warranty Period for Electronic Controls: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLUMBING EQUIPMENT:

- A. The equipment descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Equipment Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedules and specifications, the drawing schedules shall take precedent.

2.2 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing-fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, cabinets, and counters for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install plumbing fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install floor-mounted water closets on closet flange attachments to drainage piping.
- C. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.
- D. Install pedestal lavatories on pedestals and secured to wood blocking in wall.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture.
- F. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.
- G. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- H. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- I. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- J. Install traps on fixture outlets.
 - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.

2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have a disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
- L. Install dishwasher air-gap fitting at each sink indicated to have air-gap fitting. Connect inlet hose to dishwasher and outlet hose to disposer.
- M. Install hot-water dispensers in back top surface of sink or in countertop with spout over sink.
- N. Set bathtubs and shower receptors in leveling bed of cement grout.
- O. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories and sink. Comply with requirements in Division 22 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
- P. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Division 22 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- Q. Seal joints between plumbing fixtures, counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Division 07 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Division 22 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories and sinks. Comply with requirements in Division 22 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust plumbing fixtures and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of plumbing fixtures, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

- C. Provide protective covering for installed plumbing fixtures and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224100

SECTION 230130.52 - EXISTING HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CLEANING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cleaning existing HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and system components.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 23 "Metal Ducts" for cleaning newly installed metal ducts.
 - 2. Division 23 "Nonmetal Ducts" for cleaning newly installed nonmetal ducts.
 - 3. Division 23 "Testing, Adjusting, Balancing for HVAC" for system flow documentation before cleaning and balancing and following cleaning and restoration.
 - 4. Division 23 "Air Duct Accessories" for restoration of opened ducts and plenums with access doors.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. ACAC: American Council for Accredited Certification.
- B. AIHA-LAP: American Industrial Hygiene Association Lab Accreditation Program
- C. ASCS: Air systems cleaning specialist.
- D. CESB: Council of Engineering and Scientific Specialty Boards.
- E. CMI: Certified Microbial Investigator.
- F. CMC: Certified Microbial Consultant.
- G. CMR: Certified Microbial Remediator.
- H. CMRS: Certified Microbial Remediation Supervisor.
- I. EMLAP: Environmental Microbiology Laboratory Accreditation Program.
- J. IEP: Indoor Environmental Professional.
- K. IICRC: Institute of Inspection, Cleaning, and Restoration Certification.
- L. NADCA: National Air Duct Cleaners Association.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Cleaning agents
 - 2. Antimicrobial surface treatments.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data:
 - 1. For an ASCS.
 - 2. For an IEP.
 - 3. For a CMR and a CMRS.
- B. Field Quality-Control Reports:
 - 1. Project's existing conditions.
 - 2. Evaluations and recommendations, including cleanliness verification.
 - 3. Strategies and procedures plan.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Post-Project report.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASCS Qualifications: A certified member of NADCA.
 - 1. Certification: Employ an ASCS certified by NADCA on a full-time basis.
 - 2. Supervisor Qualifications: Certified as an ASCS by NADCA.
- B. IEP Qualifications: CMI who is certified by ACAC and accredited by CESB.
- C. IEP Qualifications: CMC who is certified by ACAC and accredited by CESB.
- D. CMR Qualifications: Certified by ACAC and accredited by CESB.
- E. CMRS Qualifications: Certified by ACAC and accredited by CESB.
- F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 181 and UL 181A for fibrous-glass ducts.
- G. Cleaning Conference: Conduct conference at Project site or site specified by owner or general contractor.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to HVAC air-distribution system cleaning, including, but not limited to, review of the cleaning strategies and procedures plan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HVAC CLEANING AGENTS

- A. Description:
 - 1. Formulated for each specific soiled coil condition that needs remedy.
 - 2. Will not corrode or tarnish aluminum, copper, or other metals.

2.2 ANTIMICROBIAL SURFACE TREATMENT

- A. Description: Specific product selected shall be as recommended by the IEP based on the specific antimicrobial needs of the specific Project conditions.
 - 1. Formulated to kill and inhibit growth of microorganisms.
 - 2. EPA-registered for use in HVAC systems and for the specific application in which it will be used.
 - 3. Have no residual action after drying, with zero VOC off-gassing.
 - 4. OSHA compliant.
 - 5. Treatment shall dry clear to allow continued visual observation of the treated surface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Inspect HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and system components to determine appropriate methods, tools, and equipment required for performance of the Work.
- B. Perform "Project Evaluation and Recommendation" according to NADCA ACR.
- C. Cleaning Plan: Prepare a written plan for air-distribution system cleaning that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures. At a minimum, include the following:
 - 1. Supervisor contact information.
 - 2. Work schedule, including location, times, and impact on occupied areas.
 - 3. Methods and materials planned for each HVAC component type.
 - 4. Required support from other trades.
 - 5. Equipment and material storage requirements.
 - 6. Exhaust equipment setup locations.
- D. Existing Conditions Report: Prepare a written report that documents existing conditions of the systems and equipment. Include documentation of existing conditions, including inspection results, photo images, laboratory results, and interpretations of the laboratory results by an IEP.
 - 1. Prepare written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with work only after conditions detrimental to performance of the Work have been corrected.
- F. Use the existing service openings, as required for proper cleaning, at various points of the HVAC system for physical and mechanical entry and for inspection.
- G. Comply with NADCA ACR, "Guidelines for Constructing Service Openings in HVAC Systems" Section.
- H. Mark the position of manual volume dampers and air-directional mechanical devices inside the system prior to cleaning.

3.2 CLEANING

- A. Comply with NADCA ACR, including items identified as "recommended," "advised," and "suggested."
- B. Perform electrical lockout and tagout according to Owner's standards or authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Remove non-adhered substances and deposits from within the HVAC system.
- D. Complete cleaning in accordance with Owner-Contractor agreed-upon scope of work.
- E. Systems and Components to Be Cleaned: All air-moving and -distribution equipment.
- F. Systems and Components to Be Cleaned:
 - 1. Air devices for supply and return air.
 - 2. Air-terminal units and connections.
 - a. VAV boxes.
 - b. Fan coil units.
 - c. Unit ventilators.
 - d. Flexible connectors.
 - 3. Ductwork:
 - a. Supply-air ducts, including turning vanes and reheat coils, to the air-handling unit.
 - b. Return-air ducts to the air-handling unit.
 - c. Exhaust-air ducts.
 - d. Transfer ducts.
 - 4. Casings.
 - 5. Duct-mounted coils.
 - 6. Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Interior surfaces of the unit casing.
 - b. Coil surfaces compartment.
 - c. Condensate drain pans.
 - d. Fans, fan blades, and fan housings.
 - 7. Exhaust fans and power ventilators.
 - 8. Filter housings and replace filters.
 - 9. Gravity ventilators.
 - 10. Air-to-air heat exchangers.
- G. Collect debris removed during cleaning. Ensure that debris is not dispersed outside the HVAC system during the cleaning process.
- H. Particulate Collection:
 - 1. For particulate collection equipment, include adequate filtration to contain debris removed. Locate equipment downwind and away from all air intakes and other points of entry into the building.

2. HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for particles sized 0.3 micrometer or larger shall be used where the particulate collection equipment is exhausting inside the building,
- I. Control odors and mist vapors during the cleaning and restoration process.
 - J. Mark the position of manual volume dampers and air-directional mechanical devices inside the system prior to cleaning. Restore them to their marked position on completion of cleaning.
 - K. System components shall be cleaned so that all HVAC system components are visibly clean. On completion, all components must be returned to those settings recorded just prior to cleaning operations.
 - L. Clean all air-distribution devices, registers, grilles, and diffusers.
 - M. Clean non-adhered substance deposits according to NADCA ACR and the following:
 1. Clean air-handling units, airstream surfaces, components, condensate collectors, and drains.
 2. Ensure that a suitable operative drainage system is in place prior to beginning wash-down procedures.
 3. Clean evaporator coils, reheat coils, and other airstream components.
 - N. Air-Distribution Systems:
 1. Create service openings in the HVAC system as necessary to accommodate cleaning.
 2. Mechanically clean air-distribution systems specified to remove all visible contaminants, so that the systems are capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR).
 - O. Debris removed from the HVAC system shall be disposed of according to applicable Federal, state, and local requirements.
 - P. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
 1. Source-Removal Cleaning Methods: The HVAC system shall be cleaned using source-removal mechanical cleaning methods designed to extract contaminants from within the HVAC system and to safely remove these contaminants from the facility. No cleaning method, or combination of methods, shall be used that could potentially damage components of the HVAC system or negatively alter the integrity of the system.
 - a. Use continuously operating vacuum-collection devices to keep each section being cleaned under negative pressure.
 - b. Cleaning methods that require mechanical agitation devices to dislodge debris that is adhered to interior surfaces of HVAC system components shall be equipped to safely remove these devices. Cleaning methods shall not damage the integrity of HVAC system components or damage porous surface materials, such as duct and plenum liners.
 2. Cleaning Mineral-Fiber Insulation Components:
 - a. Fibrous-glass thermal or acoustical insulation elements present in equipment or ductwork shall be thoroughly cleaned with HEPA vacuuming equipment while the HVAC system is under constant negative pressure and shall not be permitted to get wet according to NADCA ACR.

- b. Cleaning methods used shall not cause damage to fibrous-glass components and will render the system capable of passing the HVAC System Cleanliness Tests (see NADCA ACR).
- c. Fibrous materials that become wet shall be discarded and replaced.

Q. Coil Cleaning:

- 1. See NADCA ACR, "Coil Surface Cleaning" Section. Type 1, or Type 1 and Type 2, cleaning methods shall be used to render the coil visibly clean and capable of passing coil cleaning verification.
- 2. Coil drain pans shall be subject to NADCA ACR, "Non-Porous Surfaces Cleaning Verification." Ensure that condensate drain pans are operational.
- 3. Electric-resistance coils shall be de-energized, locked out, and tagged before cleaning.
- 4. Cleaning methods shall not cause any appreciable damage to, cause displacement of, inhibit heat transfer, or cause erosion of the coil surface or fins, and shall comply with coil manufacturer's written recommendations.
- 5. Rinse thoroughly with clean water to remove any latent residues.

R. Application of Antimicrobial Treatment:

- 1. Apply antimicrobial agents and coatings if active fungal growth is determined by the IEP to be at Condition 2 or Condition 3 status according to IICRC S520, as analyzed by a laboratory accredited by AIHA-LAP with an EMLAP certificate, and with results interpreted by an IEP. Apply antimicrobial agents and coatings according to manufacturer's written recommendations and EPA registration listing after the removal of surface deposits and debris.
- 2. Apply antimicrobial treatments and coatings after the system is rendered clean.
- 3. Apply antimicrobial agents and coatings directly onto surfaces of interior ductwork.
- 4. Microbial remediation shall be performed by a qualified CMR and CMRS.

3.3 CLEANLINESS VERIFICATION

- A. Verify cleanliness according to NADCA ACR, "Verification of HVAC System Cleanliness" Section.
- B. Verify HVAC system cleanliness after mechanical cleaning and before applying any treatment or introducing any treatment-related substance to the HVAC system, including biocidal agents and coatings.
- C. Surface-Cleaning Verification: Perform visual inspection for cleanliness. If no contaminants are evident through visual inspection, the HVAC system shall be considered clean. If visible contaminants are evident through visual inspection, those portions of the system where contaminants are visible shall be re-cleaned and subjected to re-inspection for cleanliness.
- D. Verification of Coil Cleaning:
 - 1. Measure static-pressure differential across each coil.
 - 2. Coil will be considered clean if cleaning restored the coil static-pressure differential within 10 percent of the differential measured when the coil was first installed.
- E. Verification of Coil Cleaning: Coil will be considered clean if the coil is free of foreign matter and chemical residue, based on a thorough visual inspection.
- F. Additional Verification:

1. Perform surface comparison testing or NADCA vacuum test.
 2. Conduct NADCA vacuum gravimetric test analysis for nonporous surfaces.
- G. Prepare a written cleanliness verification report. At a minimum, include the following:
1. Written documentation of the success of the cleaning.
 2. Site inspection reports, initiated by supervisor, including notation on areas of inspection, as verified through visual inspection.
 3. Surface comparison test results if required.
 4. Gravimetric analysis (nonporous surfaces only).
 5. System areas found to be damaged.
- H. Photographic Documentation: Comply with requirements in Division 01 "Photographic Documentation."

3.4 RESTORATION

- A. Restore and repair HVAC air-distribution equipment, ducts, plenums, and components according to NADCA ACR, "Restoration and Repair of Mechanical Systems" Section.
- B. Restore service openings capable of future reopening. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Metal Ducts and Division 23 "Nonmetal Ducts."
- C. Reseal fibrous-glass ducts. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Nonmetal Ducts."
- D. Replace fibrous-glass materials that cannot be restored by cleaning or resurfacing. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Metal Ducts" and Division 23 "Nonmetal Ducts."
- E. Replace damaged insulation according to Division 23 "Duct Insulation."
- F. Ensure that closures do not hinder or alter airflow.
- G. New closure materials, including insulation, shall match opened materials and shall have removable closure panels fitted with gaskets and fasteners.
- H. Restore manual volume dampers and air-directional mechanical devices inside the system to their marked position on completion of cleaning.
- I. Measure air flows through air-distribution system.
- J. Measure static-pressure differential across each coil.

3.5 PROJECT CLOSEOUT

- A. Post-Project Report:
 1. Post-cleaning laboratory results if any.
 2. Post-cleaning photo images.
 3. Post-cleaning verification summary.
- B. Drawings:
 1. Deviations of existing system from Owner's record drawings.

2. Location of service openings.

END OF SECTION 230130.52

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 1. Motor controllers.
 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 2. Split phase.
 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Flexible, ball-joint packed expansion joints.
2. Slip-joint, packed expansion joints.
3. Metal, compensator packless expansion joints.
4. Rubber union connector packless expansion joints.
5. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
6. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
7. Externally pressurized metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
8. Rubber packless expansion joints.
9. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
10. Alignment guides and anchors.
11. Pipe loops and swing connections.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:** For each type of product.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:** For each anchor and alignment guide, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.**

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data:** For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications:** Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

- B. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

2.2 PACKED EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
- a. AdSCO Manufacturing LLC.
 - b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
 - c. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
- B. Flexible, Ball-Joint Packed Expansion Joints FBJ-01:
1. Standards: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section II, "Materials"; ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials and design of pressure-containing parts and bolting.
 2. Material: Carbon-steel assembly with asbestos-free composition packing.
 3. Design: Provide 360-degree rotation and angular deflection.
 4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig at 400 deg F.
 5. Angular Deflection for NPS 6 and Smaller: 30 degree minimum.
 6. Angular Deflection for NPS 8 and Larger: 15 degree minimum.
 7. Seal Type: Two carbon steel and graphite seals suitable for continuous operation at temperature up to 650 deg F.
 8. Internal Ball: Plated with minimum 1-mil chrome cover.
 9. Ball Socket: One- or two-piece design with integral socket/retainer.
 - a. Stuffing Box: Incorporates containment seals and compression seals for containment of injectable packing.
 - b. Packing Cylinders: Provides packing under full line pressure with check valves to prevent blowback.
 10. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 11. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.
- C. Slip-Joint Packed Expansion Joints SJ-01:
1. Standard: ASTM F1007.
 2. Material: Carbon steel with asbestos-free PTFE packing.
 3. Design: With internal guide and injection ports for repacking under full system pressure. Housing shall be furnished with drain ports and lifting ring. Include drip connection if used for steam piping.
 4. Configuration: Single joint, Single joint with base, and double joint with base class(es), unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Slip Tube for sizes NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 16: Schedule 80.

6. Slip Tube for sizes NPS 18 through NPS 24: Schedule 60.
7. Sliding Surface: 2 mil thick chrome finish.
8. End Connections: Flanged or welded ends to match piping system.

2.3 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Adesco Manufacturing LLC.
 - b. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex, Inc.
- B. Metal, Compensator Packless Expansion Joints MCEJ-01:
 1. Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psi unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Description: Totally enclosed, externally pressurized, multi-ply bellows isolated from fluid flow by an internal pipe sleeve and external housing.
 3. Joint Axial Movement: 2 inches of compression and 1/2 inch of extension.
 4. Configuration for Copper Tubing: Multi-ply, phosphor-bronze bellows with copper pipe ends.
 - a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Threaded.
 5. Configuration for Steel Piping: Multi-ply, stainless-steel bellows; steel-pipe end connections; and carbon-steel shroud.
 - a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged, Threaded, or Welded to match pipe fittings.
- C. Rubber Union Connector Expansion Joints RUEJ-01:
 1. Material: Twin reinforced-rubber spheres with external restraining cables.
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 170 deg F, unless otherwise indicated.
 3. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
- D. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints FHEJ-01:
 1. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
 2. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
 3. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
 - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
 - b. Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
 4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.

- b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
- 5. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Carbon-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
- 6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged or welded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
- 7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged or welded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
- 8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 14 and Larger: Carbon-steel fittings with flanged or welded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

E. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints MBEJ-01.

- 1. Standards: ASTM F1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- 2. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
- 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig, unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Configuration: Single joint, Single joint with base. And double joint with base class(es), unless otherwise indicated.
- 5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Single or multi-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.
 - a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint or threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Solder joint or threaded.
 - c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.
- 6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping: Single or multi-ply stainless-steel bellows, steel pipe ends, and carbon-steel shroud.
 - a. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - b. End Connections for Steel Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged or Welded.

F. Externally Pressurized Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints EPEJ-01:

- 1. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Description:

- a. Totally enclosed, externally pressurized, multi-ply, stainless-steel bellows isolated from fluid flow by an internal pipe sleeve.
 - b. Carbon-steel housing.
 - c. Drain plugs and lifting lug for the NPS 3 and larger.
 - d. Bellows shall have operating clearance between the internal pipe sleeves and the external shrouds.
 - e. Joints shall be supplied with a built-in scale to confirm the starting position and operating movement.
 - f. Joint Axial Movement: 8 inches of compression and 2 inches of extension.
3. Permanent Locking Bolts: Set locking bolts to maintain joint lengths during installation. Temporary welding tabs that are removed after installation in lieu of locking bolts are not acceptable.
 4. End Connection Configuration: Flanged; one raised, fixed and one floating flange.

G. Rubber Packless Expansion Joints REJ-01:

1. Standards: ASTM F1123 and FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
2. Material: Fabric-reinforced rubber complying with FSA-PSJ-703.
3. Arch Type: Single or multiple arches with external control rods.
4. Spherical Type: Single or multiple spheres with external control rods.
5. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
6. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 140 psig at 200 deg F.
7. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 140 psig at 180 deg F.
8. Material for Fluids Containing Acids, Alkalies, or Chemicals: Butyl rubber, Chlorosulfonyl-polyethylene rubber, or Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
9. Material for Fluids Containing Gas, Hydrocarbons, or Oil: Buna-N or Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
10. Material for Water: Butyl rubber, Buna-N, Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber, Chlorosulfonyl-polyethylene rubber, Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber, or Natural rubber.
11. End Connections: Full-faced, integral steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

2.4 GROOVED-JOINT EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled expansion joint made of several grooved-end pipe nipples, couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Standard: AWWA C606, for grooved joints.
- C. Nipples: Galvanized, ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, steel pipe with grooved ends.
- D. Couplings: 10, flexible type for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, Buna-N gasket suitable for diluted acid, alkaline fluids, and cold and hot water, ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber gasket suitable for cold and hot water, and bolts and nuts.

2.5 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

- A. Alignment Guides AG-01:

1. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding slider for bolting to pipe.
- B. Anchor Materials:
1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M.
 2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A183, steel hex head.
 3. Washers: ASTM F844, steel, plain, flat washers.
 4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
 5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C881/C881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install packed-type expansion joints with packing suitable for fluid service.
- C. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- D. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-PSJ-703.
- E. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping.

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least pipe fittings, including tee in riser.

- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 230516

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal systems.
4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
5. Grout.
6. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anti-corrosion coated or zinc coated, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- D. PVC Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated galvanized cast-iron sleeve with integral cast flashing flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description:

1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20-psig.
3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber, High-temperature-silicone, Nitrile (Buna N)] interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
4. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel, Type 316.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel, Type 316, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description:

1. Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly, made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
2. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, use NT.

- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.

2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 3 inches above finished floor level.
 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 5. Using waterproof silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated, Horizontal Assembly, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal-system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade:

- a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 :Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Sleeve-seal fittings.
2. Exterior Concrete Walls Below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs Above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Escutcheons.
 2. Floor plates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated or polished brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With chrome-plated or polished brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece brass or split-plate steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 - d. Insulated Piping: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
 - e. Insulated Piping: One-piece cast brass with chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 - f. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with chrome-plated polished brass finish.
 - h. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
 - i. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 - j. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - k. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with or chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 - l. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stainless steel with polished stainless-steel finish.
 - m. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with chrome-plated or polished brass finish.
 - n. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - o. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - p. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated or rough-brass finish.
 - q. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - r. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - s. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass chrome-plated or rough-brass finish.
 - t. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
 - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: Split floor plate.
 - 2. Existing Piping to Remain: Split floor plate.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 230518

SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Filled-system thermometers.
3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
4. Light-activated thermometers.
5. Duct-thermometer mounting brackets.
6. Thermowells.
7. Dial-type pressure gages.
8. Gage attachments.
9. Test plugs.
10. Test-plug kits.
11. Sight flow indicators.
12. Flowmeters.
13. Thermal-energy meters.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 23 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping" for gas meters.
2. Division 23 "Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties" for steam and condensate meters.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ashcroft Inc.
 - 2. Blue Ribbon Corp.
 - 3. WATTS.
 - 4. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 5-inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F and deg C.
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- H. Window: Plain glass.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ashcroft Inc.
 - 2. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
 - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel 5-inch nominal diameter.
 - 3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 - 4. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 - 6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 7. Window: Glass.

8. Ring: Stainless steel.
 9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- C. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Case: Sealed type, plastic 5-inch nominal diameter.
 3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 7. Window: Glass.
 8. Ring: Metal.
 9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- D. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel 6-inch nominal diameter with flange and holes for panel mounting.
 3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 7. Window: Glass.
 8. Ring: Metal.
 9. Connector Type(s): Union joint,; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- E. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Case: Sealed type, plastic 6-inch nominal diameter with flange and holes for panel mounting.

3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Ring: Metal.
9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, threaded,; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.3 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
- B. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Case: Cast aluminum 6-inch nominal size.
 3. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
 7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 8. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- C. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Case: Plastic 6-inch nominal size.
 3. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and red organic liquid.
 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 6. Window: Glass or plastic.
 7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 8. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.

9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- D. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Case: Cast aluminum 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and red organic liquid.
 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 6. Window: Glass.
 7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.
- E. Plastic-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Case: Plastic 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens red organic liquid.
 5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
 6. Window: Glass.
 7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.4 LIGHT-ACTIVATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
- a. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
- B. Direct-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
1. Case: Plastic 7-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Scale(s): Deg F and deg C.
 3. Case Form: Adjustable angle.
 4. Connector: 1-1/4 inches with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 5. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 6. Display: Digital.

7. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
- C. Remote-Mounted, Light-Activated Thermometers:
1. Case: Plastic, for wall mounting.
 2. Scale(s): Deg F and deg C.
 3. Sensor: Bulb and thermister wire.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 4. Display: Digital.
 5. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
- 2.5 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS
- A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.
- 2.6 THERMOWELLS
- A. Thermowells:
1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES or CSA.
 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.
- 2.7 DIAL-TYPE PRESSURE GAGES
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. WATTS.
 - b. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
- B. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 2. Case: Liquid-filled Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel 6-inch nominal diameter.
 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/2 ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.

6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 8. Window: Glass.
 9. Ring: Metal.
 10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.
- C. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 2. Case: Sealed type; plastic 6-inch nominal diameter.
 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 8. Window: Glass.
 9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.
- D. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 2. Case: Liquid-filled Sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel 6-inch nominal diameter with flange and holes for panel mounting.
 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 8. Window: Glass.
 9. Ring: Metal.
 10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.
- E. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 2. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 6-inch nominal diameter with flange and holes for panel mounting.
 3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 8. Window: Glass.
 9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.8 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of stainless-steel pipe with NPS 1/2 pipe threads.

- C. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.9 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Nexus Valve, Inc.
 2. WATTS.
 3. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.10 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Nexus Valve, Inc.
 2. WATTS.
- B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.
- D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

2.11 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 1. Pentair Valves & Controls; Penberthy Brand.
- B. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.

- C. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
- D. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig 150 psig.
- E. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.
- F. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
- G. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

2.12 FLOWMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABB (Industrial Automation Division).
 - b. ONICON Incorporated.
- B. Orifice Flowmeters:
 - 1. Description: Flowmeter with sensor, hoses or tubing, fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
 - 2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
 - 3. Sensor: Wafer-orifice-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation between pipe flanges.
 - a. Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for gas, oil, steam, or water.
 - b. Construction: Cast-iron body, brass valves with integral check valves and caps, and calibrated nameplate.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.
 - 4. Permanent Indicators: Meter suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected sensor and having 6-inch-diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to sensor.
 - a. Scale: Gallons per minute.
 - b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
 - 5. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected sensor and having two 12-foot hoses, with carrying case.
 - a. Scale: Gallons per minute.
 - b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
 - 6. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
 - 7. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor and indicator.
 - 8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
- C. Pitot-Tube Flowmeters:
 - 1. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
 - 2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.

3. Sensor: Insertion type; for inserting probe in piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.
 - a. Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for oil or water.
 - b. Construction: Stainless-steel probe of length to span inside of pipe, with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.
 4. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
 5. Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power connection.
 6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 3 percent.
 7. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
 8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
- D. Turbine Flowmeters:
1. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
 2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
 3. Sensor: Impeller turbine; for inserting in pipe fitting or for installing in piping and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.
 - a. Design: Device or pipe fitting with inline turbine and integral direct-reading scale for gas, oil, steam, or water.
 - b. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with plastic turbine or impeller.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 180 deg F.
 4. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
 5. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.
 6. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
 7. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
- E. Venturi Flowmeters:
1. Description: Flowmeter with calibrated flow-measuring element, hoses or tubing, fittings, valves, indicator, and conversion chart.
 2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
 3. Sensor: Venturi-type, calibrated, flow-measuring element; for installation in piping.
 - a. Design: Differential-pressure-type measurement for gas, oil, steam, or water.
 - b. Construction: Bronze, brass, or factory-primed steel, with brass fittings and attached tag with flow conversion data.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 250 deg F.
 - e. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
 - f. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged or welded.
 - g. Flow Range: Flow-measuring element and flowmeter shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
 4. Permanent Indicators: Meter suitable for wall or bracket mounting, calibrated for connected flowmeter element, and having 6-inch-diameter, or equivalent, dial with fittings and copper tubing for connecting to flowmeter element.
 - a. Scale: Gallons per minute.

- b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
 - 5. Portable Indicators: Hand-held, differential-pressure type, calibrated for connected flowmeter element and having two 12-foot hoses, with carrying case.
 - a. Scale: Gallons per minute.
 - b. Accuracy: Plus or minus 2 percent between 20 and 80 percent of scale range.
 - 6. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
 - 7. Conversion Chart: Flow rate data compatible with sensor.
 - 8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.
- F. Vortex-Shedding Flowmeters:
1. Description: Flowmeter with sensor and indicator.
 2. Flow Range: Sensor and indicator shall cover operating range of equipment or system served.
 3. Sensor: Inline type; for installing between pipe flanges and measuring flow directly in gallons per minute.
 - a. Design: Flow obstruction device, vortex-measurement type for gas, steam, and liquids.
 - b. Construction: Stainless-steel body, with integral transmitter and direct-reading scale.
 - c. Minimum Pressure Rating: 1000 psig.
 - d. Minimum Temperature Rating: 500 deg F.
 - e. Integral Transformer: For low-voltage power operation.
 4. Indicator: Hand-held meter; either an integral part of sensor or a separate meter.
 5. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.25 percent for liquids and 0.75 percent for gases.
 6. Display: Shows rate of flow, with register to indicate total volume in gallons.
 7. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each flowmeter.

2.13 THERMAL-ENERGY METERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
- a. ONICON Incorporated.
- B. Impeller-Turbine, Thermal-Energy Meters:
1. Description: System with strainer, flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.
 2. Flow Sensor: Impeller turbine with corrosion-resistant-metal body and transmitter; for installing in piping.
 - a. Design: Total thermal-energy measurement.
 - b. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Minimum Temperature Range: 40 to 250 deg F.
 3. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type transducer.
 4. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter with integral battery pack; for wall mounting.
 - a. Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
 - b. Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.

5. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 6. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
 7. Strainer: Full size of main line piping.
 8. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.
- C. Ultrasonic, Thermal-Energy Meters:
1. Description: Meter with flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.
 2. Flow Sensor: Transit-time ultrasonic type with transmitter.
 3. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type or strap-on transducer.
 4. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter with integral battery pack.
 - a. Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
 - b. Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.
5. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 6. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
 7. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid one-third of pipe diameter to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- I. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- K. Install valve and siphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.

- L. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- M. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
- N. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
- P. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.
- Q. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- R. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- S. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
- T. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
- U. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
 - 3. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
 - 4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
 - 5. Two inlets and two outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger.
 - 6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank.
 - 7. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
- V. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each pump.
 - 4. <Insert location>.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
- C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.
- D. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Remote-mounted, metal case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 4. Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
 - 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Remote-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 4. Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
 - 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each chiller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Remote-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Industrial style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 4. Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
 - 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Remote-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 4. Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
 - 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- E. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Remote-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 4. Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
 - 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- F. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic heat-recovery unit shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Remote-mounted, metal case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

4. Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- G. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each thermal-storage tank shall be one of the following:
1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 2. Remote-mounted, metal case, vapor-actuated type.
 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 4. Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
 5. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- H. Thermometers at outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts shall be one of the following:
1. Liquid-filled Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 2. Remote-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 4. Remote-mounted, light-activated type.
- I. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F and minus 40 to plus 100 deg C.
- B. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C.
- C. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- D. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- E. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C.
- F. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- G. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- H. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- I. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C.
- J. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- K. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- L. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C.
- M. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 50 to 400 deg F and 0 to 200 deg C.
- N. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 50 to 550 deg F and 10 to 300 deg C.
- O. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.

- P. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- Q. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C.
- R. Scale Range for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: 50 to 400 deg F and 0 to 200 deg C.
- S. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F and minus 40 to plus 45 deg C.
- T. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 160 deg F and minus 40 to plus 100 deg C.
- U. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C.
- V. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 150 deg F and minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- W. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 0 to 250 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- X. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 20 to 240 deg F and 0 to 150 deg C.
- Y. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C.
- Z. Scale Range for Air Ducts: 50 to 400 deg F and 0 to 200 deg C.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Sealed direct mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Sealed direct mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Sealed direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic or EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 30-in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa.
- B. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa.
- C. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.
- D. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.
- E. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.

- F. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa.
- G. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa.
- H. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 30-in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa.
- I. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa.
- J. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.
- K. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.
- L. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.
- M. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa.
- N. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa.
- O. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30-in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa.
- P. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa.
- Q. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.
- R. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.
- S. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.
- T. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa.
- U. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa.
- V. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 30-in. Hg to 15 psi 30-in. Hg to 15 psi and minus 100 to 0 kPa.
- W. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 30 psi and 0 to 240 kPa.
- X. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.
- Y. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.
- Z. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.
- AA. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 300 psi and 0 to 2500 kPa.
- BB. Scale Range for Steam Piping: 0 to 600 psi and 0 to 4000 kPa.

3.8 FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Flowmeters for Chilled-Water Piping: Turbine type.
- B. Flowmeters for Condenser-Water Piping: Turbine type.
- C. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Turbine type.

- D. Flowmeters for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: Turbine type.

3.9 THERMAL-ENERGY METER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermal-Energy Meters for Chilled-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine type.
- B. Thermal-Energy Meters for Condenser-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine type.
- C. Thermal-Energy Meters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine type.
- D. Thermal-Energy Meters for Steam and Steam-Condensate Piping: Impeller-turbine type.

END OF SECTION 230519

SECTION 230523.10 – GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Angle Valves.
 - 2. Globe valves.
 - 3. Ball valves.
 - 4. Butterfly valves.
 - 5. Check valves.
 - 6. Gate valves.
 - 7. Chainwheels.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. SWP: Steam working pressure.
- C. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- D. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- E. NRS: Non-rising stem.
- F. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- G. RS: Rising stem

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set angle and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 4. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
 - 7. Set gate valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 8. Set plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.

2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
3. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
 5. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- D. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Valve Actuator Types:
 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 and larger.
 2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.
 3. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to gear, stem, or other actuator of size and with chain for mounting height, according to "Valve Installation" Article.
 4. Valve Actuator Types: Wrench. Furnish Owner with one wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head
- G. Valves in Insulated Piping:
 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
 2. Extended operating handle of nonthermal-conductive material, and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking the vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Bronze Angle Valves, Class 125:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron or bronze.
- B. Bronze Angle Valves, Class 150:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron or bronze.

2.3 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

- A. Bronze Globe Valves, Class 125:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
 - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron or bronze.
- B. Bronze Globe Valves, Class 150:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron or bronze.

2.4 IRON GLOBE VALVES

- A. Iron Globe Valves, Class 125:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

- g. Operator: Handwheel or chainwheel.
- B. Iron Globe Valves, Class 250:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - g. Operator: Handwheel or chainwheel.

2.5 BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. Brass Ball Valves, One-Piece:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. Body Design: One piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Reduced.
- B. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim, Threaded Ends:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Brass.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.
- C. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim, Press Ends:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - e. Ends: Press.
 - f. Seats: PTFE or RPTFE.
 - g. Stem: Brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Full.
 - j. O-Ring Seal: Buna-N or EPDM.
- D. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Threaded Ends:
 - 1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Full.
- E. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Press Ends:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - e. Ends: Press.
 - f. Press Ends Connections Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - g. Seats: PTFE or RPTFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Full.
 - k. O-Ring Seal: Buna-N or EPDM.
- F. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Brass Trim:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Brass.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Regular.
- G. Brass Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Regular.
- H. Brass Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Brass Trim:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.

- d. Body Design: Three piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Brass.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.
- I. Brass Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Three piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Full.

2.6 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Bronze Ball Valves, One-Piece with Bronze Trim:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. Body Design: One piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Bronze.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Reduced.
- B. Bronze Ball Valves, One-Piece with Stainless-Steel Trim:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - c. Body Design: One piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Reduced.
- C. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim, Threaded Ends:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.

- g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.
- D. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Full.
- E. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Regular.
- F. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Regular.
- G. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Three piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Bronze.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.

H. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Full Port Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Three piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Full.

I. Bronze Ball Valves, Three-Piece with Regular Port, and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Three piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded and solder.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - j. Port: Regular.

2.7 STEEL BALL VALVES

A. Steel Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Class 150:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
 - b. CWP Rating: 285 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Split body.
 - d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A216, Type WCB.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Full.

B. Steel Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim, Class 300:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
 - b. CWP Rating: 720 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Split body.
 - d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A216, Type WCB.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Full.

2.8 IRON BALL VALVES

- A. Iron Ball Valves, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Split body.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel.
 - i. Port: Full.

2.9 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.
- B. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Ductile-Iron Disc:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.
- C. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Stainless-Steel Disc:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Stainless steel.

2.10 DUCTILE-IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, 175 CWP:
 - 1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
 - c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
 - d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
 - e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
 - f. Seal: EPDM.
- B. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, 300 CWP:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. NPS 8 and Smaller CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. NPS 10 and Larger CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - d. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
 - e. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
 - f. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
 - g. Seal: EPDM.

2.11 HIGH-PERFORMANCE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves, Class 150:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
 - b. CWP Rating: 285 psig at 100 deg F.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
 - e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
 - f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
 - g. Disc: Carbon steel.
 - h. Service: Bidirectional.
- B. Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves, Class 300:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
 - b. CWP Rating: 720 psig at 100 deg F.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, or ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
 - f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
 - g. Disc: Carbon steel.
 - h. Service: Bidirectional.

2.12 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

- A. Bronze Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:
- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B61 or ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

- B. Bronze Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 125:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B61 or ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: NBR or PTFE.

2.13 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.
- B. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 125:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE.
- C. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 150:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.
- D. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 150:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE.

2.14 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 125:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Trim: Bronze.
 - h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- B. Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Trim: Composition.
 - h. Seat Ring: Bronze.
 - i. Disc Holder: Bronze.
 - j. Disc: PTFE.
 - k. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- C. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 250:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Trim: Bronze.
 - h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.15 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

- A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Trim: Bronze.
 - h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - i. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.
- B. Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever and Weight-Closure Control, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Trim: Bronze.

- h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- i. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.

2.16 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves, 300 CWP:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - b. Body Material: ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - c. Seal: EPDM.
 - d. Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

2.17 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

- A. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - e. Style: Compact wafer.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- B. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Seat: Bronze.
- C. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Style: Compact wafer.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- D. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Seat: Bronze.
- E. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 250:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - e. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- F. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 250:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Seat: Bronze.
- G. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 300:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- H. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 300:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Seat: Bronze.
- I. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 125:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - e. Style: Compact wafer.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- J. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 125:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

- K. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 150:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Style: Compact wafer.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- L. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 150:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- M. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 250:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - e. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- N. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 250:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- O. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 300:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- P. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 300:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.18 IRON, PLATE-TYPE CHECK VALVES

- A. Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- B. Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 150:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- C. Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 250:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- D. Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 300:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.
- E. Iron, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- F. Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 125:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

- G. Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 150:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 250 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- H. Iron, Wafer, Single-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 250:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plate.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- I. Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 250:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A126, gray iron.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- J. Iron, Dual-Plate Check Valves with Resilient Seat, Class 300:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: API 594.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig.
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - d. Body Design: Wafer, spring-loaded plates.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A395/A395M or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
 - f. Seat: EPDM or NBR.

2.19 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, chain guides, chain and attachment brackets for mounting chainwheels directly to handwheels.
1. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Bronze, of type and size required for valve.
 2. Chain: Brass, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 1. Throttling Service except Steam: Globe or angle valves.
 2. Throttling Service, Steam: Globe or angle valves.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 CHILLED-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Bronze angle or globe valves, Class 150 bronze disc, with soldered or threaded ends.
 3. Brass or bronze ball valves, three piece, with bronze or stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded or solder ends.
 4. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 150.
 5. Bronze gate valves, RS Class 150, with soldered or threaded ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 1. Iron globe valves, Class 250 with flanged ends. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Retain subparagraph below if solder-joint valve ends are permitted for this application.
 2. Iron ball valves, Class 125.
 - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 3. Steel ball valves, Class 150.
 4. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel disc, 200 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 5. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: Stainless-steel disc, 150 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 6. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 300 CWP.
 7. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Single flange, Class 300.
 8. Iron swing check valves with lever and spring closure control.
 - a. NPS 3 to NPS 12: Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
 - b. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 250.
 - c. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves metal seat, Class 300.
 - d. Iron, single-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 125.
 - e. Iron, dual-plate check valves with metal seat, Class 300.
 - f. Iron, dual-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 300.
 9. Iron gate valves, OS&Y, Class 250.

3.6 CONDENSER-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Bronze angle or globe valves, Class 150 bronze disc, with soldered or threaded ends.
 3. Brass or bronze ball valves, three piece, with bronze or stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded or solder ends.
 4. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 150.
 5. Bronze gate valves, RS Class 150, with soldered or threaded ends.

- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron globe valves, Class 250 with flanged ends. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Retain subparagraph below if solder-joint valve ends are permitted for this application.
 2. Iron ball valves, Class 125.
 - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 3. Steel ball valves, Class 150.
 4. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel disc, 200 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 5. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: Stainless-steel disc, 150 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 6. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 300 CWP.
 7. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Single flange, Class 300.
 8. Iron swing check valves with lever and spring closure control.
 - a. NPS 3 to NPS 12: Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
 - b. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 250.
 - c. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves metal seat, Class 300.
 - d. Iron, single-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 250.
 - e. Iron, dual-plate check valves with metal seat, Class 300.
 - f. Iron, dual-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 300.
 9. Iron gate valves, OS&Y, Class 250.

3.7 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Bronze angle or globe valves, Class 150 bronze disc, with soldered or threaded ends.
 3. Brass or bronze ball valves, three piece, with bronze or stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded or solder ends.
 4. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 150.
 5. Bronze gate valves, RS Class 150, with soldered or threaded ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron globe valves, Class 250 with flanged ends. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Retain subparagraph below if solder-joint valve ends are permitted for this application.
 2. Iron ball valves, Class 125.
 - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 3. Steel ball valves, Class 150.
 4. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel disc, 200 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 5. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: Stainless-steel disc, 150 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 6. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 300 CWP.
 7. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Single flange, Class 300.
 8. Iron swing check valves with lever and spring closure control.
 - a. NPS 3 to NPS 12: Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
 - b. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 250.
 - c. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves metal seat, Class 300.
 - d. Iron, single-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 125.
 - e. Iron, dual-plate check valves with metal seat, Class 300.
 - f. Iron, dual-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 300.
 9. Iron gate valves, OS&Y, Class 250.

3.8 LOW-PRESSURE STEAM VALVE SCHEDULE (15 PSIG OR LESS)

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 - 1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 - 2. Bronze angle or globe valves, Class 150 bronze disc, with soldered or threaded ends.
 - 3. Brass or bronze ball valves, three piece, with bronze or stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded or solder ends.
 - 4. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 150.
 - 5. Bronze gate valves, RS Class 150, with soldered or threaded ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 - 1. Iron globe valves, Class 250 with flanged ends. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Retain subparagraph below if solder-joint valve ends are permitted for this application.
 - 2. Iron ball valves, Class 125.
 - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 - 3. Steel ball valves, Class 150.
 - 4. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel disc, 200 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 - 5. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: Stainless-steel disc, 150 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 - 6. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 300 CWP.
 - 7. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Single flange, Class 300.
 - 8. Iron swing check valves with lever and spring closure control.
 - a. NPS 3 to NPS 12: Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
 - b. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 250.
 - c. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves metal seat, Class 300.
 - d. Iron, single-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 125.
 - e. Iron, dual-plate check valves with metal seat, Class 300.
 - f. Iron, dual-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 300.
 - 9. Iron gate valves, OS&Y, Class 250.

3.9 HIGH-PRESSURE STEAM VALVE SCHEDULE (MORE THAN 15 PSIG)

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 - 1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 - 2. Bronze angle or globe valves, Class 300 bronze disc, with soldered or threaded ends.
 - 3. Brass or bronze ball valves, three piece, with bronze or stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded or solder ends.
 - 4. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 300.
 - 5. Bronze gate valves, RS Class 300, with soldered or threaded ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 - 1. Iron globe valves, Class 300 with flanged ends. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Retain subparagraph below if solder-joint valve ends are permitted for this application.
 - 2. Iron ball valves, Class 300.
 - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 - 3. Steel ball valves, Class 300.
 - 4. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel disc, 300 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 - 5. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: Stainless-steel disc, 300 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.

6. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 300 CWP.
7. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Single flange, Class 300.
8. Iron swing check valves with lever and spring closure control.
 - a. NPS 3 to NPS 12: Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
 - b. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 300.
 - c. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves metal seat, Class 300.
 - d. Iron, single-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 300.
 - e. Iron, dual-plate check valves with metal seat, Class 300.
 - f. Iron, dual-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 300.
9. Iron gate valves, OS&Y, Class 300.

3.10 STEAM-CONDENSATE VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Bronze angle or globe valves, Class 150 bronze disc, with soldered or threaded ends.
 3. Brass or bronze ball valves, three piece, with bronze or stainless-steel trim, full port, threaded or solder ends.
 4. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 150.
 5. Bronze gate valves, RS Class 150, with soldered or threaded ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 1. Iron globe valves, Class 250 with flanged ends. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Retain subparagraph below if solder-joint valve ends are permitted for this application.
 2. Iron ball valves, Class 125.
 - a. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 3. Steel ball valves, Class 150.
 4. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel disc, 200 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 5. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: Stainless-steel disc, 150 CWP, and EPDM or NBR seat.
 6. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: 300 CWP.
 7. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Single flange, Class 300.
 8. Iron swing check valves with lever and spring closure control.
 - a. NPS 3 to NPS 12: Iron, grooved-end swing check valves, 300 CWP.
 - b. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 250.
 - c. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves metal seat, Class 300.
 - d. Iron, single-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 125.
 - e. Iron, dual-plate check valves with metal seat, Class 300.
 - f. Iron, dual-plate check valves with resilient seat, Class 300.
 9. Iron gate valves, OS&Y, Class 250.

END OF SECTION 230523.11

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Equipment supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 05 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 23 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
3. Division 23 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
4. Division 23 "Metal Ducts" and "Nonmetal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings: Fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Fiberglass strut systems.
4. Pipe stands.
5. Equipment supports.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
 - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

- 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
- 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
- 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder-coated.
- 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
- 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel stainless steel <Insert material>.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

- 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
- 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
- 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 FIBERGLASS PIPE HANGERS

- A. Clevis-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 1, factory-fabricated steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass or fiberglass-reinforced resin.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel.
3. Flammability: ASTM D635, ASTM E84, and UL 94.

- B. Strap-Type, Fiberglass Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Type 9 or Type 10, steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of fiberglass-reinforced resin.
 - a. Flammability: ASTM D635, ASTM E84, and UL 94.
2. Hanger Rod and Fittings: Continuous-thread rod, washer, and nuts made of stainless steel.

2.5 PLASTIC PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: Similar to MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated steel pipe hanger except hanger is made of plastic.
- B. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Flammability: ASTM D635, ASTM E84, and UL 94.

2.6 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Galvanized.
8. Paint Coating: Green epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.

9. Plastic Coating: PVC.
- B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon- channel with inturned lips.
 4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
 7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dip galvanized.
 8. Paint Coating: Green epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.
 9. Plastic Coating: PVC.

2.7 FIBERGLASS STRUT SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 2. Channels: Continuous slotted fiberglass-reinforced plastic channel with inturned lips.
 3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 4. Fittings and Accessories: Products provided by channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
 5. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as those for channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
 6. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
 7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

2.8 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psi minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent-treated, ASTM C533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psi or ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.9 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Indoor Applications: stainless-steel.
 - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.10 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - 3. Hardware: Galvanized steel or polycarbonate.
 - 4. Accessories: Protection pads.
- C. Low-Profile, Single Base, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base with vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane protection.
 - 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two, stainless-steel, continuous-thread 1/2-inch rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Adjustable horizontal, stainless-steel pipe support channels.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Roller, Strut clamps, Clevis hanger, or Swivel hanger.
 - 6. Hardware: Stainless steel.
 - 7. Accessories: Protection pads.
 - 8. Height: 12 inches above roof.
- D. High-Profile, Single Base, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Single base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Single vulcanized rubber or molded polypropylene.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two, stainless-steel, continuous-thread 1/2-inch rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: One, adjustable height, stainless-steel pipe support slotted channel or plate.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Roller, Clevis hanger, or Swivel hanger.
 - 6. Hardware: Stainless steel.
 - 7. Accessories: Protection pads, 1/2-inch continuous-thread stainless-steel rod.
 - 8. Height: 36 inches above roof.
- E. High-Profile, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Bases: Two or more; vulcanized rubber or molded polypropylene.

3. Vertical Members: Two or more, stainless-steel channels.
 4. Horizontal Members: One or more, adjustable height, stainless-steel pipe support.
 5. Pipe Supports: Roller, Strut clamps, Clevis hanger, or Swivel hanger.
 6. Hardware: Stainless steel.
 7. Accessories: Protection pads, 1/2-inch continuous-thread rod.
 8. Height: 36 inches above roof.
- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.11 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.12 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- F. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-58. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- D. Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled strut systems.
- E. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- F. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Division 07 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- H. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- I. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- J. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- K. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- L. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

- M. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- N. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- O. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
 - 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
 - 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 "Exterior Painting, "Interior Painting", and "High-Performance Coatings" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 - 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 - 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 - 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 - 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.

18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

- a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 - 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 - 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 - 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
- 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
- 1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 - 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 - 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 - 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 - 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 - 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 - 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 - 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Duct labels.
5. Valve tags.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTAL

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- C. Valve numbering scheme.
- D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch Stainless steel, 0.025-inch Aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows :
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Dual-duct systems.
 - c. Variable-air-volume systems.
 - d. Multizone systems.
 - e. Induction-unit systems.
2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
3. a. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
b. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.
4. Balancing steam systems.
5. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
 - a. Heat exchangers.
 - b. Motors.
 - c. Chillers.
 - d. Condensing units.
 - e. Boilers.
 - f. Heat-transfer coils.
6. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
7. Sound tests.
8. Vibration tests.
9. Duct leakage tests.
10. Control system verification.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.

G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Owner, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Minimum Agenda Items:

- a. The Contract Documents examination report.
- b. The TAB plan.
- c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
- d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. TAB Report: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.

D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.

E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.

F. Certified TAB reports.

G. Sample report forms.

H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC as a TAB technician.
- B. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by NEBB or TABB.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB as a TAB technician.
- C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - SYSTEMS

2.1 INCLUDED SYSTEMS

- A. The equipment and system descriptions listed in this section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the drawings for the specific systems included. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedules and specifications, the drawings shall take precedent.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.

- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.

3. Instrumentation to be used.
 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 1. Airside:
 - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - d. Clean filters are installed.
 - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - h. Ceilings are installed.
 - i. Windows and doors are installed.
 - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
 2. Hydronics:
 - a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Water treatment is complete.
 - d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
 - e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
 - f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
 - g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
 - h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
 - i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
 - j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in "AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IPd) and metric (SI) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Division 23000 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses, close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.

- b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 4. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
 4. Mark all final settings.
 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
 6. Measure and record all operating data.
 7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR DUAL-DUCT SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the dual-duct systems as follows:
1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge. On systems with separate hot-deck and cold-deck fans, verify the location of the sensor on each deck.
 2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
 3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit

- manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit's hot deck and cold deck for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
 - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for full cooling. Some controllers require starting with minimum set point. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
 - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factors as required for design cold-deck maximum airflow and hot-deck minimum airflow. Record calibration factors.
 - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
 - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for full heating.
 - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factors as required for design cold-deck minimum airflow and hot-deck maximum airflow. Record calibration factors. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
 5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity (cooling coil or fan), adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches cooling coil or fan selection and simulates actual load in the building. In systems with separate hot-deck and cold-deck fans, diversity consideration applies to each individual fan.
 - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
 - d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 6. Measure the fan(s) static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan(s) while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 - a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Verify that all terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
 8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
 9. Verify final system conditions as follows:

- a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
 - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps and static profile.
 - d. Mark final settings.
 - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
 - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.
10. Record final fan-performance data.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
 - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
 - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
 - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
 - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
 - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
 - f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
 - g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
 - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.

- d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
- a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
- a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
- a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
 - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - d. Mark final settings.
 - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
 - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR MULTIZONE SYSTEMS

- A. Position the unit's automatic zone dampers for maximum flow through the cooling coil.
- B. The procedures for multizone systems will utilize the zone balancing dampers to achieve the indicated airflow within the zone.
- C. After balancing, place the unit's automatic zone dampers for maximum heating flow. Retest zone airflows and record any variances.
- D. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.

- c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 - 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 - 4. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- E. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
- 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- F. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
- 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 - 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 - 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 - 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- G. Verify final system conditions.
- 1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
 - 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 - 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - 4. Mark all final settings.
 - 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
 - 6. Measure and record all operating data.
 - 7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.9 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:
 - 1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 - 2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
 - 3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
 - 4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
 - 5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
 - 6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.
- B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:
 - 1. Verify that the differential-pressure sensor is located as indicated.
 - 2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.
- C. For systems with no diversity:
 - 1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.

- c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
 2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
 3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
 4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system differential-pressure set point.
 7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
 8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
 9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.
 10. Verify that memory stops have been set.
- D. For systems with diversity:
1. Determine diversity factor.
 2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by the design engineer.
 3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - a. Measure total water flow.

- 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
 5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
 6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
 9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system differential-pressure set point.
 10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-

- frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
 12. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.
 13. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance the primary circuit flow first.
- B. Balance the secondary circuits after the primary circuits are complete.
- C. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 1. Measure total water flow.
 - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- D. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- E. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 1. Measure flow at terminals.
 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.

4. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- F. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- G. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- H. Verify final system conditions as follows:
1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 3. Mark final settings.
- I. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. Adjust water flow to within specified tolerances.
- B. Measure inlet and outlet water temperatures.
- C. Measure inlet steam pressure.
- D. Check settings and operation of safety and relief valves. Record settings.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 3. Motor rpm.
 4. Phase and hertz.
 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
 8. Service factor and frame size.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

- A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:
1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
 4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
 5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
 6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
 7. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record fan and motor operating data.

3.16 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers:
1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
 2. Measure and record water flow.
 3. Record relief valve pressure setting.

3.17 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 2. Water flow rate.
 3. Water pressure drop for major (more than 20 gpm) equipment coils, excluding unitary equipment such as reheat coils, unit heaters, and fan-coil units.
 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 6. Airflow.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
1. Nameplate data.
 2. Airflow.
 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.

4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:
1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 2. Airflow.
 3. Inlet steam pressure.
- D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 3. Airflow.

3.18 SOUND TESTS

- A. After the systems are balanced and construction is Substantially Complete, measure and record sound levels at least one representative location for every air handling system .
- B. Instrumentation:
1. The sound-testing meter shall be a portable, general-purpose testing meter consisting of a microphone, processing unit, and readout.
 2. The sound-testing meter shall be capable of showing fluctuations at minimum and maximum levels, and measuring the equivalent continuous sound pressure level (LEQ).
 3. The sound-testing meter must be capable of using 1/3 octave band filters to measure mid-frequencies from 31.5 Hz to 8000 Hz.
 4. The accuracy of the sound-testing meter shall be plus or minus one decibel.
- C. Test Procedures:
1. Perform test at quietest background noise period. Note cause of unpreventable sound that affects test outcome.
 2. Equipment should be operating at design values.
 3. Calibrate the sound-testing meter prior to taking measurements.
 4. Use a microphone suitable for the type of noise levels measured that is compatible with meter. Provide a windshield for outside or in-duct measurements.
 5. Record a set of background measurements in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight un-weighted octave bands 31.5 Hz to 4000 Hz (RC] with the equipment off.
 6. Take sound readings in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight un-weighted octave bands 31.5 Hz to 4000 Hz with the equipment operating.
 7. Take readings no closer than 36 inches from a wall or from the operating equipment and approximately 60 inches from the floor, with the meter held or mounted on a tripod.
 8. For outdoor measurements, move sound-testing meter slowly and scan area that has the most exposure to noise source being tested. Use A-weighted scale for this type of reading.
- D. Reporting:
1. Report shall record the following:
 - a. Location.

- b. System tested.
 - c. dBA reading.
 - d. Sound pressure level in each octave band with equipment on and off.
2. Plot sound pressure levels on NC worksheet with equipment on and off.

3.19 VIBRATION TESTS

- A. After systems are balanced and construction is Substantially Complete, measure and record

3.20 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.
- B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.
- C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.21 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
 1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.22 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
 1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
 4. Check the condition of filters.
 5. Check the condition of coils.
 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
 7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
 8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
1. New filters are installed.
 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
 3. Drain pans are clean.
 4. Fans are clean.
 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
 3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
 4. Balance each air outlet.

3.23 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.24 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.25 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
 - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 - 1. Pump curves.
 - 2. Fan curves.
 - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
 - 3. Project name.
 - 4. Project location.
 - 5. Architect's name and address.
 - 6. Engineer's name and address.
 - 7. Contractor's name and address.
 - 8. Report date.
 - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 - 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 - 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 - 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 - 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 - 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
 - j. Return airflow in cfm.
 - k. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - l. Return-air damper position.
 - m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.

- c. Coil type.
 - d. Number of rows.
 - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
 - f. Make and model number.
 - g. Face area in sq. ft..
 - h. Tube size in NPS.
 - i. Tube and fin materials.
 - j. Circuiting arrangement.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
 - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
 - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - h. Water flow rate in gpm.
 - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
 - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
 - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
 - l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
 - m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
 - n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
 - o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
- a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Fuel type in input data.
 - g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
 - h. Ignition type.
 - i. Burner-control types.
 - j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
 - l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
 - m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
 - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
 - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
 - g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.

- h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
 - i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
 - j. Manifold pressure in psig.
 - k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
 - l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
 - m. Motor voltage at each connection.
 - n. Motor amperage for each phase.
 - o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.
- H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil identification.
 - d. Capacity in Btu/h.
 - e. Number of stages.
 - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
 - g. Rated amperage.
 - h. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - i. Face area in sq. ft..
 - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.
 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Heat output in Btu/h.
 - b. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - c. Air velocity in fpm.
 - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
 - f. Voltage at each connection.
 - g. Amperage for each phase.
- I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.

- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:
- a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Duct size in inches.
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
 - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
 - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig.

K. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:
- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Apparatus used for test.
 - d. Area served.
 - e. Make.
 - f. Number from system diagram.
 - g. Type and model number.
 - h. Size.
 - i. Effective area in sq. ft..
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Air velocity in fpm.
 - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
 - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
 - e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
 - f. Final velocity in fpm.
 - g. Space temperature in deg F.

L. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Room or riser served.
 - d. Coil make and size.
 - e. Flowmeter type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
 - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
 - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
 - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

M. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:
- a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Service.
 - d. Make and size.
 - e. Model number and serial number.
 - f. Water flow rate in gpm.
 - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
 - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
 - i. Pump rpm.
 - j. Impeller diameter in inches.
 - k. Motor make and frame size.
 - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - m. Voltage at each connection.
 - n. Amperage for each phase.
 - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - p. Seal type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
 - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - c. Actual impeller size in inches.
 - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
 - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
 - j. Voltage at each connection.
 - k. Amperage for each phase.

N. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.26 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Engineer (and commissioning authority where applicable).
- B. Engineer (and commissioning authority where applicable) shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
 - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
 - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.27 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
 - 8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 23 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
 - 2. Division 23 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. The product descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Ductwork Insulation Material Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedule and specifications, the drawing schedule shall take precedent.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation without factory-applied jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
 - b. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
 - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.4 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: Aluminum.
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company: CP-76.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: White.

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.

3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect].
- D. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
 2. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 3. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 4. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 5. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

2.7 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface.

Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.

6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.6 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 "Exterior Painting" and Division 09 "Interior Painting."
 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- C. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.8 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Refer to schedules on drawings for material and thickness application to duct systems.
- B. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
 - 8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- C. Items Not Insulated:
 - 1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
 - 2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007.
 - 3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
 - 4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
 - 5. Flexible connectors.
 - 6. Vibration-control devices.
 - 7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230716 - HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC equipment that is not factory insulated:
 1. Chilled-water pumps.
 2. Heating, hot-water pumps.
 3. Expansion/compression tanks.
 4. Air separators.
- B. Related Sections:
 1. Division 23 "Duct Insulation."
 2. Division 23 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 3. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections.
 4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 5. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
 6. Detail field application for each equipment type.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- B. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- C. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- E. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas](#).
 - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
 - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 - 4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
 - 5. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel](#).
 - b. [Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex](#).
 - c. [K-Flex USA; Insul-Sheet and K-FLEX LS](#).
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap](#).
 - b. [Johns Manville; Microlite](#).
 - c. [Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap](#).
 - d. [Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap](#).
 - e. [Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap](#).
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x

deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
- b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
- c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
- d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
- e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.
- f. .

2.2 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.

C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
- b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
- c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
- d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
- b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
- c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
- d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.

- b. [Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.](#)
- c. [Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.](#)
- d. [Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.](#)

F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. [Products](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.](#)
 - b. [Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.](#)
 - c. [P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.](#)
 - d. [Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.](#)

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
 1. [Products](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.](#)
 - b. [Vimasco Corporation; 749.](#)
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
 1. [Products](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.](#)
 - b. [Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.](#)
 - c. [Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.](#)
 - d. [Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.](#)
 - e. [Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.](#)
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.4 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
 5. Color: White or gray.
- B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: Aluminum.
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: White.

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 3. Color: White.
 - 4. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
- D. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
 - 2. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 3. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - 4. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - 5. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - a. Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - b. Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - c. Tee covers.
 - d. Flange and union covers.
 - e. End caps.
 - f. Beveled collars.
 - g. Valve covers.
 - h. Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. [Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.](#)

2.7 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. [ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.](#)
- b. [Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.](#)
- c. [Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.](#)
- d. <Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation>.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. [ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.](#)
- b. [Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.](#)
- c. [Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.](#)
- d. [Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.](#)

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. [ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.](#)
- b. [Compac Corporation; 130.](#)
- c. [Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.](#)

2. Width: 2 inches.
 3. Thickness: 6 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF](#).
 - b. [Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800](#).
 - c. [Compac Corporation; 120](#).
 - d. [Venture Tape; 3520 CW](#).
 2. Width: 2 inches.
 3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 5 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

- A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals](#).
 - b. [RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs](#).
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) [AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers](#).
 - 2) [GEMCO; Perforated Base](#).
 - 3) [Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle](#).
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Aluminum, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) [AGM Industries, Inc.: RC-150](#).
- 2) [GEMCO; R-150](#).
- 3) [Midwest Fasteners, Inc.: WA-150](#).
- 4) [Nelson Stud Welding: Speed Clips](#).

b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

2.9 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- O. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.

4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
 2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
 3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
 4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
 - a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
 - b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
 - c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
 - f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
 - g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
 6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
 7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
 8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
 9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
 10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.

1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:
1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch-diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
 2. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel, at least 0.040 inch thick.
 3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

3.4 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

3.5 FINISHES

- A. Equipment Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 "Exterior Painting" and "Interior Painting."
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.7 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.
- C. Chilled-water pump insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
 - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- D. Heating-Hot-Water Pump Insulation: Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Chilled-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.
- F. Heating-Hot-Water Expansion/Compression Tank Insulation: Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.
- G. Chilled-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Cellular Glass: 2 inches thick.
 - 2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
 - 3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.
- H. Heating-Hot-Water Air-Separator Insulation: Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.

3.8 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Equipment, Concealed:

1. None.
- D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
1. PVC: 20 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 230716

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
2. Chilled-water and brine piping, indoors and outdoors.
3. Heating hot-water piping, indoors.
4. Steam and steam condensate piping, indoors.
5. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 "Duct Insulation."
2. Division 23 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
3. Division 23 "Underground Hydronic Piping" for loose-fill pipe insulation in underground piping outside the building.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. The product descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Piping Insulation Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be used

without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedule and specifications, the drawing schedule shall take precedent.

- B. If retaining more than one type of insulation in this article, indicate where each type applies in insulation system schedules.
- C. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- D. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- E. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- F. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- G. Calcium Silicate:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); Thermo-12 Gold.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 3. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 4. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
 - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
 - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
 - 2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-97.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 290.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; 760.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.4 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 3. Color: White.
 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- D. Metal Jacket:
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- E. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
 - b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.

2.7 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
 - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
 - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.

4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
 2. Width: 2 inches.
 3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 5 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
 2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Manholes.
 5. Handholes.
 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable

- insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.

3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.10 FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 "Exterior Painting" and "Interior Painting."
 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.13 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to drawings for schedule.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 255050 - DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROLS SYSTEM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Building Management System (BMS), utilizing direct digital controls.

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

- A. Products Installed But Not Supplied Under This Section:
 - 1. Thermostats with standalone units.
- B. Products Not Furnished or Installed But Integrated with the Work of This Section:
 - 1. Smoke detectors (through alarm relay contacts).
- C. Work Required Under Other Divisions Related to This Section:
 - 1. Power wiring to line side of motor starters, disconnects or variable frequency drives.
 - 2. Provision and wiring of smoke detectors and other devices relating to fire alarm system.
 - 3. Campus LAN (Ethernet) connection adjacent to JACE network management controller.
 - 4. Electrical submeters provided and installed by Electrical Contractor. Submeters to be provided with BACnet ms/tp communication.
 - 5. Solar Panel System and associated power meters
 - 6. Television display of Solar Panel System savings. Controls contractor to provide custom graphic appropriate for public display of Solar Panel system power data.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 230500 - Common Work Results for HVAC.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Scope: Furnish all labor, materials and equipment necessary for a complete and operating Building Management System (BMS), utilizing Direct Digital Controls as shown on the drawings and as described herein. Drawings are diagrammatic only. All controllers furnished in this section shall communicate on a peer-to-peer BACnet protocol bus.
 - 1. System architecture shall fully support a multi-vendor environment and be able to integrate third party systems via protocols including, as a minimum, LonTalk, BACnet and MODBUS.
 - 2. System architecture shall provide secure Web access using any of the current versions of Microsoft Internet Explorer, Mozilla Firefox, or Google Chrome browsers from any computer on the owner's LAN.
 - 3. Any control vendor that shall provide additional BMS server software shall be unacceptable.
 - 4. The BMS server or Master Controller shall host all graphic files for the control system.
 - 5. Provide all hardware, software, programming tools and documentation necessary to modify the system, accommodate system expansion, and facilitate changes in operation on site. Modification includes addition and deletion of devices, circuits, and changes to system operation and custom label changes for devices and circuits. The system structure and software shall place no limit on the type or extent of software modifications on-site.
 - 6. Owner shall receive all Administrator level login and passwords for engineering toolset at first training session. The Owner shall have full licensing and full access rights for all network management, operating system server, engineering and programming

- software required for the ongoing maintenance and operation of the BMS.
- 7. All JACE hardware licenses and certificates shall be stored on local MicroSD memory card employing encrypted "safe boot" technology.
- B. All products of the BMS shall be provided with the following agency approvals. Verification that the approvals exist for all submitted products shall be provided on request, with the submittal package. Systems or products not currently offering the following approvals are not acceptable.
- 1. Federal Communications Commission (FCC), Rules and Regulations, Volume II -July 1986 Part 15 Class A Radio Frequency Devices.
 - 2. FCC, Part 15, Subpart B, Class B
 - 3. FCC, Part 15, Subpart C
 - 4. FCC, Part 15, Subpart J, Class A Computing Devices.
 - 5. UL 504 - Industrial Control Equipment.
 - 6. UL 506 - Specialty Transformers.
 - 7. UL 910 - Test Method for Fire and Smoke Characteristics of Electrical and Optical-Fiber Cables Used in Air-Handling Spaces.
 - 8. UL 916 - Energy Management Systems All.
 - 9. UL 1449 - Transient Voltage Suppression.
 - 10. Standard Test for Flame Propagation Height of Electrical and Optical - Fiber Cables Installed Vertically in Shafts.
 - 11. EIA/ANSI 232-E - Interface Between Data Technical Equipment and Data Circuit Terminal Equipment Employing Serial Binary Data Interchange.
 - 12. EIA 455 - Standard Test Procedures for Fiber Optic Fibers, Cables, Transducers, Connecting and Terminating Devices.
 - 13. IEEE C62.41- Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits.
 - 14. IEEE 142 - Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems.
 - a. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment.
 - 15. NEMA ICS 1 - Industrial Controls and Systems.
 - 16. NEMA ST 1 - Specialty Transformers.
 - 17. NCSBC Compliance, Energy: Performance of control system shall meet or surpass the requirements of ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-1999.
 - 18. CE 61326.
 - 19. C-Tick.
 - 20. cUL.

1.5 SPECIFICATION NOMENCLATURE

- A. Acronyms used in this specification are as follows:
- 1. Actuator: Control device that opens or closes valve or damper in response to control signal.
 - 2. AI: Analog Input.
 - 3. AO: Analog Output.
 - 4. Analog: Continuously variable state over stated range of values.
 - 5. BMS: Building Management System.
 - 6. DDC: Direct Digital Control.
 - 7. Discrete: Binary or digital state.
 - 8. DI: Discrete Input.
 - 9. DO: Discrete Output.
 - 10. FC: Fail Closed position of control device or actuator. Device moves to closed position on loss of control signal or energy source.
 - 11. FO: Fail open (position of control device or actuator). Device moves to open position on loss of control signal or energy source.
 - 12. GUI: Graphical User Interface.
 - 13. HVAC: Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning.

14. IDC: Interoperable Digital Controller.
15. ILC: Interoperable Lon Controller.
16. LAN: Local Area Network.
17. Modulating: Movement of a control device through an entire range of values, proportional to an infinitely variable input value.
18. Motorized: Control device with actuator.
19. NAC: Network Area Controller.
20. NC: Normally closed position of switch after control signal is removed or normally closed position of manually operated valves or dampers.
21. NO: Normally open position of switch after control signal is removed; or the open position of a controlled valve or damper after the control signal is removed; or the usual position of a manually operated valve.
22. OSS: Operating System Server, host for system graphics, alarms, trends, etc.
23. Operator: Same as actuator.
24. PC: Personal Computer.
25. Peer-to-Peer: Mode of communication between controllers in which each device connected to network has equal status and each shares its database values with all other devices connected to network.
26. P: Proportional control; control mode with continuous linear relationship between observed input signal and final controlled output element.
27. PI: Proportional-Integral control, control mode with continuous proportional output plus additional change in output based on both amount and duration of change in controller variable (reset control).
28. PICS: BACnet Product Interoperability Compliance Statement.
29. PID: Proportional-Integral-Derivative control, control mode with continuous correction of final controller output element versus input signal based on proportional error, its time history (reset) and rate at which it's changing (derivative).
30. Point: Analog or discrete instrument with addressable database value.
31. WAN: Wide Area Network.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 1. Catalog Information
 2. Detailed Product Information / Data Sheets
 3. Installation and/or Maintenance Instructions
- C. Submit documentation of contractor qualifications if requested by the A-E.
- D. Five copies of shop drawings of the entire control system shall be submitted and shall consist of a complete list of equipment and materials, including manufacturers' catalog data sheets and installation instructions. Submit in printed electronic format. Samples of written Controller Checkout Sheets and Performance Verification Procedures for applications similar in scope shall be included for approval.
- E. Shop drawings shall also contain complete wiring and schematic diagrams, sequences of operation, control system bus layout and any other details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a system. Terminal identification for all control wiring shall be shown on the shop drawings.
- F. Upon completion of the work, provide 5 complete sets of 'as-built' drawings and other project-specific documentation in 3-ring hard-backed binders and on digital media.
- G. Any deviations from these specifications or the work indicated on the drawings shall be clearly identified in the Submittals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The Control System Contractor shall have a full service DDC office within 50 miles of the job site. This office shall be staffed with applications engineers, software engineers and field technicians. This office shall maintain parts inventory and shall have all testing and diagnostic equipment necessary to support this work, as well as staff trained in the use of this equipment.
- B. Single Source Responsibility of Supplier: The Control System Contractor shall be responsible for the complete installation and proper operation of the control system. The Control System Contractor shall exclusively be in the regular and customary business of design, installation and service of computerized building management systems similar in size and complexity to the system specified.
- C. Equipment and Materials: Equipment and materials shall be cataloged products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production and installation of HVAC control systems. Products shall be manufacturer's latest standard design and have been tested and proven in actual use.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Maintain integrity of shipping cartons for each piece of equipment and control device through shipping, storage and handling as required to prevent equipment damage. Store equipment and materials inside and protected from weather.

1.9 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Cooperation with Other Trades: Coordinate the Work of this section with that of other sections to insure that the Work will be carried out in an orderly fashion. It shall be this Contractor's responsibility to check the Contract Documents for possible conflicts between his Work and that of other crafts in equipment location, pipe, duct and conduit runs, electrical outlets and fixtures, air diffusers and structural and architectural features.

1.10 SEQUENCING

- A. Ensure that products of this section are supplied to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - 1. Engineered Systems & Energy Solutions, Inc.
- B. Substitutions: Engineer Approval Required

2.2 GENERAL

- A. The Building Management System (BMS) shall be comprised of a network of interoperable, stand-alone digital controllers, a network area controller, graphics and programming and other control devices for a complete system as specified herein.
- B. The installed system shall provide secure password access to all features, functions and data contained in the overall BMS.

2.3 OPEN, INTEROPERABLE, INTEGRATED ARCHITECTURE

- A. The intent of this specification is to provide a peer-to-peer networked, stand-alone, distributed control system utilizing Open protocols in one open, interoperable system.
- B. The supplied computer software shall employ object-oriented technology (OOT) for representation of all data and control devices within the system. Physical connection of any BACnet control equipment shall be via BACnet ms/tp or IP.
- C. All components and controllers supplied under this contract shall be true "peer-to-peer" communicating devices. Components or controllers requiring "polling" by a host to pass data shall not be acceptable.
- D. The supplied system shall incorporate the ability to access all data using HTML5 enabled browsers without requiring proprietary operator interface and configuration programs or browser plug-ins. An Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) or Structured Query Language (SQL) compliant server database is required for all system database parameter storage. This data shall reside on the Operating System Server located in the Facilities Office on the LAN. Systems requiring proprietary database and user interface programs shall not be acceptable.
- E. A hierarchical topology is required to assure reasonable system response times and to manage the flow and sharing of data without unduly burdening the customer's internal Intranet network. Systems employing a "flat" single tiered architecture shall not be acceptable.
 - 1. Maximum acceptable response time from any alarm occurrence (at the point of origin) to the point of annunciation shall not exceed 5 seconds for network connected user interfaces.
 - 2. Maximum acceptable response time from any alarm occurrence (at the point of origin) to the point of annunciation shall not exceed 60 seconds for remote or dial-up connected user interfaces.

2.4 BAS SERVER HARDWARE

- A. Minimum Computer Configuration (Hardware Independent).
 - 1. Central Server. Owner shall provide a dedicated BAS server with configuration that includes the following components as a minimum:
 - 2. Processor: Intel Xeon CPU E5-2640 x64 (or better), compatible with dual- and quad-core processors.
 - 3. Memory: 2 GB or more recommended for large systems
 - 4. Hard Drive: 256 GB minimum, more recommended depending on archiving requirements.
 - 5. Display: Video card and monitor capable of displaying 1024 x 768 pixel resolution or greater.
 - 6. Network Support: Ethernet adapter (10/100 Mb with RJ-45 connector).
 - 7. Connectivity: Full-time high-speed ISP connection recommended for remote site access (i.e. T1, ADSL, cable modem).
- B. Standard Client: The thin-client Web Browser BAS GUI shall be Microsoft Internet Explorer (10.0 or later) running on Microsoft 7+. No special software shall be required to be installed on the PCs used to access the BAS via a web browser.

2.5 SYSTEM NETWORK CONTROLLER (SNC)

- A. These controllers are designed to manage communications between the programmable equipment controllers, application specific controllers and advanced unitary controllers which are connected to its communications trunks, manage communications between itself

- and other system network controllers , and perform control and operating strategies for the system based on information from any controller connected to the BAS.
- B. The controllers shall be fully programmable to meet the unique requirements of the facility it shall control.
 - C. The controllers shall be capable of peer-to-peer communications with other SNC's and with any OWS connected to the BAS, whether the OWS is directly connected, connected via cellular modem or connected via the Internet.
 - D. The communication protocols utilized for peer-to-peer communications between SNC's will be Niagara 4 Fox, BACnet TCP/IP and SNMP. Use of a proprietary communication protocol for peer-to-peer communications between SNC's is not allowed.
 - E. The SNC shall employ a device count capacity license model that supports expansion capabilities.
 - F. The SNC shall be enabled to support and shall be licensed with the following Open protocol drivers (client and server) by default:
 - 1. BACnet
 - 2. Lon
 - 3. MODBUS
 - 4. SNMP
 - 5. KNX
 - G. The SNC shall be capable of executing application control programs to provide:
 - 1. Calendar functions.
 - 2. Scheduling.
 - 3. Trending.
 - 4. Alarm monitoring and routing.
 - 5. Time synchronization.
 - 6. Integration of LonWorks, BACnet, and MODBUS controller data.
 - 7. Network management functions for all SNC, PEC and ASC based devices.
 - H. The SNC shall provide the following hardware features as a minimum:
 - 1. Two 10/100 Mbps Ethernet ports.
 - 2. Two Isolated RS-485 ports with biasing switches.
 - 3. 1 GB RAM
 - 4. 4 GB Flash Total Storage / 2 GB User Storage
 - 5. Wi-Fi (Client or WAP)
 - 6. USB Flash Drive
 - 7. High Speed Field Bus Expansion
 - 8. -20-60 degreesC Ambient Operating Temperature
 - 9. Integrated 24 VAC/DC Global Power Supply
 - 10. MicroSD Memory Card Employing Encrypted Safe Boot Technology
 - I. The SNC shall support standard Web browser access via the Intranet/Internet. It shall support a minimum of 16 simultaneous users.
 - J. The SNC shall provide alarm recognition, storage, routing, management and analysis to supplement distributed capabilities of equipment or application specific controllers.
 - K. The SNC shall be able to route any alarm condition to any defined user location whether connected to a local network or remote via cellular modem, or wide-area network.
 - 1. Alarm generation shall be selectable for annunciation type and acknowledgement requirements including but not limited to:
 - a. Alarm.

- b. Return to normal.
 - c. To default.
- 2. Alarms shall be annunciated in any of the following manners as defined by the user:
 - a. Screen message text.
 - b. Email of complete alarm message to multiple recipients.
 - c. Pagers via paging services that initiate a page on receipt of email message.
 - d. Graphics with flashing alarm object(s).
- 3. The following shall be recorded by the SNC for each alarm (at a minimum):
 - a. Time and date.
 - b. Equipment (air handler #, access way, etc.).
 - c. Acknowledge time, date, and user who issued acknowledgement.
- L. Programming software and all controller "Setup Wizards" shall be embedded into the SNC.
- M. The SNC shall support the following security functions.
 - 1. Module code signing to verify the author of programming tool and confirm that the code has not been altered or corrupted.
 - 2. Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) for managing user roles and permissions.
 - 3. Require users to use strong credentials.
 - 4. Data in Motion and Sensitive Data at Rest be encrypted.
 - 5. LDAP and Kerberos integration of access management.
- N. The SNC shall support the following data modeling structures to utilize Search; Hierarchy; Template; and Permission functionality:
 - 1. Metadata: Descriptive tags to define the structure of properties.
 - 2. Tagging: Process to apply metadata to components
 - 3. Tag Dictionary
- O. The SNC shall employ template functionality. Templates are a containerized set of configured data tags, graphics, histories, alarms... that are set to be deployed as a unit based upon manufacturer's controller and relationships. All lower level communicating controllers (PEC, AUC, AVAV, VFD.) shall have an associated template file for reuse on future project additions.

2.6 PROGRAMMABLE EQUIPMENT CONTROLLER (PEC)

- A. HVAC control shall be accomplished using BACnet based devices where the application has a BTL Listed PICS defined. The controller platform shall provide options and advanced system functions, programmable and configurable using Niagara 4 Framework, that allow standard and customizable control solutions required in executing the "Sequence of Operation".
- B. All PECs shall be application programmable and shall at all times maintain their certification. All control sequences within or programmed into the PEC shall be stored in non-volatile memory, which is not dependent upon the presence of a battery to be retained.
- C. The PEC shall provide LED indication of communication and controller performance to the technician, without cover removal.
- D. The PEC shall not require any external configuration tool or programming tool. All configuration and programming tasks shall be accomplished and accessible from within the Niagara 4 environment.
- E. The following integral and remote Inputs/Outputs shall be supported per each PEC:
 - 1. Digital inputs.
 - 2. Analog inputs (configurable as 0-10V, 0-10,000 ohm or, 20K NTC).
 - 3. Analog outputs.

- 4. Digital outputs, configurable as maintained or floating motor control outputs.
 - 5. One integral power supply for auxiliary devices.
 - 6. If a 20 Vdc 65-mA power supply terminal is not integral to the PEC, provide at each PEC a separate, fully isolated, enclosed, current limited and regulated UL listed auxiliary power supply for power to auxiliary devices.
- F. Each PEC shall have expansion ability to support additional I/O requirements through the use of remote input/output modules.
- G. PEC Controllers shall support at minimum the following control techniques:
1. General-purpose control loops that can incorporate Demand Limit Control strategies, Set point reset, adaptive intelligent recovery, and time of day bypass.
 2. General-purpose, non-linear control loops.
 3. Start/stop Loops.
 4. If/Then/Else logic loops.
 5. Math Function loops (MIN, MAX, AVG, SUM, SUB, SQRT, MUL, DIV, ENTHALPY).

2.7 OTHER CONTROL SYSTEM HARDWARE

- A. Wall Mount Room Temperature sensors: Room temperature sensors will be provided with HVAC equipment package. Each room temperature sensor shall provide temperature indication to the factory, digital controller, provide the capability for a software-limited occupant set point adjustment and limited operation override capability. Remote adjustment of room set points and limits of set points shall be adjustable from the BMS.
- B. Humidity sensors shall be thin-film capacitive type sensor with on-board nonvolatile memory, accuracy to plus or minus two percent (2%) at 10 to 95% RH, 12 - 30 VDC input voltage, analog output (0 - 10 VDC or 4 - 20mA output). Operating range shall be 0 to 100% RH and 32 to 122 degrees F.
- C. Carbon Dioxide Sensors (CO₂): Sensors shall utilize Non-dispersive infrared technology. Sensor range shall be 0 - 2000 PPM. Accuracy shall be plus or minus three percent (3%) or 40 PPM, whichever is greater. Response shall be less than two minutes. Input voltage shall be 20 to 30 VAC or DC. Output shall be 0 - 10 VDC.
- D. Current Sensitive Switches: Solid state, split core current switch that operates when the current level (sensed by the internal current transformer) exceeds the adjustable trip point. Current switch to include an integral LED for indication of trip condition and a current level below trip set point.
- E. Differential Analog (duct) Static Pressure Transmitters Provide a pressure transmitter with integral capacitance type sensing and solid-state circuitry. Accuracy shall be plus or minus 1% of full range; range shall be selected for the specific application. Provide zero and span adjustment capability. Device shall have integral static pickup tube.
- F. Differential Air Pressure Switches: Provide SPDT type, UL-approved, and selected for the appropriate operating range where applied. Switches shall have adjustable set points and barbed pressure tips.
- G. Temperature Control Panels: Furnish temperature control panels of code gauge steel with hinged doors for each DDC controller. A complete set of 'as-built' control drawings (relating to the controls within that panel) shall be furnished within each control panel.
- H. Pipe and Duct Temperature sensing elements: 20,000-ohm thermistor temperature sensors with and accuracy of ±1% accuracy. Their range shall be -5 to 250 degrees F (-20 to

121 degrees C). Limited range sensors shall be acceptable provided they are capable of sensing the range expected for the point at the specified accuracy. Thermal wells with heat conductive gel shall be included.

- I. Low Air Temperature Sensors: Provide SPST type switch, with 15 to 55 degrees F (-9 to 13 degrees C), range, vapor-charged temperature sensor. Honeywell model L482A, or approved equivalent.
- J. Variable Frequency Drives: The variable frequency drives (VFD) for this project shall be provided factory installed with the HVAC equipment.
- K. Relays: Start/stop relay model shall provide either momentary or maintained switching action as appropriate for the motor being started. All relays shall be plugged in, interchangeable, mounted on a sub base and wired to numbered terminals strips. Relays installed in panels shall all be DPDT with indicating lamp. Relays installed outside of controlled devices shall be enclosed in a NEMA enclosure suitable for the location. Relays shall be labeled with UR symbol. RIB-style relays are acceptable for remote enable/disable.
- L. Control Power Transformers: Provide step-down transformers for all DDC controllers and devices as required. Transformers shall be sized for the load, but shall be sized for 50 watts, minimum. Transformers shall be UL listed Class 2 type, for 120 VAC/24 VAC operation.
- M. Line voltage protection: All DDC system control panels that are powered by 120 VAC circuits shall be provided with surge protection. This protection is in addition to any internal protection provided by the manufacturer. The protection shall meet UL, ULC 1449, IEEE C62.41B. A grounding conductor, (minimum 12 AWG), shall be brought to each control panel.

2.8 BAS SERVER & WEB BROWSER GUI - SYSTEM OVERVIEW

- A. The BAS Contractor shall provide system software based on server/thin-client architecture, designed around the open standards of web technology. The BAS server shall communicate using Ethernet and TCP. Server shall be accessed using a web browser over Owner intranet and remotely over the Internet.
- B. The intent of the thin-client architecture is to provide the operator(s) complete access to the BAS system via a web browser. The thin-client web browser Graphical User Interface (GUI) shall be browser and operating system agnostic, meaning it will support HTML5 enabled browsers without requiring proprietary operator interface and configuration programs or browser plug-ins. Microsoft, Firefox, and Chrome browsers (current released versions), and Windows as well as non-Window operating systems.
- C. The BAS server software shall support at least the following server platforms (Windows 7, 8.1, Server 12). The BAS server software shall be developed and tested by the manufacturer of the system stand-alone controllers and network controllers/routers.
- D. The web browser GUI shall provide a completely interactive user interface and shall provide a HTML5 experience that supports the following features as a minimum:
 1. Trending.
 2. Scheduling.
 3. Electrical demand limiting.
 4. Duty Cycling.
 5. Downloading Memory to field devices.
 6. Real time 'live' Graphic Programs.
 7. Tree Navigation.
 8. Parameter change of properties.
 9. Set point adjustments.

- 10. Alarm / event information.
 - 11. Configuration of operators.
 - 12. Execution of global commands.
 - 13. Add, delete, and modify graphics and displayed data.
- E. Software Components: All software shall be the most current version. All software components of the BAS system software shall be provided and installed as part of this project. BAS software components shall include:
- 1. Server Software, Database and Web Browser Graphical User Interface.
 - 2. 1 Year Software Maintenance license.
 - 3. Embedded System Configuration Utilities for future modifications to the system and controllers.
 - 4. Embedded Graphical Programming Tools.
 - 5. Embedded Direct Digital Control software.
 - 6. Embedded Application Software.
- F. BAS Server Database: The BAS server software shall utilize a Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) compatible database such as: MS SQL 8.0, Oracle 8i or IBM DB2. BAS systems written to Non -Standard and/or Proprietary databases are NOT acceptable.
- G. Thin Client - Web Browser Based: The GUI shall be thin client or browser based and shall meet the following criteria:
- 1. Web Browser's for PC's: Only the current released browser (Explorer/Firefox/Chrome) will be required as the GUI and a valid connection to the server network. No installation of any custom software shall be required on the operator's GUI workstation/client. Connection shall be over an intranet or the Internet.
 - 2. Secure Socket Layers: Communication between the Web Browser GUI and BAS server shall offer encryption using 128-bit encryption technology within Secure Socket Layers (SSL). Communication protocol shall be Hyper-Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP).

2.9 WEB BROWSER GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE

- A. Web Browser Navigation: The Thin Client web browser GUI shall provide a comprehensive user interface. Using a collection of web pages, it shall be constructed to "feel" like a single application, and provide a complete and intuitive mouse/menu driven operator interface. It shall be possible to navigate through the system using a web browser to accomplish requirements of this specification. The Web Browser GUI shall (as a minimum) provide for navigation, and for display of animated graphics, schedules, alarms/events, live graphic programs, active graphic set point controls, configuration menus for operator access, reports and reporting actions for events.
- B. Login: On launching the web browser and selecting the appropriate domain name or IP address, the operator shall be presented with a login page that will require a login name and strong password. Navigation in the system shall be dependent on the operator's role-based application control privileges.
- C. Navigation: Navigation through the GUI shall be accomplished by clicking on the appropriate level of a navigation tree (consisting of an expandable and collapsible tree control like Microsoft's Explorer program) and/or by selecting dynamic links to other system graphics. Both the navigation tree and action pane shall be displayed simultaneously, enabling the operator to select a specific system or equipment and view the corresponding graphic. The navigation tree shall as a minimum provide the following views: Geographic, Network, Groups and Configuration.
 - 1. Geographic View shall display a logical geographic hierarchy of the system including: cities, sites, buildings, building systems, floors, equipment and objects.
 - 2. Groups View shall display Scheduled Groups and custom reports.
 - 3. Configuration View shall display all the configuration categories (Operators, Schedule,

Event, Reporting and Roles).

- D. Action Pane: The Action Pane shall provide several functional views for each subsystem specified. A functional view shall be accessed by clicking on the corresponding button:
1. Graphics: Using graphical format suitable for display in a web browser, graphics shall include aerial building/campus views, color building floor-plans, equipment drawings, active graphic set point controls, web content and other valid HTML elements. The data on each graphic page shall automatically refresh.
 2. Dashboards: User customizable data using drag and drop HTML5 elements. Shall include Web Charts, Gauges, and other custom developed widgets for web browser. User shall have ability to save custom dashboards.
 3. Search: User shall have multiple options for searching data based upon Tags. Associated equipment, real time data, Properties, and Trends shall be available in result.
 4. Properties: Shall include graphic controls and text for the following: Locking or overriding objects, demand strategies, and any other valid data required for setup. Changes made to the properties pages shall require the operator to depress an 'accept/cancel' button.
 5. Schedules: Shall be used to create, modify/edit and view schedules based on the systems hierarchy (using the navigation tree).
 6. Alarms: Shall be used to view alarm information geographically (using the navigation tree), acknowledge alarms, sort alarms by category, actions and verify reporting actions.
 7. Charting: Shall be used to display associated trend and historical data, modify colors, date range, axis and scaling. User shall have ability to create HTML charts through web browser without utilizing chart builder. User shall be able to drag and drop single or multiple data points, including schedules, and apply status colors for analysis.
 8. Logic - Live Graphic Programs: Shall be used to display 'live' graphic programs of the control algorithm, (micro block programming) for the mechanical/electrical system selected in the navigation tree.
 9. Other actions such as Print, Help, Command, and Logout shall be available via a drop-down window.
- E. Color Graphics: The Web Browser GUI shall make extensive use of color in the graphic pane to communicate information related to set points and comfort. Animated .gifs or .jpg, vector scalable, active set point graphic controls shall be used to enhance usability. Graphics tools used to create Web Browser graphics shall be non-proprietary and conform to the following basic criteria:
1. Display Size: The GUI workstation software shall graphically display in a minimum of 1024 by 768 pixels 24 bit True Color.
 2. General Graphic: General area maps shall show locations of controlled buildings in relation to local landmarks.
 3. Color Floor Plans: Floor plan graphics shall show heating and cooling zones throughout the buildings in a range of colors, as selected by Owner. Provide a visual display of temperature relative to their respective set points. The colors shall be updated dynamically as a zone's actual comfort condition changes.
 4. Mechanical Components: Mechanical system graphics shall show the type of mechanical system components serving any zone through the use of a pictorial representation of components. Selected I/O points being controlled or monitored for each piece of equipment shall be displayed with the appropriate engineering units. Animation shall be used for rotation or moving mechanical components to enhance usability. .
 5. Minimum System Color Graphics: Color graphics shall be selected and displayed via a web browser for the following:
 - a. Each piece of equipment monitored or controlled including each terminal unit.
 - b. Each building.

- c. Each floor and zone controlled.
- F. Hierarchical Schedules: Utilizing the Navigation Tree displayed in the web browser GUI, an operator (with proper access credentials) shall be able to define a Normal, Holiday or Override schedule for an individual piece of equipment or room, or choose to apply a hierarchical schedule to the entire system, site or floor area. All schedules that affect the system/area/equipment highlighted in the Navigation Tree shall be shown in a summary schedule table and graph.
1. Schedules: Schedules shall comply with the LonWorks and BACnet standards, (Schedule Object, Calendar Object, Weekly Schedule property and Exception Schedule property) and shall allow events to be scheduled based on:
 - a. Types of schedule shall be Normal, Holiday or Override.
 - b. A specific date.
 - c. A range of dates.
 - d. Any combination of Month of Year (1-12, any), Week of Month (1-5, last, any), Day of Week (M-Sun, Any).
 - e. Wildcard (example, allow combinations like second Tuesday of every month).
 2. Schedule Categories: The system shall allow operators to define and edit scheduling categories (different types of "things" to be scheduled; for example, lighting, HVAC occupancy, etc.). The categories shall include: name, description, icon (to display in the hierarchy tree when icon option is selected) and type of value to be scheduled.
 3. Schedule Groups: In addition to hierarchical scheduling, operators shall be able to define functional Schedule Groups, comprised of an arbitrary group of areas/rooms/equipment scattered throughout the facility and site. For example, the operator shall be able to define an 'individual tenant' group - who may occupy different areas within a building or buildings. Schedules applied to the 'tenant group' shall automatically be downloaded to control modules affecting spaces occupied by the 'tenant group'.
 4. Intelligent Scheduling: The control system shall be intelligent enough to automatically turn on any supporting equipment needed to control the environment in an occupied space. If the operator schedules an individual room in a VAV system for occupancy, for example, the control logic shall automatically turn on the VAV air handling unit, chiller, boiler and/or any other equipment required to maintain the specified comfort and environmental conditions within the room.
 5. Partial Day Exceptions: Schedule events shall be able to accommodate a time range specified by the operator (ex: board meeting from 6 pm to 9 pm overrides Normal schedule for conference room).
 6. Schedule Summary Graph: The schedule summary graph shall clearly show Normal versus Holiday versus Override Schedules and the net operating schedule that results from all contributing schedules. Note: In case of priority conflict between schedules at the different geographic hierarchy, the schedule for the more detailed geographic level shall apply.
- G. Alarms: Alarms associated with a specific system, area, or equipment selected in the Navigation Tree, shall be displayed in the Action Pane by selecting an 'Alarms' view. Alarms, and reporting actions shall have the following capabilities:
1. Alarms View: Each Alarm shall display an Alarms Category (using a different icon for each alarm category), date/time of occurrence, current status, alarm report and a bold URL link to the associated graphic for the selected system, area or equipment. The URL link shall indicate the system location, address and other pertinent information. An operator shall easily be able to sort events, edit event templates and categories, acknowledge or force a return to normal in the Events View as specified in this section.
 2. Alarm Categories: The operator shall be able to create, edit or delete alarm categories such as HVAC, Maintenance, Fire, or Generator. An icon shall be associated with each alarm category, enabling the operator to easily sort through multiple events

- displayed.
3. Alarm Templates: Alarm template shall define different types of alarms and their associated properties. As a minimum, properties shall include a reference name, verbose description, severity of alarm, acknowledgement requirements, and high/low limit and out of range information.
 4. Alarm Areas: Alarm Areas enable an operator to assign specific Alarm Categories to specific Alarm Reporting Actions. For example, it shall be possible for an operator to assign all HVAC Maintenance Alarm on the 1st floor of a building to email the technician responsible for maintenance. The Navigation Tree shall be used to setup Alarm Areas in the Graphic Pane.
 5. Alarm Time/Date Stamp: All events shall be generated at the DDC control module level and comprise the Time/Date Stamp using the standalone control module time and date.
 6. Alarm Configuration: Operators shall be able to define the type of Alarm generated per object. A 'network' view of the Navigation Tree shall expose all objects and their respective Alarm Configuration. Configuration shall include assignment of Alarm, type of Acknowledgement and notification for return to normal or fault status.
 7. Alarm Summary Counter: The view of Alarm in the Graphic Pane shall provide a numeric counter, indicating how many Alarms are active (in alarm), require acknowledgement and total number of Alarms in the BAS Server database.
 8. Alarm Auto-Deletion: Alarms that are acknowledged and closed shall be auto-deleted from the database and archived to a text file after an operator defined period.
 9. Alarm Reporting Actions: Alarm Reporting Actions specified shall be automatically launched (under certain conditions) after an Alarm is received by the BAS server software. Operators shall be able to easily define these Reporting Actions using the Navigation Tree and Graphic Pane through the web browser GUI. Reporting Actions shall be as follows:
 - a. Print: Alarm information shall be printed to the BAS server's PC or a networked printer.
 - b. Email: Email shall be sent via any POP3-compatible e-mail server (most Internet Service Providers use POP3). Email messages may be copied to several email accounts. Note: Email reporting action shall also be used to support alphanumeric paging services, where email servers support pagers.
 - c. File Write: The ASCII File write reporting action shall enable the operator to append operator defined alarm information to any alarm through a text file. The alarm information that is written to the file shall be completely definable by the operator. The operator may enter text or attach other data point information (such as AHU discharge temperature and fan condition upon a high room temperature alarm).
 - d. Write Property: The write property reporting action updates a property value in a hardware module.
 - e. SNMP: The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) reporting action sends an SNMP trap to a network in response to receiving an alarm.
 - f. Run External Program: The Run External Program reporting action launches specified program in response to an event.
- H. Trends: As system is engineered, all points shall be enabled to trend. Trends shall both be displayed and user configurable through the Web Browser GUI. Trends shall comprise analog, digital or calculated points simultaneously. A trend log's properties shall be editable using the Navigation Tree and Graphic Pane.
1. Viewing Trends: The operator shall have the ability to view trends by using the Navigation Tree and selecting a Trends button in the Graphic Pane. The system shall allow y- and x-axis maximum ranges to be specified and shall be able to simultaneously graphically display multiple trends per graph.
 2. Local Trends: Trend data shall be collected locally by Multi-Equipment/Single Equipment general-purpose controllers, and periodically uploaded to the BAS server if

- historical trending is enabled for the object. Trend data, including run time hours and start time date shall be retained in non-volatile module memory. Systems that rely on a gateway/router to run trends are NOT acceptable.
3. Resolution. Sample intervals shall be as small as one second. Each trended point will have the ability to be trended at a different trend interval. When multiple points are selected for displays that have different trend intervals, the system will automatically scale the axis.
 4. Dynamic Update. Trends shall be able to dynamically update at operator-defined intervals.
 5. Zoom/Pan. It shall be possible to zoom-in on a particular section of a trend for more detailed examination and 'pan through' historical data by simply scrolling the mouse.
 6. Numeric Value Display. It shall be possible to pick any sample on a trend and have the numerical value displayed.
 7. Copy/Paste. The operator shall have the ability to pan through a historical trend and copy the data viewed to the clipboard using standard keystrokes (i.e. CTRL+C, CTRL+V).
- I. Security Access: Systems that are accessed from the web browser GUI to BAS server shall require a Login Name and Strong Password. Access to different areas of the BAS system shall be defined in terms of Role-Based Access Control privileges as specified:
1. Roles: Roles shall reflect the actual roles of different types of operators. Each role shall comprise a set of 'easily understood English language' privileges. Roles shall be defined in terms of View, Edit and Function Privileges.
 - a. View Privileges shall comprise: Navigation, Network, and Configuration Trees, Operators, Roles and Privileges, Alarm/Event Template and Reporting Action.
 - b. Edit Privileges shall comprise: Set point, Tuning and Logic, Manual Override, and Point Assignment Parameters.
 - c. Function Privileges shall comprise: Alarm/Event Acknowledgement, Control Module Memory Download, Upload, Schedules, Schedule Groups, Manual Commands, Print and Alarm/Event Maintenance.
 2. Geographic Assignment of Roles: Roles shall be geographically assigned using a similar expandable/collapsible navigation tree. For example, it shall be possible to assign two HVAC Technicians with similar competencies (and the same operator defined HVAC Role) to different areas of the system.

2.10 GRAPHICAL PROGRAMMING

- A. The system software shall include a Graphic Programming Language (GPL) for all DDC control algorithms resident in all control modules. Any system that does not use a drag and drop method of graphical icon programming shall not be accepted. All systems shall use a GPL method used to create a sequence of operations by assembling graphic microblocks that represent each of the commands or functions necessary to complete a control sequence. Microblocks represent common logical control devices used in conventional control systems, such as relays, switches, high signal selectors etc., in addition to the more complex DDC and energy management strategies such as PID loops and optimum start. Each microblock shall be interactive and contain the programming necessary to execute the function of the device it represents.
- B. Graphic programming shall be performed while on screen and using a mouse; each microblock shall be selected from a microblock library and assembled with other microblocks necessary to complete the specified sequence. Microblocks are then interconnected on screen using graphic "wires," each forming a logical connection. Once assembled, each logical grouping of microblocks and their interconnecting wires then forms a graphic function block which may be used to control any piece of equipment with a similar point configuration and sequence of operation.
- C. Graphic Sequence: The clarity of the graphic sequence shall be such that the operator has

the ability to verify that system programming meets the specifications, without having to learn or interpret a manufacturer's unique programming language. The graphic programming shall be self-documenting and provide the operator with an understandable and exact representation of each sequence of operation.

- D. **GPL Capabilities:** The following is a minimum definition of the capabilities of the Graphic Programming software:
1. Function Block (FB): Shall be a collection of points, microblocks and wires which have been connected together for the specific purpose of controlling a piece of HVAC equipment or a single mechanical system.
 2. Logical I/O: Input/Output points shall interface with the control modules in order to read various signals and/or values or to transmit signal or values to controlled devices.
 3. Microblocks: Shall be software devices that are represented graphically and may be connected together to perform a specified sequence. A library of microblocks shall be submitted with the control contractors bid.
 4. Wires: Shall be Graphical elements used to form logical connections between microblocks and between logical I/O.
 5. Reference Labels: Labels shall be similar to wires in that they are used to form logical connections between two points. Labels shall form a connection by reference instead of a visual connection, i.e. two points labeled 'A' on a drawing are logically connected even though there is no wire between them.
 6. Parameter: A parameter shall be a value that may be tied to the input of a microblock.
 7. Properties: Dialog boxes shall appear after a microblock has been inserted which has editable parameters associated with it. Default parameter dialog boxes shall contain various editable and non-editable fields, and shall contain 'push buttons' for the purpose of selecting default parameter settings.
 8. Icon: An icon shall be graphic representation of a software program. Each graphic microblock has an icon associated with it that graphically describes its function.
 9. Menu-bar Icon: Shall be an icon that is displayed on the menu bar on the GPL screen, which represents its associated graphic microblock.
 10. Live Graphical Programs: The Graphic Programming software shall support a 'live' mode, where all input/output data, calculated data and set points shall be displayed in a 'live' real-time mode.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.3 GENERAL

- A. Install system and materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, and as detailed on the project drawing set.
- B. Line and low voltage electrical connections to control equipment shown specified or shown

on the control diagrams shall be furnished and installed by the Control System Contractor in accordance with these specifications.

- C. Equipment furnished by the Mechanical Contractor that is normally wired before installation shall be furnished completely wired. Control wiring normally performed in the field will be furnished and installed by the Control System Contractor.
- D. All control devices mounted on the face of control panels shall be clearly identified as to function and system served with permanently engraved phenolic labels.

3.4 WIRING

- A. All electrical control wiring to the control panels shall be the responsibility of the Control System Contractor.
- B. All wiring shall be in accordance with the Project Electrical Specifications (Division 26), the National Electrical Code and any applicable local codes. All control wiring shall be installed in raceways.
- C. Excess wire shall not be looped or coiled in the controller cabinet.
- D. Incorporate electrical noise suppression techniques in relay control circuits.
- E. There shall be no drilling on the controller cabinet after the controls are mounted inside.
- F. Careful stripping of wire while inside the cabinet is required to ensure that no wire strand fragments land on circuit boards.
- G. Use manufacturer-specified wire for all network connections.
- H. Use approved optical isolation and lightning protection when penetrating building envelope.
- I. Read installation instructions carefully. Any unavoidable deviations shall be approved by owner's rep prior to installation.

3.5 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

- A. Upon completion of the installation, the Control System Contractor shall load all system software and start-up the system. The Control System Contractor shall perform all necessary calibration, testing and de-bugging and perform all required operational checks to insure that the system is functioning in full accordance with these specifications.
- B. The Control System Contractor shall perform tests to verify proper performance of components, routines and points. Repeat tests until proper performance results. This testing shall include a point-by-point log to validate 100% of the input and output points of the DDC system operation.
- C. System Acceptance: Satisfactory completion is when the Control System Contractor has performed successfully all the required testing to show performance compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents to the satisfaction of the Owner's Representative. System acceptance shall be contingent upon completion and review of all corrected deficiencies.

3.6 OPERATOR TRAINING

- A. During system commissioning and at such time acceptable performance of the Control System hardware and software has been established, the Control System Contractor shall provide on-site operator instruction to the owner's operating personnel. Operator instruction

shall be done during normal working hours and shall be performed by a competent representative familiar with the system hardware, software and accessories.

- B. The Control System Contractor shall provide 8 total hours of comprehensive training for system orientation, product maintenance, and troubleshooting. The training shall start after final commissioning.

3.7 WARRANTY PERIOD SERVICES

- A. Equipment, materials and workmanship incorporated into the work shall be warranted for a period of one year from the time of system acceptance.
- B. Within this period, upon notice by the Owner, any defects in the BMS due to faulty materials, methods of installation or workmanship shall be promptly repaired or replaced by the Control System Contractor at no expense to the Owner.
- C. Maintenance of Control Hardware: The Control System Contractor shall inspect, repair, replace, adjust, and calibrate, as required, the controllers, control devices and associated peripheral units during the warranty period. The Control System Contractor shall then furnish a report describing the status of the equipment, problem areas (if any) noticed during service work, and description of the corrective actions taken. The report shall clearly certify that all hardware is functioning correctly.
- D. Service Period: Calls for service by the Owner shall be honored within 24 hours and are not to be considered as part of routine maintenance.
- E. Service Documentation: A copy of the service report associated with each owner-initiated service call shall be provided to the owner.

3.8 WARRANTY ACCESS

- A. The Owner shall grant to the Control System Contractor reasonable access to the BMS during the warranty period. Remote access to the BMS (for the purpose of diagnostics and troubleshooting, via the Internet, during the warranty period) will be allowed.

3.9 OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. See Division 1 for requirements. O&M manuals shall include the following elements, as a minimum:
 1. As-built control drawings for all equipment.
 2. As-built Network Communications Diagram.
 3. General description and specifications for all components.
 4. Completed Performance Verification sheets.
 5. Completed Controller Checkout/Calibration Sheets.

3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 255050

SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
 1. Hot-water heating piping.
 2. Chilled-water piping.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 2. Other building services.
 3. Structural members.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. All grooved joint couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties shall be the products of a single manufacturer. Grooving tools shall be of the same manufacturer as the grooved components.
 1. All castings used for coupling housings, fittings, valve bodies, etc., shall be date stamped for quality assurance and traceability.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. The product descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Piping Material Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be used without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedule and specifications, the drawing schedule shall take precedent.
- B. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
 1. Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22 wrought copper or ASME B16.18 cast bronze with copper-tube dimensioned grooved ends to accept grooved-end couplings.
 2. Couplings: Ductile-iron housings cast with offsetting, angle-pattern, bolt pads, EPDM-HP gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with ASTM A449 compliant bolts and nuts to secure copper-tube dimensioned grooved pipe and fittings. Installation-ready for direct stab installation without field disassembly.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
 3. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Star Pipe Products.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B factory-fabricated steel; or ASTM A 234, Grade WPB steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with ASTM A449 compliant nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
 3. Couplings: Two ductile-iron housings and EPDM or nitrile gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with ASTM A449 compliant bolts, nuts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings. Couplings shall comply with ASTM F-1476 - Standard Specification for Performance of Gasketed Mechanical Couplings for Use in Piping Applications.
 - a. Rigid: Coupling housings with offsetting, angle-pattern bolt pads shall be used to provide system rigidity and support and hanging in accordance with ANSI B31.1 and B31.9. Installation-Ready, for direct stab installation without field disassembly.
 - b. Flexible: Use in locations where vibration attenuation and stress relief are required.
 - c. Two-segment couplings for NPS 14" and larger piping with lead-in chamfer on housing key and wide-width FlushSeal gasket.
- I. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

- E. Grooved Joint Lubricants: Lubricate gaskets with lubricant supplied by the coupling manufacturer in accordance with published installation instructions. The lubricant shall approved for the gasket elastomer and system media.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - b. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - e. Jomar International Ltd.
 - f. Matco-Norca.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.
 - h. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.

2. e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 2. Description:
- a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Waterway: Copper silicon casting conforming to UNS C87850 with grooved and/or threaded ends. UL classified in accordance with NSF-61 for potable water service, and shall meet the low-lead requirements of NSF-372.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 2. Schedule 40, Grade B, Type 96 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 2. Type L; hard-drawn copper tubing, wrought-copper or cast-bronze, grooved-joint fittings; and copper-tube dimensioned grooved joints.
 3. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 4. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
- C. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 2. Type L; hard-drawn copper tubing, wrought-copper or cast-bronze, grooved-joint fittings; and copper-tube dimensioned grooved joints.
 3. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 4. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.
- E. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- F. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
- G. Air-Vent Piping:
1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
- H. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to Division 23 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Unions and flanges for servicing and disconnect are not required in installations using grooved mechanical joint couplings. (The couplings shall serve as disconnect points if required.)
- T. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- U. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.
- V. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 23 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 23 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions or waterway fittings.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges or waterway fittings.

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
 - 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet.
 - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet.
 - 4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet.
 - 5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet.
 - 6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet.
- E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- F. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- G. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Pipe ends shall be clean and free from indentations, projections and roll marks in the area from pipe end to (and including) groove. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings. Gasket shall be manufactured by the coupling manufacturer and verified as suitable for the intended service. A factory trained representative (direct employee) of the coupling manufacturer shall provide on-site training for contractor's field personnel in the use of grooving tools, application of groove, and product installation. The representative shall periodically visit the job site and review installation to ensure best practices in grooved joint installation are being followed. Contractor shall remove and replace any improperly installed products.
- H. Optional: At owner's option the installing contractor shall use a quality program such as an inspection service to ensure proper installation of grooved components and upon completion of the manufacturer's inspection of the installation, they shall supply the owner a report and warranty.

3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
 - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
 - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
 - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
 - 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
 - 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
 - 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 - 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
 - 6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
 - 1. Open manual valves fully.
 - 2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
 - 3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
 - 4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
 - 5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
 - 6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
 - 7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:

1. Hot-water heating piping.
2. Chilled-water piping.
3. Condenser-water piping.
4. Glycol cooling-water piping.
5. Makeup-water piping.
6. Condensate-drain piping.
7. Blowdown-drain piping.
8. Air-vent piping.
9. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Hydronic specialties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 3. Condenser-Water Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 4. Glycol Cooling-Water Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 5. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
 6. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
 7. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F.
 8. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
 9. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2 VALVES

- A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping." "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC." "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls."
- C. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - c. Flow Design Inc.
 - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
 - e. Griswold Controls.
 - f. Nexus Valve, Inc.
 - g. Taco.
 - h. Victaulic Company
 2. Body: DZR Brass (Ametal®) globe type or bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 4. Disc: DZR Brass (Ametal®).
 5. Plug: Resin.
 6. Seat: PTFE or EPDM.
 7. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
 8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.

9. Handle Style: Multiple-turn handwheel for precise balancing or standard lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 250 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 230 deg F.
12. Koil-Kits may be used at coil connections. The kit shall include a circuit balancing valve, Y Strainer-Ball or Union-Ball valve combination, Union-Port fitting, and required coil hoses. A Differential pressure controller shall be provided as required. A meter shall be provided by the valve manufacturer that shall remain with the building owner after commissioning.

D. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - b. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - c. Flow Design Inc.
 - d. Gerand Engineering Co.
 - e. Griswold Controls.
 - f. Taco.
 - g. Victaulic Company
2. Body: Cast ductile-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: DZR Brass (Ametal®) or glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE or EPDM.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 250 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 230 deg F.

E. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
 - f. Watts Regulator Co.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
8. Inlet Strainer: , removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

- F. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
 - f. Watts Regulator Co.
 2. Body: Bronze or brass.
 3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
 4. Seat: Brass.
 5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
 6. Diaphragm: EPT.
 7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
 8. Inlet Strainer: , removable without system shutdown.
 9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
 10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

G. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Flow Design Inc.
 - b. Griswold Controls.
 - c. Nexus Valve, Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Company
2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
8. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F.

2.3 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Nexus Valve, Inc.

e. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
 - e. Taco, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 8).
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

C. Bladder-Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
 - e. Wessels
 - f. Elbi.
2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

D. Tangential-Type Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.

- b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
 - e. Elbi.
2. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig minimum working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature.
 3. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
 4. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
 5. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
 6. Size: Match system flow capacity.

E. Air Purgers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump.
 - d. Taco, Inc.
2. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
3. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig .
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.4 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body:
 - a. ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
 - b. ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12, ductile iron with coupled cover.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged or grooved ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 40-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 300 psig.

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body:
 - a. ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
 - b. ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12, ductile iron with coupled cover.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged or grooved ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 300 psig.

C. Suction Diffuser:

Flanged outlet with grooved inlet connections, rated to 300 psi. Ductile iron (ASTM A-536) body, 304 stainless steel frame and perforated sheet diffuser with 5/32" diameter holes. Removable 20 mesh 304 stainless steel start-up pre-filter, outlets for pressure/temperature drain connections, and base support boss.

D. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

E. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

F. Three flexible type grooved joint couplings may be used in lieu of flexible connectors at equipment connections in applicable piping systems. The couplings shall be placed in close proximity to the vibration source.

G. Expansion Fittings: Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping." "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

H. Factory-Assembled Pump Drops: Factory assembled grooved end drop for pipe sizes 3" through 12" (DN80 though DN300). Orange enamel coated assembly, consisting of a Class 150 flange for pump connection, required elbow and reducers, valves, specialties, and pipe spool with thermometer and pressure ports. (Butterfly valves used in assemblies shall have a pressure responsive seat and stem offset from the disc centerline to provide complete 360-degree circumferential seating. Assembly is installation-ready, with flexible couplings to accommodate vibration attenuation and stress relief. Assembly rated for working pressure to 300-psig.

1. Grooved end vibration pump discharge drop with tri-service valve assembly consisting of a spring-actuated check [Venturi-Check] valve and butterfly valve.
2. Grooved end vibration pump suction drop consisting of a suction diffuser with stainless steel basket and diffuser and Class 150 flange for pump connection, and butterfly valve.
3. Grooved end vibration pump suction drop consisting of a 90-degree base elbow, Wye pattern strainer with stainless steel perforated metal basket, and butterfly valve.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.

- C. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- D. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- E. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.
- E. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- F. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 232116

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 225 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig.

- B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig.

- C. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop based on manufacturer's test data.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.

1. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- N. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- O. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- P. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- Q. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Division 23 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 23 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 23 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 23 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- B. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Division 23 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.

2. Test refrigerant piping and specialties. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.6 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 232500 - HVAC WATER TREATMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following HVAC water-treatment systems:

1. Bypass chemical-feed equipment and controls.
2. Chemical treatment test equipment.
3. HVAC water-treatment chemicals.
4. Glycol feed systems.
5. Antifreeze Solutions.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EEPROM: Electrically erasable, programmable read-only memory.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. RO: Reverse osmosis.
- D. TDS: Total dissolved solids.
- E. UV: Ultraviolet.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of HVAC equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water, and glycol cooling, shall have the following water qualities:
 1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
 2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
 3. Boron: Maintain a value within 100 to 200 ppm.
 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand (non-glycol systems): Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
 5. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
 6. TDS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
 7. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.

8. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
9. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/ml.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
 - c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/ml.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of 0 organisms/ml.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for the following products:
 1. Bypass feeders.
 2. Chemical solution tanks.
 3. Injection pumps.
 4. Chemical test equipment.
 5. Chemical material safety data sheets.
 6. Glycol feed systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power and control wiring.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.
- B. Other Informational Submittals:
 1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in the "Performance Requirements" Article above.
 2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above to inhibit corrosion, scale formation, and biological growth for cooling,

chilled-water piping heating, hot-water piping, condenser-water piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion, and shall include the following:

1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
3. Periodic field service and consultation.
4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
5. Laboratory technical analysis.
6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Ampion Corp.
2. Anderson Chemical Co., Inc.
3. Aqua-Chem, Inc.; Cleaver-Brooks Div.
4. Barclay Chemical Co.; Water Management, Inc.
5. Boland Trane Services
6. GE Betz
7. GE Osmonics
8. H-O-H Chemicals, Inc.
9. Metro Group, Inc. (The); Metropolitan Refining Div.
10. ONDEO Nalco Company
11. Watcon, Inc.

2.2 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.

1. Capacity: 5 gal.
2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.

2.3 GLYCOL FEED SYSTEM

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Advantage Controls.

B. Description:

1. 55 gallon poly tank and painted steel stand.
2. Digital controller with heavy duty NEMA 4X enclosure with gasketed Lexan viewing door.
3. Singel 1/3 hp, 1.5 GPM pump.
4. Schedule 80 PVC piping.

5. Low level switch with audible alarm.
6. Dry contact alarm.
7. Pressure relief valve.
8. Pressure gauge (0-100 psi)
9. 120 VAC, 60 Hz. Prewired unit with 16 AWG 3-wire grounded plug.

2.4 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and that can attain water quality specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

2.5 ANTIFREEZE SOLUTION

- A. Propylene Glycol: Dowfrost by Dow Chemical Company with corrosion inhibitors and environmental stabilizer additives to be mixed with water to protect piping circuit and connected equipment from physical damage caused by freezing or corrosion.
- B. Quantity: Sufficient solution for initial system startup and for preventive maintenance for one year from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Dilution Water: Chloride content shall be less than 25 ppm, sulfate less than 25 ppm, and hardness less than 100 ppm.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.
- C. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.
- D. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.
- E. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water, and equipped with the following:
 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 2. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 3. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below feeder inlet.
 4. Install a swing check on inlet after the isolation valve.

3.3 PRE-OPERATIONAL CLEANING

- A. Closed Systems

1. System Preparation
 - a. Contractor shall flush all systems, including mud from drop legs. Remove, clean and replace all strainers. All systems shall contain the highest quality of water available.
 - b. Complete circulation must be achieved during the cleaning procedure. A minimum flow rate of 2 feet per second shall be maintained to ensure the cleaning chemicals will work properly. All electric, air, and thermostatic operated valves shall be open. All dead end runs shall be looped together with piping not less than 1/3 the size of the run. This piping is to remain in place until the cleaning is complete.
 - c. A minimum of 1 ½" ball or gate valve is to be permanently installed in the low point of each system for the purpose of draining the system.
 - d. The cleaner shall not require external heat to ensure its effectiveness.
2. Cleaning Procedure
 - a. Add recommended quantity of cleaning chemical directly into the closed loop before the recirculating pumps to ensure rapid mixing and distribution throughout the system. A small amount of antifoam may be added to prevent excessive foaming. Refer to MSDS for safety information.
 - b. Recirculate the system for 16-24 hours.
 - c. Open and drain mud legs and low points periodically during the cleaning process. Drain system completely paying particular attention to mud from drop legs and all low points.
 - d. Refill the system with clean potable water. Clean all strainers. Recirculate for 8-12 hours and completely drain the system.
 - a. Refill the system. The length of time between the completion of the cleaning procedure and the addition of the corrosion inhibitor shall not exceed 24 hours. Test the dilute solution using gas chromatography to verify concentration of glycol, and forward report to Architect (testing equipment for Owner's permanent use is not required).
 - b. Add the recommended level of closed loop inhibitor. The system is now ready for operation.
 - c. A service report shall be generated on-site by the water treatment representative certifying that the system has been cleaned in accordance with the above procedure and shall be copied to the mechanical contractor.

B. Water Treatment Service Program

1. Provide start-up service and regular service program visits for a period of one year from start-up, to include:
 - a. Recommendations for installation and system start-up.
 - b. Initial treatment dosages.
 - c. Training of operating personnel on proper feed and control techniques.
 - d. Service visits and consultation meetings as required.
 - e. Provide necessary log sheets and record forms.
 - f. Provide laboratory and technical assistance as required.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified Division 23 "Hydronic Piping."

- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Division 23 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- E. Refer to Division 22 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup water connections to potable-water systems.
- F. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- G. Ground equipment according to Division 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- H. Connect wiring according to Division 26 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC systems' startup procedures.
 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
 7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
 8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:
 1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
 2. Steam System: ASTM D 1066.
 3. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
 4. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
 5. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment. Refer to Division 01 "Demonstration and Training."
- B. Training: Provide a "how-to-use" self-contained breathing apparatus video that details exact operating procedures of equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 232513 - WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following water treatment for closed-loop hydronic systems:
 - 1. [Manual] [Automatic] chemical-feed equipment.
 - 2. Chemicals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 232533 "HVAC Makeup-Water Filtration Equipment" for water treatment of water softeners, RO equipment, and filtration equipment.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. RO: Reverse osmosis.
- B. TDS: Total dissolved solids consist of salts and other materials that combine with water as a solution.
- C. TSS: Total suspended solids include both organic and inorganic solids that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:
 - 1. Bypass feeders.
 - 2. Water meters.
 - 3. Inhibitor injection timers.
 - 4. pH controllers.
 - 5. Chemical solution tanks.
 - 6. Injection pumps.
 - 7. Chemical-treatment test equipment.
 - 8. Chemical material safety data sheets.
 - 9. Inhibited ethylene glycol.
 - 10. Inhibited propylene glycol.
- B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical-treatment equipment, showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to hydronic systems.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Water-Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- E. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider, capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HVAC WATER-TREATMENT MANUFACTURERS

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide all hardware, chemicals, and other material necessary to maintain HVAC water quality in all systems, as indicated in this Specification. Water quality for hydronic systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of hydronic equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, hydronic system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Closed hydronic systems, including [hot-water heating below 250 deg F] [chilled water] [dual-temperature water] [glycol heating] [and] [glycol cooling] shall have the following water qualities:

1. pH: Maintain a value within <Insert range>.
2. Alkalinity: Maintain a value within <Insert range> mg/L as CaCO₃.
3. Steel Corrosion Inhibitors: Provide sufficient inhibitors to limit mild steel corrosion to <Insert number> mils per year. Maintain soluble iron concentrations at or below <Insert value> mg/L.
4. Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Provide sufficient copper and brass corrosion inhibitors to limit copper corrosion to <Insert number> mils per year. Maintain soluble copper concentrations at or below <Insert value> mg/L.
5. Scale Control: Provide softened water for initial fill and makeup. Where softened water is not used, provide sufficient scale inhibitors to prevent formation of scale and maintain all scale-forming material in solution.
6. Dispersants: Provide sufficient dispersants to prevent sedimentation of fine particulate matter.
7. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of <Insert number> organisms/mL.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of <Insert number> organisms/mL.
 - c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of <Insert number> organisms/mL.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of <Insert number> organisms/mL.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of <Insert number> organisms/mL.
8. <Insert other applicable requirements>.

2.3 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Provide steel feeders with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Provide quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.
1. Capacity: [2 gal.] [5 gal.] <Insert value>.
 2. Minimum Working Pressure: [125 psig] [175 psig] <Insert value>.

2.4 AUTOMATIC CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Water Meter, Piston Type, Threaded:
1. AWWA C700, oscillating-piston, magnetic-drive, totalization meter.
 2. Body: Bronze.
 3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
 5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
 6. End Connections: Threaded.
 7. **[Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts, rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac, that will momentarily close at adjustable increments of total flow].**
 8. **[Electronic or digital interface for flow rate indication at central workstation compatible with DDC system, as described in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC." Low-voltage signal must be capable of transmitting 1000 feet].**

9. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Water Meter, Turbine Type, Threaded:

1. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig.
4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
6. End Connections: Threaded.
7. [Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts, rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac, that will momentarily close at adjustable increments of total flow].
8. [Electronic or digital interface for flow rate indication at central workstation compatible with DDC system, as described in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC." Low-voltage signal must be capable of transmitting 1000 feet].
9. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Water Meter, Turbine Type, Flanged:

1. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
2. Body: [Bronze] [Epoxy-coated cast iron].
3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
6. End Connections: Flanged.
7. [Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts, rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac, that will momentarily close at adjustable increments of total flow].
8. [Electronic or digital interface for flow rate indication at central workstation compatible with DDC system, as described in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC." Low-voltage signal must be capable of transmitting 1000 feet].
9. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Chemical Solution Tanks:

1. Chemical-resistant reservoirs fabricated from high-density opaque polyethylene with minimum 110 percent containment vessel.
2. Molded cover with recess for mounting pump.
3. Capacity: [30 gal.] [50 gal.] [120 gal.] <Insert value>.

E. Chemical Solution Injection Pumps:

1. Self-priming, positive displacement; rated for intended chemical with minimum 25 percent safety factor for design pressure and temperature.
2. Adjustable flow rate.
3. Metal and thermoplastic construction.
4. Built-in relief valve.
5. Fully enclosed, continuous-duty, single-phase motor. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Chemical Solution Tubing: Polyethylene tubing with compression fittings and joints except ASTM A269/A269M, Type 304 stainless steel for steam boiler injection assemblies.
- G. Injection Assembly:
1. Quill: Minimum NPS 1/2 with insertion length sufficient to discharge into at least 25 percent of pipe diameter.
 2. Ball Valve: [Three] [Two]-piece, stainless steel; selected to fit quill.
 3. Packing Gland: Mechanical seal on quill of sufficient length to allow quill removal during system operation.
 4. Assembly Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 600 psig at 200 deg F.

2.5 CHEMICAL-TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounted cabinet for testing pH, corrosion inhibitors, alkalinity, hardness, and other properties recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.
 1. [Two] <Insert number>-station rack for closed-loop systems.

2.6 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer, compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and able to attain water quality specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

2.7 INHIBITED ETHYLENE GLYCOL AND PROPYLENE GLYCOL

- A. Inhibited Ethylene Glycol:
 1. Ethylene glycol with inhibitor additive, to provide freeze protection for heat-transfer fluid and corrosion protection for carbon-steel, brass, copper, stainless steel, and cast-iron piping and fittings.
 2. Inhibitor creates a passive layer on all surfaces that contact ethylene glycol to prevent corrosion and stabilizes fluid pH, to compensate for acids formed from glycol degradation.
 3. pH value shall be maintained between [9.0 and 10.5]<Insert range>, with reserve alkalinity greater than [12]<Insert number> mL.
 4. Concentrated inhibited ethylene glycol is to be 95.5 percent ethylene glycol by weight and 4.5 percent performance additives.
 5. Concentrated inhibited ethylene glycol is mixed with water in proper proportion specified by the manufacturer to provide freeze protection to [minus 20 deg F] <Insert number>. Premixed heat-transfer fluid may be used, or glycol/water mixture may be prepared at time of installation. Use only deionized water for mixing.

- -
 -
 -
 -
 6. Provide only ethylene glycol that is specifically blended for HVAC application. Automotive-type antifreeze is unacceptable.
- B. Inhibited Propylene Glycol:
1. Propylene glycol with inhibitor additive, to provide freeze protection for heat-transfer fluid and corrosion protection for carbon steel, brass, copper, stainless steel, and cast-iron piping and fittings.
 2. Inhibitor creates a passive layer on all surfaces that contact propylene glycol to prevent corrosion and stabilizes fluid pH, to compensate for acids formed from glycol degradation.
 3. pH value shall be maintained between <Insert range>, with reserve alkalinity greater than <Insert number> mL.
 4. Concentrated inhibited propylene glycol is to be 95.5 percent propylene glycol by weight and 4.5 percent performance additives.
 5. Concentrated inhibited propylene glycol is mixed with water in proper proportion specified by the manufacturer to provide freeze protection to [minus 20 deg F] <Insert number>. Premixed heat-transfer fluid may be used, or glycol/water mixture may be prepared at the time of installation. Use only deionized water for mixing.
 6. Provide only propylene glycol that is specifically blended for HVAC application. Automotive-type antifreeze is unacceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install chemical-application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units, so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate. Install all chemical application equipment within a spill-containment area without floor drain.
- B. Install seismic restraints for equipment and floor-mounting accessories, and anchor to building structure. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install water-testing equipment on wall near water-chemical-application equipment.
- D. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical-treatment controls and sensors.
- E. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.
- F. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems, including[**hot-water heating,**][**chilled water,**][**dual-temperature water,**][**glycol heating,**][**and**][**glycol cooling**], and equip with the following:
 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless indicated otherwise on Drawings.
 2. Install water meter in makeup-water supply.

3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below the feeder inlet.
 5. Install a swing check on the inlet after the isolation valve.
- G. Install automatic fluid make-up equipment for glycol water system, and include the following:
1. Chemical solution tanks.
 2. Chemical solution injection pumps.
 3. Water meter in makeup supply to system.
 4. Pressure switch to operate injection pump as necessary to maintain glycol system pressure.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirement are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
 - 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
 - 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of hydronic systems' startup procedures.
 - 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
 - 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
 - 7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
 - 8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- F. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. At [four] [six] [eight] <Insert number>-week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis, advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to "Performance Requirements" Article.
- I. Comply with ASTM D3370 and with the following standards:
 - 1. Silica: ASTM D859.
 - 2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D1067.
 - 3. Iron: ASTM D1068.
 - 4. Water Hardness: ASTM D1126.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above, to inhibit corrosion and scale formation for hydronic piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion and shall include the following:
 - 1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
 - 2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
 - 3. Periodic field service and consultation.
 - 4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
 - 5. Laboratory technical analysis.

6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

END OF SECTION 232513

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Division 23 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 ROUND AND FLAT OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Lindab Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. SEMCO Incorporated.
 - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
 - e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Lindab Inc.
 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 3. SEMCO Incorporated.
 4. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.
- C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
 2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 - b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch-diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
- E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.5 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 - 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
 - a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 - 4. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
- B. Insulation Pins and Washers:
 - 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
 5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
 6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
 7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
 8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
 - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
 10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildup means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 4. Water resistant.

5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 2. Type: S.
 3. Grade: NS.
 4. Class: 25.
 5. Use: O.
- D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- E. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal shall provide maximum 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."
- M. In congested areas (with respect to other building components / services), coordinate the installed duct connection to its air device so as to provide the designed air flow without any restrictions.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
 - D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
 - E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.
- 3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOOD EXHAUST DUCT
- A. Install commercial kitchen hood exhaust ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.
 - B. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of 20 feet in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings. Locate access panel on top or sides of duct a minimum of 1-1/2 inches from bottom of duct.
 - C. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.
- 3.4 DUCT SEALING
- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION
- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
 - B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 - C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
 - D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.7 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.8 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 23 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
 - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 - 4. Coils and related components.
 - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
 - 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
 - 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems

3.9 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Use the following duct types unless otherwise specified on the plans. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated.

B. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 6-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 4-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.

- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

D. Exhaust Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- 3. Ducts Connected to Commercial Kitchen Hoods: Comply with NFPA 96. Refer to plan schedules for type.
 - a. Double Wall, Factory-Built Grease Duct:
 - 1) Captiveaire Models DW-2R, 3R and 3Z: double wall, factory built grease duct to be ETL listed to UL-1978 and UL-2221 for venting air and grease vapors from commercial cooking operation and listed for a continuous internal temperature of 500 degrees F and intermittent temperatures of 2000 degrees F.
 - 2) The duct sections shall be constructed of an inner duct wall and an outer wall with insulation in between. The inner duct wall shall be constructed of .036 inch thick, 430 type stainless steel. The outer wall shall be constructed of stainless steel at a minimum of .024 inch thickness. The duct shall include layers of Super Wool 607 Plus insulation between the inner and outer wall. Grease duct joints shall be held together by means of formed V clamps and sealed with 3M Fire Barrier 2000+. The duct wall assembly shall be tested and listed at $\frac{3}{4}$ " or zero inch clearance, according to classifications.
 - b. Field Built:
 - 1) Exposed to View: Type 304, stainless-steel sheet, No. 4 finish.
 - 2) Concealed: Carbon-steel sheet.
 - 3) Welded seams and joints.
 - 4) Pressure Class: Positive or negative 4-inch wg.
 - 5) Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
 - 6) SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
- 4. Ducts Connected to Dishwasher Hoods:
 - a. Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
 - b. Exposed to View: No. 4 finish.
 - c. Concealed: No. 2D finish.
 - d. Welded seams and flanged joints with watertight EPDM gaskets.
 - e. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg.
 - f. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: Welded

E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 3.
- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.

F. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.

2. Stainless-Steel Ducts:

- a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
- b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Galvanized.

3. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.

G. Liner:

- 1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick, only where noted otherwise on drawings.
- 2. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick, only where noted otherwise on drawings.

H. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

- a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
- b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
- c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."

- a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1,

"Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.

1) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

- b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
- c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Welded.

I. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, from sections installed, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.END OF SECTION

SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Non-insulated flexible ducts.
2. Insulated flexible ducts.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings: For flexible ducts.

1. Include plans showing locations and mounting and attachment details.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E96/E96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

2.2 NON-INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
- B. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
 1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
- C. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
- D. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
- E. Non-Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil.
 1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg positive or negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 435 deg F.

2.3 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
 1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- C. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.

3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- E. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg positive or negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F.
 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

2.4 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
- B. Non-Clamp Connectors: Liquid adhesive plus tape.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- D. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- E. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- F. Installation:
1. Install ducts fully extended.
 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
 3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.

G. Supporting Flexible Ducts:

1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches o.c.

END OF SECTION 233346

SECTION 233416 - CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backward-inclined centrifugal fans, including airfoil and curved blade fans.
2. Forward-curved centrifugal fans.
3. Square in-line centrifugal fans.
4. Tubular in-line centrifugal fans.
5. Plenum fans.
6. Plug fans.
7. Utility set fans.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fans.
2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
4. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
5. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
6. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
7. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For unit hangars and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Fan room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements, drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: For fans, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity, and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For centrifugal fans to include in normal operation, emergency operation, and maintenance manuals with replacement parts listing.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The equipment descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Equipment Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedules and specifications, the drawing schedules shall take precedent.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Unusual Service Conditions
 - 1. Base fan-performance ratings on performance scheduled on the plans.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolators and supports.
- C. Seismic Performance: Centrifugal fans shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
- D. Capacities and Characteristics on performance scheduled on the plans
1. Vibration Isolators:
 - a. Type: Restrained spring.
 - b. Static Deflection: 1 inch.

2.3 BACKWARD-INCLINED CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Description:
1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, centrifugal fans, consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
 2. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.
- B. Housings:
1. Housing Material: See schedule.
 2. Housing Coating: See schedule.
 3. Housing Assembly: Sideplates continuously welded.
 4. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
 5. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
 6. Horizontally split, bolted-flange housing.
 7. Spun inlet cone with flange.
 8. Outlet flange.
 9. Discharge Arrangement: Fan scroll housing is field rotatable to any of eight discharge positions. Provide fan with discharge positioned in proper direction to minimize connected duct turns.
- C. Wheels:
1. Wheel Configuration: SWSI or DWI construction with a precision-spun curved inlet flange and a backplate fastened to shaft with setscrews. Wheels shall be statically and dynamically balanced, and nonoverloading.
 2. Wheel and Blade Material: See schedule.
 3. Wheel and Blade Coating: See schedule.
 4. Cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
 5. Backward-Inclined Airfoil Blades:
 - a. Aerodynamic design.
 - b. Heavy backplate.
 - c. Hollow die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.
 6. Backward-Inclined Curved Blades:
 - a. Curved design.

- b. Heavy backplate.
- c. Single-thickness blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.

D. Shafts:

- 1. Statically and dynamically balanced, and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
- 2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
- 3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

E. Bearings:

- 1. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
 - b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
- 2. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Tapered Roller:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
 - b. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.
- 3. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Ball or Roller:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
 - b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - d. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.

F. Belt Drives:

- 1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
 - 2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size.
 - 3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 - 4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch pulleys for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
 - 5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
 - 6. Belt Guards: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.146 inch- thick, 3/4-inch diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short-circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
 - 7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.
- G. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
- H. Accessories:

1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Scroll Drain Connection: NPS 1 steel pipe coupling welded to low point of fan scroll.
3. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
4. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with opposed blades constructed of two plates formed around, and to, shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings; with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
5. Inlet Screens: Grid screen of same material as housing.
6. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
7. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.
8. Weather Cover: Enameled-steel sheet with ventilation slots, bolted to housing.
9. Piezometer Ring: Piezometer ring mounted at fan inlet cone for airflow measurement.

2.4 FORWARD-CURVED CENTRIFUGAL FANS

A. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, centrifugal fans, consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.

B. Housings:

1. Housing Material: See schedule.
2. Housing Coating: See schedule .
3. Housing Assembly: Sideplates continuously welded.
4. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
5. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
6. Horizontally split, bolted-flange housing.
7. Spun inlet cone with flange.
8. Outlet flange.
9. Discharge Arrangement: Fan scroll housing field rotatable to any of eight discharge positions. Provide fan with discharge positioned in proper direction to minimize connected duct turns.

C. Wheels:

1. Wheel Configuration: SWSI or DWDI construction with a curved inlet flange, and a backplate fastened to shaft with setscrews.
2. Wheel and Blade Material: See schedule.
3. Wheel and Blade Coating: See schedule.
4. Cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
5. Forward-Curved Wheels:
 - a. Black-enamed or galvanized-steel construction with inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow.
 - b. Mechanically secured to flange and backplate; cast-steel hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.

D. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

E. Bearings:

1. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type roller bearings.
 - b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
2. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Tapered Roller:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
 - b. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.
3. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Ball or Roller:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
 - b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - d. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.

F. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size:
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.146 inch- thick, 3/4-inch diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short-circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

G. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

H. Accessories:

1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
2. Scroll Drain Connection: NPS 1 steel pipe coupling welded to low point of fan scroll.
3. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.

4. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with opposed blades constructed of two plates formed around, and to, shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings; with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
5. Inlet Screens: Grid screen of same material as housing.
6. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
7. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.
8. Weather Cover: Enameled-steel sheet with ventilation slots, bolted to housing.
9. Piezometer Ring: Piezometer ring mounted at fan inlet cone for airflow measurement.

2.5 SQUARE IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Description: Square in-line centrifugal fans.
- B. Housing:
 1. Housing Material: See schedule.
 2. Housing Coating: See schedule.
 3. Housing Construction: Side panels shall be easily removable for service. Include inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.
- C. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing; with wheel, inlet cone, and motor on swing-out service door.
- D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosures around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
- F. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
- G. Accessories:
 1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
 2. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 3. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
 4. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
 5. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
 6. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.
 7. Side Discharge: Flange connector and attachment hardware to provide right-angle discharge on side of unit.

2.6 TUBULAR IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Description: Tubular in-line centrifugal fans.
- B. Housing:
 1. Housing Material: See schedule.

2. Housing Coating: See schedule.
 3. Housing Construction: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.
- C. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing; with wheel, inlet cone, and motor on swing-out service door.
- D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
- F. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
- G. Accessories:
1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
 2. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 3. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
 4. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
 5. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
 6. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.

2.7 PLENUM FANS

- A. Description:
1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, centrifugal fans, consisting of wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
 2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
 3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.
- B. Wheels:
1. Wheel Configuration: SWSI construction with curved inlet flange and heavy backplate; fastened to shaft with setscrews.
 2. Wheel and Blade Material: See schedule.
 3. Wheel and Blade Coating: See schedule.
 4. Backward-Inclined Airfoil Blades: Hollow, die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.
- C. Shafts:
1. Statically and dynamically balanced, and selected for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
 2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
 3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

D. Bearings:

1. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
 - b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
2. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Tapered Roller:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
 - b. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.
3. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Ball or Roller:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
 - b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - d. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.

E. Belt Drives:

1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size.
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
6. Belt Guards: Comply with OSHA and fabricate to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.146 inch- thick, 3/4-inch diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short-circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

F. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

G. Accessories:

1. Inlet Safety Screen: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards." Diamond mesh wire screen is welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated.
2. Safety Enclosure: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards." Diamond mesh wire screen is welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated.
3. Belt Guard: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards." Diamond mesh wire screen is welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated.
4. Inlet Companion Flange: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.

5. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
6. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.
7. Piezometer Ring: Piezometer ring mounted at fan inlet cone for airflow measurement.

2.8 PLUG FANS

A. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, belt-driven centrifugal fans, consisting of wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.
2. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations.
3. Factory-installed and -wired disconnect switch.

B. Wheels:

1. Wheel Configuration: SWSI construction with curved inlet flange and heavy backplate; fastened to shaft with setscrews.
2. Wheel and Blade Material: See schedule.
3. Wheel and Blade Coating: See schedule.
4. Backward-Inclined Airfoil Blades: Hollow, die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.

C. Shafts:

1. Statically and dynamically balanced, and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
2. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with protective coating of lubricating oil.
3. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

D. Bearings:

1. Prelubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
 - b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
2. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Tapered Roller:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
 - b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours.
 - d. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.
3. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings, Ball or Roller:
 - a. Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
 - b. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) at 120,000 hours.

- c. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(10) at 120,000 hours .
- d. Extended Lubrication Lines: Extend lines to accessible location.

E. Belt Drives:

- 1. Factory mounted, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning.
- 2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size.
- 3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
- 4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with larger motors.
- 5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
- 6. Belt Guards: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.146 inch- thick, 3/4-inch diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short-circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
- 7. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

F. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

G. Accessories:

- 1. Inlet Safety Screen: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards." Diamond mesh wire screen is welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated.
- 2. Safety Enclosure: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards." Diamond mesh wire screen is welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated.
- 3. Belt Guard: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards." Diamond mesh wire screen is welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated.
- 4. Inlet Companion Flange: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
- 5. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
- 6. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.

2.9 UTILITY SET FANS

A. Description:

- 1. Factory-fabricated, -assembled, -tested, and -finished, centrifugal fan utility vent sets, consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor, drive assembly, and support structure.

B. Housings:

- 1. Housing Material: See schedule.
- 2. Housing Coating: See schedule.
- 3. Formed panels to make curved-scroll housings with shaped cutoff.
- 4. Panel Bracing: Steel angle- or channel-iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.

5. Discharge Arrangement: Fan scroll housing field rotatable to any of eight discharge positions. Provide fan with discharge positioned in proper direction to minimize connected duct turns.

C. Wheels:

1. Wheel Configuration: SWSI, with hub keyed to shaft.
2. Wheel and Blade Materials: See schedule.
3. Wheel and Blade Coating: See schedule.
4. Backward-Inclined Airfoil Blades:
 - a. Aerodynamic design.
 - b. Heavy backplate.
 - c. Hollow die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.
5. Backward-Inclined Curved Blades:
 - a. Curved design.
 - b. Heavy backplate.
 - c. Single-thickness blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.
6. Backward-Inclined Flat Blades:
 - a. Flat design.
 - b. Heavy backplate.
 - c. Single-thickness blades continuously welded at tip flange and backplate.
7. Forward-Curved Blades:
 - a. Curved design.
 - b. Heavy backplate.
 - c. Single-thickness blades continuously welded or riveted at tip flange and backplate.

D. Shafts:

1. Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub. First critical speed at least 1.4 times maximum class speed.

E. Bearings:

1. Heavy-duty regreasable ball or roller type in a cast iron pillowblock housing.
2. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(50) of 200,000 hours.
3. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11, L(50) of 200,000 hours.
4. Extend grease fitting to accessible location outside of unit.

F. Belt Drive:

1. Factory mounted, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
2. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size.
3. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.

- 4. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
 - 5. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
 - 6. Belt Guards: Comply with OSHA and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards," 0.146 inch-thick, 3/4-inch diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short-circuiting vibration isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.
- G. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
- H. Accessories:
- 1. Inlet and Outlet: Flanged.
 - 2. Companion Flanges: Rolled flanges for duct connections of same material as housing.
 - 3. Backdraft Dampers: Gravity actuated with counterweight and interlocking aluminum blades, with felt edges in steel frame installed on fan discharge.
 - 4. Access Door: Gasketed door in scroll with latch-type handles.
 - 5. Scroll Dampers: Single-blade damper installed at fan scroll top with adjustable linkage.
 - 6. Inlet Screens: Removable wire mesh.
 - 7. Outlet Screens: Removable wire mesh.
 - 8. Belt Guard: OSHA-compliant, completely enclosed shaft and drive components.
 - 9. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
 - 10. Drain Connections: NPS 3/4 threaded coupling drain connection installed at lowest point of housing.
 - 11. Weather Hoods: Weather resistant with stamped vents over motor and drive compartment.
 - 12. Discharge Dampers: Assembly with opposed blades constructed of two plates formed around, and to, shaft, channel frame, and sealed ball bearings, with blades linked outside of airstream to single control lever of same material as housing.
 - 13. Grease Collection Trough and Receiver: For restaurant exhaust application.
 - 14. Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.

2.10 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- B. Where variable-frequency drives are indicated or scheduled, provide fan motor compatible with variable-frequency drive.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

- C. Fan Sound Ratings: Comply with AMCA 311 and label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal. Sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301. The fans shall be tested according to AMCA 300.
- D. Fan Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 211 and label fans with AMCA-Certified Rating Seal. The fans shall be tested for air performance - flow rate, fan pressure, power, fan efficiency, air density, speed of rotation, and fan efficiency - according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51.
- E. Operating Limits: Classify fans according to AMCA 99.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS

- A. Install centrifugal fans level and plumb.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install floor- or roof-mounted centrifugal fans on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Support duct-mounted and other hanging centrifugal fans directly from the building structure, using suitable hanging systems as specified in Division 23 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
 - 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Division 23 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 4. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 23 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Curb Support, Field Built-Up: Install roof curb on roof structure, level and secure, according to "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual," detail "Equipment Support Curb," number "SPF-9" (page 1409) and detail "Equipment Support Curb," number "SPF-9S" (page 1410). Install and secure centrifugal fans on curbs, and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure units to curb support with anchor bolts.
- F. Curb Support, Prefabricated: Rail-type wood support provided by fan manufacturer.
- G. Unit Support: Install centrifugal fans level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure units to structural support with anchor bolts.
- H. Isolation Curb Support: Install centrifugal fans on isolation curbs, and install flexible duct connectors and vibration-isolation and seismic-control devices.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Air Duct Accessories" for flexible duct connectors.
 - 2. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration-isolation and seismic-control devices.

- I. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- J. Label fans according to requirements specified in Division 23 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 DUCTWORK AND PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to fans to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Install piping from scroll drain connection, with trap with seal equal to 1.5 times specified static pressure, to nearest floor drain with pipe sizes matching the drain connection.
- D. Install heat tracing on all drain piping subject to freezing temperature and as indicated on Drawings. Furnish and install heat tracing according to Division 23 "Heat Tracing for HVAC Piping."

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Division 26 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Division 26 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Division 26 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
3. Verify that there is adequate maintenance and access space.
4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
5. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
6. Adjust belt tension.
7. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
8. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
10. See Division 23 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing For HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

F. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 233416

SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Axial roof ventilators.
2. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
3. Centrifugal ventilators - roof downblast.
4. Centrifugal ventilators - roof upblast and sidewall.
5. Sidewall propeller fans.
6. Upblast propeller roof exhaust fans.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fans.
2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
4. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
5. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
6. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
7. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
8. Prefabricated roof curbs.
9. Fan speed controllers.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For unit hangars and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: For fans, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC power ventilators to include in normal and emergency operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The equipment descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Equipment Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedules and specifications, the drawing schedules shall take precedent.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 "Quality Requirements," to design vibration isolation and seismic restraints, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Seismic Performance: HVAC power ventilators shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

- 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."**

2.3 AXIAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Housing: Heavy-gauge, removable, spun-aluminum dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, hinged, aluminum base.
- B. Fan Wheel: Aluminum hub and blades.
- C. Belt Drives:
 1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
- D. Accessories:
 1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 3. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 4. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
 5. Stack hood with built-in backdraft dampers.
 6. Extended lubrication lines.
- E. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailing. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
 1. Configuration: Self-flashing with mounting flange. Coordinate with architectural roof plan for cant requirements.
 2. Overall Height: 12 inches.
 3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
 4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 5. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
 6. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.

2.4 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

- A. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.
- B. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel removable for service.

- C. Back-draft damper: Integral.
- D. Grille: Painted aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew or spring retainer attachment to fan housing.
- E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- F. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 2. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
 - 3. Time-Delay Switch: Assembly with single-pole rocker switch, timer, and cover plate.
 - 4. Motion Sensor: Motion detector with adjustable shutoff timer.
 - 5. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless steel springs, and fusible link.
 - 6. Filter: Washable aluminum to fit between fan and grille.
 - 7. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
 - 8. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

2.5 CENTRIFUGAL VENTILATORS - ROOF DOWNBLAST

- A. Housing: Downblast; removable spun aluminum; square, one-piece aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
- B. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- C. Belt Drives:
 - 1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 - 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 - 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 - 4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 - 5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
 - 6. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 - 3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 - 4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 - 5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
 - 6. Spark-resistant, all-aluminum wheel construction.
 - 7. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.

- E. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailing. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: Self-flashing with mounting flange. Coordinate with architectural roof plan for cant requirements.
 2. Overall Height: 12 inches.
 3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
 4. Hinged sub-base to provide access to damper or as cleanout for grease applications.
 5. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 6. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
 7. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.

2.6 CENTRIFUGAL VENTILATORS - ROOF UPBLAST OR SIDEWALL

- A. Configuration: Centrifugal roof upblast or sidewall ventilator.
- B. Housing: Removable spun aluminum; square, one-piece aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
 2. Provide grease collector on fans serving Type I Grease Hoods.
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings; minimum ABMA9, L(10) of 100,000 hours.
 4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
 6. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
 6. Spark-resistant, all-aluminum wheel construction.
 7. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
 8. Wall Mount Adapter: Attach wall-mounted fan to wall.
 9. Restaurant Kitchen Exhaust: UL 762 listed for grease-laden air exhaust.

- F. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailing. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
 - 1. Configuration: Self-flashing with mounting flange. Coordinate with architectural roof plan for cant requirements.
- G. Prefabricated Kitchen Exhaust Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; ventilation openings on all sides to ventilate curb interstitial space. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
 - 1. Configuration: Self-flashing with mounting flange. Coordinate with architectural roof plan for cant requirements.
 - 2. Overall Height: 12 inches.
 - 3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation and galvanized metal liner.
 - 4. Hinged sub-base to provide access to damper or as cleanout for grease applications.
 - 5. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 - 6. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
 - 7. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
 - 8. Vented Curb: For kitchen exhaust; 12-inch-high galvanized steel; unlined, with louvered vents in vertical sides.
 - 9. NFPA 96 code requirements for commercial cooking operations.
 - 10. Kitchen Hood Exhaust: UL 762 listed for grease-laden air.

2.7 SIDEWALL PROPELLER FANS

- A. Housing: Galvanized-steel sheet with flanged edges and integral orifice ring, with baked-enamel finish coat applied after assembly.
- B. Fan Wheels: Formed-steel blades riveted to heavy-gauge steel spider bolted to cast-iron hub.
- C. Fan Wheel: Replaceable, extruded-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.
- D. Fan Drive: Direct-drive motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.
- E. Fan Drive:
 - 1. Belt drive.
 - 2. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 - 3. Statically and dynamically balanced.
 - 4. Selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
 - 5. Extend grease fitting to accessible location outside of unit.
 - 6. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor Size: 1.4.
 - 7. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 - 8. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 - a. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9, L(10) of 100,000 hours.
 - 9. Pulleys: Cast iron with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.

10. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with larger motors. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
11. Belts: Oil resistant, nonsparking, and nonstatic; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
12. Belt Guards: Fabricate of steel for motors mounted on outside of fan cabinet.

F. Accessories:

1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
2. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers factory set to close when fan stops.
3. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers with electric actuator wired to close when fan stops.
4. Motor-Side Back Guard: Galvanized steel, complying with OSHA specifications, removable for maintenance.
5. Wall Sleeve: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
6. Weathershield Hood: Galvanized steel to match fan and accessory size.
7. Weathershield Front Guard: Galvanized steel with expanded metal screen.

2.8 UPBLAST PROPELLER ROOF EXHAUST FANS

- A. Configuration: Upblast propeller ventilator.
- B. Wind Band, Fan Housing, and Base: Reinforced and braced galvanized steel, containing galvanized-steel butterfly dampers and rain trough, motor and drive assembly, and fan wheel.
1. Damper Rods: Steel with bronze bearings.
 2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
 - 3.
- C. Fan Wheel: Replaceable, cast-aluminum, airfoil blades fastened to cast-aluminum hub; factory set pitch angle of blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 2. Weatherproof housing of same material as fan housing.
 3. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 4. Shaft Bearings: Prelubricated and sealed, self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
 5. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 6. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
 7. Motor Mount: On outside of fan cabinet, adjustable base for belt tensioning.
- E. Accessories:
1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 3. Inspection Door: Hinged.

4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 5. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
 6. Extended Lubrication Lines.
 7. Kitchen Hood Exhaust: UL 762 listed for grease-laden air exhaust.
- F. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailing. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: Self-flashing with mounting flange. Coordinate with architectural roof plan for cant requirements.

2.9 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Certification: Fans shall comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. Fan Sound Ratings: Comply with AMCA 311, and label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal. Sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301. The fans shall be tested according to AMCA 300.
- D. Fan Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 211 and label fans with AMCA-Certified Rating Seal. The fans shall be tested for air performance - flow rate, fan pressure, power, fan efficiency, air density, speed of rotation, and fan efficiency - according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51.
- E. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.
- F. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install power ventilators on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-control devices specified in Division 23 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 23 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware. See Division 07 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- D. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- E. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 23 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- F. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- G. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Division 26 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Division 26 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Division 26 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that there is adequate maintenance and access space.
 - 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 5. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 - 6. Adjust belt tension.
 - 7. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 8. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 - 10. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 - 11. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 - 12. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- F. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 23 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 233713.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Round ceiling diffusers.
2. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
3. Perforated diffusers.
4. Louver face diffusers.
5. Linear bar diffusers.
6. Linear slot diffusers.
7. Ceiling-integral continuous slot diffusers.
8. Light troffer diffusers.
9. Round induction underfloor air-distribution diffusers.
10. Linear underfloor air-distribution diffuser plenums.
11. High-capacity drum louver diffusers.
12. High-capacity, modular-core supply grille diffusers.
13. Adjustable blade face registers and grilles.
14. Fixed face registers and grilles.
15. Linear bar grilles.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 23 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers and grilles.
2. Division 23 "Security Registers and Grilles" for security registers and security grilles.
3. Division 23 "Fabric Air-Diffusion Devices" for continuous tubular diffusers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified. Actual size of smallest diffuser, register and grille indicated.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers, register and grille with factory-applied color finishes. Actual size of smallest diffuser, register and grille indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, register and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected. Actual size of smallest diffuser, register and grille indicated.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
 - 5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROUND CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Mounting: Duct connection.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Equalizing grid.
 - 2. Plaster ring.
 - 3. Safety chain.
 - 4. Wire guard.
 - 5. Sectorizing baffles.
 - 6. Operating rod extension.

2.2 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Accessories:
 - 1. Equalizing grid.
 - 2. Plaster ring.
 - 3. Safety chain.
 - 4. Wire guard.
 - 5. Sectorizing baffles.
 - 6. Operating rod extension.

2.3 PERFORATED DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.

- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Pattern Controller: Adjustable with louvered pattern modules at inlet.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Equalizing grid.
 - 2. Plaster ring.
 - 3. Safety chain.
 - 4. Wire guard.
 - 5. Sectorizing baffles.
 - 6. Operating rod extension.

2.4 LOUVER FACE DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Accessories:
 - 1. Square to round neck adaptor.
 - 2. Adjustable pattern vanes.
 - 3. Throw reducing vanes.
 - 4. Equalizing grid.
 - 5. Plaster ring.
 - 6. Safety chain.
 - 7. Wire guard.
 - 8. Sectorizing baffles.
 - 9. Operating rod extension.

2.5 LINEAR BAR DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Accessories:
 - 1. Plaster frame
 - 2. Directional vanes
 - 3. Alignment pins
 - 4. Core clips
 - 5. Blank-off strips.

2.6 LINEAR SLOT DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.

- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.

2.7 CEILING-INTEGRAL CONTINUOUS DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.
- B. Straight and curved sections as required to accommodate layout.
- C. Mitered tees and corners.
- D. Other Features:
 - 1. Painted interior.
 - 2. Blank-offs.

2.8 LIGHT TROFFER DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.

2.9 ROUND INDUCTION UNDERFLOOR AIR-DISTRIBUTION DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.
- B. Airflow Principle: Swirl-pattern induction.
- C. Material: Plastic, high impact, and resistant to cart and foot traffic.
- D. Components:
 - 1. Diffuser core.
 - 2. Flow regulator.
 - 3. Dirt and liquid catch pan.
 - 4. Spacer flange.
 - 5. Gasketed, underfloor compression ring.

2.10 LINEAR UNDERFLOOR AIR-DISTRIBUTION DIFFUSER PLENUMS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.
- B. Components:
 - 1. Aluminum diffuser core.
 - 2. Diffuser frame.
 - 3. Plenum, 0.034-inch steel.

2.11 HIGH-CAPACITY DRUM LOUVER DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.

- B. Airflow Principle: Extended distance for high airflow rates.
- C. Gasket between drum and border.
- D. Body: Drum shaped; adjustable vertically.
- E. Blades: Individually adjustable horizontally.
- F. Accessories:
 - 1. Opposed-blade steel damper.
 - 2. Duct-mounting collars with countersunk screw holes.

2.12 HIGH-CAPACITY, MODULAR-CORE SUPPLY GRILLE DIFFUSERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.
- B. Throw: Extended distance for airflow rates.
- C. Blades:
 - 1. Airfoil, individually adjustable horizontally.
 - 2. Double deflection.
 - 3. Set in modules.
- D. Modules: Removable; rotatable.
- E. Accessory: Opposed-blade steel damper.

2.13 REGISTERS

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.

2.14 GRILLES

- A. Refer to plan schedules for specific requirements.

2.15 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, register and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, register and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, register and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, register and grille to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

SECTION 238126 – MINI SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate air handlers and condensing unit components.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
 2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
 3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: 5 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts: 5 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: 5 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The equipment descriptions listed in the section may not all be used on this project. Refer to the Equipment Schedules on the drawings for the specific application for each product or material. Products not shown on the schedule for the specific application may not be substituted without pre-approval from the Engineer. Where there is a conflict between the drawing schedules and specifications, the drawing schedules shall take precedent.

2.2 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

- A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:
 1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.

2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
7. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Division 23 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
9. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
10. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - b. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet.
 - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
 - d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
 - e. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

B. Floor or Ceiling Mounted, Air Handler Components:

1. Cabinet: Enamelled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect.
 - a. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
 - b. Drain Pans: Galvanized steel, with connection for drain; insulated. Provide overflow switch to disable compressor (fan continues to operate).
2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.

4. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
5. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal
6. Fan Motors:
 - a. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
7. Air Filtration Section:
 - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Minimum MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from at least one side.
 - b. Disposable Panel Filters:
 - 1) Factory-fabricated, pleated media, flat-panel type.
 - 2) Thickness: 1 inches.
 - 3) MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2: 6.0
 - 4) Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive.
 - 5) Frame: Galvanized steel, with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, and hinged; with pull and retaining handles.

C. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
5. Fan Motors:
 - a. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - b. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 - c. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 - d. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
 - e. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
7. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.

- 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 1 inch deep.
 - b. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet.
 - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
 - d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
8. Air Filtration Section:
- a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Minimum MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.
 - b. Disposable Filters:
 - 1) Factory-fabricated, pleated media, disposable.
 - 2) Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 3) MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2: 6.0
 - 4) Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive.
 - 5) Frame: Galvanized steel, with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, and hinged; with pull and retaining handles.

2.3 INDOOR UNITS (6 TONS OR MORE)

- A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:
- 1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
 - 2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
 - 3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
 - 4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
 - 5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
 - 6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
 - 7. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Division 23 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.

- c. Three-phase, permanently lubricated, ball-bearing motors with built-in thermal-overload protection.
 - d. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
9. Filters: 2 inch thick, in fiberboard frames.
10. Condensate Drain Pans:
- a. Fabricated with one two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
 - b. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet.
 - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
 - d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
 - e. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

B. Variable-Frequency Controllers:

1. Description: NEMA ICS 2, IGBT, PWM, VFC; listed and labeled as a complete unit and arranged to provide variable speed of an NEMA MG 1, Design B, three-phase induction motor by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
2. Output Rating: Three-phase; 6 to 120 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range.
3. Unit Operating Requirements:
 - a. Input-frequency tolerance of 06/11 Hz, plus or minus 6 percent.
 - b. Minimum Efficiency: 96 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
 - c. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent.
 - d. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; 2.0 times the base load current for 3 seconds.
 - e. Starting Torque: 100 percent of rated torque or as indicated.
 - f. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 1 percent.
4. Isolated control interface to allow controller to follow control signal over an 11:1 speed range.
5. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
 - a. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
 - b. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
 - c. Acceleration: 2 seconds to a minimum of 22 seconds.
 - d. Deceleration: 2 seconds to a minimum of 22 seconds.
 - e. Current Limit: 50 percent to a minimum of 110 percent of maximum rating.
6. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:

- a. Input transient protection by means of surge protection devices (SPDs).
 - b. Undervoltage and overvoltage trips; inverter overtemperature, overload, and overcurrent trips.
 - c. Notch filter to prevent operation of the controller-motor-load combination at a natural frequency of the combination.
 - d. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
 - e. Loss-of-phase protection.
 - f. Reverse-phase protection.
 - g. Short-circuit protection.
 - h. Motor overtemperature fault.
7. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempts three restarts after controller fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction. Bidirectional autospeed search shall be capable of starting into rotating loads, spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without damage to controller, motor, or load.
8. Power-Interruption Protection: Prevents motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped.
9. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
10. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back, based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
11. Door-mounted, digital status lights shall indicate the following conditions:
- a. Power on.
 - b. Run.
 - c. Overvoltage.
 - d. Line fault.
 - e. Overcurrent.
 - f. External fault.
12. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Start-stop and auto-manual selector switches with manual-speed-control potentiometer and elapsed-time meter.
13. Meters or digital readout devices and selector switch, mounted flush in controller door and connected, to indicate the following controller parameters:
- a. Output frequency (Hertz).
 - b. Motor speed (rpm).
 - c. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
 - d. Motor current (amperes).
 - e. Motor torque (percent).
 - f. Fault or alarming status (code).
 - g. Proportional-integral-derivative feedback signal (percent).
 - h. DC-link voltage (volts dc).
 - i. Set-point frequency (Hertz).
 - j. Motor output voltage (volts).
14. Control Signal Interface:
- a. Electric Input Signal Interface: A minimum of two analog inputs (0 to 10 V or 0/4-20 mA) and six programmable digital inputs.
 - b. Remote signal inputs capable of accepting any of the following speed-setting input signals from the control system:
 - 1) 0 to 10-V dc.

- 2) 0-20 or 4-20 mA.
 - 3) Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
 - 4) Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
 - 5) RS485.
 - 6) Keypad display for local hand operation.
- c. Output signal interface with a minimum of one analog output signal (0/4-20 mA), which can be programmed to any of the following:
- 1) Output frequency (Hertz).
 - 2) Output current (load).
 - 3) DC-link voltage (volts dc).
 - 4) Motor torque (percent).
 - 5) Motor speed (rpm).
 - 6) Set-point frequency (Hertz).
- d. Remote indication interface with a minimum of two dry circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
- 1) Motor running.
 - 2) Set-point speed reached.
 - 3) Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
 - 4) High- or low-speed limits reached.
15. Communications: BACnet interface allows VFC to be used with an external system. Interface shall allow all parameter settings of VFC to be programmed via BMS control. Provide capability for VFC to retain these settings within the nonvolatile memory.
16. Integral Disconnecting Means: NEMA AB 1, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker with lockable handle.
17. Accessories:
- a. Devices shall be factory installed in controller enclosure unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Push-Button Stations, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: NEMA ICS 2, heavy-duty type.
 - c. Standard Displays:
 - 1) Output frequency (Hertz).
 - 2) Set-point frequency (Hertz).
 - 3) Motor current (amperes).
 - 4) DC-link voltage (volts dc).
 - 5) Motor torque (percent).
 - 6) Motor speed (rpm).
 - 7) Motor output voltage (volts).

2.4 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.

2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.5 OUTDOOR UNITS (6 TONS OR MORE)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll, Minimum 2 stage control
 - b. Compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- ### A. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:
1. Compressor time delay.
 2. 2H2C control with heat pump option
 3. 4 events per day
 4. Auto changeover
 5. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
 6. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.
 7. 7-day programmability

- B. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- C. Wireless remote for mini-split units.
- D. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- E. Drain Hose: For condensate. Copper, fully insulated to prevent condensation

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install condensate pump for all wall and ceiling cassette units where gravity drain is not possible. Use pump equivalent to Little Giant VCL-24ULS. Gravity drain inside the wall to a concealed place, then use condensate pump. Do not expose condensate pump in plain sight.
- C. Install air handler components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure. If installed in concealed spaces, suspend the unit using 2" spring isolation to prevent vibration from transmitting from unit to structure. Provide flexible duct connections between equipment and rigid ductwork.
- D. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on manufactured equipment supports equivalent to RPS ER-4.
- E. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s) or polyethylene base.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices.
- F. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Use manufacturer's recommendations for all piping, trim, and specialties.
- B. Install external filter/dryer at all conventional condensing units (not installed on mini-split units).
- C. Insulate all refrigerant piping suction lines using elastomeric 1" insulation.
- D. Sleeve all refrigerant lines that are run underground using PVC with long-radius elbows and sealed water tight at both ends. Exposed refrigerant lines should be concealed and protected using a line-set cover equivalent to MRCOOL Lineguard.
- E. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- F. Duct Connections: Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126

SECTION 260000 - GENERAL ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Requirements under Division 1 and the general and supplementary conditions of these specifications apply to this section and division. Where the requirements of this section and division exceed those of Division 1, this section and division take precedence. Become thoroughly familiar with all their contents as to requirements that affect this division, section or both. The work required under this section includes material, equipment, appliances, transportation, services, and labor required to complete the entire system as required by the drawings and specifications, or reasonably inferred to be necessary to facilitate each system's functioning as implied by the design and the equipment specified.
- B. The specifications and drawings for the project are complementary, and portions of the work described in one, shall be provided as if described in both. In the event of discrepancies, notify the engineer and request clarification prior to proceeding with the work involved.
- C. Drawings are graphic representations of the work upon which the contract is based. They show the materials and their relationship to one another, including sizes, shapes, locations, and connections. They also convey the scope of work, indicating the intended general arrangement of the equipment and other materials without showing all of the exact details as to elevations, offsets, control lines, and other installation requirements. Use the drawings as a guide when laying out the work and to verify that materials and equipment will fit into the designated spaces, and which, when installed per manufacturers' requirements, will ensure a complete, coordinated, satisfactory and properly operating system. Determine exact locations by job measurements, by checking the requirements of other trades, and by reviewing all contract documents. Correct errors that could have been avoided by proper checking and inspection, at no additional cost to the owner.
- D. Specifications define the qualitative requirements for products, materials, and workmanship upon which the contract is based.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Whenever used in these specifications or drawings, the following terms shall have the indicated meanings:
 - 1. Furnish: "to supply and deliver to the project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembling, installing, and similar operations."
 - 2. Install: "to perform all operations at the project site, including, but not limited to, and as required: unloading, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, testing, commissioning, starting up and similar operations, complete, and ready for the intended use."
 - 3. Provide: "to furnish and install complete, and ready for the intended use."
 - 4. Furnished by owner (or owner-furnished) or furnished by others: "an item furnished by the

owner or under other divisions or contracts, and installed under the requirements of this division, complete, and ready for the intended use, including all items and services incidental to the work necessary for proper installation and operation. Include the installation under the warranty required by this division.

5. Engineer: where referenced in this division, "engineer" is the engineer of record and the design professional for the work under this division, and is a consultant to, and an authorized representative of, the architect, as defined in the general and/or supplementary conditions. When used in this division, it means increased involvement by, and obligations to, the engineer, in addition to involvement by, and obligations to, the "architect".
 6. AHJ: the local code and/or inspection agency (authority) having jurisdiction over the work.
 7. NRTL: nationally recognized testing laboratory, as defined and listed by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 (e.g., UL, ETL, CSA), and acceptable to the AHJ over this project.
- B. The terms "approved equal", "equivalent", or "equal" are used synonymously and shall mean "accepted by or acceptable to the engineer as equivalent to the item or manufacturer specified". The term "approved" shall mean labeled, listed, certified, or all three, by an NRTL, and acceptable to the AHJ over this project.

1.3 PRE-BID SITE VISIT

- A. Prior to submitting bid, visit the site of the proposed work and become fully informed as to the conditions under which the work is to be done. Failure to do so will not be considered sufficient justification to request or obtain extra compensation over and above the contract price.

1.4 MATERIAL AND WORKMANSHIP

- A. Provide all material and equipment new and in first class condition. Provide markings or a nameplate for all material and equipment identifying the manufacturer and providing sufficient reference to establish quality, size and capacity. In general, provide the following quality grade(s) for all materials and equipment:
- B. Work performed under this contract shall provide a neat and "workmanlike" appearance when completed, to the satisfaction of the architect and engineer. Workmanship shall be the finest possible by experienced mechanics of the proper trade.
- C. The complete installation shall function as designed and intended with respect to efficiency, capacity, noise level, etc. Abnormal or excessive noise from equipment, devices or other system components will not be acceptable.
- D. Remove from the premises waste material present as a result of work. Clean equipment installed under this contract to present a neat and clean installation at the termination of the work.
- E. Repair or replace public and private property damaged as a result of work performed under this contract to the satisfaction of authorities and regulations having jurisdiction.

1.5 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other articles where lists of manufacturers are introduced, subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.
- B. Where a list is provided, manufacturers listed are not in accordance with any ranking or preference.
- C. Where manufacturers are not listed, provide products subject to compliance with requirements from manufacturers that have been actively involved in manufacturing the specified product for no less than 5 years.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate all work with other divisions and trades so that the various components of the systems will be installed at the proper time, fit the available space, and will allow proper service access to those items requiring maintenance. Refer to all other division's drawings, and to relevant equipment submittals and shop drawings to determine the extent of clear spaces. Components which are installed without regard to the above shall be relocated at no additional cost to the owner.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, the general contractor will provide chases and openings in building construction required for installation of the systems specified herein. Contractor shall furnish the general contractor with information where chases and openings are required. Make all offsets required to clear equipment, beams and other structural members, and to facilitate concealing system components in the manner anticipated in the design. Keep informed as to the work of other trades engaged in the construction of the project, and execute work in a manner as to not interfere with or delay the work of other trades.
- C. Figured dimensions shall be taken in preference to scale dimensions. Contractor shall take his own measurements at the building, as variations may occur. Contractor will be held responsible for errors that could have been avoided by proper checking and inspection
- D. Provide materials with trim that will properly fit the types of ceiling, wall, or floor finishes actually installed. Model numbers listed in the construction documents are not necessarily intended to designate the required trim.

1.7 ORDINANCES, CODES, AND STANDARDS

- A. Work performed under this contract shall, at a minimum, be in conformance with applicable national, state and local codes having jurisdiction. Equipment furnished and associated installation work performed under this contract shall be in strict compliance with current applicable codes adopted by the local AHJ including any amendments and standards as set forth by the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), Underwriters Laboratories (UL), Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), American National Standards Institute (ANSI), American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM) and other national standards and codes where applicable. Additionally, comply with rules and regulations of public utilities and municipal departments affected by connection of services.
- B. Where the contract documents exceed the requirements of the referenced codes, standards, etc., the contract documents shall take precedence.
- C. Promptly bring all conflicts observed between codes, ordinances, rules, regulations, referenced standards, and these documents to the engineer's attention for final resolution. Contractor will be

held responsible for any violation of the law.

- D. Procure and pay for permits and licenses required for the accomplishment of the work herein described. Where required, obtain, pay for and furnish certificates of inspection to owner. Contractor will be held responsible for violations of the law.

1.8 PROTECTION OF EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

- A. Store and protect from damage equipment and materials delivered to job site, in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations. For materials and equipment susceptible to changing weather conditions, dampness, or temperature variations, store inside in conditioned spaces. For materials and equipment not susceptible to these conditions, cover with waterproof, tear-resistant, heavy tarp or polyethylene plastic as required to protect from plaster, dirt, paint, water, or physical damage. Equipment and material that has been damaged by construction activities will be rejected, and contractor shall furnish new equipment and material as required at no additional cost to the owner.
- B. Keep premises broom clean from foreign material created during work performed under this contract. Piping, equipment, etc. shall have a neat and clean appearance at the termination of the work.
- C. Plug or cap open ends of conduits while stored and installed during construction when not in use to prevent the entrance of debris into the systems.

1.9 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Include in the base bid the products specifically named in these specifications or on the drawings. Submit, in the form of alternates, with bid, products of any other manufacturers for similar use, provided the differences in cost, if any, are included for each proposed alternate.
- B. No substitutions will be considered with receipt of Bids, unless the Architect and Engineer have received from the Bidder a written request for approval to bid a substitution at least ten calendar days prior to the date for receipt of Bids, and have approved the substitution request. Include, with each such request, the name of the material or equipment for which substitution is being requested, and a complete description of the proposed substitution, including drawings, cut sheets, performance and test data, and all other information necessary for an evaluation. Include also a statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment or other work that would be required to incorporate the substitution. The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitute is upon the proposer. The proposer of any substitutions shall compensate the Engineer at a rate of \$150.00 per hour for time spent evaluating proposed substitutions and or the subsequent revisions to the design required to utilize the substitution.
- C. The Architect's or Engineer's decision to approve or disapprove a substitution in a Bid is final.
- D. If the proposed substitution is approved prior to receipt of Bids, such approval will be stated in an Addendum. Bidders shall not rely upon approvals made in any other manner, including verbal.
- E. No substitutions will be considered after receipt of Bids and before award of the Contract.
- F. No substitutions will be considered after the Contract is awarded unless specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

1.10 SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble and submit to the architect, for engineer's review, manufacturers' product literature for material and equipment to be furnished, installed, or both, under this division, including shop drawings, manufacturers' product data and performance sheets, samples, and other submittals required by this division. Highlight, mark, list or indicate the materials, performance criteria and accessories that are being proposed. Provide the number of submittals required by division 1; however, at a minimum, submit two (2) sets. Before submitting, verify that all materials and equipment submitted are mutually compatible and suitable for the intended use, fit the available spaces, and allow ample and code-required room for access and maintenance. Submittals shall contain the following information. Submittals not so identified will be returned to the contractor without action:
 - 1. The project name.
 - 2. The applicable specification section and paragraph.
 - 3. The submittal date.
 - 4. The contractor's stamp, which shall certify that the stamped drawings have been checked by the contractor, comply with the drawings and specifications, and have been coordinated with other trades.
- B. Submittals and shop drawings shall not contain HP Engineering's firm name or logo, nor shall it contain the HP Engineering's engineers' seal and signature. They shall not be copies of HP Engineering's work product.
- C. Transmit submittals as early as required to support the project schedule. Allow for two weeks engineer review time, plus mailing time, plus a duplication of this time for re-submittals, if required. The engineer's submittal reviews will not relieve the contractor from responsibility for errors in dimensions, details, size of members, or quantities; or for omitting components or fittings; or for not coordinating items with actual building conditions.
- D. Refer to division 1 for acceptance of electronic submittals for this project. For electronic submittals, contractor shall submit the documents in accordance with the procedures specified in division 1. Contractor shall notify the architect and engineer that the shop drawings have been posted. If electronic submittal procedures are not defined in division 1, contractor shall include the website, user name and password information needed to access the submittals. For submittals sent by e-mail, contractor shall copy the architect and engineer's designated representatives. Contractor shall allow the engineer review time as specified above in the construction schedule. Contractor shall submit only the documents required to purchase the materials and/or equipment in the electronic submittal and shall clearly indicate the materials, performance criteria and accessories being proposed. General product catalog data not specifically noted to be part of the specified product will be rejected and returned without review.

1.11 ELECTRONIC DRAWING FILES

- A. In preparation of shop drawings or record drawings, contractor may, as an option, obtain electronic drawing files in Revit, AutoCAD, or DXF format from the engineer for a fee of \$300 for a drawing set up to 10 sheets plus \$25 per sheet in excess of 10 sheets. Contact the architect for written authorization; and, contact the engineer to obtain the necessary release agreement form and to indicate the desired shipping method and drawing format. In addition to payment, architect's written authorization and engineer's release agreement form must be received before electronic drawing files will be sent.

1.12 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Submit to the architect, for engineer's review, copies each of operations and maintenance instruction manuals, appropriately bound into manual form including approved copies of the following, revised if necessary to show system and equipment as actually installed. Paper clips, staples, rubber bands, and mailing envelopes are not considered approved binders. Provide the number of submittals required by Division 1; however, at a minimum, submit two (2) sets, and include, at a minimum, the following information:
 1. Cover sheet that lists the project name, date, owner, architect, consulting engineer, general contractor, sub-contractor, and an index of contents.
 2. Manufacturers' catalogs and product data sheets
 3. Wiring diagrams
 4. Operation and Maintenance instructions
 5. Parts lists
 6. Approved shop drawings
 7. Test reports as defined in NETA ATS for the systems and equipment provided or furnished or installed under this contract.
 8. Names, addresses, telephone numbers, and e-mail addresses of local contacts for warranty services and spare parts.
- B. Submit manuals prior to requesting the final punch list and before any requests for substantial completion. Final approval of this division's systems installed under this contract will be withheld until this equipment brochure is received and deemed complete by the architect and engineer.
- C. Provide "as-built" drawings (see Division 1 and general conditions).

1.13 TRAINING

- A. At a time mutually agreed upon between the owner and contractor, provide the services of a factory trained and authorized representative to train owner's designated personnel on the operation and maintenance of the equipment provided for this project.
- B. Provide training to include but not be limited to an overview of the system and/or equipment as it relates to the facility as a whole; operation and maintenance procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, preventive maintenance and appropriate operator intervention; and review of data included in the operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Submit a certification letter to the architect stating that the owner's designated representative has been trained as specified herein. Letter shall include date, time, attendees and subject of training. The contractor and the owner's representative shall sign the certification letter indicating agreement that the training has been provided.
- D. Schedule training with owner with at least 7 days advance notice.

1.14 WARRANTIES

- A. Warrant each system and each element thereof against all defects due to faulty workmanship, design or material for a period of 12 months from date of substantial completion, unless specific items are noted to carry a longer warranty in the construction documents or manufacturer's standard warranty exceeds this duration. Warranties shall include labor and material. Remedy all defects, occurring within the warranty period(s), as stated in the general conditions and Division 1 without any additional costs to the owner.
- B. Perform any required remedial work promptly, upon written notice from the engineer or owner.
- C. At the time of substantial completion, deliver to the owner all warranties, in writing and properly executed, including term limits for warranties extending beyond the required period, each warranty instrument being addressed to the owner and stating the commencement date and term.

1.15 MISCELLANEOUS REMODELING WORK

- A. Provide all demolition of existing electrical systems and new electrical system modifications required because of building remodeling, as noted on the drawings, or necessary for proper operation and new construction. Remove all abandoned cables and wiring above accessible ceilings and ventilation shafts.

PART 2 - ELECTRICAL WORK

2.1 BUILDING OPERATION

- A. Comply with the schedule of operations as outlined in the architectural portions of this specification. Building shall be in continuous operation. Accomplish work that requires interruption of building operation at a time when the building is not in operation, and only with written approval of building owner and/or tenant. Coordinate interruption of building operation with the owner and/or tenant a minimum of 7 days in advance of work.

2.2 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING

- A. Perform excavation and backfill required for installation of underground work under this contract. Trenches shall be of sufficient width. Crib or brace trenches to prevent cave-in or settlement. Do not excavate trenches close to columns and walls of building without prior consultation with the architect. Use pumping equipment if required to keep trenches free of water. Backfill trenches in maximum 6" layers of well-tamped dry earth in a manner to prevent future settlement.
- B. Excavation as herein specified shall be classified as common excavation. Common excavation shall comprise the satisfactory removal and disposition of material of whatever substances and of every description encountered, including rock, if any, within the limits of the work as specified and shown on the drawings. Excavation shall be performed to the lines and grades indicated on the drawings. Excavated materials which are considered unsuitable for backfill, and surplus of excavated material which is not required for backfill, shall be disposed of by the contractor at his own expense and responsibility, and to the satisfaction of the architect.

2.3 COINCIDENTAL DAMAGE

- A. Repair all streets, sidewalks, drives, paving, walls, finishes, and other facilities damaged in the course of this work. Repair materials shall match existing construction. All backfilling and repairing shall meet all requirements of the owner, city and others having jurisdiction. Repair work shall be thoroughly first class. Conform to all requirements of Division 2 of these specifications.

2.4 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Following the requirements in Division 1, cut walls, floors, ceilings, and other portions of the facility as required to perform work under this division. Obtain permission of the architect, owner, or both, before doing any cutting. Cut all holes as small as possible. Patch walls, floors, and other portions of the facility as required by work under this division. All patching shall be thoroughly first class and shall match the original material and construction, including fire ratings if applicable in a manner satisfactory to the architect.

2.5 ROUGH-IN

- A. Coordinate without delay all roughing-in with other divisions. Conceal all piping and rough-in except in unfinished areas and where otherwise indicated in the construction documents.

2.6 SUPPORT SYSTEMS

- A. Steel slotted support systems (slotted channel): comply with MFMA-3, factory-fabricated components for field assembly; 12-gauge, 1-5/8-inch by 1-5/8-inch; Cooper B-Line, Erico International Corporation, Hilti, Inc., Power-Strut, Thomas & Betts Corporation, Unistrut.
- B. Finishes:
 - 1. Metallic coatings: hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-3.
 - 2. Nonmetallic coatings: manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-3.
 - 3. Painted coatings: manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-3
 - 4. Stainless steel: type 304, per ASTM A240.
- C. Aluminum slotted support systems (slotted channel): comply with MFMA-3, type 6063-T6, per ASTM B221; factory-fabricated components for field assembly; 12-gauge, 1-5/8-inch by 1-5/8-inch; Cooper B-Line, Erico International Corporation, Hilti, Inc., Power-Strut, Thomas & Betts Corporation, Unistrut.
- D. Field Fabrication:
 - 1. Where field cutting of standard lengths of channel are required, make cuts straight and perpendicular to manufactured surfaces.
 - 2. For field-cut or damaged surfaces of coated channels, dress cut ends, damaged surfaces, or both, with an abrasive material (e.g., file, grinding stone, or similar) and cleanser to remove oils, rust, sharp edges and shards.
 - 3. For channel with a factory-applied coating, re-finish cut edges with a coating compatible

with the factory finish and as recommended by the manufacturer (e.g., manufacturer's touch-up paint or zinc-rich cold-galvanizing compound, as applicable).

2.7 PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of fire-stopping specified in Division 7 section "through-penetration firestop systems."
- B. Roofs:
 - 1. Coordinate all roof penetrations with engineer, owner, and as applicable, the roofing contractor providing a roof warranty.
 - 2. Keep all raceway penetrations within mechanical equipment curbs wherever possible. Coordinate with all other applicable Division's work.
 - 3. Flash and counterflash all openings through roof, and/or provide pre-fabricated molded seals compatible with the roof construction installed, or as required by the engineer, owner, or roofing contractor. All roof penetrations shall be leak-tight at the termination of the work and shall not void any new or existing roof warranties.
- C. Walls and Floors
 - 1. Sleeves for raceways and cables
 - 2. Steel pipe sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, type E, grade B, schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends and drip rings.
 - 3. Cast-iron pipe sleeves: cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Sleeves for rectangular openings: galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.138 inch thickness and of width and length to suit application.

2.8 FIRE-STOPPING THROUGH PENETRATIONS

- A. Fire-resistant through penetration sealants: two-part, foamed-in-place, silicone sealant formulated for use in through-penetration fire-stopping around cables, raceways, and cable tray penetrations through fire-rated walls and floors. Sealants and accessories shall have fire-resistance ratings indicated, as established by testing identical assemblies in accordance with ASTM E 814, by underwriters' laboratories, inc., or other NRTL acceptable to AHJ.
- B. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - 1. Hilti, Inc.
 - 2. 3m Corp.
 - 3. Rectorseal.
 - 4. Specify Technology Inc.
 - 5. United States Gypsum Company.

C. Submittals

1. Submit product data, manufacturer's specifications and technical data for each material including the composition and limitations, documentation of UL firestop systems to be used and manufacturer's installation instructions to comply with Division 1.
2. Manufacturer's engineering judgment identification number and drawing details when no UL system is available for an application. Engineering judgment shall include both project name and contractor's name who will install firestop system as described in drawings.
3. Submit material safety data sheets provided with product delivered to job-site.

2.9 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Provide concrete bases (e.g., housekeeping pads) for equipment where indicated on the drawings and as specified herein. Concrete bases shall have chamfered edges. Size of base shall be a minimum of 2 inches greater than the footprint of the equipment that it is supporting.
- B. Construct equipment bases of a minimum 28-day, 4000-psi concrete conforming to American Concrete Institute standard building code for reinforced concrete (ACI 318-99) and the latest applicable recommendations of the ACI standard practice manual. Concrete shall be composed of cement conforming to ASTM C 150 type I, aggregate conforming to ASTM C33, and potable water. Exposed exterior concrete shall contain 5 to 7 percent air entrainment.
- C. Unless otherwise specified or shown on the structural drawings, reinforce equipment bases with no. 4 reinforcing bars conforming to ASTM A 615 or 6x6 – w2.9 x w2.9 welded wire mesh conforming to ASTM A185. Place reinforcing bars 24 inches on center with a minimum of two bars each direction.
- D. Provide galvanized anchor bolts for equipment placed on concrete bases or on concrete slabs. Anchor bolts size, number and placement shall be as recommended by the manufacturer of the equipment.
- E. Concrete equipment bases shall have a minimum height of 4 inches and shall be poured-in-place.

2.10 ACCESS DOORS

- A. Provide access doors in ceilings and walls, where indicated or required for access or maintenance to concealed equipment installed under this section. Provide concealed hinges, screwdriver-type lock, and anchor straps.
- B. Manufactured by Milcor, Zurn, Titus, or equal. Obtain architect's approval of type, size, location and color before ordering.

2.11 EQUIPMENT FURNISHED BY OTHERS

- A. Provide necessary equipment and accessories that are not provided by the equipment supplier or owner to complete installation of equipment furnished by others, in locations as indicated on the drawings, specified herein, or both. Equipment and accessories not provided by the equipment supplier may include such items as flexible cords and plugs, as required for proper operation of

the complete system, in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

- B. Be responsible for correct rough-in dimensions, and verify them with engineer, owner's representative, equipment supplier, or all three, prior to rough-in and service installations.

2.12 CLEANING

- A. In addition to the requirements of Division 1, remove from the premises dirt and refuse resulting from the performance of the electrical work, as required, to prevent accumulation. Cooperate in maintaining reasonably clean premises at all times. Immediately prior to final inspection, make a final cleanup of dirt and refuse resulting from the work. Clean all material and equipment installed under this division. Remove dirt, dust, plaster, stains and foreign matter from all surfaces. Touch up and restore all damaged finishes to their original condition.

2.13 ADJUSTING, ALIGNING AND TESTING

- A. Adjust, align, and test all electrical equipment on this project provided under this division and all electrical equipment furnished by others for installation or wiring under this division, for proper operation.
- B. Test all systems and equipment according to the requirements in NETA ATS (latest edition) and all additional requirements specified in following sections.
- C. Maintain the following on the project premises at all times: a true RMS reading voltmeter, a true RMS reading ammeter, and a megohmmeter insulation resistance tester. Provide test data readings as requested or as required by the engineer.

2.14 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Provide equipment identification nameplates:
 - 1. On all panelboards, switches, starters, dimmers, switches in distribution panelboards and switchboards and where indicated on the drawings.
- B. Nameplates:
 - 1. Engraved, contrasting color, three-layer, laminated plastic indicating the name of the equipment, load, or circuit as designated on the drawings and in the specifications:
 - A) Field-applied permanent epoxy adhesive, compatible with the equipment finish.
 - B) Self-adhering, with a permanent, weatherproof adhesive.
 - C) Attached with stainless steel screws and hardware.
 - D) Attachment method shall be acceptable to the manufacturers of the equipment to which the nameplates are being applied.
 - 2. Color: black background with white letters for normal power; red background with white letters for emergency power. Letter height: $\frac{1}{2}$ inch minimum.

2.15 SYSTEM START UP

- A. Prior to starting up the electrical systems:
 1. Check all components and devices.
 2. Lubricate items accordingly.
 3. Tighten screws and bolts for connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486a and UL 486b.
 4. Adjust taps on each transformer for rated secondary voltage when the transformer is at minimum load.
 5. Check and record building's service entrance voltage, grounding conditions, grounding resistance, and proper phasing.
 6. Replace all burned-out lamps and lamps used for temporary construction lighting in permanent light fixtures.
 7. After all systems have been inspected and adjusted, confirm all operating features required by the drawings and specifications and make final adjustments as necessary.

PART 3 - EXISTING EQUIPMENT REUSE AND REMOVAL

- A. Remove all existing wiring, light fixtures, exposed conduits and other electrical installations not reused prior to substantial completion of the work.
- B. Existing raceways may be reused if their points of terminations are suitable; if they are clean inside with no evidence of rust or burrs; if free from cracks, flattened sections or sharp bends; and, if suitably located to avoid conflicts with other trades or installations. Carefully "fish" all existing conduits reused under this contract to remove all debris and obstructions, and swab until all moisture is removed.
- C. Cut, patch, and repair where required for new electrical installations, and patch and repair all surface damage resulting from this work. Cut flush with the floor and plug at both ends, raceways stubbed above the floor and not used at substantial completion of the work.
- D. Relocate all existing electrical systems required to be in operation at substantial completion of the contract, if required, as a result of work included under this contract, even if not specifically indicated in the drawings or specifications.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
4. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.
- B. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
 - 4. #10 AWG and smaller shall be solid (not stranded).
- C. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 496 for stranded conductors.
- D. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type NM: Comply with UL 83 and UL 719.
 - 2. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
 - 3. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
 - 4. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
 - 5. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 6. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 - 7. Type UF: Comply with UL 83 and UL 493.
 - 8. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- E. Shield:
 - 1. Type TC-ER: Cable designed for use with VFCs, with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation dual spirally wrapped copper tape shields and three bare symmetrically applied ground wires, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- 1. Allowed only as a cost savings request by the owner.
- 2. Owner shall provide permission in writing (email).
- 3. Contractor shall obtain written permission (email) from local AHJ.
- 4. Do not submit bids with aluminum as basis of install unless approved prior to bid date.

2.3 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath. MC cable shall include grounding conductor.
- B. MC Cable Shall only be used as whips for connections to equipment and lighting not to exceed 6ft in length. Any other use is not allowed without express written consent from the Engineer of record.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Comply with UL 1569.
3. RoHS compliant.
4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.

E. Ground Conductor: Insulated.

F. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

G. MC Steel Metal Clad Cable Requirements:

1. MC Steel Metal Clad Cable must have the following:
 - a. Armor: Galvanized interlocking steel strip.
 - b. Conductors: Solid Copper.
 - c. Conductor Insulation: THHN/THWN
 - d. Assembly Covering: Polypropylene Tape
 - e. Maximum Temperature Rating: 90°C (dry)
 - f. Grounding: One grounding means, must be insulated copper conductor.
 - g. Neutral Conductor: White
 - h. Maximum Voltage Rating: 600V
 - i. Rating Compliance with the following:
 - 1) UL® 83, 1479, 1569, 1581, 2556
 - 2) Cable Tray Rated, install per NEC®
 - 3) UL® Classified 1, 2, and 3 hour through (Fire) penetration product, R-14141
 - 4) Environmental Air-Handling Space Installation per NEC® 300.22(C)
2. Do Not Use MC Cable for the Following:
 - a. Homeruns to panelboards.
 - b. Where exposed to view.
 - c. Where exposed to damage.
 - d. Hazardous locations.
 - e. Wet locations.
 - f. When restricted otherwise above, and when specifically disallowed by the local AHJ or Owner.
 - g. Circuits supplied by an emergency or standby power source.
3. Aluminum sheathing for MC Cable is not allowed.

2.4 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

- B. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- C. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
 - 1. Material: Copper.
 - 2. Termination: Compression.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- E. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- F. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Feeders in Cable Tray: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- I. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

- J. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- K. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: Type XHHW-2, single conductors larger than No. 1/0 AWG.
- L. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- M. VFC Output Circuits: Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
 - 2. Push-in style connectors are not allowed.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
 2. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors and conductors feeding critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.
 3. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
 - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
 - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
 - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
 - 3) Thermographic survey.
 - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
 - d. Inspect for correct identification.
 - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
 - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
 - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
 - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.

4. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
 - a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
 5. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
1. Procedures used.
 2. Results that comply with requirements.
 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 1. Test wells.
 2. Ground rods.
 3. Ground rings.
 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

- 1) Test wells.
 - 2) Ground rods.
 - 3) Ground rings.
 - 4) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells, ground rings, and grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS and NFPA 70B .
- 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
 - 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (unless noted otherwise on drawings) in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.
1. Grounding bus bar shall be installed in each dedicated data equipment room/closet.
 2. Install No. 6 AWG conductor connecting each grounding bus bar to the main service grounding distribution system.

2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- G. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- H. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- J. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- K. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- L. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- M. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- N. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- O. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy.
- P. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- Q. Water Pipe Clamps:
 - 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with zinc-plated bolts.
 - a. Material: Die-cast zinc alloy.
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
 - 2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

2.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch diameter by 10 feet in length.

- B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
 - 1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches long.
 - 2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.
- C. Ground Plates: 1/4 inch thick, hot-dip galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
 - 1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
 - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service and low voltage data equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

3.4 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.
- H. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.
 - 1. Grounding Conductor: Bare copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
 - 2. Gates: Shall be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
 - 3. Barbed Wire: Strands shall be bonded to the grounding conductor.

3.5 FENCE GROUNDING

- A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 feet except as follows:
 - 1. Fences within 100 Feet of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet.
 - a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
 - 1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
 - 2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except at openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches below finished grade.
- B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet on each side of crossing.
- C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.
- E. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
- F. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
 3. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.
1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.

- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building.
 - 1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
 - 2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building's foundation.
- J. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.
 - 1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
 - 2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.
- K. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
 - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 - 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 - 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
 - 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
 6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.
- G. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Aluminum slotted support systems.
3. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
4. Conduit and cable support devices.
5. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
6. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
7. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
8. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
 - b. Clamps.
 - c. Hangers.
 - d. Sockets.
 - e. Eye nuts.
 - f. Fasteners.
 - g. Anchors.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
 - 3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Projectors.
- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
 - 1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel or Stainless steel, Type 316 as suitable for environment.
 - 3. Channel Width: As required for applicable load.
 - 4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Slotted Support Systems: Extruded-aluminum channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
 - 1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 2. Channel Material: 6063-T5 aluminum alloy.
 - 3. Fittings and Accessories Material: 5052-H32 aluminum alloy.
 - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load.
 - 5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel, Stainless-steel, aluminum hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.

4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 1. NECA 1.
 2. NECA 101
 3. NECA 102.
 4. NECA 105.
 5. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.

- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT IMC and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 - 6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69 or Spring-tension clamps.
 - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Unless required otherwise from manufacturer, transformer pads, pads for distribution equipment, and Generator pads shall have 6" clear minimum around the perimeter of the enclosure.

- C. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
 - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - 4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Metal Conduit:
 - 1. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
 - 3. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
 - 4. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
 - 5. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
 - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.
 - 6. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
 - 7. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel or aluminum.
 - 8. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- B. Metal Fittings:
 - 1. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
 - 4. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
 - 5. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Type: compression.
 - 6. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 - 7. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduit shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Fiberglass:
 - a. Comply with NEMA TC 14.
 - b. Comply with UL 2515 for aboveground raceways.
 - c. Comply with UL 2420 for belowground raceways.
3. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
4. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
5. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
6. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
7. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
8. Coilable HDPE: Preassembled with conductors or cables, and complying with ASTM D 3485.
9. RTRE: Comply with UL 2515A and NEMA TC 14.

B. Nonmetallic Fittings:

1. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
2. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
 - a. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
3. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, (enclosure suitable to environment) unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
 1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- C. Wireway Covers: Hinged, Flanged-and-gasketed type unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts. Cover shall be gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections shall be flanged and have stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.
- C. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: not allowed unless noted otherwise.

2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- E. Metal Floor Boxes: refer to drawings.
- F. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: refer to drawings
- G. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- H. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 90 lb.
 - I. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- I. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

- J. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum or galvanized, cast iron (suitable to environment) with gasketed cover.
- K. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- L. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep.
- M. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- N. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, NEMA enclosure type suitable to environment with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Fiberglass.
 - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- O. Cabinets:
 - 1. NEMA 250, NEMA enclosure suitable to environment, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
 - 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
 - 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT.
 - 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, direct buried.
 - 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
 - 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - 6. Feeders to Variable Speed Drive: Metallic (EMT or GRC)
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 - 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT unless noted otherwise.
 - 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Loading dock.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.

- d. Gymnasiums.
 - 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 - 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
 - 6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
 - 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
 - 8. Feeders to Variable Speed Drive: Metallic (EMT or GRC)
 - 9. Whips to light fixtures: MC cable shall only be used as whips to light fixtures and vibrating equipment not to exceed 6' in length.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch trade size. 3/4-inch minimum for school and healthcare facilities.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
 - 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 - 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 - 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

- F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- H. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
 - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
 - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from ENT to GRC before rising above floor. Elbows shall be GRC. Continue GRC until conduit passes through the slab prior to transition back to ENT.
 - 6. Provide coated GRC for all bends greater than 30 degrees, including the 90-degree elbows below grade and the entire vertical risers for transitions from below to above grade or above-slab."
- J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- M. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- N. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- O. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- P. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- Q. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

- R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- S. Surface Raceways:
1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- T. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

- X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
 - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 - 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- Z. Surface mount boxes at window mullions at locations indicated on drawings. Use of MC cable is acceptable. Conceal raceways and conductors within mullion cavity. Splices within the mullions are not allowed.
- AA. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- BB. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- CC. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- DD. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- EE. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- FF. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- GG. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
 - 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
 - 2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
 - 5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.

- a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
 7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.

2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

- a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
- b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
 - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 - 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
 - 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.

- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.
- B. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

- E. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 260574 "Overcurrent Protective Device Arc-Flash Study" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.
 - 1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
 - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - 4. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 - 5. Color for Neutral: White.
 - 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
 - 7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with white stripe.
- C. Warning Label Colors:
 - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."

2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

E. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.

1. Minimum Nominal Size:

- a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches for raceway and conductors.
- b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches for equipment.
- c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.

- C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch-wide black stripes on 10-inch centers placed diagonally over orange background and is 12 inches wide. Stop stripes at legends.

- D. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch-wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:

1. Tape:

- a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
- b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
- c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

2. Color and Printing:

- a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
- b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
- c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".

2.5 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, 0.015 inch thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory printed permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
 - 1.

2.6 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:
 - 1. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 - 2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
 - 3. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.
- B. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
 - 1. Engraved legend.
 - 2. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16 inch thick.
 - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8 inch thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 - d. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.7 CABLE TIES

- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
 - 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
 - 4. Color: Black.
- C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
 - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.

5. Color: Black.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

- J. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch-high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- K. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- L. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 - 2. "POWER."
 - 3. "UPS."
- M. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- N. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- Q. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- T. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- U. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- V. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.

- W. Underground Line Warning Tape:
1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.
 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- X. Baked-Enamel Signs:
1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches high.
- Y. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- Z. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- AA. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:
1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.
- 3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE
- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil. Stencil legend "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH-VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch-high, black letters on 20-inch centers.
1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, and at 10-foot maximum intervals.
- D. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: Self-adhesive labels.

1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 20 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 2. "POWER."
 3. "UPS."
- G. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive wraparound labels to identify the phase.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- H. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.
- I. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- J. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:
 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- K. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- L. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- M. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive labels.
 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.

- N. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- O. Equipment Identification Labels:
 - 1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label.
 - 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
 - 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
 - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
 - d. Switchgear.
 - e. Switchboards.
 - f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
 - g. Substations.
 - h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
 - i. Motor-control centers.
 - j. Enclosed switches.
 - k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
 - l. Enclosed controllers.
 - m. Variable-speed controllers.
 - n. Push-button stations.
 - o. Power-transfer equipment.
 - p. Contactors.
 - q. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
 - r. Battery-inverter units.
 - s. Battery racks.
 - t. Power-generating units.
 - u. Monitoring and control equipment.
 - v. UPS equipment.
 - w. Generator Grounding Method for switched or un-switched neutral conductor.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Time switches.
2. Photoelectric switches.
3. Standalone daylight-harvesting switching and dimming controls.
4. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
5. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
6. Digital timer light switches.
7. Lighting contactors.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:

- a. Occupancy sensors: Include shop drawings with a coverage map.
 - b. Vacancy sensors. Include shop drawings with a coverage map.

2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
 2. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
 3. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Control modules.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Faulty operation of lighting control software.
 - b. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.
 2. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIME SWITCHES

- A. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Programs: Eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
 3. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program on selected channels.
 4. Astronomic Time: All channels.
 5. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
 6. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. Description: Solid state, with dry contacts rated for 1800 VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
 3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
 4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
 5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
 6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

2.3 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

A. General Requirements for Sensors:

1. Wall or Ceiling-mounted (as shown on drawings), solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
2. Dual technology.
3. Integrated power pack.
4. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
5. Operation:
 - a. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
6. Sensor Output: **Sensor is powered from the power pack.**
7. Power: **Line voltage.**
8. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A **ballast or LED** load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
9. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
10. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
11. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.

- 12. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- B. PIR Type: **Wall** or **Ceiling** mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in..
 2. Detection Coverage (Room, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.
 3. Detection Coverage (Corridor, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot-high ceiling.
 4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of **1000 square feet** when mounted 48 inches above finished floor.
- C. Ultrasonic Type: **Wall** or **Ceiling** mounted; detect occupants in coverage area through pattern changes of reflected ultrasonic energy.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
 2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted at ceiling height.
 4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. when mounted on at ceiling height.
 5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet when mounted on at ceiling height in a corridor not wider than 14 feet.
 6. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 2000 square feet when mounted 84 inches above finished floor.
- D. Dual-Technology Type: Wall or Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.

2.4 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED VACANCY SENSORS

- A. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox using hardwired connection.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application, and shall comply with California Title 24.

2. Vacancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights off when coverage area is unoccupied, with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
 4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA LED load at 120 V, 1200-VA LED load at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.
- B. Wall-Switch Sensor Tag OS or OCC:
1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 2100 sq. ft.
 2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
 3. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
 4. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
 5. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
 6. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
 7. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
 8. Color: Obtain approval from architect prior to ordering.
 9. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

2.5 LIGHTING CONTROL FOR EXTERIOR LIGHTS

- A. Description: Four Pole pass-thru style relay panel. Panel shall include capacity to control four 20A circuits. Manual and programmable control of each relay via simple keypad and 2 line display. UL 916 in NEMA 1 enclosure. Include outdoor photosensor. Equal performance to Eaton LK4 LiteKeeper series.
1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including LED, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less THD of normal load current).
 2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
 3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
 4. Provide with control as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

2.6 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 16 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- C. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90-percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 260923

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Load centers.
4. Electronic-grade panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.
- G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.

3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
8. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
9. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
10. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
 2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
 3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
 - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.
- C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
 - 3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. SPD Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
 - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Kitchen and Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 - 2. Height: 84 inches maximum.
 - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 - 4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 - 5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
 - 6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
 - 7. Finishes:
 - a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
 - c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
- G. Incoming Mains:
 - 1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
 - 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.

H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
 - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
7. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.

I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
6. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
9. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

J. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.

K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: 20 percent.

L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- B. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- D. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

2.5 PANELBOARDS SERVING GAMES AND DATA CENTER LOADS

- A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1; with factory-installed, integral SPD; labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 67 and UL 1449 after installing SPD.
- B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

- C. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
- E. SPD.
 - 1. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
 - 2. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 or V 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - d. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V or 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - 3. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 700 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
 - d. Line to Line: 1200 V.
 - 4. SCCR: Equal to the SCCR of the panelboard in which installed or exceed 100 kA.
 - 5. Nominal Rating: 20 kA.

F. Buses:

- 1. Copper phase and neutral buses; 200 percent capacity neutral bus and lugs.
- 2. Copper equipment and isolated ground buses.

2.6 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
 - a. RMS sensing.
 - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
 - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
 - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
 - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
 - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.

- g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
- 1) Instantaneous trip.
 - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
 - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
 6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
 7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
 8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
 9. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
 - f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - g. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.
 - h. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
 - i. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
 - j. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
 - k. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 - l. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
 - m. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

- B. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."
 2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
 - b. Mechanical cover interlock with a manual interlock override, to prevent the opening of the cover when the switch is in the on position. The interlock shall prevent the switch from being turned on with the cover open. The operating handle shall have lock-off means with provisions for three padlocks.

2.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
 - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.
- D. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
 - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

2.8 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces.

Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
 - 3. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- F. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- G. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- I. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- J. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- K. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
 - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- M. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- N. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- O. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- P. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers. Perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment:

- 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."
- C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.
 1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
 2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
 3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
 4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Straight-blade convenience, hospital-grade, isolated-ground, and tamper-resistant receptacles.
2. GFCI receptacles.
3. Cord and plug sets.
4. Toggle switches.
5. Digital timer light switches.
6. Wall-box dimmers.
7. Wall plates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Abbreviations of Manufacturers' Names:

1. Cooper: Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Hubbell: Hubbell Incorporated: Wiring Devices-Kellems.
3. Leviton: Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
4. Pass & Seymour: Pass& Seymour/Legrand.

- B. BAS: Building automation system.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.
- H. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
 2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.
- D. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Duplex Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description:
 1. 125 V, 20 A, straight blade, feed-through type, self-test type.
 2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.
- B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles:
 1. All 15A and 20A, 125V and 250V non-locking receptacles shall be listed as "Weather Resistant" type in Damp and wet locations.

2.4 CORD AND PLUG SETS

- A. Description:
 1. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
 2. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
 3. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.5 TOGGLE SWITCHES

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
- C. Key-Operated Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A:
 1. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
- D. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
- E. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

2.6 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

- A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
- B. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.
- C. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
 1. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. Illuminated when "off."
- D. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

- E. LED Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with LED lamps; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.7 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 2. Color determined by architect.
 3. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
 4. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
 5. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.8 FINISHES

- A. Device Color:
1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
 3. SPD Devices: Blue.
 4. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange.
- B. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
 4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
 3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
 4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
 5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
 6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
 7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
 8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
 9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Receptacle Orientation:
1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.
- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
 2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
 3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
 2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- D. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Test straight-blade convenience outlets in patient-care areas for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz..
- F. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
 - a. Control circuits.
 - b. Panelboards.
 - c. Enclosed controllers.
 - d. Enclosed switches.
2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
 1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
 - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
 - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
 3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
 4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in PDF format.
 5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
 6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures," Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
 2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
 3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project. Submit in PDF format.
 4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
1. Type RK-1: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 2. Type RK-5: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 3. Type CC: 600-V, zero- to 30-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting.
 4. Type CD: 600-V, 31- to 60-A rating, 200 kAIC, fast acting.
 5. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 6. Type L: 600-V, 601- to 6000-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
 7. Type T: 600-V, zero- to 800-A rating, 200 kAIC, very fast acting.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.

- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

- A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
 - 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
 - 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
 - 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch-high letters on exterior of door.
 - 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
 - 1. Service Entrance: Class L, fast acting.
 - 2. Feeders: Class L, fast acting.
 - 3. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
 - 4. Large Motor Branch (601-4000 A): Class L, time delay.
 - 5. Power Electronics Circuits: Class J, high speed.
 - 6. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
 - 7. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, control transformer duty.
 - 8. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s) in location shown on the Drawings or as indicated in the field by Owner.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
4. Molded-case switches.
5. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.3 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
 1. Single throw.
 2. Three pole.
 3. 600-V ac.
 4. 1200 A and smaller.
 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses.
 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.4 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Double Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- E. Accessories:
 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: One NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
 6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.5 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.

- B. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.
- C. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be 100 percent rated.
- D. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- E. Lugs shall be suitable for 167 deg F rated wire.
- F. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- G. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- H. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- I. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
 1. Instantaneous trip.
 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.
- J. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- K. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
- L. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- M. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- N. Features and Accessories:
 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
 4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay

- settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
5. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 6. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
 7. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 8. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 9. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
 10. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 11. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
 12. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered; 120-V ac.

2.6 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

- A. Description: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- B. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- C. Features and Accessories:
 1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
 2. Lugs:
 - a. Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - b. Lugs shall be suitable for 167 deg F rated wire.
 3. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; remote-mounted and powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
 4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
 5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 6. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.
 7. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when switch has tripped.
 8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit switch operation; key shall be removable only when switch is in off position.
 9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with ground-fault shunt trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
 10. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
 11. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Integrally mounted, self-powered; 120-V ac.

2.7 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1).
- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover. The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.
- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
 - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

3.3 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.

1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
3. Kitchen and Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
6. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7 with cover attached by Type 316 stainless steel bolts.

3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
 - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
 - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.

- g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
 - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
 2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
 - d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
 - e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

D. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
 - f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:

- 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
- g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
 - h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
 - c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
 - e. Determine the following by primary current injection:
 - 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.

- g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
 - h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
 - i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
 - 3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 4. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
 - 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 263213 – ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged engine-generator sets suitable for use in mission critical applications with the features as specified and indicated. Engine generators will be used as the Standby power source for the system, but shall be capable of providing reliable power with no run-time limitations while the primary source of power is unavailable.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Emergency Standby Power (ESP): Per ISO 8528: The maximum power available during a variable electrical power sequence, under the stated operating conditions, for which a generating set is capable of delivering in the event of a utility power outage or under test conditions for up to 200 hours of operation per year with the maintenance intervals and procedures being carried out as prescribed by the manufacturers. The permissible average power output (Ppp) over 24 hours of operation shall not exceed 70 percent of the ESP unless otherwise agreed by the RIC engine manufacturer.
- B. Prime Power (PRP): Per ISO 8528: The maximum power which a generating set is capable of delivering continuously whilst supplying a variable electrical load when operated for an unlimited number of hours per year under the agreed operating conditions with the maintenance intervals and procedures being carried out as a prescribed by the manufacturer. The permissible average power output (Ppp) over 24 hours of operation shall not exceed 70 percent of the PRP unless otherwise agreed by the RIC engine manufacturer.
- C. Limited Time running Power (LTP): Per ISO 8528: The maximum power available, under the agreed operating conditions, for which the generating set is capable of delivering for up to 500 hours of operation per year with the maintenance intervals and procedures being carried out as prescribed by the manufacturers.
- D. Continuous Operating Power (COP): Per ISO 8528: The maximum power which a generating set is capable of delivering continuously whilst supplying a constant electrical load when operated for an unlimited number of hours per year under the agreed operating conditions with the maintenance intervals and procedures being carried out as a prescribed by the manufacturer.
- E. Data Center Continuous (DCC): The maximum power which a generating set is capable of delivering continuously whilst supplying a variable or constant electrical load when operated for an unlimited number of hours in a data center application under the agreed operating conditions with the maintenance intervals and procedures being carried out as a prescribed by the manufacturer. The permissible average power output (Ppp) over 24 hours of operation shall not exceed 100 percent of the DCC rating.
- F. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of packaged engine generator indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. In addition, include the following:
 1. Thermal damage curve for generator.
 2. Time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
 3. Sound test data, based on a free field requirement.

- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Dimensioned outline plan and elevation drawings of engine-generator set and other components specified.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: Control interconnection, Customer connections.
- C. Certifications:
 - 1. Submit statement of compliance which states the proposed product(s) is certified to the emissions standards required by the location for EPA, stationary emergency application.
 - 2. Submit statement of compliance which states the proposed product(s) are seismically certified in compliance with local requirements signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that the 24 Hour(s) fuel tank, the Weather enclosure, engine-generator set, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
 - 1. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 2. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Source quality-control test reports.
 - 1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report. See requirements in Part 2 "Source Quality Control" Article Part A. Include statement indicating torsional compatibility of components.
 - 2. Certified Test Report: Provide certified test report documenting factory test per the requirements of this specification, as well as certified factory test of generator set sensors per NFPA110 level 1.
 - 3. List of factory tests to be performed on units to be shipped for this Project.
 - 4. Report of exhaust emissions and compliance statement certifying compliance with applicable regulations.
- C. Warranty:
 - 1. Submit manufacturer's warranty statement to be provided for this Project.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer. Maintain, within 50 of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged generator sets and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Comply with NFPA 37 (Standard For the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines).
- E. Comply with NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code. Equipment shall be suitable for use in systems in compliance to Article 700, 701, and 702).
- F. Comply with NFPA 110 (Emergency and Standby Power Systems) requirements for Level 1 emergency power supply system.
- G. Comply with UL 2200.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: Engine-generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: 0.0 deg C (32.0 deg F) to 50.0 deg C (122.0 deg F).

2. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent.
3. Altitude: Sea level to 1171.0 feet (356.92 m).

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Base Warranty: Manufacturer shall provide base warranty coverage on the material and workmanship of the generator set for a minimum of twenty-four (24) months for Standby product and twelve (12) months for Prime/Continuous product from registered commissioning and start-up.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: The basis for this specification is Cummins Power Generation (Robby Severance, 405-820-6694) equipment, approved equals may be considered if equipment performance is shown to meet the requirements herein.

2.2 ENGINE-GENERATOR SET

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, engine-generator set.
- B. Mounting Frame: Maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation; and have lifting attachments.
 1. Rigging Information: Indicate location of each lifting attachment, generator-set center of gravity, and total package weight in submittal drawings.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics:
 1. Power Output Ratings: Electrical output power rating for Standby operation of not less than 750.0, at 80 percent lagging power factor, 277/480, Series Wye, Three phase, 4-wire, 60 hertz.
 2. Alternator shall be capable of accepting maximum 3866.0 kVA in a single step and be capable of recovering to a minimum of 90% of rated no load voltage. Following the application of the specified kVA load at near zero power factor applied to the generator set. If the generator manufacturer doesn't have this rating, then alternator should be rated at 3100kVA Motor Starting at 30% voltage dip on data sheet.
 3. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component. The engine-generator nameplate shall include information of the power output rating of the equipment.
- D. Generator-Set Performance:
 1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
 2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 5 seconds. On application of a 100% load step the generator set shall recover to stable voltage within 10 seconds.
 3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.25 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
 4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
 5. Transient Frequency Performance: Not more than 15 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 5 seconds. On application of a 100% load step the generator set shall recover to stable frequency within 10 seconds.
 6. Output Waveform: At full load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for any single harmonic. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50.
 7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a 3-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for

- not less than 8 seconds without damage to generator system components. For a 1-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall regulate both voltage and current to prevent over-voltage conditions on the non-faulted phases.
8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1, Type 10, system requirements.
 9. Ambient Condition Performance: Engine generator shall be designed to allow operation at full rated load in an ambient temperature under site conditions, based on highest ambient condition. Ambient temperature shall be as measured at the air inlet to the engine generator for enclosed units, and at the control of the engine generator for machines installed in equipment rooms.

2.3 ENGINE

- A. Fuel: ASTM D975 #2 Diesel Fuel
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800RPM.
- C. Lubrication System: The following items are mounted on engine or skid:
 1. Lube oil pump: shall be positive displacement, mechanical, full pressure pump.
 2. Filter and Strainer: Provided by the engine manufacturer of record to provide adequate filtration for the prime mover to be used.
 3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- D. Engine Fuel System: The engine fuel system shall be installed in strict compliance to the engine manufacturer's instructions
- E. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine. Pump ensures adequate primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
- F. Coolant Jacket Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity and performance.
 1. Designed for operation on a single 208/240/480 VAC, Single phase, 60Hz power connection. Heater voltage shall be shown on the project drawings.
 2. Installed with isolation valves to isolate the heater for replacement of the element without draining the engine cooling system or significant coolant loss.
 3. Provided with a 24VDC thermostat, installed at the engine thermostat housing
- G. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing. The governing system dynamic capabilities shall be controlled as a function of engine coolant temperature to provide fast, stable operation at varying engine operating temperature conditions. The control system shall actively control the fuel rate as appropriate to the state of the engine generator. Fuel rate shall be regulated as a function of starting, accelerating to start disconnect speed, accelerating to rated speed, and operating in various isochronous states.
- H. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled
 1. The generator set manufacturer shall provide prototype test data for the specific hardware proposed demonstrating that the machine will operate at rated standby load in an outdoor ambient condition of 50 deg C.
 2. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 3. Size of Radiator overflow tank: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
 4. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
 5. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.

- 6. Duct Flange: Generator sets installed indoors shall be provided with a flexible radiator duct adapter flange.
- I. Muffler/Silencer: Selected with performance as required to meet sound requirements of the application, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements. For generator sets with outdoor enclosures the silencer shall be inside the enclosure.
- J. Air-Intake Filter: Engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and restriction indicator.
- K. Starting System: 12 or 24V, as recommended by the engine manufacturer; electric, with negative ground.
 - 1. Components: Sized so they will not be damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article.
 - 2. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for level 1 systems.
 - 3. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length as required. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
 - 4. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish.
 - 5. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation. The battery charging alternator shall have sufficient capacity to recharge the batteries with all parasitic loads connected within 4 hours after a normal engine starting sequence.
 - 6. Battery Chargers: Unit shall comply with UL 1236, provide fully regulated, constant voltage, current limited, battery charger for each battery bank. It will include the following features:
 - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate based on generator set manufacturer's recommendations shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
 - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 20 deg C to plus 40 deg C to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
 - c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
 - d. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
 - e. Provide LED indication of general charger condition, including charging, faults, and modes. Provide a LCD display to indicate charge rate and battery voltage. Charger shall provide relay contacts for fault conditions as required by NFPA110.
 - f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

2.4 FUEL OIL STORAGE

- A. Comply with NFPA 30.
- B. Sub Base-Mounted Fuel Oil Tank: Provide a double wall secondary containment type sub base fuel storage tank. The tank shall be constructed of corrosion resistant steel and shall be UL 142 listed and labeled. The fuel tank shall include the following features:
 - 1. Capacity: Fuel for 24 Hour(s) continuous operation at 100 percent rated power output.

2. Tank rails and lifting eyes shall be rated for the full dry weight of the tank, genset, and enclosure.
3. Electrical stub up(s)
4. Normal & emergency vents
5. Lockable fuel fill
6. Mechanical fuel level gauge
7. High and low level switches to indicate fuel level
8. Leak detector switch
9. Sub base tank shall include a welded steel containment basin, sized at a minimum of 110% of the tank capacity to prevent escape of fuel into the environment in the event of a tank rupture.
10. Fill port with overfill prevention valve (OFPV)
11. 5 gallon fill/spill dam or bucket
12. Tank design shall meet the regional requirements for the Project location

2.5 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Engine generator control shall be microprocessor based and provide automatic starting, monitoring, protection and control functions for the unit.
- B. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of generator set. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, generator set starts. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. (Switches with different configurations but equal functions are acceptable.) When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of the local (generator set-mounted) and/or remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.
- C. Manual Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts generator set. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of the local (generator set-mounted) and/or remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.
- D. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, system controls, engine gages and associated equipment shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from generator-set vibration. AC output power circuit breakers and other output power equipment shall not be mounted in the control enclosure.
- E. Indicating and Protective Devices and Controls: As required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, and the following:
 1. AC voltmeter (3-phase, line to line and line to neutral values).
 2. AC ammeter (3-phases).
 3. AC frequency meter.
 4. AC kW output (total and for each phase). Display shall indicate power flow direction.
 5. AC kVA output (total and for each phase). Display shall indicate power flow direction.
 6. AC Power factor (total and for each phase). Display shall indicate leading or lagging condition.
 7. Ammeter-voltmeter displays shall simultaneously display conditions for all three phases.
 8. Emergency Stop Switch: Switch shall be a red "mushroom head" pushbutton device complete with lock-out/tag-out provisions. Depressing switch shall cause the generator set to immediately stop the generator set and prevent it from operating.
 9. Fault Reset Switch: Supply a dedicated control switch to reset/clear fault conditions.

- 10. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
 - 11. Engine-coolant temperature gauge.
 - 12. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gauge.
 - 13. Running-time meter.
 - 14. Generator-voltage and frequency digital raise/lower switches. Rheostats for these functions are not acceptable. The control shall adjust these parameters in a range of plus or minus 5% of the voltage and frequency operating set point (not nominal voltage and frequency values.) The voltage and frequency adjustment functions shall be disabled when the paralleling breaker is closed.
 - 15. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
 - 16. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
 - 17. AC Protective Equipment: The control system shall include over/under voltage, reverse kVAR, reverse kW, over load (kW) short circuit, over current, loss of voltage reference, and over excitation shut down protection. There shall be a ground fault alarm for generator sets rated over 1000 amps, overload warning, and overcurrent warning alarm.
 - 18. Status LED indicating lamps to indicate remote start signal present at the control, existing shutdown condition, existing alarm condition, not in auto, and generator set running.
 - 19. A graphical display panel with appropriate navigation devices shall be provided to view all information noted above, as well as all engine status and alarm/shutdown conditions (including those from an integrated engine emission control system). The display shall also include integrated provisions for adjustment of the gain and stability settings for the governing and voltage regulation systems.
 - 20. Panel lighting system to allow viewing and operation of the control when the generator room or enclosure is not lighted.
 - 21. Data Logging: The control system shall log the latest 20 different alarm and shutdown conditions, the total number of times each alarm or shutdown has occurred, and the date and time the latest of these shutdown and fault conditions occurred.
 - 22. DC control Power Monitoring: The control system shall continuously monitor DC power supply to the control, and annunciate low or high voltage conditions. It shall also provide an alarm indicating imminent failure of the battery bank based on degraded voltage recover on loading (engine cranking).
- F. Control Heater: Generator sets that are installed in outdoor enclosures, or are in tropical or coastal environments shall be provided with control heaters for anti-condensation protection.
- G. Common Remote Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel.
1. Overcrank shutdown.
 2. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
 3. Control switch not in auto position.
 4. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
 5. Battery low-voltage alarm.
- H. Remote Alarm Annunciator: Comply with NFPA 110. An LED labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition.
- I. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

2.6 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- A. Generator Overcurrent Protection: The generator set shall be provided with a UL Listed/CSA Certified protective device that is coordinated with the alternator provided to prevent damage to the generator set on any possible overload or overcurrent condition

external to the machine. The protective device shall be listed as a utility grade protective device under UL category NRGU. The control system shall be subject to UL follow-up service at the manufacturing location to verify that the protective system is fully operational as manufactured. Protector shall perform the following functions:

1. Initiates a generator kW overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is integrated with other generator-set malfunction alarms.
 2. Under single phase or multiple phase fault conditions, or on overload conditions, indicates an alarm conditions when the current flow is in excess of 110% of rated current for more than 10 seconds.
 3. Under single phase or multiple phase fault conditions, operates to switch off alternator excitation at the appropriate time to prevent damage to the alternator.
 4. The operator panel shall indicate the nature of the fault condition as either a short circuit or an overload.
 5. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated voltage to avoid overshoot greater than 120% of nominal voltage.
 6. The protective system provided shall not include an instantaneous trip function.
- B. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground-fault. Integrate ground-fault alarm indication with other generator-set alarm indications.

2.7 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H
- D. Temperature Rise: 80 / Class B environment.
- E. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, over speed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- F. Permanent Magnet Generator (PMG) shall provide excitation power for optimum motor starting and short circuit performance.
- G. Enclosure: Drip-proof.
- H. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified. The voltage regulation system shall be microprocessor-controlled, 3-phase true RMS sensing, full wave rectified, and provide a pulse-width modulated signal to the exciter. No exceptions or deviations to these requirements will be permitted.
- I. The alternator shall be provided with anti-condensation heater(s) in all applications where the generator set is provided in an outdoor enclosure, or when the generator set is installed in a coastal or tropical environment.
- J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding. Alternators operating at voltage higher than 690VAC shall be provided with form-wound stator coils.
- K. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent maximum, based on the rating of the engine generator set.

2.8 OUTDOOR GENERATOR-SET ENCLOSURE

- A. Description: Weather Steel housing. Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Instruments, control, and battery system shall be mounted within enclosure.
- B. Construction:
 1. Louvers: Equipped with bird screen to permit air circulation when engine is not running while excluding birds and rodents.
 2. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions. Restraint/Hold back hardware to prevent door to keep door open at 180 degrees during maintenance. Rain lips over all doors.

- 3. Exhaust System:
 - a. Muffler Location: Within enclosure.
- 4. Hardware: All hardware and hinges shall be stainless steel.
- 5. Mounting Base: Suitable for mounting on sub-base fuel tank or housekeeping pad.
- 6. A weather protective enclosure shall be provided which allows the generator set to operate at full rated load with a static pressure drop equal to or less than 0.5 inches of water.
- C. Engine Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Housing shall provide ample airflow for engine generator operation at rated load in an ambient temperature of 50 deg C.
 - 1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge.
- D. Sound Performance: Reduce the sound level of the engine generator while operating at full rated load to a maximum of 87 dBA measured at any location 7 m from the engine generator in a free field environment.
- E. Site Provisions:
 - 1. Lifting: Complete assembly of engine generator, enclosure, and sub base fuel tank (when used) shall be designed to be lifted into place as a single unit, using spreader bars.

2.9 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

- A. Vibration Isolation: Generators installed on grade shall be provided with elastomeric isolator pads integral to the generator, unless the engine manufacturer requires use of spring isolation.
 - 1. IBC Compliance: Isolators complying with IBC requirements shall be specified in the equipment documentation, as well as the installation requirements for the unit.

2.10 FINISHES

- A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Powder-coated and baked over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer. Manufacturer's standard color or as directed on the drawings.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine-generator set using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
 - 1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters. In addition, the equipment engine, skid, cooling system, and alternator shall have been subjected to actual prototype tests to validate the capability of the design under the abnormal conditions noted in NFPA110. Calculations and testing on similar equipment which are allowed under NFPA110 are not sufficient to meet this requirement.
- B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine-generator set manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:
 - 1. Test engine generator set manufactured for this Project to demonstrate compatibility and functionality.
 - 2. Full load run.
 - 3. Maximum power.
 - 4. Voltage regulation.
 - 5. Steady-state governing.
 - 6. Single-step load pickup.
 - 7. Simulated safety shutdowns.
 - 8. Provide 14 days' advance notice of tests and opportunity for observation of tests by Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with packaged engine-generator manufacturers' written installation, application, and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- B. Equipment shall be installed by the contractor in accordance with final submittals and contract documents. Installation shall comply with applicable state and local codes as required by the authority having jurisdiction. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and instructions included in the listing or labeling of UL listed products.
- C. Installation of equipment shall include furnishing and installing all interconnecting wiring between all major equipment provided for the on-site power system. The contractor shall also perform interconnecting wiring between equipment sections (when required), under the supervision of the equipment supplier.
- D. Equipment shall be installed on concrete housekeeping pads. Equipment shall be permanently fastened to the pad in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and seismic requirements of the site.
- E. All equipment shall be physically inspected for damage. Scratches and other installation damage shall be repaired prior to final system testing. Equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned to remove all dirt and construction debris prior to initial operation and final testing of the system.
- F. On completion of the installation by the electrical contractor, the generator set supplier shall conduct a site evaluation to verify that the equipment is installed per manufacturer's recommended practice.

3.2 ON-SITE ACCEPTANCE TEST

- A. The complete installation shall be tested to verify compliance with the performance requirements of this specification following completion of all site work. Testing shall be conducted by representatives of the manufacturer, with required fuel supplied by Contractor. The Engineer shall be notified in advance and shall have the option to witness the tests. The generator set manufacturer shall provide a site test specification covering the entire system. Tests shall include:
- B. Prior to start of active testing, all field connections for wiring, power conductors, and bus bar connections shall be checked for proper tightening torque.
- C. Installation acceptance tests to be conducted on site shall include a "cold start" test, a two hour full load (resistive) test, and a one-step rated load pickup test in accordance with NFPA 110. Provide a resistive load bank and make temporary connections for full load test, if necessary.
- D. Perform a power failure test on the entire installed system. This test shall be conducted by opening the power supply from the utility service, and observing proper operation of the system for at least 2 hours. Coordinate timing and obtain approval for start of test with site personnel.

3.3 TRAINING

- A. The equipment supplier shall provide training for the facility operating personnel covering operation and maintenance of the equipment provided. The training program shall be not less than 4 hours in duration and the class size shall be limited to 5 persons. Training date shall be coordinated with the facility owner.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

3.5 SERVICE AND SUPPORT

- A. The generator set supplier shall maintain service parts inventory for the entire power system at a central location which is accessible to the service location 24 hours per day, 365 days per year. The inventory shall have a commercial value of \$3 million or more. The manufacturer of the generator set shall maintain a central parts inventory to support

- the supplier, covering all the major components of the power system, including engines, alternators, control systems, paralleling electronics, and power transfer equipment.
- B. The generator set shall be serviced by a local service organization that is trained and factory certified in generator set service. The supplier shall maintain an inventory of critical power system replacement parts in the local service location. Service vehicles shall be stocked with critical replacement parts. The service organization shall be on call 24 hours per day, 365 days per year. The service organization shall be physically located within 50 of the site.
 - C. The manufacturer shall maintain model and serial number records of each generator set provided for at least 20 years.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 263600 - AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:

1. Automatic transfer switches
2. Remote annunciation systems

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 1. Technical data on all major components of all transfer switches and other products described in this section. Data is required for the transfer switch mechanism, control system, cabinet, and protective devices specifically listed for use with each transfer switch. Include steady state and fault current ratings, weights, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 2. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, bypass/isolation switch, power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.
- B. Shop Drawings: Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, installed features and devices, and material lists for each switch specified.
 1. Dimensioned outline drawings of assembly, including elevations, sections, and details including minimal clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, installed features and devices and material lists for each switch specified.
 2. Internal electrical wiring and control drawings.
 3. Interconnection wiring diagrams, showing recommended conduit runs and point-to-point terminal connections to generator set.
 4. Installation and mounting instructions, including information for proper installation of equipment to meet seismic requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transfer switches accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
 1. Seismic certification, as required for site conditions. Seismic certifications shall be third-party certified, and based on testing. Certification based on calculations does not meet this requirement.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational both during and after the seismic event."
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements. Coordinate paragraph below with qualification requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" and as supplemented in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- D. Manufacturer and Supplier Qualification Data

1. The transfer switch manufacturer shall be certified to ISO 9001 International Quality Standard and shall have third party certification verifying quality assurance in design/development, production, installation, and service, in accordance with ISO 9001.
 2. The manufacturer of this equipment shall have produced similar equipment for a minimum period of 10 years. When requested, an acceptable list of installations with similar equipment shall be provided demonstrating compliance with this requirement.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
 2. List of all factory settings of relays, timers and protective devices; provide setting and calibration instructions where applicable.
- F. Warranty documents demonstrating compliance with the project's contract requirements.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Only approved bidders shall supply equipment provided under this contract.
 - B. Manufacturer Qualifications: The equipment supplier shall maintain a service center capable of providing training, parts, maintenance and emergency repairs to equipment, including transfer switch generator sets and remote monitoring equipment (if applicable) at the site within a response period of less than (eight hours or appropriate time period designated for Project) from time of notification.
 1. The transfer switch shall be serviced by technicians employed by, and specially trained and certified by, the generator set supplier and the supplier shall have a service organization that is factory-certified in both generator set and transfer switch service. The supplier shall maintain an inventory of critical replacement parts at the local service organization, and in service vehicles. The service organization shall be on call 24 hours per day, 365 days per year.
 2. Submit names, experience level, training certifications, and locations for technicians that will be responsible for servicing equipment at this site.
 3. The manufacturer shall maintain model and serial number records of each transfer switch provided for at least 20 years.
 - C. Source Limitations: All transfer switches are to be obtained through one source from a single manufacturer. The generator set manufacturer shall warrant transfer switches to provide a single source of responsibility for products provided.
 - D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked as suitable for use in emergency, legally required or optional standby use as appropriate for the connected load.
 - E. The automatic transfer switch installation and application shall conform to the requirements of the following codes and standards:
 1. Transfer switches and enclosures shall be UL 1008 listed and labeled as suitable for use in emergency, legally required, and optional standby applications.
 2. CSA 282, Emergency Electrical Power Supply for Buildings, and CSA C22.2, No. 14-M91 Industrial Control Equipment
 3. NFPA 70, National Electrical Code. Equipment shall be suitable for use in systems in compliance with Articles 700, 701 and 702.
 4. Comply with NEMA ICS 10-1993 AC Automatic Transfer Switches
 5. IBC 2006 – The transfer switch(es) shall be prototype-tested and third-party certified to comply with the requirements of IBC group III or IV, Category D/F. The equipment shall be shipped with the installation instructions necessary to attain installation compliance

- 6. IEEE 446 – Recommended Practice for Emergency and Standby Power Systems for Commercial and Industrial Applications
- 7. EN55011, Class B Radiated Emissions and Class B Conducted Emissions
- 8. IEC 1000-4-5 (EN 61000-4-5); AC Surge Immunity
- 9. IEC 1000-4-4 (EN 61000-4-4) Fast Transients Immunity
- 10. IEC 1000-4-2 (EN 61000-4-2) Electrostatic Discharge Immunity
- 11. IEC 1000-4-3 (EN 61000-4-3) Radiated Field Immunity
- 12. IEC 1000-4-6 Conducted Field Immunity
- 13. IEC 1000-4-11 Voltage Dip Immunity
- 14. IEEE 62.41, AC Voltage Surge Immunity
- 15. IEEE 62.45, AC Voltage Surge Testing
- F. Comply with NFPA 99 – Essential Electrical Systems for Healthcare Facilities
- G. Comply with NFPA 110 – Emergency and Standby Power Systems. The transfer switch shall meet all requirements for Level 1 systems, regardless of the actual circuit level.
- H. The manufacturer shall warrant the material and workmanship of the transfer switch equipment for a minimum of one (1) year from registered commissioning and start-up, or eighteen (18) months from date of shipment.
- I. The warranty shall be comprehensive. No deductibles shall be allowed for travel time, service hours, repair parts cost, and etc. during the minimum noted warranty period described above.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service:
 - 1. Notify (Architect/Construction Manager/Owner) no fewer than (insert appropriate number) days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without (Architect/Construction Manager/Owner's) written permission.
 - 3. Do not energize any new service or distribution equipment without notification and permission of the (Architect/Construction Manager/Owner).

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Size and location of concrete bases and anchor bolt inserts shall be coordinated. Concrete, reinforcement and formwork must meet the requirements specified in Division 03. See section "INSTALLATION" for additional information on installation
- B. If Project calls for bypass switch(es) mounted on a concrete base, the base must be designed to accommodate the requirements of the drawout mechanism (extension rails and/or wheeled carriage) of the bypass switch.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Cummins Power Generation
 - B. Equipment specifications for this Project are based on automatic transfer switches manufactured by Cummins Power Generation (Robby Severance, 405-820-6694). Switches manufactured by Russelectric or ASCO that meet the requirement of this specification are acceptable, if approved not less than two weeks before scheduled bid date. Proposals must include a line-by-line compliance statement based on this specification.
 - C. Transfer switches utilizing molded case circuit breakers do not meet the requirements of this specification and will not be accepted.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFER-SWITCH PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide transfer switches in the number and ratings that are shown on the drawings. 1200A, 4 Pole Switched Neutral, 277/480vac, Service Entrance with Ground Fault Protection, NEMA 3R
- B. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer.
- C. Fault-Current Closing and Withstand Ratings: UL 1008 WCR ratings must be specifically listed as meeting the requirements for use with protective devices at installation locations, under specified fault conditions. Withstand and closing ratings shall be based on use of the same set of contacts for the withstand test and the closing test.
- D. Solid-State Controls: All settings should be accurate to +/- 2% or better over an operating temperature range of - 40 to + 60 degrees C (- 40 to + 140 degrees F).
- E. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.41. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- F. Electrical Operation: Accomplished by a non-fused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric motor operator mechanism, mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions (except that mechanical interlock is not required for closed transition switches).
- G. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
 - 1. Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers, or insulated case circuit breaker components are not acceptable.
 - 2. Transfer switches shall be double-throw and mechanically held in the Source 1 and Source 2 positions.
 - 3. Main switch contacts shall be high pressure silver alloy. Contact assemblies shall have arc chutes for positive arc extinguishing. Arc chutes shall have insulating covers to prevent inter-phase flashover.
 - 4. Contacts shall be operated by a high-speed electrical mechanism that causes contacts to open or close within three electrical cycles from signal.
 - 5. The transfer switch operation shall include the ability to switch to an open position (both sources disconnected) for the purpose of load shedding from the generator set.
 - 6. The power transfer mechanism shall include provisions for manual operation under load with the enclosure door closed. Manual operation may be electromechanical or mechanical, but must be coordinated with control function.
 - 7. Transfer switch shall be provided with flame retardant transparent covers to allow viewing of switch contact operation but prevent direct contact with components that could be operating at line voltage levels.
 - 8. The transfer switch shall include the mechanical and control provisions necessary to allow the device to be field-configured for operating speed. Transfer switch operation with motor loads shall be as is recommended in NEMA MG1.
 - a. Phase angle monitoring/timing equipment is not an acceptable substitute for this functionality
 - 9. Transfer switches designated on the drawings as "4-pole" shall be provided with a switched neutral pole switched which is switched simultaneously with phase poles.
- H. Control: Transfer switch control shall be capable of communicating with the genset control, other switches and remote programming devices over a high-speed network interface.
- I. Factory wiring: Transfer switch internal wiring shall be composed of pre-manufactured harnesses that are permanently marked for source and destination. Harnesses shall be connected to the control system by means of locking disconnect plug(s), to allow the control

- system to be easily disconnected and serviced without disconnecting power from the transfer switch mechanism
- J. Terminals: Terminals shall be pressure type and appropriate for all field wiring. Control wiring shall be equipped with suitable lugs, for connection to terminal strips.
- K. Enclosures: All enclosures shall be third-party certified for compliance to NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated:
1. The enclosure shall provide wire bend space in compliance to the latest version of NFPA70, regardless of the direction from which the conduit enters the enclosure.
 2. Exterior cabinet doors shall provide complete protection for the system's internal components. Doors must have permanently mounted key-type latches. Bolted covers or doors are not acceptable.
 3. Transfer switches shall be provided in enclosures that are third party certified for their intended environment per NEMA requirements.
 - a. Transfer switches that are installed outdoors or in any other uncontrolled environment shall be supplied with NEMA Type 4 or 4X (stainless steel) enclosures (IEC IP65).

2.3 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Comply with requirements for Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- B. Indicated current ratings:
 1. Refer to the Project drawings for specifications on the sizes and types of transfer switch equipment, withstand and closing ratings, number of poles, voltage and ampere ratings, enclosure type, and accessories.
 2. Main contacts shall be rated for 600 VAC minimum.
 3. Transfer switches shall be rated to carry 100% of rated current continuously in the enclosure supplied, in ambient temperatures of -40 to +60 degrees C (-40 to +140 degrees F), relative humidity up to 95% (non-condensing), and altitudes up to 10,000 feet (3000 meters).
- C. Manual Switch Operation: The power transfer mechanism shall include provisions for manual operation under load with the enclosure door closed. Manual operation may be electromechanical or mechanical, but must be coordinated with control function
- D. Control: Transfer switch control shall be provided with necessary equipment and software to communicate with the genset control, other transfer switches, remote annunciation equipment, and other devices over a high speed control network.
- E. Neutral Switching: Transfer switches designated on the drawings as 4-pole shall be provided with a switched neutral pole. The neutral pole shall be of the same construction and have the same ratings as the phase poles. All poles shall be switched simultaneously using a common crossbar. Substitute equipment using overlapping neutral contacts is not acceptable.
- F. Automatic Transfer Switch Control Features
 1. The transfer switch control system shall be configurable in the field for any operating voltage level up to 600 VAC. Voltage sensing shall be monitored based on the normal voltage at the site. Systems that utilize voltage monitoring based on standard voltage conditions that are not field configurable are not acceptable.
 2. All transfer switch sensing shall be configurable from an operator panel or from a Windows XP or later PC-based service tool. Designs utilizing DIP switches or other electromechanical devices are not acceptable.
 3. The transfer switch shall provide a relay contact signal prior to transfer or re-transfer. The time period before and after transfer shall be adjustable in a range of 0 to 60 seconds.

4. The control system shall be designed and prototype tested for operation in ambient temperatures from - 40 degrees C to + 60 degrees C (- 40 to +140 degrees F). It shall be designed and tested to comply with the requirements of the noted voltage and RFI/EMI standards.
 5. The control shall have optically isolated logic inputs, high isolation transformers for AC inputs and relays on all outputs, to provide optimum protection from line voltage surges, RFI and EMI.
- G. Transfer Switch Control Panel: The transfer switch shall have a microprocessor-based control with a sealed membrane panel incorporating pushbuttons for operator-controlled functions, and LED lamps for system status indicators. The panel shall also include an alphanumeric display for detailed system information. Panel display and indicating lamps shall include permanent labels.
1. The indicator panel LEDs shall display:
 - a. Which source the load is connected to (Source 1 or Source 2)
 - b. Which source or sources are available
 - c. When switch is not set for automatic operation, the control is disabled or the bypass switch is in use
 - d. When the switch is in test/exercise mode
 2. The indicator shall have pushbuttons that allow the operator to activate the following functions:
 - a. Activate pre-programmed test sequence
 - b. Override programmed delays, and immediately go to the next operation
 - c. Reset the control by clearing any faults
 - d. Test all of the LEDs by lighting them simultaneously
 3. The alphanumeric digital display shall be vacuum fluorescent-type, clearly visible in both bright sunlight and no-light conditions over an angle of 120 degrees, and shall display the following:
 - a. AC voltage for all phases, normal and emergency
 - b. Source status: connected or not connected.
 - c. Load data, including voltage, AC current, frequency, KW, KVA, and power factor.
 4. The display panel shall be password-protected, and allow the operator to view and make adjustments:
 - a. Set nominal voltage and frequency for the transfer switch
 - b. Adjust voltage and frequency sensor operation set points
 - c. Set up time clock functions
 - d. Set up load sequence functions
 - e. Enable or disable control functions including program transition
 - f. View real-time clock data, operation log (hours connected, times transferred, failures) and service history
- H. Control Functions: Functions managed by the control shall include:
1. Software adjustable time delays:
 - a. Engine start (prevents nuisance genset starts in the event of momentary power fluctuation): 0 to 120 seconds (default 3 sec)
 - b. Transfer normal to emergency (allows genset to stabilize before load is transferred): 0 to 120 seconds (default 3 sec)
 - c. Re-transfer emergency to normal (allows utility to stabilize before load is transferred from genset): 0 to 30 minutes (default 3 sec)
 - d. Engine cooldown: 0 to 30 minutes (default 10 min)
 - e. Programmed transition: 0 to 60 seconds (default 3 sec)

2. Undervoltage sensing: three-phase normal, three-phase emergency source.
 - a. Pickup: 85 to 98% of nominal voltage (default 90%)
 - b. Dropout: 75 to 98% of nominal voltage (default 90%)
 - c. Dropout time delay: 0.1 to 1.0 seconds (default 0.5 sec)
 - d. Accurate to within +/- 2% of nominal voltage
 3. Over-voltage sensing: three-phase normal, three-phase emergency source.
 - a. Pickup: 95 to 99% of dropout setting (default 95%)
 - b. Dropout: 105 to 135% of nominal voltage (default 110%)
 - c. Dropout time delay: 0.5 to 120 seconds (default 3 sec)
 - d. Accurate to within +/- 2% of nominal voltage
 4. Over/under frequency sensing:
 - a. Pickup: +/- 5 to +/-20% of nominal frequency (default 10%)
 - b. Dropout: +/-1% beyond pickup (default 1%)
 - c. Dropout time delay: 0.1 to 15.0 seconds (default 5 sec)
 - d. Accurate to within +/- 0.05 Hz
 5. Voltage imbalance sensing:
 - a. Dropout: 2 to 10% (default 4%)
 - b. Pickup: 90% of dropout
 - c. Time delay: 2.0 to 20 seconds (default 5 sec)
 6. Phase rotation sensing:
 - a. Time delay: 100 msec
 7. Loss of single-phase detection:
- I. Control features shall include:
1. Programmable genset exerciser: A field-programmable control shall periodically start and run the generator with or without transferring the load for a preset time period, then re-transfer and shut down the generator after a preset cool-down period.
 2. In event of a loss of power to the control, all control settings, real-time clock setting and the engine start-time delay setting will be retained.
 3. The system continuously logs information including the number of hours each source has been connected to the load, the number of times transferred, and the total number of times each source has failed. An event recorder stores information, including time and date-stamp, for up to 50 events.
- J. Control Interface
1. Provide one set Form C auxiliary contacts on both sides, operated by transfer switch position, rated 10 amps 250 VAC.
 2. The transfer switch shall be provided with a network communication card, and configured to allow network-based communication with the transfer switch and other network system components, including the generator set(s) provided for the Project.
 3. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, 1-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10A at 240 VAC.
- K. Engine Starting Contacts
1. One isolated and normally closed pair of contacts rated 10A at 32 VDC minimum.
- 2.4 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR SYSTEM**
- A. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches. Annunciation shall include the following:
1. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
 2. Switch position.
 3. Switch in test mode.

- 4. Failure of communication link.
- B. Announcer Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.
 - 1. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
 - 2. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
 - 3. Switch in test mode.
 - 4. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.
- C. Malfunction of announciator or communication link shall not affect functions of automatic transfer switch. In the event of failure of communication link, automatic transfer switch automatically reverts to stand-alone, self-contained operation.
- D. Automatic transfer-switch sensing, controlling, or operating function shall not depend on remote panel for proper operation. The remote annunciation system shall not prevent transfer to the alternate source when the primary power source fails, nor prevent return to the primary source if the alternate source fails

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
 - 1. Floor-mounted transfer switches (except drawout switches supported by wheeled carriages, which must be rolled out at floor level) shall be mounted on concrete bases complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Concrete Bases: 4 inches (100 mm) high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 4 inches (100 mm) in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switch, unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic support. Construct concrete bases according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- C. Announcer Panel Mounting: Flush in wall, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Identify components according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- F. Provide certification of IBC Seismic compliance

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to control and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Field control connections shall be made on a common terminal block that is clearly and permanently labeled.
- C. Transfer switch shall be provided with AL/CU mechanical lugs sized to accept the full output rating of the switch. Lugs shall be suitable for the number and size of conductors shown on the drawings.
- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prior to shipping, factory shall test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment to ensure proper operation.

- B. Factory shall check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements.
- C. Factory shall perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: The supplier of the transfer switch(es) and associated equipment shall inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and report results in writing.
- B. Manufacturer's representative shall perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- C. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, installer shall test for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Perform recommended installation tests as recommended in manufacturer's installation and service manuals.
 - 2. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch.
 - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Verify time-delay settings.
 - c. Verify that the transfer switch is accurately metering AC voltage and current.
 - d. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
 - e. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
- D. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - 1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. After generator set installation, the generator and transfer switch supplier shall conduct a complete operation, basic maintenance, and emergency service seminar covering generator set and transfer switch equipment, for up to 10 people employed by the Owner.
 - 1. The seminar shall include instruction on operation of the transfer equipment, normal testing and exercise, adjustments to the control system, use of the PC based service and maintenance tools provided under this contract, and emergency operation procedures.
 - 2. The class duration shall be at least 8 hours in length, and include practical operation with the installed equipment.

3.6 SERVICE AND SUPPORT

- A. The manufacturer shall supply the Service Provider with a complete set of the service and maintenance software required to support the product. The software shall be provided at a training class attended by the user, to qualify the user in proper use of the software. The software shall have the following features and capabilities:
 - 1. The software shall allow adjustment of all functions described herein, adjustment of operating levels of all protective functions, and programming of all optional functions in

- the controller. Adjustments shall be possible over modem from a facility that is remote from the generator set.
2. The software shall be capable of storing and displaying data for any function monitored by the generator set control. This data shall be available in common file formats, and on graphical "strip chart" displays.
 3. The software shall automatically record all control operations and adjustments performed by any operator or software user, for tracking of changes to the control.
 4. The software shall display all warning, shutdown, and status changes programmed into transfer switch controller. For each event, the control shall provide information on the nature of the event, when it last occurred, and how many times it has occurred.

SECTION 26 5119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes info of various types of LED luminaires.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 26 0923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
 - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
 - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
 - 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.

- a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture with standard factory-applied finish.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with custom factory-applied finishes.
- 1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories involving color and finish selection.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.
- 1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.
- F. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
- 1. Luminaires.
 - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
 - 4. Structural members to which equipment and or luminaires will be attached.
 - 5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
 - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Other luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
7. Moldings.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
- D. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- F. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- G. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Lamps: Ten for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 2. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 3. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.

2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE 7.
- B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Standards:
 1. ENERGY STAR certified.
 2. California Title 24 compliant.
 3. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
 4. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
 5. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
 6. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
 7. User Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
- C. CRI of minimum of 80 <Insert number>. CCT as specified on drawings.

- D. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L90.
- E. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- F. Internal driver.
- G. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.
 - 1. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Housings:
 - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
 - 2. Powder-coat finish.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.4 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 1. Secured to outlet box.

2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

G. Ceiling-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Ceiling mount with two 5/32-inch- diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 120 inches in length.
2. Ceiling mount with pendant mount
3. Ceiling mount with hook mount.

H. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

I. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

J. Comply with requirements in Section 26 0519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 0553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 26 0943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."
- B. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 26 0943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
 - 1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
 - 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 26 5119

SECTION 27 0501
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section describes the general telecommunications infrastructure requirements of these specifications and applies to all phases of the work specified, indicated on the drawings, or required to provide for the complete installation of telecommunications infrastructure for this project.

1.02 ALTERNATES

- A. Alternates, if required, shall be as described in the "Alternates" section of this Project Manual, as described on the proposal form, or as indicated on the drawings.

1.03 QUESTIONS OF INTERPRETATION DURING BIDDING PHASE

- A. If questions arise during the bidding process regarding the meaning of any portion of the contract documents, the prospective bidder shall submit the questions to the Architect/Engineer for clarification.
- B. Any definitive interpretation or clarification of the contract documents will be published by addenda, properly issued to each person holding documents, prior to the bid date.
- C. Verbal interpretation or explanation not issued in the form of an addendum shall not be considered part of the bidding documents.
- D. When submitting questions for clarification, adequate time for issuance and delivery of addenda must be allowed.
- E. The Architect/Engineer shall be the sole judge regarding interpretations of conflicts within contract documents.

1.04 CONTRACT DOCUMENT DISCREPANCIES

- A. If any ambiguities should appear in the contract documents, request clarification from the Architect/Engineer before proceeding with the work.
- B. If the Contractor fails to make such request, no excuse will thereafter be entertained for failure to carry out the work in a manner satisfactory to the Architect/Engineer.
- C. Should a conflict occur within the contract documents, the Contractor is deemed to have estimated the more expensive way of doing the work unless a written clarification from the Architect/Engineer was requested and obtained before submission of proposed methods or materials.
- D. The Architect/Engineer shall be the sole judge regarding interpretations of conflicts within contract documents.

1.05 DEFINITIONS

- A. Equipment Room (ER): An environmentally controlled centralized space for telecommunications equipment that usually houses a main or intermediate cross-connect.
- B. Inside Plant Cable (ISP): That part of the Information Transport System running within a building. This definition does apply to Inside Cable Plant elements passing through any element of the outside plant pathway. Inside plant includes the work area outlet assembly (WAO), backbone and horizontal cabling, network racks, network equipment and all termination hardware not terminating Outside Plant (OSP) cables.
- C. Outside Plant Cable (OSP): That part of the Information Transport System running between buildings, from a building to a definable exterior point, between definable exterior points or from another outside source to the building or exterior definable point. It includes termination hardware, transition splices and any other device into which the cable attaches. The Outside Plant includes underground and overhead cabling.

- D. Pathways: A cable distribution system consisting of raceways, cable trays, racks, and ladders; conduits; distribution rings and mechanical cable supporting devices.
- E. Telecommunications Cables: Term includes horizontal and backbone copper, fiber optic, and coaxial cabling; copper and optical outside plant cables; copper audio/visual (AV) cables; CATV cables, CCTV cables; building environmental, automation, and security cabling systems.
- F. Work Area Outlet (WAO): A connecting device for termination of horizontal media.
- G. Telecommunications Spaces: Rooms and areas where telecommunications cabling systems are terminated and telecommunications equipment is installed.
- H. Telecommunications Enclosure (TE): A case or housing for telecommunications equipment, cable terminations and cross-connect cabling.
- I. Telecommunications Room (TR): An enclosed architectural space for housing telecommunications equipment, cable termination and cross-connect cabling.

1.06 SYMBOLS

- A. Items of equipment and materials are indicated on the drawings in accordance with the symbols on the plans.

1.07 ABBREVIATIONS

- A. The following abbreviations apply throughout the contract documents:
 1. ACR: Attenuation-to-Crosstalk Ratio
 2. ADA: Americans with Disabilities Act
 3. AFF: Above finished floor
 4. ANSI: American National Standards Institute
 5. ASME: American Society of Mechanical Engineers
 6. ASTM Specification: Standard specifications of the American Society for Testing Materials
 7. AWG: American wire gauge
 8. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International
 9. CATV: Community Antenna Television (cable television)
 10. CCTV: Closed Circuit Television (security)
 11. CSA: Canadian Standards Association
 12. EF: Entrance Facility
 13. ELFEXT: Equal level far-end crosstalk
 14. EMC: Electromagnetic Compatibility
 15. EMI: Electromagnetic interference
 16. ER: Equipment Room
 17. ETL: Electrical Testing Laboratories
 18. FCC: Federal Communications Commission
 19. FDDI: Fiber distribution data interface
 20. FEXT: Far-end-crosstalk
 21. FM or Factory Mutual: Factory Mutual Engineering Corporation
 22. FO: Fiber optic
 23. GND: Ground
 24. HH: Handhole
 25. Hz: Hertz
 26. IC: Intermediate cross-connect
 27. IDC: Insulation displacement connector
 28. IDF: Intermediate Distribution Frame
 29. ISP: Inside Plant Cable System
 30. IEEE: Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
 31. LAN: Local area network
 32. Mbps: Megabits per second
 33. MC: Main Cross-Connect
 34. MDF: Main Distribution Frame

35. MH: Manhole
36. MM: Multimode
37. NEC: National Electrical Code, latest edition
38. NEMA: National Electrical Manufacturers Association
39. NFPA: National Fire Protection Association
40. OFE: Owner furnished equipment
41. OFL: Overfilled launch condition
42. OSHA: Occupational Safety and Health Administration
43. OSP: Outside Plant Cable System
44. Pr: Pair
45. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride
46. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer
47. RFI: Radio Frequency Interference
48. SCS: Structured cabling system
49. ScTP: Screened twisted pair
50. SM: Single mode
51. STP: Shielded twisted pair
52. TBB: Telecommunications bonding backbone
53. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar
54. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar
55. TR: Telecommunications Room
56. UL or Underwriters: Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
57. UPS: Uninterruptible Power Supply
58. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair
59. WAO: Work Area Outlet

1.08 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. The work shall be performed by competent craftsmen skilled in the trade involved and shall be done in a manner consistent with normal industry standards. All work shall conform to all applicable sections of currently adopted editions of the codes and standards listed below or the codes, standards, and specifications published by the organizations listed below:
 1. Safety and Health Regulations for Construction.
 2. Occupational Safety and Health Standards (OSHA), National Consensus Standards and Established Federal Standards.
 3. National Electrical Code (NEC), latest edition.
 4. American National Standards Institute (ANSI).
 5. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA).
 6. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE).
 7. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
 8. Insulated Power Cable Engineers Association (IPCEA).
 9. American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM).
 10. Life Safety Code (NFPA 101).
 11. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., Standards (UL).
 12. Independent Testing Laboratories (ITL).
 13. Electrical Testing Laboratories (ETL).
 14. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC).
 15. Factory Mutual Engineering Corporation or other recognized national laboratories.
 16. Uniform Building Code (UBC).
 17. Building Officials and Code Administrators International, Inc. (BOCA).
 18. Building Industry Consulting Service International (BICSI).
 19. Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA).
 20. State and Local Codes.
- B. Where there is a conflict between the code or referenced standards and the contract documents, the code or standard shall have precedence only when it is more stringent than the

contract documents. Items that are allowed by the code but are less stringent than those specified shall not be substituted.

1.09 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURERS

- A. Options in selecting materials and equipment are limited by requirements of the contract documents and governing regulations. They are not controlled by industry traditions or procedures experienced on previous construction projects.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be provided in accordance with the following:
 - 1. Primary Design Products: Primary design products are those products around which the project was designed in terms of capacity, performance, physical size and quality.
 - a. Primary design products are indicated by use of a single manufacturer's name, model number or similar data on drawings or schedules or within the specifications.
 - b. Provide primary design products unless substitutions are made in accordance with the following paragraphs.
 - 2. Acceptable Equivalent Substitutions: Acceptable equivalent substitutions are products of manufacturers other than those listed for the primary design products. Equivalent acceptable substitutions shall meet each of the following requirements:
 - a. The product shall be manufactured by one of the acceptable manufacturers listed in the Project Manual, drawings, or addenda.
 - b. The product shall meet or exceed the requirements of the contract documents in terms of quality, performance, suitability, appearance, and physical characteristics.
 - c. The Contractor providing the substitution shall bear the total cost of changes due to substitutions. These costs may include additional compensation to the Architect/Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of work by the Owner or other Contractors, and similar considerations.
 - d. Performance Requirements: Where the contract documents list performance requirements or describe a product or assembly generically, provide products that comply with the specific requirements indicated and that are recommended by the manufacturer for the respective application.
 - e. Compliance with Standards, Codes and Regulations: Where the specifications require only compliance with an imposed standard, code or regulation, the Contractor has the option of selecting a product that complies with specification requirements, including the standards, codes and regulations.
 - 3. Proposed substitutions will be judged on the basis of quality, performance, appearance and on the governing space limitations. The reputation of the manufacturer, delivery time requirements, and the availability of repair or replacement parts may also be considered.
 - 4. The Architect/Engineer shall be the sole and final judge as to the suitability of substitution items.

1.10 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Requirements:
 - 1. Other section in the Project Manual shall be adhered to if more stringent than the following paragraphs.
 - 2. When required by other sections of this Project Manual, submit shop drawings, product data or samples to the Architect/Engineer for review.
 - 3. Submittals deemed unnecessary by the Architect/Engineer shall be returned indicating "No Action Taken".
 - 4. A completed copy of the transmittal form included with the Project Manual shall accompany each submittal.
 - 5. Submittals shall be numbered consecutively by specification section (i.e. 27 0501-01, 27 0501-02).
 - 6. Unless otherwise noted, submit one copy electronically of shop drawings and product data for review. Review comments will be returned electronically. A hard copy of the electronic submittal will be returned if requested.
 - 7. Each submittal shall clearly indicate proposed items, capacities, characteristics and details in conformance with contract documents. Equipment items shall be marked with the same

- item number as used on drawings or schedules. Capacities, dimensions and special features required shall be certified by the manufacturer.
8. Submittals shall indicate manufacturer's delivery time for the item after review by the Architect/Engineer.
 9. When required by other sections of this Project Manual, the Contractor shall submit a Specification Compliance Review consisting of a paragraph-by-paragraph review of the specifications and addenda with the following marked for each paragraph. Markings may be made in the margins of the original specification or addenda. Unless a deviation or exception is specifically noted in the Specification Compliance Review, it is assumed that the equipment, product, or material is in complete compliance with the contract documents. Submit Specification Compliance Review with shop drawings and product data.
 - a. "A": Reviewed, No Exceptions Taken.
 - b. "B": Reviewed, Exceptions Taken as Noted.
 - c. "C": Revise and Resubmit.
 - d. "D": Rejected.
 - e. "E": No Action Taken.
 10. The Architect/Engineer shall review or take other appropriate action upon the Contractor's submittals such as shop drawings, product data and samples, but only to determine conformance with the design concept of the work and the information given in the contract documents.
 11. Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for any deviation from the requirements of the contract documents by the Architect/Engineer's review of shop drawings, product data or samples.
 12. Contractor shall not be relieved from responsibility for errors or omissions in the shop drawings, product data or samples by the Architect/Engineer's review of those drawings.
 13. No portion of the work requiring submission of a shop drawing, product data or sample shall be commenced until the submittal has been reviewed by the Architect/Engineer. Such portions of the work shall be in accordance with reviewed submittals.
 14. The successful Contractor/Supplier may, at their option, obtain DXF or AutoCad DWG electronic drawing files on CD-ROM for use in preparation of shop drawings.
 - a. This information is available from Alvine Engineering or IP Design Group upon written request.
 - b. The use of these drawing files is intended solely for the preparation of drawings as required by these contract documents.
 - c. Any other use is strictly prohibited by copyright laws.
 - d. The user of these electronic drawing files assumes full responsibility for their accuracy and scale.
- B. Bid Submittals
1. Qualification Data: For Installer .
 - a. A resumes of qualification shall be submitted with the Contractor's proposal indicating the following:
 - 1) A list of five recently completed projects of similar type and size with contact names and telephone numbers for each.
 - 2) Installer Qualifications.
 - 3) RCDD Certificate(s).
 - 4) Letter of Good Standing from solution manufacturer.
- C. Pre-Construction Submittals
1. Shop Drawings
 - a. Shop drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules and other data specifically prepared for this project by the Contractor, Manufacturer, Supplier, or Distributor to illustrate some portion of the work. Shop Drawings shall also detail fabrication and installation for metal and wood supports and anchorage for mechanical materials and equipment.

- b. Shop drawings shall be drawn to accurate scale and of adequate size to illustrate required details.
 - c. Maximum sheet size shall be 30 inches by 42 inches. For each hard copy shop drawing sheet larger than 11 inches by 17 inches, submit one drawing on reproducible media.
 - d. The Architect/Engineer's action shall be indicated on the reproducible drawing and the drawing shall be returned to the Contractor.
2. Product Data
- a. Product data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instruction brochures, diagrams and other information furnished by the Contractor, Manufacturer, Supplier, or Distributor to illustrate a material, product or system for some portion of the work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals Submittal:
- 1. Prepare three (3) operation and maintenance manuals for the equipment furnished. Manuals shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer for review and distribution to the Owner not less than 30 days prior to substantial completion of the project. Manuals not meeting the following requirements may be rejected by the Architect/Engineer.
 - 2. Each manual shall be assembled in a three-ring binder with hard cover and plastic finish. Binders shall not exceed a 3-inch thickness. Where more than one binder is required, the manuals shall be separated into a logical grouping, i.e., "Telecommunications", "Audiovisual", "Maintenance", "Operation", "Parts", "Shop Drawings", etc. Each binder shall have the following information clearly printed on its front cover:
 - a. Project name and address.
 - b. Portion of the work covered by each volume (if more than one volume in the set). Where more than one volume is required, label each volume as "Volume _____ of _____".
 - c. Name, address and telephone number of Contractor and Sub-Contractors including night or emergency number.
 - 3. Manual shall include, but shall not be limited to, the following:
 - a. A Complete Index. Contractor may submit the index to the Architect/Engineer for review prior to submittal of complete manuals if desired.
 - b. Names, Addresses and Telephone Numbers. This list shall include the manufacturer and local representative who stocks or furnishes repair parts for all items of equipment and shall be typed on a single page in front of the binder.
 - c. Startup, Operation and Shutdown Procedures. Provide a written description of procedures for startup, operation and shutdown of each electrical item or system. This description shall include switches to operate, buttons to push, etc., in proper sequence, and the location of switches, starters, and pushbuttons. Description shall include item references or labels used in the contract documents unless otherwise instructed in advance by the Owner.
 - d. Equipment Accessory Schedule. Upon completion of the work, furnish the Owner with a complete equipment accessory schedule listing each piece of equipment and the related size, type, number required and the manufacturer of renewable items.
 - e. Manufacturer's Operation and Maintenance Manuals and Parts Lists.
 - f. Emergency Procedures. Provide a written description of emergency operating procedures or a list of service organizations (including addresses and telephone numbers) capable of rendering emergency services to the various parts of the system.
 - g. One copy of shop drawings and product data, clearly marked for each item furnished using the designation label specified or indicated on Drawings.
 - h. Manufacturers' warranty information.
 - i. Normal Maintenance Schedule. Include a listing of work to be performed at various time intervals; i.e., 30, 90, 180 days and yearly.
- E. Post-Construction Submittals
- 1. Field quality-control test reports in PDF format.

2. As-built drawings:
 - a. Maintain current documents at the construction site. Submit with Operations and Maintenance Manuals.
 - b. As-built drawings shall include the following:
 - 1) As-built shop drawings
 - 2) Station outlet numbers.
 - 3) Routing of cables from equipment cabinets to devices.
 - 4) Revisions to construction documents (addenda and field changes.)
 - 5) Floor plans with all final device and equipment cabinet locations and labeling.
3. Cable labeling schedules.
4. When required by specification sections, submit manufacturer's printed instructions for delivery, storage, assembly, installation, adjusting, and finishing, in quantities specified for shop drawings and equipment brochures.

1.11 OPERATING TRAINING

- A. Complete operating instructions for each system and item of equipment shall be provided to the Owner's designated personnel.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Manuals must be reviewed and accepted by the Architect/Engineer and provided to the Owner prior to operating training.
- C. Training shall be scheduled at the convenience of the Owner. A minimum of 4 hours of training shall be provided.
- D. Training shall include instructions on the following:
 1. Startup and shutdown procedures
 2. Periodic maintenance
 3. Emergency operation
 4. Safety
 5. Infrastructure management such as patching process.
 6. Infrastructure identification such as patch panel labels.
 7. Configuration and setup. Additional training identified in other sections.
 8. Additional training identified in other sections.
- E. In addition to the instructions required above, wherever possible perform the operations being described in order to fully illustrate system operation.
- F. At the completion of training, the Contractor shall turn over to the Owner all required keys and special tools for installed equipment. Each key or tool shall be labeled with its use.
- G. Train Owners maintenance personnel in cable-plant management operations including, but not limited to, rerouting signals in failed cables.

1.12 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide one of the following warranties:
 1. Panduit Certification Plus 20-year warranty.
 2. Ortronics 25-year International Clarity Extended Product and Applications Assurance warranty.
 3. N-Compass Lifetime (Ortronics/Superior Essex) warranty.
 4. CommScope Uniprise warranty.
 5. Belden CDT 25-year warranty.
 6. Leviton Certified Cabling System lifetime warranty.
- B. The Contractor shall prepare and submit all required manufacturers performance warranty paperwork to the manufacturer and shall deliver all complete and final warranty information to the owner prior to project close-out.
- C. The Contractor shall have an existing quality assurance and quality control plan for the installation. Upon request the Contractor shall submit a quality assurance and control plan for the project.

- D. The Contractor shall have extensive experience (5+ years) with the specified manufacturers, hardware and cabling.
- E. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. An experienced installer employee supervising the project who is a Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD) certified by the Building Industry Consulting Service International (BICSI) and who has a minimum of five years experience installing and certifying similar systems.
 - 2. Only installers trained and certified by the manufacturer shall be allowed to install, terminate and test the products. Others may pull/place cable and product only if under the direct supervision of the installer certified and trained by the manufacturer of the product.
 - 3. Installer shall be experienced in all aspects of this work. Installer shall have the manufacturer's recommended number of employees on the job site who have completed the required training courses for the above-mentioned warranties.
 - 4. Installer shall be certified by the system manufacturer for the project location to install and warranty product specified herein.
- F. The Contractor must provide proof of registrations and certifications along with the list of planned installers prior to start of the work.

1.13 WARRANTIES

- A. The Contractor shall warrant all materials, workmanship, and equipment against defects for a period of one year after the date of substantial completion. Certain equipment shall be warranted beginning at the time of final acceptance or for longer periods of time as specified in those sections of the Project Manual. The Contractor shall repair or replace, at no additional cost to the Owner, any item which may become defective within the warranty period. Any manufacturers warranties concerning any item installed will run to the benefit of the Owner. The Contractor agrees not to void or impair, or to allow Sub-Contractors to void or impair, any warranties regarding products or items installed as part of this project. The repair of faulty workmanship shall be considered to be included in the contract.

1.14 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. The Contractors performance of work shall comply with applicable federal, state and local laws, rules and regulations. The Contractor shall give required notices, shall procure necessary governmental licenses, permits and inspections and shall pay without burden to the owner all fees and charges in connection therewith unless specifically provided otherwise. In the event of violation, the contractor shall pay all fines and penalties including attorney's fees and other defense costs and expenses in connection therewith.
- B. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) registration or approval for any equipment requiring such approval shall be appropriately identified and obtained by the Contractor.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Design, manufacture, test and install communications cabling networks per manufacturers' requirements, state codes, local codes, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and particularly the most recent edition of the following standards:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568-B.1 Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 1 General Requirements.
 - 2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568-B.2 Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 2 Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling Components.
 - 3. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568-B.3 Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard.
 - 4. Comply with ANSI/TIA 569-A Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces.
 - 5. Comply with ANSI/TIA 606 The Administration standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings.
 - 6. Comply with ANSI/TIA 607 Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications.

7. Comply with ANSI/TIA 526-7 Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant.
 8. Comply with ANSI/TIA 526-14A Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant.
 9. Comply with ANSI/TIA-758(A) Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Standard.
 10. TIA TSB 67 Transmission Performance Specifications for Field Testing of Twisted-Pair Cabling Systems.
- E. Install cabling in accordance with the most recent addition of BICSI publications:
1. BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM)
 2. BICSI Customer-Owned Outside Plant Design Manual (OSP)
 3. BICSI 002-2014, Data Center Design and Implementation Best Practices.
- F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- G. Federal, state, and local rules, regulations and ordinances governing the work as fully a part of the specifications as if herein attached. Where requirements of the drawings or specifications are more stringent than the applicable codes, rules, regulations and ordinances the specifications shall apply.
1. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM): ASTM E.814 - Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops.
 2. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL): U.L. 1479 - Fire Tests of Through-Penetrations Firestops.
 3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA): NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
 4. Americans with Disabilities Accessibility Guidelines (ADA)
 5. Code of Federal Regulations, Title 29, Chapter XVII, part 1910 (OSHA).
 6. Uniform Building Code (UBC).
 7. International Building Code (IBC).

1.15 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate and schedule all construction work with the General Contractor prior to beginning work. Do not interrupt building activities without strict coordination with the General Contractor. Unscheduled appearance to work in the spaces without prior scheduling with the General Contractor is not allowed.
- B. The Contractor shall attend all meetings as required by the General Contractor.
- C. Convene a meeting one week prior to commencing the work of this section.
 1. Agenda:
 - a. Tour, inspect and discuss building conditions related to the structured cabling system.
 - b. Review submittals both completed and yet to be completed.
 - c. Review plans, specifications and proposed equipment.
 - d. Review construction schedule, availability of materials, personnel, equipment and facilities needed to proceed without delay.
 - e. Review required inspections and testing.
 - f. Review cable routing, cable support, primary pathways and communications spaces location and environmental conditions.
- D. The Contractors Project Manager must be available on-site when needed and readily available.
- E. Coordinate layout and installation of voice and data communication cabling with Owner's telephone switch, telephone instrument, workstation, telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.
- F. Meet jointly with the design engineers, telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers, local exchange carrier representatives, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
- G. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute to other participants.

- H. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames, cross-connect blocks, and patch panels in equipment rooms and telecommunications rooms to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.
- I. Coordinate chases, slots, inserts, sleeves, and openings with general construction work and arrange in building structure during progress of construction to facilitate the electrical installations that follow.
- J. Fully examine the drawings and specifications for other trades and coordinate the installation of telecommunications work with the work of the other trades. Consult and cooperate with the other trades for determining space requirements and for determining that adequate clearance is allowed with respect to his equipment, other equipment, and the building.
- K. Coordinate installation of telecommunications cabling with the raceway installer. Verify raceways are installed according to current TIA standards before installing cable.
- L. Environmental Conditions: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials to the installation location until areas are complete and dry and temporary HVAC systems are operating and maintaining acceptable ambient temperature and humidity conditions for the remainder of the project.
- M. Provide offsets and elevation changes in piping, conduit and devices as required to complete the Layout and Coordination Process. Offsets and elevation change information shall be indicated in the coordination process documentation and must be submitted for review.
- N. Painted Cables and Devices:
 - 1. Protect cabling from direct painting or over-spray and coordinate the paint and cable installation schedule with respective subcontractors. Painted cables will be replaced at contractor's expense.
 - 2. Protect faceplates and data jacks from direct painting or over-spray. Painted cables will be replaced at contractor's expense.

1.16 STRUCTURAL COORDINATION

- A. In cases where the Contractor determines that superimposed loads such as suspended or floor mounted mechanical, electrical, plumbing system or equipment exist which exceed design loads indicated on structural contract documents, Contractor shall submit load data to Design Professionals for review prior to proceeding with work.
- B. Distribute the maximum load hung from any structural member for mechanical, electrical, plumbing, ductwork, piping, etc. over the member's tributary area in a way that the design superimposed dead loads listed in structural contract documents are not exceeded. The Contractor shall coordinate the loads and provide additional support or distribution framing as required achieving the allowable load distribution.
- C. Connections of systems designed by Contractor's engineer such as, but not limited to mechanical, electrical, plumbing loads are assumed to impose vertical and/or horizontal loads on the base building structural members without generating torsion in the supporting structural members. Contractor is responsible for furnishing and installing all supplementary bracing members as required to prevent torsion on the base building structure.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE, CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. See Drawings for Equipment Schedules for Equipment Performance Requirements when capacities and characteristics are not indicated in the specifications.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Unless otherwise specified, all materials and equipment shall be new, unused, and undamaged. Materials and equipment shall be the current and standard designs of manufacturers regularly engaged in their production and shall bear the UL listing, or listing by other recognized testing laboratory when such listings are available. Materials shall be free of damage or corrosion and shall be of the best quality obtainable for the purpose intended.

- B. Refer to the individual specification sections for manufacturers.

2.03 COMPLETENESS OF WORK

- A. The contract documents depict low voltage systems which are intended to be complete and functioning systems. All products, labor and programming necessary to render a full and functional system to fulfill the design intent shown on the documents shall be provided by the Contractor.
- B. Catalog numbers referenced throughout the drawings and specifications are intended to convey the understanding of the type and quality of the product required. Where written descriptions differ from information conveyed by a catalog number the written description shall govern. No extra charge will be allowed because a catalog number is found to be incomplete or obsolete.

2.04 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT FURNISHED BY OTHERS

- A. Where materials and equipment are indicated as furnished by others and installed or connected under this contract, it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to verify installation details and requirements.

2.05 QUANTITY OF SPECIFIED ITEMS REQUIRED

- A. Wherever in these specifications an article, device or piece of equipment is referred to in the singular number; such reference shall apply to as many such articles as are shown on the drawings or required to complete the installation.

2.06 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.07 SEALANTS

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Sealants:
 - a. Dow Corning
 - b. Pecora
 - c. Sonneborn
 - d. Tremco
- B. Silicone Sealant: Single component, air curing, non-staining, non-bleeding, capable of continuous water immersion, non-sagging type for application in vertical joints and in horizontal joints, color as selected.
- C. Primer: Non-staining type, recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application.
- D. Joint Cleaner: Non-corrosive and non-staining type, recommended by sealant manufacturer; compatible with joint forming materials.
- E. Joint Backing: ANSI/ASTM D1056; round, closed cell, polyethylene foam rod; oversized 30% to 50% larger than joint width.
- F. Bond Breaker: Pressure sensitive tape recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application.
- G. Firestopping Materials:
 1. Subject to compliance with the requirements of Division 07 Fire and Smoke Protection, provide one of the following:
 - a. SpecSeal 100 Fire Stop Sealant - Specified Technologies, Inc.
 - b. CP-25 WB+ Fire Stop Sealant - 3M Fire Protection Products
 - c. Tremstop Fyre-Sil Sealant - Tremco Sealants & Coatings
 - d. Metacaulk
 - e. Dow Corning

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Provide wiring in conduit, raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
- B. Use UL-listed plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
- C. Install cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category rating of components and that ensure Category performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
- D. Install cables without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.
- E. Furnish tools and test equipment. Provide all specified materials, installation hardware, and labor required to complete work shown on drawings and specified in this Section. This shall include work and miscellaneous items not specified but necessary to build a complete telecommunications installation including test equipment accessories and appurtenances required for testing the system. All systems shall be complete and ready for operation.
- F. Use cable bundling hardware rated for the environment and application in which used. Applications include, but are not limited to, general purpose, outdoor, chemical resistant, flame retardant, high temperature, and vibration.
- G. Provide reusable cable management straps for bundling and securing cables. Do not use nylon cable ties.
- H. Do not bend cables, in handling or in installing, to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
- I. Pull cables without exceeding cable manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions.
- J. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
- K. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
- L. Wiring within Wiring Closets and Enclosures: Provide conductors of adequate length.
- M. Train conductors to terminal points with no excess.
- N. Separation of Wires: Comply with TIA-569-D rules for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cabling from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
- O. Make splices and terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, patch panels, and splices.
- P. Use splice connectors compatible with media types.

3.03 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Firestop all smoke and fire rated walls, partitions and openings after the installation of communications cabling in sleeves and pathways. Firestop material shall be approved for use with the communications cables and jackets being installed.

3.04 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS

- A. Maintain current documents at the construction site.

- B. As-built drawings shall include all information required for shop drawings and, in addition, shall indicate the following:
 - 1. Routing of cables between communications rooms and from communications rooms to entrance facilities.
 - 2. Revisions to construction documents (addenda and field changes).
 - 3. As-built drawings shall include all construction changes posted to all portions of the documents including but not limited to communications floor plans, expanded plans, wall and rack elevations, schematics, labeling and installation details. As-built documents shall include and clearly show final cable labeling designations down to the individual outlet and port.
 - 4. As-built drawings shall be complete and organized to be suitable for use as disaster recovery and cable infrastructure administration documents.
- C. Final drawing shall be provided to Engineer in electronic format.
- D. Post a complete set of as-built documents in the MDF serving the project. In each MDF>IDF post a final floor plan of the outlets served by each IDF on the wall behind a protective plexiglass wall frame.

3.05 TRENCHING, EXCAVATION, BACKFILLING AND REPAIRS

- A. Trenching, excavation, backfilling and repairs are the responsibility of the Contractor. Coordinate the extent of all work with the General Contractor where applicable and coordinate related work with all trades. Failure to properly coordinate this effort resulting in additional trenching, excavation, backfilling or repairs shall be performed at no additional cost by the Contractor.

3.06 OBSERVATIONS

- A. Specifications and drawings represent work to be done in view of the total project requirements. Final locations of all conduits, jacks, outlets, racks, components etc. to eliminate possible conflict with other trades is the responsibility of this contractor. Contractor to provide all project management and supervision required for his personnel to insure installation is made in accordance with the plans and specifications and that all codes, safety rules and regulations are observed. In the event of conflicts with other trades, this Contractor is to make every reasonable effort to resolve the conflict with other trades involved, by preparation of drawings or sketches or by other appropriate action. Only after this on-site coordination has taken place, and a resolution cannot be found, is the Contractor to request assistance. Assistance shall be requested in adherence with the RFI process defined for this project.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Participate in project site observations, walk-throughs, and punch lists as requested by the Owner or the Architect/Engineer.
- B. Demonstrate completeness of work relative to completion percentages submitted for payment.

3.08 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish.
- B. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finish, including chips, scratches, and abrasions.

END OF SECTION 27 0501

SECTION 27 0527
GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes grounding of telecommunications systems and equipment. Grounding requirements specified in this Section may be supplemented by special requirements of systems described in other Sections.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 1. Ground lugs.
 2. Ground conductors.
- B. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
 1. Comply with UL 467.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with current TIA J-STD-607, Commercial Building (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Ground Lugs and Connectors:
 1. Burndy.
 2. Harger.
 3. Panduit.

2.02 GROUNDING CONDUCTORS

- A. For insulated conductors, comply with other Division 26 Sections.
- B. Insulate with green-colored insulation on larger conductors where green insulation is not available. Use green-colored tape at each termination point or splice to identify ground conductor. One exception is the use of manufacturer-recommended ground straps to bond cable trays or racks.

2.03 CONNECTOR PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with IEEE 837, UL 467, and TIA 607; listed for use for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and connected items.
- B. High-Pressure Compression Connectors: Burndy Hyground System or Panduit Structured Ground System.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Use only copper conductors for grounding conductors in direct contact with earth, concrete, masonry, crushed stone, and similar materials.
- B. In raceways, use insulated equipment grounding conductors.
- C. Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Use bolted pressure clamps.
- D. Underground Grounding Conductors: Use copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.

3.02 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING CONDUCTORS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70, Article 250, for types, sizes, and quantities of equipment grounding conductors, unless specific types, larger sizes, or more conductors than required by NFPA 70 are indicated.
- B. Signal and Communication Systems: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication systems, provide #6 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
 1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch grounding bus.
 2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install so vibration by equipment mounted on vibration isolation hangers and supports is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment. Use exothermic-welded connectors or high-pressure compression connectors for outdoor locations, unless a disconnect-type connection is required; then, use a bolted clamp. Bond straps directly to the basic structure taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts. Install straps only in locations accessible for maintenance.

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. General: Make connections so galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact will be galvanically compatible.
 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer to order of galvanic series.
 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
 6. Clean ground bars and apply a light coating of anti-oxidant between the ground bar and ground lug.
- B. Telecommunications Grounding Conductor Terminations: Provide compression lugs. For #4 AWG and larger, use two-hole lugs. For #6 AWG and smaller, use one-hole lugs.
- C. Noncontact Metal Raceway Terminations: If metallic raceways terminate at metal housings without mechanical and electrical connection to housing or at a nonmetallic housing, terminate each conduit with a grounding bushing. Connect grounding bushings with a bare grounding conductor to grounding bus or terminal in housing. Bond electrically noncontinuous conduits at entrances and exits with grounding bushings and bare grounding conductors, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Tighten screws and bolts for grounding and bonding connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A.
- E. High-Pressure Compression-Type Connections: Use hydraulic compression tools to provide correct circumferential pressure for compression connectors. Use tools and dies recommended by connector manufacturer. Provide embossing die code or other standard method to make a visible indication that a connector has been adequately compressed on grounding conductor.

- F. Moisture Protection: If insulated grounding conductors are connected to ground rods or grounding buses, insulate entire area of connection and seal against moisture penetration of insulation and cable.

3.05 TELECOMMUNICATIONS GROUNDING

- A. Install each bonding conductor in the most direct route possible without interfering with other systems or equipment.
- B. Install exterior grounding electrode conductors with a minimum bending radius of 12 inches.
- C. Install interior grounding conductors with a minimum bending radius of 8 inches.
- D. Install grounding conductors in EMT conduit unless otherwise indicated. Bond each end of the conduit to the grounding conductor using an appropriate grounding bushing.
- E. When present, bond the following to the Telecommunications Main Ground Bar (TMGB):
 1. Metallic equipment racks.
 2. Cable shields.
 3. Metal raceways and cable trays for telecommunications cabling extending from the same room or space where the TMGB is located.
 4. Entrance protectors.
 5. TGBs within the same space.
- F. When present, bond the following to the nearest Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB):
 1. Metallic equipment racks.
 2. Cable shields.
 3. Metal raceways and cable trays for telecommunications cabling extending from the same room or space where the TGB is located.
- G. Labeling:
 1. Busbars:
 - a. Clean all surfaces prior to attachment of any label.
 - b. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning and affixing labels.
 - c. Label Location: Upper right-hand corner of the busbar.
 - d. Label Information: The identifier information is shown on drawings.
 - e. Method: Self-adhesive, engraved plastic nameplate, black with white letters.
 - f. Format: All capital letters Font shall be as large as possible to fill the label space with the information. The font shall be Helvetica, or equal, and bold. One line format. Letters shall be at least 1/2-inch tall for readability.
 2. Bonding Conductors:
 - a. Label Location: On the conductor at each end where it terminates.
 - b. Label Information: The identifier information is shown on the drawings and conductor destination information.
 - c. Method: Machine printed Brady label, part number WML-1223-292.
 - d. Format: All capital letters. Font shall be as large as possible to fill the label space with the information. The font shall be Helvetica, or equal, and bold. One line format.
 - e. Examples:
 - 1) Bonding Conductor for Telecommunications (BCT). The BCT bonds the MGW to the TMGB.
 - 2) Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB). The TBB bonds the TMGB to the TGB. There may be multiple TBBs. See detail drawings for additional TBB labeling.
 - 3) Equipment Bonding Conductors: EK, followed by the sequence numbers, e.g., EK001, EK002, etc.

END OF SECTION 27 0527

SECTION 27 0528
PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes pathways used for low voltage communications cabling.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Telecommunications Pathways: A cable distribution system consisting of raceways, cable trays, racks and ladders; conduits; distribution rings and mechanical cable supporting devices.
- B. Pathways shall include: surface-mounted conduits, sleeves/conduits through walls and spaces, cable trays, J-hooks, boxes, surface raceways, and conduits.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Pre-Construction Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: Include data on features, ratings, and performance for each component specified.
 - 2. Shop Drawings: Include dimensioned plan and elevation views of each individual component.
 - 3. Show equipment assemblies, method of field assembly, and workspace requirements.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with Section 26 0533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems".
- B. Confirm locations of cable pathways and supports during installation to identify and remedy potential cable installation conflicts before installation of cables.
- C. Insure that all minimum bend radius requirements are maintained.
- D. Coordinate the placement of pathway elements with other trades.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers:
 - 1. J-Hooks:
 - a. B-Line Systems, Inc.
 - b. Caddy.
 - c. GS Metals Corporation.
 - 2. Cable Management Tray:
 - a. B-Line Systems, Inc.
 - b. Cablofil.
 - c. GS Metals Corporation.
 - d. T. J. Cope, Inc.
 - 3. Ladder Runway:
 - a. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
 - b. Homoco.
 - c. Newton Instrument Company, Inc.
 - 4. Surface Raceway:
 - a. Hubbell.
 - b. Ortronics.
 - c. Panduit.
 - d. Siemon.

2.02 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Coordinate the features of materials and equipment which comprise the communications pathway system so they form an integrated system.

- B. Match components and interconnections for optimum future cable installation and performance.
- C. UL classified for suitability as an equipment grounding conductor.

2.03 CABLE MANAGEMENT

- A. Cable Trays: Comply with Section 26 0536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems".
- B. Raceways: Comply with Section 26 0533.13 "Conduit".
- C. Boxes: Comply with Section 26 0533.16 "Boxes."

2.04 J-HOOKS

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. B-Line Systems, Inc.
 2. Caddy.
 3. GS Metals Corporation.
- B. Size: 4 inch or as indicated.
- C. Category 6 rated.
- D. With wire spring cable retaining clips or slots for cable ties.

2.05 DROPOUTS (WATERFALLS):

- A. Cable Management Tray: Provide drop-outs full above all racks and cabinets (two per rack or as indicated) and at all locations where cable bundles leave tray above wall field termination fields.
- B. Cable Runway (Ladder): Provide drop-outs full above all racks and cabinets (two per rack or as indicated) and at all locations where cable bundles leave tray above wall field termination fields.
- C. Primary Conduit Waterfalls: Provide conduit end waterfalls for all 4-inch and larger primary pathways where located 12 inches or more above cable trays or terminations.
- D. Provide also as located on detail drawings.

2.06 CABLE MANAGEMENT TRAY

- A. Description: 2-inch by 4-inch mesh pattern.
- B. Material: Steel.
- C. Finish: Zinc electroplated
- D. Depth: 4 inches.
- E. Width: As indicated.
- F. Hangers: Side rail hangers.
- G. Provide manufacturer's standard clamps, hangers, brackets and connectors.

2.07 LADDER RUNWAY

- A. Material: Steel.
- B. Bar spacing: 9 inches.
- C. Width: As indicated on drawings.
- D. Finish: Black.
- E. Grounding Listing: UL-listed for equipment grounding conductor.
- F. Provide manufacturer's standard clamps, hangers, brackets, splice plates, reducer plates and connectors.
- G. Accessories:
 1. Cable retaining posts.
 2. Bracket for auxiliary cable pathway.
 3. Radius dropouts.
 4. Movable cross members.
 5. Cable spools.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine all pathways for obstructions and clear prior to the installation of cabling.
- C. Examine all pathways for burs and sharp edges and remove all prior to the installation of cable. All cable damaged as a result of improperly prepared pathways shall be the responsibility of the installing contractor.

3.02 J-HOOK INSTALLATION

- A. Provide velcro ties around J-hooks to secure cable.
- B. Strategically place J-hooks to aid in routing at corners and at changes in height.
- C. If cable tray is not used as a primary pathway, use 2-inch or larger J-hooks to support cable in primary pathways. Provide a second J-hook in a tiered or back to back configuration for each J-hook installed only when the quantity of outlets served from that primary pathway exceeds 40% of the manufacturer's rated capacity.
- D. J-hooks used to support cable in secondary pathways can be 1-5/8 inches or larger. Provide a second J-hook for each J-hook installed only when the quantity of outlets served from that secondary pathway exceeds 40% of the manufacturer's rated capacity.
- E. Provide J-hooks as indicated on drawings and as required between discontinuous sections of cable tray.
- F. Where multiple J-hooks are installed, place J-hooks back-to-back if possible; otherwise, stack J-hooks one above the other.
- G. Install J-hooks at maximum of 5 foot intervals unless cable manufacturer requires different interval to maintain warranty. Unevenly space J-hooks to avoid standing waves on the cable.
- H. Attach J-hooks to building structure.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Secure cable tray directly to top of racks using manufacturer's recommended solution for attachment.
- C. Install raceways securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1.
- D. Use flat-head screws, clips, and straps to fasten raceway channel to surfaces. Mount plumb and level.
- E. Use suitable insulating bushings and inserts at connections to outlets and corner fittings.
- F. Wireway Supports: Provide steel channel as specified in Section 26 0529.
- G. Close ends of wireway and unused conduit openings.
- H. Ground and bond raceway and wireway under provisions of Section 26 0526.
- I. Install metallic cable tray in accordance with NEMA VE 1.
- J. Remove sharp edges from trays.
- K. Support trays in accordance with Section 26 0529. Provide supports at each connection point, at the end of each run, and at other points to maintain spacing between supports of 10 ft maximum.
- L. Additional requirements for cable management tray:
 1. Cut tray using manufacturer's recommended cutting tool. File cut edges smooth.
 2. Locate supports a maximum of 5 feet on-center and no more than 30 inches from a tray joint.
 3. Install hardware with bolts oriented such that nuts are on the outside of the tray.

- M. Provide a dropout fitting at the free end(s) of each cable tray run and at elevation changes.
- N. Install cable tray with sufficient space to allow access for cable installation and for future cable additions and changes.
- O. Use expansion connectors where required.
- P. Provide firestopping under provisions of Section 07 8400 to sustain ratings when passing cable tray through fire-rated elements.
- Q. Install cable trays to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements.
- R. Ground and bond cable tray under provisions of Section 26 0526.
 - 1. Provide continuity between tray components. Use lugs and grounding clamps compatible with tray material.

END OF SECTION 27 0528

SECTION 27 0553.01
IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes instructions for labeling and documentation of telecommunications infrastructure.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Administration: The method for labeling, documentation and usage needed to implement moves, adds and changes to the telecommunications infrastructure.
- B. Cable Labeling System: Scheme adapted for labeling cabling, pathways and components to identify them in compliance with the current TIA-606 Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure at Commercial Buildings and owner adopted standards.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Pre-Construction:
1. Product Data.
 2. Cable labeling scheme.
- B. Construction Record Drawings:
1. Maintain current documents at the construction site. Submit with Operation and Maintenance manuals.
 2. Include all information required for shop drawings.
 3. Include revisions to construction documents (addenda and field changes).
 4. Cable Labeling System schedule, including electronic copy of labeling schedules as specified in Part 3 of this Section, in software and format selected by Owner.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with the current TIA-606 Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure at Commercial Buildings.
- B. Comply with BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, current edition.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with the following:
1. Cable Labels: Self-adhesive vinyl or vinyl-cloth wraparound tape markers, machine printed with alphanumeric cable designations.
 2. Label Maker: Brady I.D. Pro or approved equivalent.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 IDENTIFICATION AND LABELING

- A. In addition to requirements in this Article, comply with applicable requirements in Section "Electrical Identification".
- B. General Label Requirements:
1. Mechanically print and install all labels per drawing details.
 2. Format: Select font size to be readable and to fit all information required without overlap of text.
 3. Use all capital letters.
 4. Clean all surfaces prior to attachment of any label. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning and affixing labels.
 5. Coordinate room name and/or number information used in labels with final approved room signage. Final room signage may not match room tags used in construction documents.

- C. Cable Labeling System: Use a unique alphanumeric designation for each cable, and label cable and jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects. Use logical and systematic designations for facility's architectural arrangement.
 - 1. Refer to detail drawings.
- D. Work Area Outlet Labeling:
 - 1. Label each terminated work area outlet jack per drawing details.
 - 2. Method: Use manufacturer's white paper inserts or approved equal. Utilize commercial software to print the information on an adhesive label and affix the label to the paper insert or type the information on the strip. Do not affix labels to the clear plastic window. If label information does not legibly fit within window, then affix label above each jack.
- E. Patch Panels:
 - 1. Label Information: See detail drawings.
 - 2. Method: Affix label to the lefthand side of the patch panel without covering any port numbers.
- F. Outside Plant Cables:
 - 1. Label Location: On the jack or sheath of the cable at the ends and at every splice, case, and manhole. Place near the hardware on which the cable is terminated.
 - 2. Locate label in a visible and readable location.
 - 3. Label Information: The cable identifier is the cable number followed by the cable pair count (numeric characters), both the beginning and ending count. The cable identifier is unique to the campus. Refer to the detail drawings.
 - 4. Provide polyethylene non-conductive cable tags with cable numbers as shown on the plans.
 - 5. Install tags at all splices (on each cable that enters the splice case), terminations, cable tray to conduit transitions, in manholes (at least once on each cable as it passes through the manhole), and at other locations as directed by the Owner.
 - 6. Example: A03 001-0100 A03 0101-0200
- G. Inside Plant Cables (including coaxial):
 - 1. Label Location: Within 12 inches inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet, junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 2. Label Information: Refer to detail drawings.
- H. Server Cabinets, Equipment Racks, Network Enclosures and Wall Cabinets:
 - 1. Rack Label Location: Centered at the top and bottom of the rack or cabinet in both the front and rear.
 - 2. Rack Label Information: Refer to detail drawings.
- I. Fiber Termination Enclosure:
 - 1. Label Location: On the outside of the enclosure surface in the top left corner of the panel front.
 - 2. Label Information: Refer to detail drawings.
- J. Fiber Termination Enclosure Port Labels:
 - 1. Label Location: On the inside front panel of the enclosure in the location identified by the manufacturer for the label. In most cases, the manufacturer's insert can be used for which to affix Contractor provided labels. The connector layout within each enclosure may vary. In general, the columns of fiber connectors are grouped in units of six connectors. Columns count from left to right. Termination positions within a column count from top to bottom.
 - 2. Label Information: Refer to detail drawings.
- K. Cable Labeling System Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project, in software and format selected by Owner.

- L. Cable Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cable administration point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications spaces, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas outlets, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors. Follow convention of TIA-606. Furnish electronic record of all drawings, in software and format selected by Owner.,

END OF SECTION 27 0553.01

SECTION 27 1101
COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes telecommunications infrastructure for equipment rooms, telecommunications rooms, and service entrance facilities including, but not limited to, cable, connecting devices, lightning protection, and installation for wiring systems to be used as signal pathways for voice and high-speed data transmission.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Entrance Facility (EF): Enclosed architectural space housing communications cable, terminations, cross-connects and hardware. Where An EF contains sensitive electronic communications equipment it shall be environmentally tempered.
- B. Equipment Room (ER): Enclosed and environmentally tempered communications electronics architectural space housing sensitive electronic communications equipment and cable, terminations, cross-connects and hardware which generally serve a building, a campus, a tenant or a service provider. Historically these spaces have been known as Main Distribution Frames (MDFs).
- C. Telecommunications Room (TR): Enclosed architectural space housing telecommunications equipment, cable, terminations, cross-connects and hardware which generally serve floor areas or tenants. Where a TR contains sensitive electronic communications equipment it shall be environmentally tempered. Historically these spaces have been known as Intermediate Distribution Frames (IDFs).
- D. Telecommunications Enclosure (TE): Enclosure, cabinet or case housing for telecommunications cable, terminations, cross-connects and hardware.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. PRE-CONSTRUCTION SUBMITTALS
 - 1. Product Data: Include data on features, ratings, and performance for each component specified.
 - 2. Cable Administration Drawings: As specified in Part 3.
 - 3. Product Data: Include data on features, ratings, and performance for each component specified.
 - 4. Construction record drawings.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Environmental: Do not deliver or install equipment frames, copper and fiber cabling to the equipment room or install termination hardware until communications equipment rooms are enclosed, painted, water-tight, complete, dry and work above and in ceiling spaces is complete. Telecommunications equipment damaged (such as painted cables) as a result of premature occupancy of the communication spaces will be replaced at the expense of the contractor.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with Owner's Telecommunications and LAN equipment service suppliers.
- C. Coordinate entrance arrangements with local exchange carriers.
- D. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring power to operate. Coordinate with Division 26.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers:
 - 1. Telecommunications Racks:
 - a. Hubbell.

2. Cable Management and Support:
 - a. B-Line.
 - b. Cabofil.
 - c. Chatsworth Products.
 - d. Erico/Caddy.
 - e. Great Lakes Case and Cabinet.
 - f. GS Metals.
 - g. Homaco.
 - h. Panduit.
 - i. Senior Industries.
 - j. Tyton.
 - k. Velcro Brand.

2.02 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Coordinate the features of materials and equipment so they form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum future performance.

2.03 EXPANSION CAPACITY

- A. Refer to detail drawings.

2.04 TWO-POST EQUIPMENT RACKS

- A. Type: Two-Post free-standing equipment rack.
- B. Finish: Baked-polyester powder coat.
- C. Material: Steel.
- D. Designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
- E. Color: Black.
- F. Grounding: Provide each rack with ground lug.
- G. Configuration: Standard EIA 19
- H. Height: 84 inches (45U)
- I. Equipment Rails: Tapped.

2.05 VERTICAL CABLE MANAGEMENT.

- A. Include components that aid in routing, managing, and organizing cable to and from equipment, protect network equipment by controlling cable bend radius and providing cable strain relief and a universal design.
 1. Configuration: Front and Rear
 2. Width: As indicated on the detail drawings
 3. Cover: Hinged
 4. Color: Black
 5. Quantity: As indicated on the detail drawings

2.06 HORIZONTAL CABLE MANAGEMENT:

- A. Include components that aid in routing, managing, and organizing cable to and from equipment, protect network equipment by controlling cable bend radius and providing cable strain relief and a universal design.
 1. Configuration: Front and Rear
 2. Height: As indicated on the detail drawings.
 3. Nominal Depth: Front and Rear: 8-inch
 4. Covers: Hinged
 5. Color: Black
 6. Quantity: As indicated on the detail drawings.
 7. Provide removable wire retainers to retain the cables during cover removal and #12-24 English mounting screws.

8. Provide an integral strain relief bracket on either side of the duct to allow for easy cover placement.

2.07 CABLE MANAGEMENT

- A. Cable Trays: Comply with Sections "Cable Trays" and "Pathways for Communications Systems"
- B. Raceways and Boxes: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceways and Boxes."
- C. Distribution Rings:
 1. Wall Mounted 6-Inch D-Rings:
 - a. Plastic: Chatsworth No. 10812-001 or equivalent
 - b. Metal: Senior Industries No. 4754 or equivalent
 2. Wall Mounted 4-Inch D-Rings:
 - a. Plastic: Chatsworth No. 12127-001 or equivalent
 - b. Metal: Senior Industries No. 4753 or equivalent
 3. Post Type: Chatsworth No. 15002-002 or equivalent
- D. Cable Bundling Hardware:
 1. Reusable Velcro cable ties.
 2. Plenum rated.
- E. Cable Straps:
 1. Reusable, adjustable and capable of withstanding fastening to wall with screws or equipped with snap-and-button fasteners.
 2. Provide with or without cinch ring as applicable.
 3. Color: Black.

2.08 PLYWOOD BACKBOARDS

- A. Refer to architectural plans and specifications where for locations and placement of plywood backboards.

2.09 PATHWAYS

- A. General Requirements:
 1. Comply with TIA-569-D and Division 26
 2. Comply with Section 27 0528 Pathways for Communications Systems
- B. Locate, coordinate placement and install sleeves, conduits and cable trays, cable ladders, D-rings and associated appurtenances in accordance with the detail drawings.
- C. Provide and install all cable trays or ladder racks in accordance with the detail drawings. When installed above racks leave 12" between the racks and tray and provide cable drop-outs for cable entrance to racks. Secure tray to racks.
- D. All pathways shall be free of sharp edges and shall be physically and electrically continuous. Utilize manufactured radius bends, tee's and corners or utilize approved manufacturers methods for field fabrication of corners, bends, offsets and tee's. Cable trays installed at variance with manufacturers published standards or the detail drawings will be removed and reinstalled at the contractors expense.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

- A. Unlisted OSP cables entering buildings shall adhere to NEC Articles 770, 800, 820, 830 and 840 (or their successors') requirements for conduit if these cables extend beyond 50 feet from their point of entrance.

3.02 EQUIPMENT RACKS AND CABINETS

- A. Provide equipment racks as indicated on drawings.
- B. Bolt freestanding equipment racks to the floor. Securely fasten hinged wall brackets to the wall on which they are mounted.

- C. Provide horizontal cable management above and below each patch panel unless indicated on detail drawings.
- D. Provide vertical cable management on each side of each equipment rack.
- E. Bag and leave attached to the rack all spare hardware.

3.03 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with Section 27 0527 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems"
- B. Ground all equipment per ANSI-J-STD-607-C.
- C. Refer to detail drawings.

3.04 INSTALLATION IN EQUIPMENT ROOMS

- A. Prepare Equipment Rooms with respect to power, entry pathways, cable management trays, sleeves, conduits, backboards and hardware.
- B. Mount terminal strips and other connecting hardware on backboards, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mount patch panels on equipment racks or cabinets. See detail drawings.
- D. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
- E. Use patch panels and 110 blocks to terminate cables entering the space, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Plastic or metal ties shall not be used in the Equipment Rooms (except for armored cables). Velcro ties shall be used.
- G. Service Loops shall be secured to cable tray, ladder rack or plywood with appropriate straps and/or D-ring hardware
- H. Install power strips in equipment racks.
- I. Refer to detail drawings.

END OF SECTION 27 1101

SECTION 27 1323
COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL BACKBONE CABLING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes cable and installation for optical backbone communications cable systems to be used for high-speed data transmission.
- B. Optical backbone cabling to includes the installation of fiber optic cable, connectors, supports, termination shelves, termination shelf hardware, station patch cords, cable termination, testing, and cutover for a complete system.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backbone Cabling: Cable or conductors between telecommunications spaces, or floor distribution terminals, entrance facilities, and the telecommunications spaces within or between buildings.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Pre-Construction Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: Include data on features, ratings, and performance for each component specified.
 - 2. Product Certificates: For each type of cable, connector, and terminal equipment, signed by product manufacturer.
 - 3. Cable Administration Drawings: As specified in Section 27 0501.
- B. Post-Construction Submittals:
 - 1. Construction Record Drawings.
 - 2. Field quality control test reports.
 - 3. Documentation of the test equipment, equipment certification and calibration of test equipment utilized.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with Section 27 0501 "Common Work Results for Communications".
- B. Comply with Section 27 0553.01 "Identification for Communications Systems".
- C. The Contractor shall be responsible for verifying that all conduits and raceways are ready for cable placement

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate with pathway installer to ensure that TIA installation tolerances are maintained.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers:
 - 1. Fiber Optic Cable:
 - a. Corning Cable Systems.
 - 2. Fiber Termination Equipment:
 - a. Corning Cable Systems.
 - 3. Fiber Optic Splice Equipment:
 - a. Corning Cable Systems.
 - 4. Innerduct:
 - a. Arnco.
 - b. Carlon.
 - c. Endot.
 - d. Maxcell Fabric Innerduct.
 - e. Pyramid.

2.02 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Coordinate the features of materials and equipment so they form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum future performance.
- B. Expansion Capability: Unless otherwise indicated on the detail drawings, provide spare positions in fiber shelves and enclosures to accommodate 20 percent future increase in active backbone cabling.
- C. The Information Transport System backbone cabling shall conform to the requirement of TIA-568-B in conformance with this standard, the standard shall be designed in a hierarchical star topology.
- D. Backbone cabling shall provide interconnections between telecommunications spaces, data center facilities, server rooms, and building-to-building facilities in the telecommunications cabling infrastructure. Backbone cabling system to consist of all cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, patch cords and/or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.

2.03 MATERIALS

- A. General:
 1. Provide Plenum Rated OM4 Multimode for runs between telecommunications spaces.
- B. Optical Fiber Cables:
 1. Optical fiber cables shall meet or exceed all applicable national and local building fire code requirements. Fiber cables used in a return air plenum environment shall have Underwriters Laboratories rating that meets or exceeds the requirements of NFPA 262-1985 and UL®-910. (OFNP) and (UL®) shall be printed every two (2) feet on the cable jacket. The optical fiber riser cable shall have an Underwriters Laboratories rating that meets or exceeds the requirements of UL®-1666 (OFNR) and (UL®) shall be printed every two (2) feet on the cable jacket.
 2. Cables: Factory fabricated, tight buffered, jacketed, low loss, glass type, fiber optic cables, 125 micron cladding diameter.
 3. Backbone, Strands per Cable: As indicated on the Drawings.
 4. Cable Jacket: Rated and UL Listed for use in plenums (OFNP).
 5. Operating Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 70 degrees C.
 6. Cable Types:
 - a. OM3 Laser Optimized Multimode Optical Fiber Cabling:
 - 1) 50/125 micron
 - 2) Maximum Attenuation: 3 dB/km at 850 nm; 1 dB/km at 1300 nm.
 - 3) Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 1500 MHz*km at 850 nm; 500 MHz*km at 1300 nm.
 - 4) Effective Modal Bandwidth: 2000 MHz*km at 850 nm
 - 5) The optical fiber must be FDDI and ATM compliant and conform to all relevant TIA standards.
 - 6) Color: Aqua.
 - b. OM4 Multimode Optical Fiber Cabling:
 - 1) 50/125 micron
 - 2) Maximum Attenuation: 3 dB/km at 850 nm; 1 dB/km at 1300 nm
 - 3) Minimum Modal Bandwidth (OFL): 3500 MHz*km at 850 nm; 500 MHz*km at 1300 nm.
 - 4) Effective Modal Bandwidth: 4700MHz*km
 - 5) Color: Aqua
 - 6) The optical fiber must conform to all relevant TIA standards.

2.04 FIBER-OPTIC CONNECTORS AND TERMINATION EQUIPMENT

- A. Cable Connectors: Duplex SC connectors with self-centering, axial alignment mechanisms. Insertion loss not more than 0.7 dB.
- B. Fiber Termination Shelf: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered cable connectors.

1. Permanent Connection: Permanently connect one end of each connector module to installed cable fiber.
 2. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to satisfy specified expansion criteria.
 3. Mounting: Rack.
- C. Patch Cords:
1. Type: Dual fiber cables in 36-inch lengths.
 2. Terminations: Two duplex connectors arranged to mate with patch-panel connectors, one at each end of each fiber in cord.
 3. Provide one patch cord for each fiber optic panel port/connector.
 4. A closet fiber optic patch cord patched into any given fiber panel port/connector shall be long enough to reach from the fiber panel port/connector to equipment port of furthest rack mounted equipment within closet routed through cable management unless otherwise noted.
- D. Fiber Optic Splice Case:
1. Type: Indoor.
 2. Designed for the number of cables, size of cables, quantity of strands, and environment of the splice location.
 3. Able to be positioned either horizontally or vertically, other than aerial.
 4. Closures affect a complete splice closure system and include the manufacturer's recommended hardware and parts for the splice type and environment including, but not limited to, end caps or covers, splice wrappers, flange seals, bond connectors and clamps, ground braids, alignment bars, lubricants, cover clips, external bond braids or ribbons, and cleaning kits.
 5. Fiber Optic Splice Type: Fusion.
- E. Fiber Optic Splice:
1. Type: Fusion.
 2. Provide physical protection for splices.

2.05 OPTICAL FIBER INNERDUCT

- A. UL Listed, corrugated, specifically designed for optical fiber cable pathways.
- B. Plenum rated.
- C. Nominal Size: 1 inch (inside diameter), minimum; 1-1/4 inches (outside diameter), maximum.
- D. Pulling Strength: Minimum of 600 pounds.
- E. Color: Orange.
- F. Fittings and Innerduct Bodies: Utilize manufacturer's recommended fittings including couplings, adapters, end caps, end bells, expansion couplings, plugs, sleeves, a full complement of connective devices, and all other components to make a complete innerduct system suitable for its intended purpose.
- G. Innerduct shall have a pre-installed pull string with a minimum 600 pound pulling strength.

2.06 ARMORED OPTICAL FIBER ACCESSORIES

- A. Grounding Kit: Provide armored cable grounding kit for each end of cable.
- B. Armor Connector: Provide manufacturer's recommended MC cable connector for termination of armor at enclosure.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Optical Backbone Cable:
 1. Refer to detail drawings for additional optical fiber requirements.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Backbone Cables:

1. Install cables in trays or as indicated on drawings. Where non-armored cables are installed in conduit pathways they shall be installed in innerduct. Install optical fiber cable after installation of the innerduct.
2. Provide supports as required for vertical cable runs. Provide three supports per floor and a service loop or offset every three floors to allow for proper strain relief.
3. Where riser cables serving multiple telecommunications spaces pass through the same conduit sleeve or are mounted on the same backboard, separately bundle the cables serving each closet using commercially available velcro wire ties.
4. Provide continuous optical fiber cable between telecommunications spaces. Do not splice cables.
5. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
6. Cold Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before de-reeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
7. Comply with BICSI TDMM and manufacturers' specifications for pulling cable. Monitor cable pulling tensions.
8. Use common (aligned) vertical sleeves for all vertical copper and fiber cables.
9. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects and patch panels.
10. All backbone cabling cross-connects shall be located in telecommunications spaces.
11. Splices or other unapproved hardware and facilities not specifically indicated on the detail drawings shall not be used as a part of the backbone cabling.
12. All optical cables shall be free of surface imperfections and inclusions to meet the optical, mechanical and environmental requirements of this specification.
13. Connections between fiber optic patch panels shall be made with a premanufactured fiber optic patch cord. All fiber optic jumper assemblies shall comply with the standards for both fiber optic cables and fiber optic connectors.
14. Install cable in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications for installation and loading. Do not violate the short and long term cable loading.
15. Armored fiber metallic sheathing shall extend from fiber enclosure to fiber enclosure. Terminate armor with armor connector using available enclosure knock-out.
16. Ground armored fiber armor with grounding kit or MC connector suitable with manufacturer's recommendations.
17. Do not violate the manufacturer's minimum bending radius for both loaded and unloaded conditions. Avoid cable wrinkling.
18. Replace damaged optical fiber cable with new material.
19. Provide a service loop of 20 feet at each end of each cable. Place the location of the service loop such that the cable can be extended without interference of other systems such as mechanical systems, electrical piping, plumbing, racking, etc. Wind the loop such that the cable enters the rack and distribution hardware with minimal bends. Store the loop out-of-way and fasten to the wall or ceiling to prevent possible damage. See detail drawings.

3.03 INNERDUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Provide innerduct for each fiber optic backbone cable.
- B. Install innerduct prior to installation of the optical fiber cable. Coordinate innerduct routing path through the pathway system and receive Owner approval before innerduct is installed.
- C. Provide innerduct for the entire length of the cable from termination enclosure to termination enclosure. Provide a mechanically continuous system connected to all boxes, device mounting brackets, and cabinets.
- D. Cut squarely, using a saw or pipe cutter; de-burr cut ends.
- E. Draw innerduct tight to the shoulder of fittings and couplings and fasten securely.
- F. Utilize innerduct manufacturer's end caps to protect installed innerduct against entrance of dirt and moisture before and after installation of the cable.
- G. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended installation tension.

- H. Replace damaged innerduct with new material.

3.04 GENERAL OPTICAL FIBER TERMINATION

- A. Directly terminate all fiber optic cable with LC composite/ceramic connectors.
- B. Use manufacturer-furnished nylon cable wrap to bundle pigtails.
- C. Terminate, install, protect cable and fiber according to the connector manufacturer's recommended practices. Use the manufacturer's kits, processes, cleaners, solvents, fasteners, and other mechanisms necessary for a complete termination unless otherwise indicated herein.
- D. Unless otherwise indicated, route, manage, prepare, protect, install, and store cable according to the hardware manufacturer's recommended practices. Use the manufacturer's kits, processes, cable and fiber management hardware, fasteners, and other mechanisms necessary for a complete installation.
- E. Use manufacturer-recommended breakout kit to prepare all outside plant cable for termination.
- F. Incorporate industry standard color coding and positioning within the enclosures.

3.05 FIBER TERMINATION ADAPTER ORIENTATION

- A. Specific orientation of the adapters is necessary to maintain the correct polarity of the transmit and receive signals throughout the building. Polarity is achieved by physical key slot orientation of adapters in the fiber distribution enclosures.
- B. The required adapter orientation is included with the fiber cable recording documents from the Owner. Coordinate the key-slot-up or key-slotdown orientation as it relates to the A/B and B/A designation with the Owner. See orientation drawings.
- C. Achieve physical orientation of the adapters by rotating the connector panel in the enclosure to the proper key-slot-down orientation.
- D. Achieve the proper physical orientation of the adapters by removing and rotating the adapter within the connector panel to the proper key-slot-up or key-slot-down orientation.
- E. Install fiber optic adapters in a reverse-pair position polarity with key-slot-up orientation for duplex adapters unless owner standards or existing infrastructure utilizes another polarity. If fiber optic patch cords are provided ensure patch cords are A/B position patch cords.

3.06 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with Section 26 0526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Comply with Section 27 0527 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

3.07 PERFORMANCE TESTING

- A. Perform Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.
- B. Provide certification reports printed on 8-1/2 inch x 11 inch sheets. Provide one or more three-ring binders as required to contain reports. Provide a separate tab for each group of cables served from a common telecommunications space. Provide an additional tab for backbone cables. Present cable testing results in a sequenced or otherwise orderly matrix format.
- C. General Requirements:
 1. Test every fiber optic cabling link in the installation in accordance with the field test specifications defined by the Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA standard TIA-568-B (or by the appropriate network application standard(s)) whichever is more demanding. See paragraph "Performance Test Parameters" in this Section.
 2. TIA-568-B defines the passive cabling network to include cable, connectors, and splices (if present) between two optical fiber patch panels (connecting hardware). A typical horizontal link segment is from the telecommunications outlet/connector to the horizontal cross-connect. This TIA document describes three typical backbone link segments: (1)

main cross-connect to intermediate cross-connect, (2) main cross-connect to horizontal cross-connect, or (3) intermediate cross-connect to horizontal cross-connect. The test must include the representative connector performance at the connecting hardware associated with the mating of patch cords. The test does not, however, include the performance of the connector at the interface with the test equipment.

3. Test 100 percent of the installed cabling links. The cable must pass the requirements of the standards mentioned above and as further detailed below. Any failing link must be diagnosed and corrected. Follow the corrective action with a new test to prove that the corrected link meets the performance requirements. Provide the final and passing result of the tests for all links in the test results documentation in accordance with this Section.
 4. Trained technicians who have successfully attended an appropriate training program and have obtained a certificate as proof thereof shall execute the tests. These certificates shall have been issued by any of the following organizations or an equivalent organization:
 - a. The manufacturer of the fiber optic cable and/or the fiber optic connectors.
 - b. The manufacturer of the test equipment used for the field certification.
 - c. Training organizations authorized by BICSI (Building Industry Consulting Services International with headquarters in Tampa, Florida) or by the ACP (Association of Cabling Professionals Cabling Business Institute located in Dallas, Texas).
 5. Field test instruments for multimode fiber cabling must meet the requirements of TIA-526-14A. The light source must meet the launch requirements of TIA-455-50B, Method A. Achieve this launch condition either within the field test equipment or by use of an external mandrel wrap (as described in Clause 11 of TIA-568-B.1) with a Category 1 light source.
 - a. Field test instruments for singlemode fiber cabling must meet the requirements of TIA-526-7.
 6. Calibrate the tester within the calibration period recommended by the vendor in order to achieve the vendor-specified measurement accuracy.
 7. The fiber optic launch cables and adapters must be of high quality. The launch cables must not show excessive wear resulting from repetitive coiling and storing of the tester interface adapters.
 8. The Pass or Fail condition for the link-under-test is determined by the results of the required individual tests.
 9. A Pass or Fail result for each parameter is determined by comparing the measured values with the specified test limits for that parameter.
 10. Retest cables which fail performance testing.
 11. Replace cables which fail the second test.
- D. Performance Test Parameters:
1. TIA Standard 568-B prescribes that the single performance parameter for field testing of fiber optic links is link attenuation (alternative and equivalent term: insertion loss), when installing components compliant with this standard.
 2. Calculate the link attenuation by the following formulas specified in TIA Standard 568-B:
 - a. Link Attenuation = Cable Attn + Connector Attn + Splice Attn.
 - b. Cable Attn (dB) = Attenuation Coefficient (dB/km) * Length (km).
 - c. The values for the Attenuation Coefficient are listed below:

<u>Optical Fiber Type</u>	<u>Wavelength (nm)</u>	<u>Attenuation Coefficient (dB/km)</u>
Multimode 62.5/125 um	850	3.5
	1300	1.5
Multimode 50/125 um	850	3.5
	1300	1.5
Single-mode (Inside Plant)	1310	1.5
	1550	1.0
Single-mode (Outside Plant)	1310	0.5
	1550	0.5

1. Connector Attn (dB) = number of connector pairs * connector loss (dB).
 2. Maximum allowable connector loss = 0.75 dB.
 3. Splice Attn (dB) = number of splices (S) * splice loss (dB).
 - a. Maximum allowable splice loss = 0.3 dB.
 4. Link attenuation does not include any active devices or passive devices other than cable, connectors, and splices; i.e., link attenuation does not include such devices as optical bypass switches, couplers, repeaters, or optical amplifiers.
 5. Test equipment that measures the link length and automatically calculates the link loss based on the above formulas is preferred.
- E. The above link test limits attenuation are based on the use of the One Reference Jumper Method specified by TIA-526-14A, Method B, and TIA-526-7, Method A.1. Follow the procedures established by these standards or application notes to accurately conduct performance testing.
- F. Perform a Tier 1 test as indicated in TIA 568-C.0 and provide the following test results:
1. Cable length
 2. Polarity
 3. Overall fiber link attenuation
- G. In addition to the Tier 1 test, perform a Tier 2 test as indicated in TIA 568-C.0 using an OTDR and provide the following test results:
1. Cable attenuation
 2. Connector and splice insertion loss
 3. Connector and splice reflectance
- H. Each fiber optical link terminated with an optical adapter system that does not impose a transmission direction because the adapters are not or cannot be ganged and must be tested and documented in both directions since the direction of the signal transmission cannot be predicted at the time of installation.
- I. Approved Test Equipment Manufacturers
1. Fiber Optic Test Equipment
 - a. Agilent Technologies
 - b. Corning Cable Systems
 - c. Fluke
 - d. Ideal Industries
- J. Test Result Documentation:
1. Record the test result information for each link in the memory of the field tester upon completion of the test.
 2. Transfer the test result records saved by the tester into a Windows-based database utility that allows for the maintenance, inspection, and archiving of these test records. Guarantee these results are transferred to the PC unaltered; i.e., "as saved in the tester" at the end of each test.
 - a. The popular "csv" format (comma separated value format) does not provide adequate protection and will not be acceptable.
 3. Store and deliver the database for the completed job, including twisted-pair copper cabling links if applicable, on CD-ROM. Include the software tools required to view, inspect, and print any selection of test reports.
 4. Provide a paper copy of the test results that lists all the links that have been tested with the following summary information:
 - a. The identification of the link in accordance with the naming convention defined in the overall system documentation.
 - b. The overall Pass/Fail evaluation of the link-under-test including the attenuation worst case margin (margin is defined as the difference between the measured value and the test limit value).
 - c. The date and time the test results were saved in the memory of the tester.

5. General information to be provided in the electronic database containing the test result information for each link:
 - a. The identification of the customer site as specified by the end-user.
 - b. The overall Pass/Fail evaluation of the link-under-test.
 - c. The name of the standard selected to execute the stored test results.
 - d. The cable type and the value of the "index of refraction" used for length calculations.
 - e. The date and time the rest results were saved in the memory of the tester.
 - f. The brand name, model and serial number of the tester.
 - g. The revision of the tester software and the revision of the test standards database in the tester.
 - h. The detailed test results data to be provided in the electronic database for each tested optical fiber must contain the following information:
 - 1) The identification of the link/fiber in accordance with the naming convention defined in the overall system documentation.
 - 2) The insertion loss (attenuation) measured at each wavelength, the test limit calculated for the corresponding wavelength, and the margin (difference between the measured attenuation and the test limit value).
 - 3) Report the link length for each optical fiber for which the test limit was calculated based on the formulas.
 - i. Cable type value of NPV used for length calculations. Follow BICSI guidelines for checking the NPV of the cable being used.

END OF SECTION 27 1323

SECTION 27 1333
COMMUNICATIONS COAXIAL BACKBONE CABLING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes cable and installation for coaxial backbone communications cable systems to be used for master antenna television systems (MATV) using a community antenna television cable (CATV) service or Satellite Earth-Station System as the signal source.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. CATV: Community antenna television.
- B. RF: Radio frequency.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include detailed manufacturer's specifications for each component specified. Include data on features, ratings, and performance.
- B. Shop Drawings: For television equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
- C. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with requirements.
- D. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements of installed systems.
- E. Maintenance Data: For television equipment and components to include maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. In addition to requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Contract Closeout" or in Division 27 Section "Common Work Results for Communications" include the following:
 - 1. Detailed operating instructions covering operation under both normal and abnormal conditions.
- F. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is an authorized representative of the television equipment manufacturer, for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project, to supervise installation of the system.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Comply with 47 CFR 15, 17, and 76.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: System components are equipped and rated for the environments where installed.
 - 1. Service Conditions for Indoor Equipment: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following environmental conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Temperature: 32 deg F to 122 deg F.
 - b. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Work of this Section with requirements of CATV service provider.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Cable:
 - a. Commscope
 - b. General
 - c. Systimax
 - d. Belden
 - e. Superior Essex

2.02 SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS

- A. Cable: Coaxial cable elements shall be 100 percent factory-sweep tested to meet or exceed requirements of NFPA 70, Articles 725, 800, and 820.
- B. Cable type: 500 series
 1. Jacket material: Fire retardant PE
 2. Outer conductor material: aluminum
 3. Conductor: .500 solid copper-clad aluminum
 4. Impedance: 75 ohm
 5. Environmental space: Plenum
- C. Connectors:
 1. 500 or 625 Series: AV coaxial connectors to be 75-ohm self-terminating type "N" connector compression-style fittings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cable. Check raceways, cables trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, roofs, equipment bases, and roof supports for suitable conditions where television equipment is to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways, except in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics, in hollow gypsum board partitions, and as otherwise indicated. Conceal wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- B. Pulling Cable: Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
- C. Exposed Cable: Install parallel to building lines, follow surface contours, and support the cable according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not run adjacent and parallel to power or data cables.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 27 0553.01 "Identification for Communications Systems."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.
- B. Provide reports printed on 8-1/2 inch x 11 inch sheets and in electronic PDF format. Provide one or more three-ring binders as required to contain reports. Provide a separate tab for each group of cables served from a common telecommunications space. Provide an additional tab for backbone cables. Present cable testing results in a sequenced or otherwise orderly matrix format.
- C. Coaxial Cable Testing
 1. Test horizontal cables from the punch-down blocks, patch panels, or other termination equipment, to the jacks unless otherwise noted.
 2. Utilize cable testing equipment capable of generating a report for each cable tested. Provide a hard copy report per TIA-568-B.
 3. Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations.
- D. Field Test Requirements for Coax Cabling
 1. Test every cabling link in the installation.
 2. The installed coax links shall be tested from the telecommunications space to the telecommunications wall outlet in the work area.
 3. Test 100 percent of the installed cabling links. Provide result of the tests for all links in the test results documentation as specified below.
 4. Tests must be performed by trained technicians who have successfully attended an appropriate training program and have obtained a certificate as proof thereof. Appropriate training programs include, but are not limited to, installation certification programs provided by BICSI or the ACP (Association of Cabling Professionals).
 5. The tester must be within the calibration period recommended by the manufacturer in order to achieve the manufacturer specified measurement accuracy.
 6. The tester interface adapters must be of high quality and the cable must not show any twisting or kinking resulting from coiling and storing of the tester interface adapters. Provide proof that the interface has been calibrated within the period recommended by the manufacturer.
 7. Determine a Pass or Fail result for each parameter by comparing the measured values with the specified test limits for that parameter. Mark with an asterisk (*) the test result of a parameter when the result is closer to the test limit than the accuracy of the field tester. Provide documentation as an aid to interpret results marked with asterisks.
- E. Coaxial Performance Test Parameters:
 1. Test all coaxial cables according to the parameters set forth below. The test of each link must contain the following parameters as detailed below.
 2. Perform the following tests: Length, insertion loss (attenuation), propagation delay and impedance.
- F. Approved Test Equipment Manufacturers
 1. Agilent Technologies
 2. Fluke
 3. Ideal Industries
- G. Test Result Documentation:
 1. Record the test results information for each link in the memory of the field tester upon completion of the test.

2. Transfer the test results records saved by the tester into a Windows™-based database utility that allows for the maintenance, inspection and archiving of these test records. Guarantee that the measurement results are transferred to the PC unaltered, i.e., "as saved in the tester", at the end of each test and that these results cannot be modified at a later time.
3. Store and deliver the database for the completed job on CD-ROM including the software tools required to review, inspect, and print any selection of test reports.
4. Provide a paper copy of the test results that lists all the links that have been tested with the following summary information:
 - a. The identification of the link in accordance with the naming convention defined in the overall system documentation.
 - b. The test parameter values for each link.
 - c. The date and time the rest results were saved in the memory of the tester.
5. Provide the following general information in the electronic database with the test results information for each link:
 - a. The identification of the project site as specified by the end-user.
 - b. The identification of the link in accordance with the naming convention defined in the overall system documentation.
 - c. The cable type and the value of NVP used for length calculations.
 - d. The date and time the rest results were saved in the memory of the tester.
 - e. The brand name, model, and serial number of the tester.
 - f. The identification of the tester interface.
 - g. The revision of the tester software and the revision of the test standards database in the tester.
 - h. The test results information must contain information on each of the required test parameters that are listed above and as further detailed below.
6. The detailed test results data to be provided in the electronic database for each tested link must contain the results obtained for each parameter in accordance with the description above. For each of the frequency-dependent test parameters, the value measured at every frequency during the test is stored. In this case, the PC-resident database program must be able to process the stored results to display and print a color graph of the measured parameters.

END OF SECTION 27 1333

SECTION 27 1513
COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes wire, cable, connecting devices, installation, and testing for wiring systems to be used as signal transmission media for voice and high-speed data transmission.
- B. The horizontal cabling includes the installation of jacks, face plates, copper station cable, distribution frame hardware, cross-connect hardware and testing.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Horizontal Cable: Cable that runs from the telecommunications space to a device location. It may be installed in either a horizontal or vertical plane.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Preconstruction Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: Include data on features, ratings, and performance for each cable, component, termination methods and testing criteria for each component specified.
 - 2. Wiring diagrams. Show typical wiring schematics including the following:
 - a. Workstation outlets, jacks, and jack assemblies.
 - b. Patch cords.
 - c. Patch panels.
 - d. Fiber-optic boxes.
 - 3. Product Performance Certificates: For each type of cable, connector, and terminal equipment,
 - a. Signed by product manufacturer.
- B. Post-Construction Submittals:
 - 1. Construction Record Drawings.
 - 2. Field quality control test reports.
 - 3. Documentation of the test equipment, equipment certification and calibration of test equipment utilized.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with Section 27 0501 "Common Work Results for Communications".
- B. Comply with Section 27 0553.01 "Identification for Communications Systems".
- C. The Contractor shall be responsible for verifying that all conduits and raceways are ready for cable placement

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate with pathway installer to ensure that TIA distance limits and installation tolerances are maintained. Outlets that are beyond TIA distance shall be brought to the Owner/Engineer's attention as soon as possible. Owner/Engineer shall not be responsible for outlets beyond distance limits as a result of deviation from the plans and/or incorrectly routed sleeves and pathways.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers:
 - 1. Copper Horizontal Cable:
 - a. Belden CDT.
 - b. CommScope.
 - c. Superior Essex
 - 2. Copper Termination Equipment:
 - a. Belden CDT.

- b. CommScope.
- c. Ortronics.
- d. Panduit Corp.
- 3. Copper Entrance Protectors:
 - a. Comm-Omni.
 - b. Corning Cable Systems.
 - c. ITW Linx.
 - d. Porta Systems.
 - e. Reliable.
 - f. Systimax Connectivity Solutions.
 - g. 3M.

2.02 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Coordinate the features of materials and equipment so they form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum future performance.
- B. Expansion Capability: Unless otherwise indicated on the detail drawings, provide spare positions in cross-connect and patch panels, and terminal strips to accommodate 20 percent future increase in active workstations.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain all structured wiring products twisted-pair through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. The Information Transport System backbone cabling shall conform to the requirement of TIA-568-B. In conformance with this standard, the standard shall be designed in a hierarchical star topology.
- E. Horizontal cabling shall provide interconnections between telecommunications spaces and work area outlets. The horizontal cabling system to consist of all cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, patch cords and/or jumpers used for termination or cross-connection.
- F. Horizontal cable shall be installed in a star topology. Each work area outlet shall be cabled directly to telecommunications space serving the area.
- G. All horizontal cabling terminations shall be located in telecommunications spaces. Bridged taps, splitters or other unapproved hardware and facilities not specifically indicated on the detail drawings shall not be used as a part of the backbone cabling.
- H. Multi User Telecommunications Outlet Assemblies (MUTOA) are not allowed unless otherwise specifically detailed in the construction documents.
- I. Consolidation Points and intermediate cross-connects are not allowed unless otherwise specifically detailed in the construction documents.
- J. All cables placed in conduits and cable trays shall not exceed the fill capacities as listed in TIA-569 even though maximum fill quantities as listed in ANSI/NFPA 70 are less strict.
- K. Upon entering the telecommunications space the cabling shall be neatly combed and separated according to service application. All added cables shall consistently follow the same path. Separate system cabling by pathway sleeve where possible.
- L. All cabling shall be new and unused, provided, installed, terminated and tested to perform a complete system. Installers shall not deviate from the specified structured cabling system components and any substitutions not approved via the formal substitution process will be rejected and removed and replaced with the approved products at the Contractor's expense.
- M. CCTV, Wireless Access Point, and IP Device Data Cables:
 - 1. Provide horizontal data cabling to each device outlet location where indicated on the drawings.
 - 2. Cables and jacks for these devices shall maintain the same coloring scheme as normal work area outlets.
 - 3. Cables will be terminated, tested and warranted utilizing the same criteria as the work area outlet horizontal cabling system.

2.03 MATERIALS

- A. Twisted-pair Cables:
 - 1. Cables: Listed as complying with the TIA-568-B Categories listed below.
 - 2. Conductors: Solid copper.
 - 3. UTP CMP (Plenum Rated) Cable: Listed for use in air-handling spaces. Features are as specified for cables, conductors, and UTP cable, except materials are modified as required for listing.
 - 4. Category 6:
 - a. Type: Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP), UL Listed, Category 6
 - b. Conductors: 23 AWG, copper
 - c. Quantity of Pairs: 4
 - d. Jacket Color: yellow
- B. Twisted-pair Terminal Equipment:
 - 1. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware:
 - a. Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
 - 1) Configuration: Flat.
 - (a) Mounting: TIA 19-inch rack mounting.
 - (b) TIA Category 6
 - (c) Front Connections: Modular jacks
 - (d) Rear Connections: 110
 - (e) Port Color: Black
 - (f) Wiring Scheme: T568B
 - (g) Ports: 48
 - (h) Capacity: Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair UTP cable.
 - 2. Splice Closures:
 - a. Designed for the number of cables, size of cables, quantity of conductors, and environment of the splice location.
 - b. Able to be positioned either horizontally or vertically as indicated on the drawings.
 - c. Closures effect a complete splice closure system and include the manufacturer's recommended hardware and parts for the splice type and environment including, but not limited to, end caps or covers, splice wrappers, flange seals, bond connectors and clamps, ground braids, alignment bars, lubricants, cover clips, external bond braids or ribbons, and cleaning kits.
 - 3. Splice Connecting Hardware:
 - a. 25-pair modular connectors specifically designed for straight splicing or half-tapping applications as required.
 - b. Designed to accommodate splicing of 22-26 AWG solid copper conductors having Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) or Polyethylene Insulation (PIC).
 - c. Solder plated contacts and filled (encapsulated) in moisture- or corrosion-prone environments.
 - d. Type: MS-4000 or 710 series hardware.
 - 4. Entrance Copper Lightning Protectors:
 - a. Termination Type:
 - 1) In: 110 connector.
 - 2) Out: 110 connector.
 - b. Number of Pairs: 25 pairs.
 - c. Fuse Type: 5-pin solid state.

2.04 PATCH CORDS

- A. Telecommunications Room:
 - 1. Quantity: one for each terminated jack.
 - 2. Length: 3'
 - 3. Color:

- a. Work Area Outlet: Yellow
- b. Wireless Access Point: Yellow
- c. CCTV Camera: Yellow
- 4. Jacket: CM.
- B. Workstation:
 - 1. Quantity: one for each terminated jack.
 - 2. Length: 7'
 - 3. Color: Yellow
 - 4. Jacket: CM
- C. CCTV Camera:
 - 1. Quantity: one for each terminated jack.
 - 2. Length: 3'
 - 3. Color: Green
 - 4. Jacket: CMP, listed for use in a plenum.
- D. Wireless Access Point:
 - 1. Quantity: one for each terminated jack.
 - 2. Length: 3'
 - 3. Color: Yellow
 - 4. Jacket: CMP, listed for use in a plenum.
- E. Provide patch cord which complies with manufacturer's warranty.
- F. Final quantities of each length to be determined prior to ordering.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Horizontal Cable: Use cable identified above for runs between telecommunications spaces and work area outlets for voice and data service.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide quantity of horizontal cables as indicated on the floor drawings and detail drawings. Install cables continuous from the jack on the communication outlet faceplate to the termination frame serving the area.
- B. Splicing of horizontal cables is not allowed.
- C. Intermediate cross-connect or other termination of horizontal cables is not allowed unless specifically detailed and specified otherwise.
- D. Terminate cables in accordance with TIA-568-B Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard, observing the industry standards for terminating the various types of color coded cables within a building.
- E. Route cables in a direct path between the termination points. Neatly arrange cables in cable trays and in communication closets. Provide D rings spaced a maximum of 12 inches on center to support cables run on the face of any plywood wall.
- F. Install cables in cable trays, pathways and sleeves provided.
- G. Velcro ties shall be used where appropriate or where specifically indicated in the contract document details. Where required ties shall be spaced at 5 feet to 6 feet in cable tray.
- H. Where cables must be installed between device and primary pathways, continuously support all cables from building structure in such a manner that the cable will not be damaged by normal building use.
- I. Run all cabling parallel and perpendicular to building structural elements unless specifically noted otherwise noted or as necessary where end-to-end lengths would otherwise exceed 290 feet.
- J. Provide strain relief for the cables above suspended ceilings, and where any continuous cable support system is interrupted, using mechanical fasteners such as necessary to maintain cable

Category rating of J-hooks and other necessary devices to support cables from the structure or ceiling support. Do not use suspended ceiling support wires or ceiling grid to support telecommunications cabling. Space cable supports 4-5 feet apart. Where cable runs exceed 100 feet, and metallic J-hook supports are utilized, place supports at differential intervals. Even spacing of metallic J-hooks for runs exceeding 100 feet are not permitted.

- K. In suspended ceiling and raised floor areas where duct, cable trays, or conduit are not available, bundle station wiring in groups of 50 or less. Secure with Velcro cable ties snug but not deforming the cable geometry. Support cable bundles via J-hooks attached to the building structure and framework at a maximum of 4-foot intervals.
- L. Do not attach to or support cable by fire sprinkler heads or delivery systems or any environmental sensor located in the ceiling air space.
- M. Plan cable installation and cable routes such that the capacity of the conduit and cable tray is used most efficiently. Fill conduits and sleeves to maximize capacity and to minimize cross-over of future cable installations.

3.03 HORIZONTAL CABLES

- A. Provide horizontal cables from each outlet to the nearest telecommunications space as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Route cables from outlets to communication closets so that the maximum cable length is 295 ft. (90 m) is maintained. Install cables parallel or perpendicular to the building structure.
- C. Allow adequate slack for cable termination.
 - 1. Wall outlets: 12 inches.
 - 2. Systems furniture: as necessary to reach the farthest point on each desktop using the furniture raceways plus 12 inches at the jack location.
 - 3. Telecommunications Spaces: as necessary to reach the most distant patch panel or punch-down block plus a length equal to 2 times the room height.
- D. Neatly arrange cables in cable trays and in telecommunications spaces.
- E. For areas and locations that are close to TIA distance limits, run a length test on proposed routing to said area or location. Inform Owner and Engineer of any jacks beyond TIA distance limits. Owner and Engineer shall not be responsible for out-of-distance outlets that are not tested prior to installation.

3.04 PATCH PANELS

- A. Provide patch panels wired 568B in each communications closet to terminate data station cables. Mount in equipment racks. See detail drawings.
- B. Mount patch panels on equipment racks or cabinets. See detail drawings.
- C. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

3.05 HORIZONTAL PATHWAYS

- A. In renovation projects, telecommunications cable pathways cannot always be accurately predicted and may need to be adjusted during construction. Direct pathways are needed to maintain cable length as required by this specification.
- B. Horizontal cables between the telecommunications space and the work area outlet shall be no longer than 295 ft. (90 m). If a location is identified which appears to exceed the distance limitation, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to field verify the actual distance prior to installing the horizontal cable. Upon discovery of an over-length cable, the Contractor shall cease installation of the cable and immediately notify the Owner and Engineer. The Contractor shall follow this notification with a formal Request for Information (RFI). The Contractor shall consult with the Engineer and Owner to resolve the problem. There shall be no additional payment to the Contractor for rerouting of over-length cables which are discovered after installation.

3.06 PERFORMANCE TESTING

- A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-B.1 when tested according to test procedures of this standard.
- B. Perform Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.
- C. Provide certification reports in electronic native format.
- D. Copper Cable Testing:
 - 1. Test horizontal cables from the punch-down blocks, patch panels, or other termination equipment, to the jacks unless otherwise noted.
 - 2. Utilize cable testing equipment capable of generating a report for each cable tested. Provide a hard copy report per TIA-568-B.
 - 3. Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations.
- E. Field Test Requirements for a 6 Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling System:
 - 1. Test every cabling link in the installation in accordance with the Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA) Standard TIA-568B, 100-Ohm Twisted-Pair Transmission Performance and Field Test Requirements.
 - 2. The installed twisted-pair horizontal links shall be tested from the IDF in the telecommunications space to the telecommunications wall outlet in the work area against the "Permanent Link" performance limits specification as defined in TIA-568-B.
 - 3. Test 100 percent of the installed cabling links. All cable links must pass the requirements of the standards mentioned above and as further detailed below. Any failing link shall be diagnosed and corrected. Follow corrective action with a new test to prove the corrected link meets the performance requirements. Provide the final and passing result of the tests for all links in the test results documentation as specified below.
 - 4. Tests must be performed by trained technicians who have successfully attended an appropriate training program and have obtained a certificate as proof thereof. Appropriate training programs include, but are not limited to, installation certification programs provided by BICSI or the ACP (Association of Cabling Professionals).
 - 5. The test equipment (tester) must comply with or exceed the accuracy requirements for the Level III field testers as defined in the TIA Cat 6 Document. The tester including the appropriate interface adapter must meet the specified accuracy requirements.
 - 6. The tester must be within the calibration period recommended by the manufacturer in order to achieve the manufacturer specified measurement accuracy.
 - 7. The tester interface adapters must be of high quality and the cable must not show any twisting or kinking resulting from coiling and storing of the tester interface adapters. Provide proof that the interface has been calibrated within the period recommended by the manufacturer.
 - 8. Determine the Pass or Fail condition for the link-under-test by the results of the required individual tests as detailed below. Any Fail result yields a Fail for the link-under-test. In order to achieve an overall Pass condition, the results for each individual test parameter must Pass (Pass* is not accepted).
- F. UTP 4-Pair Performance Test Parameters:
 - 1. Test all horizontal copper station cables for Category 6 according to the parameters set for in the TIA-568-B Standard. The test of each link must contain the following parameters as detailed below. In order to pass the link test, all measurements at each frequency in the range from 1 MHz through 250 MHz must meet or exceed the limit value determined in the above-mentioned standard.
 - 2. Perform the following tests as defined in TIA-568-B: Wire map, length, insertion loss (attenuation), NEXT loss, pair-to-pair PSNEXT loss, ELFEXT loss, pair-to-pair PSELFEXT loss, return loss, ACR, PSACR, propagation delay and delay skew.

G. Approved Test Equipment Manufacturers

1. Horizontal Copper Test Equipment
 - a. Agilent Technologies
 - b. Fluke
 - c. Ideal Industries

H. Test Result Documentation:

1. Record the test results information for each link in the memory of the field tester upon completion of the test.
2. Transfer the test results records saved by the tester into a Windows™-based database utility that allows for the maintenance, inspection and archiving of these test records. Guarantee that the measurement results are transferred to the PC unaltered, i.e., "as saved in the tester", at the end of each test and that these results cannot be modified at a later time.
3. Store and deliver the database for the completed job on CD-ROM including the software tools required to review, inspect, and print any selection of test reports.
4. Provide a paper copy of the test results that lists all the links that have been tested with the following summary information:
 - a. The identification of the link in accordance with the naming convention defined in the overall system documentation.
 - b. The overall Pass/Fail evaluation of the link-under-test including the NEXT Headroom (overall worst case) number.
 - c. The date and time the rest results were saved in the memory of the tester.
5. Provide the following general information in the electronic database with the test results information for each link:
 - a. The identification of the project site as specified by the end-user.
 - b. The identification of the link in accordance with the naming convention defined in the overall system documentation.
 - c. The overall Pass/Fail evaluation of the link-under-test.
 - d. The name of the standard selected to execute the stored test results.
 - e. The cable type and the value of NVP used for length calculations.
 - f. The date and time the rest results were saved in the memory of the tester.
 - g. The brand name, model, and serial number of the tester.
 - h. The identification of the tester interface.
 - i. The revision of the tester software and the revision of the test standards database in the tester.
 - j. The test results information must contain information on each of the required test parameters that are listed above and as further detailed below.
6. The detailed test results data to be provided in the electronic database for each tested link must contain the results obtained for each parameter in accordance with the description above. For each of the frequency-dependent test parameters, the value measured at every frequency during the test is stored. In this case, the PC-resident database program must be able to process the stored results to display and print a color graph of the measured parameters. The PC-resident software shall also provide and print the summary numeric information for each test parameter as defined and prescribed by the TIA-568-B Standard document.

END OF SECTION 27 1513

SECTION 27 1533
COMMUNICATIONS COAXIAL HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes coaxial cable, connecting devices, installation, and testing for systems to be used as signal transmission media for master antenna television systems (MATV) using a community antenna television cable (CATV) service or Satellite Earth-Station System as the signal source.

1.02 DEFINITIONS:

- A. CATV: Community antenna television.
- B. CCTV: Closed-circuit television.
- C. MATV: Master antenna television.
- D. NTSC: National television system committee.
- E. RF: Radio frequency.

1.03 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Product Data: Include detailed manufacturer's specifications for each component specified. Include data on features, ratings, and performance.
- B. Shop Drawings: For television equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
- C. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with requirements.
- D. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements of installed systems.
- E. Maintenance Data: For television equipment and components to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. In addition to requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Contract Closeout" or in Division 27 Section "Common Work Results for Communications," include the following:
 - 1. Detailed operating instructions covering operation under both normal and abnormal conditions.
- F. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is an authorized representative of the television equipment manufacturer, for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project, to supervise installation of the system.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Comply with 47 CFR 15, 17, and 76.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

- A. Environmental Limitations: System components are equipped and rated for the environments where installed.
 - 1. Service Conditions for Indoor Equipment: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following environmental conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Temperature: 32 deg F to 122 deg F.
 - b. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent.

1.06 COORDINATION:

- A. Coordinate Work of this Section with requirements of CATV service provider.

1.07 WARRANTY:

- A. Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.08 EXTRA MATERIALS:

- A. Furnish extra materials described below, before installation begins, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents. Provide not less than one of each item listed below. Deliver extra materials to Owner.
 - 1. Cable: 100 feet; each type used.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden
 - 2. Carol Cable
 - 3. CommScope
 - 4. Mohawk
 - 5. West Penn

2.02 SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS

- A. Cable: Coaxial cable elements have 75-ohms nominal impedance and are 100 percent factory-sweep tested to meet or exceed requirements of NFPA 70, Articles 725, 800, and 820. Cables run in air spaces are listed for use in plenums.
- B. Cable type: RG11
 - 1. Jacket material: Fire retardant PVC
 - 2. Shielding: tinned copper braid
 - 3. Conductor: No. 14 AWG solid copper-clad steel
 - 4. Impedance: 75 ohm
 - 5. Environmental space: Plenum
- C. Connectors: AV coaxial connectors to be 75-ohm self-terminating type "F" connector compression-style fittings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cable. Check raceways, cables trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, roofs, equipment bases, and roof supports for suitable conditions where television equipment is to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Outdoor Installation: Comply with ANSI C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."
- B. Install surge suppressors where AC-power operated devices are not protected against voltage transients by integral surge suppressors specified in UL 1449. Install surge suppressors at the devices' power-line terminals. Comply with Section 26 2700 "Low Voltage Distribution Equipment."
- C. Support and anchor antenna towers, masts, and mountings.

1. Concrete Foundations: Reinforced concrete complying with General Construction specification.
2. Steel Anchorage Components: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates complying with General Construction specification.
- D. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways, except in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics, in hollow gypsum board partitions, and as otherwise indicated. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- E. Pulling Cable: Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
- F. Exposed Cable: Install parallel to building lines, follow surface contours, and support the cable according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not run adjacent and parallel to power or data cables.
- G. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. .

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 27 0553.01 "Identification for Communications Systems."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.
- B. Provide reports printed on 8-1/2 inch x 11 inch sheets and in electronic PDF format. Provide one or more three-ring binders as required to contain reports. Provide a separate tab for each group of cables served from a common telecommunications space. Provide an additional tab for backbone cables. Present cable testing results in a sequenced or otherwise orderly matrix format.
- C. Coax Cable Testing
 1. Test horizontal cables from the punch-down blocks, patch panels, or other termination equipment, to the jacks unless otherwise noted.
 2. Utilize cable testing equipment capable of generating a report for each cable tested. Provide a hard copy report per TIA-568-B.
 3. Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations.
- D. Field Test Requirements for Coax Cabling
 1. Test every cabling link in the installation.
 2. The installed coax links shall be tested from the telecommunications space to the telecommunications wall outlet in the work area.
 3. Test 100 percent of the installed cabling links. Provide result of the tests for all links in the test results documentation as specified below.
 4. Tests must be performed by trained technicians who have successfully attended an appropriate training program and have obtained a certificate as proof thereof. Appropriate training programs include, but are not limited to, installation certification programs provided by BICSI or the ACP (Association of Cabling Professionals).
 5. The tester must be within the calibration period recommended by the manufacturer in order to achieve the manufacturer specified measurement accuracy.
 6. The tester interface adapters must be of high quality and the cable must not show any twisting or kinking resulting from coiling and storing of the tester interface adapters. Provide proof that the interface has been calibrated within the period recommended by the manufacturer.

7. Determine a Pass or Fail result for each parameter by comparing the measured values with the specified test limits for that parameter. Mark with an asterisk (*) the test result of a parameter when the result is closer to the test limit than the accuracy of the field tester. Provide documentation as an aid to interpret results marked with asterisks.
- E. Coax Performance Measurements:
 1. Perform the following measurements: Length, insertion loss (attenuation), propagation delay and impedance.
 - a. Length
 - b. Insertion loss (attenuation)
 - c. Propagation delay
 - d. Impedance
- F. Approved Test Equipment Manufacturers
 1. Coax Test Equipment
 2. Agilent Technologies
 3. Fluke
 4. Ideal Industries
- G. Test Result Documentation:
 1. Record the test results information for each link in the memory of the field tester upon completion of the test.
 2. Transfer the test results records saved by the tester into a Windows™-based database utility that allows for the maintenance, inspection and archiving of these test records. Guarantee that the measurement results are transferred to the PC unaltered, i.e., "as saved in the tester", at the end of each test and that these results cannot be modified at a later time.
 3. Store and deliver the database for the completed job on CD-ROM including the software tools required to review, inspect, and print any selection of test reports.
 4. Provide a paper copy of the test results that lists all the links that have been tested with the following summary information:
 - a. The identification of the link in accordance with the naming convention defined in the overall system documentation.
 - b. The test parameter values for each link.
 - c. The date and time the rest results were saved in the memory of the tester.
 5. Provide the following general information in the electronic database with the test results information for each link:
 - a. The identification of the project site as specified by the end-user.
 - b. The identification of the link in accordance with the naming convention defined in the overall system documentation.
 - c. The cable type and the value of NVP used for length calculations.
 - d. The date and time the rest results were saved in the memory of the tester.
 - e. The brand name, model, and serial number of the tester.
 - f. The identification of the tester interface.
 - g. The revision of the tester software and the revision of the test standards database in the tester.
 - h. The test results information must contain information on each of the required test parameters that are listed above and as further detailed below.
 6. The detailed test results data to be provided in the electronic database for each tested link must contain the results obtained for each parameter in accordance with the description above. For each of the frequency-dependent test parameters, the value measured at every frequency during the test is stored. In this case, the PC-resident database program must be able to process the stored results to display and print a color graph of the measured parameters.

END OF SECTION 27 1533

SECTION 27 1543
COMMUNICATIONS FACEPLATES AND CONNECTORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes the provision and installation of jacks, face plates, copper station cable termination, fiber optic station cable termination, labeling and associated hardware recognized as necessary and as described in the project drawings and in these specifications.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Preconstruction Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: Include data on features, ratings, and performance for each cable, component, termination methods and testing criteria for each component specified.
 - 2. Samples: For workstation outlets, jacks, jack assemblies, and faceplates for color
 - a. Selection and evaluation of technical features.
- B. Post-Construction Submittals:
 - 1. Construction Record Drawings.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with Section 27 0501 "Common Work Results for Communications".
- B. Comply with Section 27 0553.01 "Identification for Communications Systems".

1.04 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate with pathway/outlet box installer to ensure that faceplates are installed plumb and level flat to wall without gaps.
- B. In situations where communications device mounting heights vary from the adjacent electrical devices match the electrical device mounting heights.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden CDT.
 - 2. CommScope.
 - 3. Leviton Network Solutions.
 - 4. Ortronics.
 - 5. Panduit Corp.

2.02 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Coordinate the features of materials and equipment so they form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum future performance.

2.03 MATERIALS

- A. General:
 - 1. All materials and products specified herein are to be new, unused, of first quality and delivered to site in original packaging or shipping containers unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
- B. Faceplates:
 - 1. Modular Communications Faceplate:
 - a. Size: Single Gang
 - b. Outlet Positions: 4
 - c. Blanking Fillers: As required for unused jack openings
 - d. Material: Match Electrical Devices
 - e. Color: Match Electrical Devices. Black for faceplates located on millwork.
 - 2. Wall Phone Communications Faceplate:
 - a. Size: Single Gang

- b. Outlet Positions: 1
 - c. Material: Stainless Steel
 - d. Studs: Coordinate stud spacing with Owner for each wall phone location.
- C. Connectors:
- 1. Data Jack:
 - a. Mounting: Suitable for modular faceplate
 - b. TIA Category: 6
 - c. Pins: 8
 - d. Termination: T568B
 - e. Color: White
 - 2. Coaxial Connector:
 - a. Mounting: in modular faceplate
 - b. Type: Flush F-Connector
 - c. Attenuation: Less than 0.1 dB.
- D. Surface Mount Boxes:
- 1. Outlet Positions: 2
 - a. Material: Match Electrical Devices
 - b. Color: Match electrical devices
- E. Accessories:
- 1. Patch Cords: Refer to Copper and Fiber Horizontal Cabling sections.
 - 2. Labeling: Refer to Identification for Communications Systems section.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that outlet boxes are installed at proper height.
- B. Verify that wall openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by wall plates.
- C. Verify that floor boxes are adjusted and installed properly.
- D. Verify that openings in access floor are in proper locations.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean debris from outlet boxes.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide jacks as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Plate configurations shall be as indicated on the detail drawings.
- C. Provide a blanking filler for each unused faceplate opening.
- D. Install devices, such as but not limited to faceplates and jacks, plumb and level.
- E. Provide faceplates for all active and blank (spare) outlet locations.
- F. Install devices securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner.
- G. Work Area Communications Outlets Termination:
 - 1. Follow approved manufacturer's procedures for termination for the specific products installed and performance required.
- H. Coaxial Outlet Termination:
 - 1. All CATV cables shall be terminated using the matching connector and tool assembly for compression type connectors. Follow manufacturer's procedures for termination.

3.04 INTERFACE WITH OTHER WORK

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes with other trades to obtain unified and consistent location and mounting heights specified.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each wiring device for defects.
- B. Label each wall plate and communications port.

3.06 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.

3.07 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove splatters and restore finish.

END OF SECTION 27 1543

SECTION 27 4100
AUDIO-VIDEO SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Requirements for the visual display, processing, routing, interface, audio support, control, and other peripheral and support equipment for audiovisual (AV) systems.

1.02 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Requests for substitution of equipment/materials shall comply with Section 013000 regarding the proposed substitute item(s), specifications, and front/rear views.

1.03 REFERENCES

- A. InfoComm International, "Basics of Audio and Visual Systems Design".
- B. InfoComm 10:2013, "Audiovisual Systems Performance Verification".
- C. InfoComm 2M-2010, "Standard Guide for Audiovisual Systems Design and Coordination Processes".
- D. AVIXA, F501.01:2015 "Cable Labeling for Audiovisual Systems".

1.04 DEFINITIONS

- A. The term "OFE" shall refer to "Owner Furnished Equipment" which will be provided by the Owner to the Installer. This equipment will be integrated as required.
- B. The term "shall" is mandatory; the term "will" is informative; the term "should" is advisory; and the term "provide" means furnish and install.

1.05 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide all equipment, materials, associated hardware, power supplies, labor, transportation and incidentals, and all work needed for the installation and testing of the AV systems.
- B. The AV systems equipment will be installed within the equipment racks indicated within these specifications, associated drawings, and within the Owner provided areas associated with the specified systems. It is the responsibility of the AV Contractor to verify space within racks, rooms, and cabinetry prior to installation as a portion of the Submittal Documents.
- C. The work shall be in accordance with this specification and in conformity with the designs, layouts and descriptions shown on the drawings.
- D. Any and all structural, mounting, or rigging details within this package is strictly conceptual. It is the responsibility of the AV Contractor to coordinate with design team Structural Engineer as necessary. Calculations shop drawings, and details of any structural modifications or additions shall be submitted to the Architect for approval.
- E. Unless stated otherwise on the drawings, the work shall include everything necessary or incidental to complete the installation EXCEPT wire raceway (including conduit), raceway fittings, outlet boxes, pull boxes, terminal cabinets, 120 volt AC power circuits, lighting systems, and insulated ground cables.

1.06 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. The AV Contractor shall provide low-voltage "on/off" control system wiring, low-voltage "on/off" control switches, and certain AC power/ground requirements internal to the equipment racks as specifically noted herein and/or on the drawings.
- B. Except when plenum rated cabling is used above finished ceilings, it is required that cabling for microphone and line inputs, wideband RGBHV, video, control and other AV related cabling be routed inside the comprehensive system of conduit indicated on the drawings and installed by others. Floor and wall boxes shall serve as the primary interface points to the AV system.
- C. Provide and install cover plates, connectors and associated cabling to link all floor and wall boxes to all affiliated local and remote AV components. The Owner will provide no additional conduit, power or workboxes. If additional infrastructure is required, include provisions for what

- is additionally required in the proposal. No wiremold or surface mounted raceway will be permitted.
- D. All touch panel layouts are to comply with the applicable Owner's standards for touch panel layouts in both aesthetic and programing types.

1.07 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Performance Standards: Unless restricted by the published specification of a particular piece of equipment, or unless otherwise required, the following minimum performance standards shall be met by the AV system:
1. Audio:
 - a. S/N (including crosstalk and hum): 75dB minimum.
 - b. Total Harmonic Distortion: 0.5% maximum from 30 Hz to 15,000 Hz.
 - c. Frequency Response: Flat within +1.0 dB, 30 Hz to 15,000 Hz.
 2. Display:
 - a. Minimum 150:1 contrast ratio.
 3. Video:
 - a. S/N (peak to RMS), unweighted DC to 4.2 MHz: 45 dB minimum.
 - b. Crosstalk, unweighted DC to 4.2 MHz: 45 dB minimum.
 - c. Frequency Response (RGBHV): Within +0.5 dB to 300 MHz.
 - d. Frequency Response (composite): Within +0.5 dB to 10 MHz.
 - e. Frequency Response (component): Within +0.5 dB to 100 MHz.
 - f. Line and Field Tilt: 2% maximum.
 - g. Differential Gain: 3% maximum.
 - h. Differential Phase: 2 degrees maximum.
 4. Performance Test Signal Paths: The signal paths for the above Performance Standards shall be as follows:
 - a. Audio: From any and all source inputs (microphones, audiotape units, videotape units, etc.) through all audio mixers, switchers, distribution amplifiers, codec's, etc., to all signal destinations.
 - b. Video: From all source inputs (cameras, computers, videotape units, etc.) through all switchers, processors, distribution amplifiers, etc., to all signal destinations.

1.08 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with the requirements of project General Conditions. Verify with the Architect, the quantity of copies required for each submittal package to allow copies to be: retained by the AV Engineer (and, as applicable, any other reviewing party); distributed to the Architect (and, as applicable, the Owner, Design Team members, and General Contractor or Construction Manager); and returned to the AV Contractor. Quantity shall be minimized by limiting distribution only to persons having a need-to-know.
- B. Submittals shall comply with the overall project schedule. Failure to make timely, complete submittals is considered to be a lack of substantial progress of the work in the section.
- C. For the first submittal, also referred to as Shop Drawings, the AV Contractor shall provide the following:
1. A complete list of all equipment and materials intended for the project, and with the list arranged in the same order as in the specifications. The material and equipment lists shall be submitted and reviewed before any equipment and material is purchased.
 2. The equipment list shall be accompanied by manufacturer's specification sheets on all MAJOR pieces of equipment, including: video projectors, amplifiers, mixers, program source equipment, signal processing, loudspeakers, control system, and other MAJOR components of the audiovisual system. Unless directed otherwise in the front-end portion of the contract documents, cut sheets for minor items such as headphones, audio and video adapters, and audio and video connectors shall not be included. However, complete cut sheets shall be required for all substitutes or other equipment not specified herein.
 3. Shop drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specifically prepared for this project by the AV Contractor, Manufacturer, Supplier, or Distributor to illustrate some

- portion of the work that includes necessary components, connectors, cabling, and connectivity.
- D. Sufficiently prior to installation of each respective portion of work, the AV Contractor shall submit the following:
1. All panel and plate layouts (such as for wall boxes and for rack/cart-mounting) indicating locations of connectors, engraving, labeling, nomenclature, panel material, and finish.
 2. All Equipment racks, cabinets, consoles, tables and cart front elevations showing equipment and panel layout.
 3. Control system button/panel/screen layouts.
 4. All non-factory equipment modifications.
 5. All cable labeling plans
 6. For any permanent exposed cable applications, written authorization from the Architect (or Architect's designated Engineer) as to which locations are approved in addition to cable pathway being utilized
 7. Shop drawings as indicated elsewhere in these specifications and/or on the project drawings.
- E. Copies of all reviewed submittals shall be kept at the project site during the construction of the project, for reference.
- F. If the submittal is technically disapproved, the Engineer will return necessary copies to the PM with written explanation attached indicating the areas the submittal deviated from the system specifications.
- G. EQUIPMENT MANUALS
1. At the completion of the project, the AV Contractor shall compile a minimum of three (or quantity as described under the General Conditions, plus one copy) complete, identical copies (sets) of the items listed below.
 - a. All shop drawings of physical details (corrected to take into account any submittal review notations).
 - b. Original copies of manufacturers' catalogue sheets on ALL supplied equipment;
 - c. Original copies of manufacturers' engineering data sheets on ALL supplied equipment;
 - d. Original copies of ALL literature supplied with each item of equipment, including operating instructions and maintenance manuals. Manuals not routinely supplied with an item of equipment will not be required;
 - e. Other "as installed" Contractor-generated or vendor-generated drawings of the system which are not otherwise reflected in the project drawings.
 2. CD ROM's shall include the programming files for each of the systems within the project. These files shall be utilized to return the systems to the base line of operation established at the time of Final Systems Test and Equivalentization. Source Code files shall become property of the Owner with no license limitations.
- H. AS-INSTALLED WIRING DIAGRAMS
1. Five working days prior to the proof of performance test, the Contractor shall deliver to the Owner, two complete sets of as-installed wiring diagrams of the system. The diagrams shall show all inputs and outputs of electronic and passive equipment correctly identified according to the markers installed on the interconnecting cables, equipment and room/area locations.
- I. SYSTEM OPERATION MANUAL
1. Produce this manual specifically for the system detailed herein. The manual shall describe all procedures necessary to activate the system to provide for the functional requirements, except as specifically excluded by the Owner. This section shall provide a non-technical graphic and narrative "how-to" users guide for the procedures needed to operate the system. The document shall contain a section on operating the system's equipment in the event of control system failure. Control system touchpanel layouts shall be accompanied by narrative text describing step-by-step function engagement.

1.09 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contractor Qualifications:
 - 1. Work in this section shall be performed by a AV Contractor who: complies with the requirements of Division 01, and is licensed to perform work of this type in the project jurisdiction, and has at least five (5) years of verifiable direct experience with the devices, equipment and systems of the type and scope specified herein.
 - 2. The Contractor's AV Technicians assigned to the systems shall be fully trained, qualified, and carry valid and current industry certifications regarding the engineering, installation, operation, and testing of AV technologies. At least one (1) CTS-D or CTS-I shall be assigned to oversee the complete design and installation of the system. The Contractor shall provide formal written evidence of current industry certifications for the designer(s) and installer(s) dedicated to this project as a part of their submittal or to the AV Engineer before being allowed to commence work on the system.
 - a. The AV Contractor shall include, with his bid, a list of credentialed staff who will be actively involved in this project including specific tasks each will perform. These personnel shall have at least three (3) years direct experience in similar work, evidence of which shall be verified in writing with appropriate references.
 - b. The AV Contractor shall have a minimum of one full-time staff member, who has a minimum of three (3) years direct experience and be a factory certified programmer on most recent version of the specified control system software and technology. This individual shall be the same throughout the execution of the work unless illness, loss of personnel, or other reasonable circumstances intervene. The replacement shall be approved by the AV Engineer
- B. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than 2 hours normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain display equipment through a single source authorized by manufacturer to distribute each product.
- D. CERTIFICATIONS
 - 1. After the system has been provided, pretested, and found to meet the requirements of this specification, the Contractor shall submit a letter to the AV Engineer certifying that the system is ready for the formal proof of performance test to be accomplished in the presence of the Engineer or Engineers' representative.
 - a. In the interim, the systems shall be left operating to "burn-in".
 - b. A copy of each recorded system pretest measurements shall be submitted to the AV Engineer with the certification. The Contractor shall submit one copy of the measurements to the Engineer for review 15 working days prior to the test.
- E. TEST EQUIPMENT LIST
 - 1. Each Contractor is responsible for furnishing all test equipment required to test the system in accordance with the parameters specified. Unless otherwise stated, the test equipment shall not be considered part of the system. Each Contractor shall furnish test equipment of accuracy better than the parameters to be tested.
 - 2. The test equipment furnished by each Contractor shall have a calibration tag of an acceptable calibration service dated not more than 12 months prior to the test. As part of the submittal, a test equipment list shall be furnished that includes the make and model number of the following type of equipment as a minimum. A sample of each of the following items shall be furnished to the AV Engineer for approval prior to installation. The samples may be returned to each Contractor at the discretion of the Owner:
 - a. Two foot section of each cable and/or wire to be used with connectors installed and original equipment manufacturer's cable sweep compliance and/or certification tags as specified herein.
 - b. Back Boxes and junction boxes.
 - c. Cover plates used for wall and floor boxes.
 - d. AV outlets with back box, cover plate, and outlets installed.
 - e. UPS equipment (if required by system design).

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND PROTECTION

- A. The AV Contractor shall protect all work, materials and equipment from damage due to any cause. He shall provide for the safety and new condition of the equipment and materials until final acceptance by the Owner. The AV Contractor will replace all damaged or defective materials and/or equipment as directed by the Architect or AV Engineer.
- B. Equipment racks and other exposed equipment shall be kept covered and protected from airborne contaminates. The AV Contractor shall clean all debris from the equipment room(s) and control console area, and shall clean all equipment and the interior rack floor, prior to system commissioning activities.

1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. During the course of project construction, the AV Contractor shall personally examine the site of the proposed work and verify the conditions which involve his work.
- B. Prior to equipment installation all AV equipment that requires an IP address shall be turned over to the owner for IP registration. The owner shall be setting up an onsite area for this IP registration.
- C. By the act of submitting a bid, the AV Contractor will be deemed to have made reasonable allowances for site examinations and site conditions, and included all costs in his proposal. Failure to verify site conditions will not be considered a basis for the granting of additional compensation.
- D. The AV Contractor shall comply with all applicable national and local codes, ordinances, and obtain all required permits. The AV Contractor shall be held responsible for any violations of the law within the scope of his work.
- E. All equipment shall be new and in proper operating condition. All workmanship shall be of the finest quality by experienced installation technicians.
- F. The AV Contractor shall contact Architect, in writing, regarding the selection of colors for all equipment such as loudspeaker grilles, exposed loudspeaker boxes, wall plates, millwork, laminate, and other items specific to the project prior to ordering equipment.
- G. In addition to a complete set of the system project drawings and specifications, the AV Contractor shall maintain at the job site a complete set of manufacturer's original operation, instruction, installation, and service manuals for each equipment item, for reference.
- H. The AV Contractor shall schedule and sequence the AV system rough-in work to coordinate with the established general construction sequence as updated from time to time by Architect.
- I. Once the AV Contractor begins work at the project site, the company shall maintain a project manager for the duration of the work to supervise the work force and to provide coordination with other trades and/or Architect.
- J. The project manager shall attend any regularly scheduled construction progress meetings. These meetings will include, but not be limited to Owner Architect Meetings, walk through meetings with the Owner and Engineer, and weekly construction meetings.
- K. The AV Contractor shall conform to all site policies regarding safety, job site hours, and any additional policy which may affect site conditions.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. The AV Contractor shall warrant all work executed under this contract, including all in-shop and onsite material, parts and labor, for a period of twelve months.
- B. Warranty period to start after the date of final acceptance of the system by Owner.
- C. The Contractor shall provide original equipment manufacturer's equipment warranty documents, to the Owner (or Facility Contracting Officer if the Facility has taken possession of the building), that certifies each item of equipment installed conforms to each original equipment manufacturer's published specifications.

- D. The Owners maintenance personnel shall have the ability to contact the AV Contractor and original equipment manufacturers for emergency maintenance and logistic assistance, remote diagnostic testing, and assistance in resolving technical problems. This contact capability shall be provided by the Contractor and each original equipment manufacturer at no additional cost to the Owner.
- E. All AV Contractor maintenance and supervisor personnel shall be fully qualified by the original equipment manufacturers and must provide copies of current and qualified original equipment manufacturer training certificates and original equipment manufacturer certification upon request.
- F. The warranty services are limited to normal business hours, unless additional agreements are made between the Owner and the AV Contractor.
- G. The AV Contractor shall visit the job just prior to the end of the warranty period to check all equipment for proper system operation. Any defective equipment found shall be replaced or repaired under the terms of the system warranty.
- H. The AV Contractor shall provide alternate pricing for second year and third year on-site services, and supply specific detail of the services and warranties that would be provided.
- I. **RESPONSE TIME DURING THE ONE YEAR WARRANTY PERIOD**
 - 1. The Owner or Facility Contracting Officer is the AV Contractor's reporting and contact official for system trouble calls, during the warranty period.
 - a. A standard work week is considered 8:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M., Monday through Friday.
 - 1) The Contractor shall respond and correct on-site trouble calls, during the standard work week to:
 - 2) Trouble call within one working day of its report. A routine trouble is considered a trouble which causes a single interface, projector or loudspeaker component to be intermittent or inoperable.
 - 3) An emergency trouble call within four hours of its report. An emergency trouble is considered a trouble which causes the entire display or audio system to be inoperable at anytime.
- J. **WORK NOT INCLUDED**
 - 1. Maintenance and repair service shall not include the performance of any work due to improper use; accidents; other vendor, Contractor, or Owner tampering or negligence, for which the Contractor is not directly responsible and does not control. The Contractor shall immediately notify the Owner or Facility Contracting Officer upon the discovery of these incidents, in writing. The Owner or Facility Contracting Officer will investigate all reported incidents and render findings concerning any AV Contractors responsibility.

1.13 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. The AV Contractor shall visit the job just prior to the end of the warranty period to check all equipment for proper system operation. Any defective equipment found shall be replaced or repaired under the terms of the system warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. **GENERAL**
 - 1. Passive and electronic components and cabling shall be provided under the original equipment manufacturer's recommendations and guidance, to prevent damage to any system equipment from electrostatic discharges. The Contractor shall contact the Engineer for technical review and approval for this requirement in case of system redesign or change of technical approved system equipment that may require substitution.
 - 2. It is the intention of these specifications to form a guide for complete and properly operating AV systems. These specifications' equipment and hardware listings herein represent only some of the major items of the systems' prerequisites. The major items of equipment shall be furnished in the quantity indicated by the one-line diagrams on the drawings or in the quantity as specified herein. However, where an item of equipment or

hardware that may not be specifically shown on the single line drawings or specified herein this general and/or a specific section, but is required for complete and properly operating AV systems operation or installation, it shall be furnished by the AV Contractor.

3. Any item necessary for the operation of the systems within this document but not specifically listed or drawn shall be included by the bidder to the bidders pricing which includes pricing for all incidentals and labor necessary to complete the installation.
4. In any case, where a specific specification has not been included herein or shown on the drawings for any item that is required, the AV Contractor shall furnish only the highest quality equipment or material consistent with the quality of other specified equipment and material.
5. Unless otherwise designated, the AV Contractor shall provide all of one type of equipment from one manufacturer; for example, power amplifiers of one type to be provided by one manufacturer; all loudspeakers of one type by one manufacturer.
6. All major components of technical system equipment shall be provided and installed by a qualified AV Contractor as outlined in Part 1 of this section.
7. All equipment shall be of professional quality. All electronic audio devices shall have electronic or transformer balanced inputs and outputs except for specific program source equipment and specific mixing console inputs and/or outputs. If an electronic device specified or furnished has an unbalanced input and/or output, the AV Contractor shall make provisions to balance said input/output (i.e., outboard line-level transformer as approved) unless other arrangements have been agreed upon with Architect.
8. Some items listed in these specifications are custom-made products. Ensure when pricing and ordering equipment that the exact part number called out is used. If there is a discrepancy, the AV Contractor shall contact the Architect for clarification.
9. Each digital or digital-controlled equipment component, such as audio delay units or equivalentizers, shall have its power cord connected via a 120VAC spike suppressor (Furman PL-8 Pro).
10. Each software programmable device furnished (i.e. integrated processing system, control system, etc.) shall include most recent software and appropriate computer interface cable - minimum 25' (device to IBM PC). Cable, software, source (uncompiled) code, binary code, and all related aspects of all software-controlled equipment shall become the property of the Owner and will be furnished as a portion of the Operation & Maintenance (O&M) manuals (see Operation & Maintenance Manuals near the end of Part 3).
11. Each item of equipment to be supplied under this specification shall be new and the current model of a standard product of an original equipment manufacturer of record.
12. Specifications of equipment as set forth in this document are salient and minimum requirements, unless otherwise stated, and shall not be construed as limiting the overall quality, quantity, or performance characteristics of items furnished in the system. When the Contractor furnishes an item of equipment for which there is a specification contained herein, that item of equipment shall meet or exceed the specification for that item of equipment.
13. The systems shall be provided so that the installation, integration, and combination of equipment actually employed does not produce any undesirable visual effects such as keystoneing, banding and shimmering as well as any undesirable aural effects such as signal distortion, noise pulses, glitches, audio hum, poling noise, voltage or spike transients, etc.
14. While individual items of equipment may meet the equipment specifications, and in fact, meet the system specifications; when electrically associated with other equipment, the total system shall be designed and installed so that the installation, interfacing, integration, combining, and/or consolidation of equipment actually employed does not produce any undesirable visual or aural effects such as signal distortions, noise pulses, glitches, audio or video hum bars, transients, ghosting, etc.
15. The Contractor shall produce verification, in writing to Architect at time of installation, that the type of wire/cable actually being provided is recommended and approved by the original equipment manufacturers and will provide a total system free of undesirable effects. The Contractor is responsible for the providing the correct protection cable duct

- and/or conduit and wiring even though the actual item installation may be by another subcontractor.
16. The Contractor is responsible for interfacing the systems with each required sub-system. The Contractor shall continually employ interfacing methods that are approved by the original equipment manufacturer and industry best practices. At a minimum, the acceptable interfacing method requires not only a physical and mechanical connection; but a matching of signal, voltage, and processing levels, with regard to signal quality and impedance.
 17. Active electronic component equipment shall consist of solid state components and be rated for continuous duty service in the areas where provided.
 18. All passive equipment and cables shall meet or exceed -80 dB radiation shielding specifications.
 19. All signaling and communication circuits shall be solid state except for projection screen relays.
 20. Each system shall utilize microprocessor components for all signaling and programming circuits and functions. Program memory shall be non-volatile or protected from erasure from power outages for a minimum of five minutes.
 21. All voltages, except for the primary power to the power supply circuits, shall not exceed 70.7 VAC Root Mean Squared (RMS) or 100 V direct current (DC).
 22. Color code all distribution wiring to conform to the respective system industry standard, TIA/EIA, and this document, which ever is the more stringent. At a minimum, all equipment, cable duct and/or conduit, enclosures, wiring, terminals, and cables shall be clearly and permanently labeled according to and using the provided as-installed drawings, to facilitate installation and maintenance. Reference Specification Sections 16127, CABLES LOW VOLTAGE 600 VOLTS AND BELOW.
 23. All equipment face plates utilized in the system shall be stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or ABS plastic for the areas where provided.
 24. Noise filters and surge protectors shall be provided for the AV system including equipment racks and display devices to ensure protection from input primary AC power surges and noise glitches are not induced into low voltage data circuits.

2.02 LOUDSPEAKERS

- A. Refer to loudspeakers schedule on detail drawings.

2.03 AMPLIFIERS

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. QSC
 2. Crown
 3. Biamp
- B. Power Amplifier Type 1:
 1. Channels: Four
 2. Mounting: Rack-mounted
 3. Watts Per Channel: 300W
 4. Power Distribution: 70V
 5. Input Signal Type: Analog and Dante
 6. Design Basis Manufacturer: Crown
 7. Design Basis Series: DCi Network
- C. Power Amplifier Type 2:
 1. Channels: Eight
 2. Mounting: Rack-mounted
 3. Watts Per Channel: 300W
 4. Power Distribution: 70V
 5. Input Signal Type: Analog and Dante
 6. Design Basis Manufacturer: Crown

7. Design Basis Series: DCi Network

2.04 AUDIO PROCESSORS

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Biamp
 - 2. BSS
 - 3. QSC
- B. Server-IO Digital Signal Processor Type 1:
 - 1. Input/Output Cards: 12
 - a. Refer to schematics on drawings for quantities and types required.
 - 2. Acoustic Echo Cancellation Cards: Yes
 - 3. Network Audio: Dante
 - 4. USB Audio: No
 - 5. Phone interface: SIP/VoIP
 - 6. Control: RS-232 (Serial) and Ethernet
 - 7. Rack mount: 3U
 - 8. Manufacture: Biamp
 - 9. Model: Tesira Server-IO

2.05 LOGIC CONTROLLERS

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Biamp
- B. Logic Controller Type 1:
 - 1. Logic I/O Connections: 16
 - 2. Power Type: PoE
 - 3. Manufacturer: Biamp
 - 4. Model: Tesira EX-LOGIC

2.06 WIRED MICROPHONES

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Shure
 - 2. Audio-Technica
 - 3. Sennheiser
- B. Wired Gooseneck Microphone Type 1:
 - 1. Type: Dynamic
 - 2. Polar Pattern: Unidirectional (Cardioid)
 - 3. Connector Type: XLR, 5-Pin, Male
 - 4. Accessories:
 - a. Microphone Base: Push Button Desktop Base
 - b. Windscreen
 - c. Patch Cable: 1 ea. 7 ft
 - 5. Manufacturer: Shure
 - 6. Model: MX418
 - 7. Quantity: Refer to drawings.

2.07 ASSISTIVE LISTENING

- A. IR Assistive Listening:
 - 1. Operating Frequency: 2.3 MHz
 - 2. Coverage Areas (independent): Court A and Jury Pool
 - 3. Audio Input Type: Analog balanced
 - 4. Audio Output Channels: 1

5. Accessories: Batteries, Receiver Charging Stations, and Assistive listening notification signage.
6. Manufacturer: Listen Technologies
7. Receiver Model: LR-5200-IR
8. Receiver Quantity: 4 in Court A, 3 in Jury Pool
 - a. Hearing-aid Compatible: 2 in Court A, 2 in Jury Pool
9. Transmitter Model: LT-84
10. Expansion Transmitter Model: LA-141

2.08 NETWORK AUDIO TRANSPORT DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Shure
- B. Networked Audio Device Type 1:
 1. Audio Input Type(s): Qty 2 of 3-pin Depluggable Balanced Audio
 2. Audio Output Type(s): Qty 2 of 3-pin Depluggable Balanced Audio
 3. Power Requirements: PoE
 4. Device Mounting Type: Rack Mount (Jury Pool 108) and Flange Mount (Jury 120)
 5. Network Interface: Dante
 6. USB Interface: Yes
 7. Manufacturer: Shure
 8. Model: IntelliMix P300

2.09 DIGITAL-TO-ANALOG CONVERTER (DAC)

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Extron
- B. DAC Type 1:
 1. Audio Input Signal Type(s): TOSLINK fiber optic, RCA
 2. Audio Output Signal Type(s): analog stereo
 3. Power source: 5 VDC

2.10 VIDEO DISPLAYS

- A. Refer to display schedule on detail drawings.

2.11 PROJECTORS

- A. Refer to projector schedule on detail drawings.

2.12 PROJECTION SCREENS

- A. Refer to projection screen schedule on detail drawings.

2.13 VIDEO DISTRIBUTION EQUIPMENT

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Crestron
 2. AMX
 3. Extron
- B. Video Matrix Switcher Type 1:
 1. Maximum Resolution: 4096x2160
 2. Inputs/Outputs: 16x16
 - a. Refer to schematics for card types and quantities.
 3. Input Signal Type: HDMI and HDBaseT
 4. Output Signal Type: HDMI and HDBaseT
 5. HDCP Compliance: Yes
 6. Control Interface: Ethernet

7. Design Basis Manufacturer: Crestron
8. Design Basis Model: DM-MD16X 16-CPU3
- C. Video Transmitter Type 1:
 1. Maximum Resolution: 4096x2160
 2. Input Signal Type: HDMI
 3. Output Signal Type: HDBase-T
 4. HDCP Compliance: Yes
 5. Mounting Type: Single Gang Faceplate Insert
 6. Design Basis Manufacturer: Crestron
 7. Design Basis Model: DM-TX-4KZ-100-C-1G
- D. Video Transmitter Type 2:
 1. Maximum Resolution: 4096x2160
 2. Input Signal Type: HDMI
 3. Output Signal Type: HDBase-T
 4. HDCP Compliance: Yes
 5. Mounting Type: Surface Mount
 6. Design Basis Manufacturer: Crestron
 7. Design Basis Model: DM-TX-4KZ-202-C
- E. Video Receiver Type 1:
 1. Maximum Resolution: 4096x2160
 2. Input Signal Type: HDBase-T
 3. Output Signal Type: HDMI
 4. HDCP Compliance: Yes
 5. Mounting Type: Single Gang Faceplate Insert
 6. Design Basis Manufacturer: Crestron
 7. Design Basis Model: DM-RMC-4K-100-C-1G
- F. Video Receiver Type 2:
 1. Maximum Resolution: 4096x2160
 2. Input Signal Type: HDBase-T
 3. Output Signal Type: HDMI
 4. HDCP Compliance: Yes
 5. Mounting Type: Surface Mount
 6. Design Basis Manufacturer: Crestron
 7. Design Basis Model: DM-RMC-4KZ-100-C

2.14 CONTROL PROCESSORS

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Crestron
 2. Extron
 3. AMX
- B. Control Processor Type 1:
 1. Type: Virtual, PC-hosted
 2. Processor: Intel Core i5-10500T-CPU @ 2.30 GHz
 3. Memory: 8 GB DDR4 2666MT/s
 4. Storage: 256 GB SSD
 5. Network: 100/1000 Mbps Ethernet
 6. Manufacturer: Crestron
 7. Model: VC-4-PC-3

2.15 CONTROL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Crestron
 2. Extron
 3. AMX
- B. Control Panel Type 1 (Keypad Button Panel):
1. Quantity of Buttons: 8
 2. Custom Engraved Button Caps: Yes
 3. LED Feedback Lights: Yes
 4. Control Interface Type: Button Panel
 5. Manufacturer: Crestron
 6. Model: BPC-8
- C. Control Panel Type 2 (Touch Panel - Wall):
1. Minimum Resolution: 1280x800
 2. Aspect Ratio: 16:9
 3. Touch Technology: Projective Capacitive
 4. Hard Buttons: Yes
 5. Power Type: PoE
 6. Screen Size: 10"
 7. Mounting Type: Refer to detail drawings.
 8. Manufacturer: Crestron
 9. Touch Panel Model: TSW-1070-W-S

2.16 RACKS

- A. Audiovisual Equipment Rack Type 1:
1. Type: Floorstanding audiovisual equipment rack
 2. Finish: Baked-polyester powder coat.
 3. Material: Steel.
 4. Designed for mounting AV equipment and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
 5. Color: Black.
 6. Grounding: Provide each rack with ground lug.
 7. Configuration: Standard EIA 19.
 8. Height: 84" (45U).
 9. Equipment rails: Tapped.
 10. Design Basis Manufacturer: Middle Atlantic
 11. Design Basis Model: BGR-4527-AV

2.17 POWER DISTRIBUTION

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Furman
 2. TrippLite
 3. Geist
 4. Middle Atlantic
 5. APC
- B. Power Conditioner:
1. Input Voltage: 120V
 2. Input Amperage: 20A
 3. Input Plug Type: NEMA 5-20P
 4. Input Cord Length: 10 ft
 5. Output Receptacles: (8) NEMA 5-20R
 6. Power Filtration Rating: 10dB @10 kHz, 40dB @ 100 kHz, 100dB@10 MHz
 7. Maximum Surge Current: 6,500 Amps
 8. Mounting Type: Rack mount
 9. Manufacturer: Furman

10. Model: P-8 PRO C

2.18 WIRE AND CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Belden
 2. West Penn
 3. Commscope
 4. Liberty
 5. General Cable
 6. Extron
 7. Crestron
- B. General Requirements:
 1. Wire and cables shall include all connectors and terminals, spade lugs, barrier straps, punch blocks, wire wrap strips, heat shrink tubing, tie wraps, solder, hangers, clamps, labels etc., required to accomplish a neat and orderly installation.
 2. Refer to schematics for equipment interconnect requirements.
- C. Audio Cables:
 1. Multi-conductor 16 AWG loudspeaker cable:
 - a. Type: Unshielded loudspeaker cable
 - b. Conductors: 16 AWG, Bare Copper
 - c. Quantity of Pairs: 1
 - d. Jacket: Plenum rated CMP 50
 - e. Jacket Color: Gray
 - f. Manufacturer: Belden
 2. Microphone and line level cable:
 - a. Type: Shielded audio cable
 - b. Conductors: 22 AWG, Bare Copper
 - c. Quantity of Pairs: 1
 - d. Jacket: Plenum rated CMP 50
 - e. Jacket Color: Violet
 - f. Manufacturer: Belden
- D. Digital Video Cable:
 1. HDMI Cable:
 - a. Type: Shielded HDMI Cable
 - b. Conductors: 24 AWG, Copper
 - c. Quantity of Pairs: 9
 - d. Jacket: Plenum rated CMP 50
 - e. Jacket Color: Black
 - f. Manufacturer: Belden
 2. DigitalMedia Ultra Cable:
 - a. Type: Ultra High-bandwidth Cat7a shielded twisted pair (S/FTP)
 - b. Conductor: 22AWG solid bare copper
 - c. Quantity of Pairs: 4
 - d. Jacket: Plenum Rated CMP 50
 - e. Jacket Color: Blue
 - f. Manufacturer: Crestron
 3. HDBaseT Cable:
 - a. Type: High-bandwidth Cat6a foil shielded twisted pair (F/UTP)
 - b. Conductor: 23AWG solid bare copper
 - c. Quantity of Pairs: 4
 - d. Jacket: Plenum Rated CMP 50
 - e. Jacket Color: Blue
 - f. Manufacturer: Belden

- E. Control Cable:
 - 1. Cresnet:
 - a. Type: Cresnet Control Cable
 - b. Conductors: 22 AWG for data and 18 AWG bare copper for power
 - c. Quantity of Pairs: 2
 - d. Jacket: Plenum Rated CMP 50
 - e. Jacket Color: Teal
 - f. Manufacturer: Crestron
 - 2. Serial Control Cable:
 - a. Type: Serial Control Cable
 - b. Conductor: 20AWG Shielded twisted pair copper
 - c. Quantity of Pairs: 2
 - d. Jacket: Plenum Rated CMP 50
 - e. Jacket Color: Blue
 - f. Manufacturer: Extron
- F. Data Network Cable:
 - 1. Refer to specification Section 271513.
- G. Patch Cables:
 - 1. For each faceplate audio and video connection provide (1) 8ft long patch cable with connectors that interface with the faceplate connector on each faceplate unless noted otherwise on the detail drawings.
 - 2. Video Adapters:
 - a. For each HDMI patch cord and retractor cable, provide the following clamp-on pigtail HDMI adapters as part of a secured adapter ring affixed to the patch cord:
 - 1) Mini DisplayPort
 - 2) DisplayPort
 - 3) USB-C
 - 4) Lightning

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify all conduits, back boxes and pathways.
- B. Verify correct power requirements have been supplied based on equipment load and device requirements.
- C. Verify video installation sightlines and possible obstructions.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate with low voltage Electrical Contractor for required location of junction boxes, outlets, and conduit.
- B. Carefully inspect areas where equipment will be installed. Notify the Architect of any conditions that would adversely affect the installation and subsequent operation of the system.
- C. Coordinate with Architect for requirements for locations where AV equipment is mounted in millwork or cabinetry.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. New Wiring: Install wiring in raceways except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum-board partitions where cable wiring method may be used. Use plenum cable in environmental air spaces including plenum ceilings. Where possible for all audio cabling except microphone cables, microphone cables shall be installed in conduit. Conceal cables and raceways except in unfinished spaces. Cable shall be installed continuous with no splices or cuts.
- B. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structural members, and follow surface contours. Secure and support cables by straps, staples, or similar fittings so

- designed and installed to avoid damage to cables. Secure cable at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, or fittings.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Use lacing bars in cabinets and racks.
 - D. Separation of Wires: Separate speaker-microphone, line-level, speaker-level, and power wiring runs. Install in separate raceways or, where exposed or in same enclosure, separate conductors at least 12 inches for speaker microphones and adjacent parallel power and telephone wiring.
 - E. Match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.
 - F. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Color-code conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so they identify media in coordination with system wiring diagrams.
 - G. Wall-Mounting Outlets: Flush mounted.
 - H. Weatherproof Equipment: For units that are mounted outdoors, in damp locations, or where exposed to weather, install consistent with requirements of weatherproof rating.
 - I. All terminations shall be installed per manufacturer's specifications and recommendations
 - J. All audio circuits shall be two-wire circuits, with a separate grounding shield conductor, unless noted otherwise. All circuits shall have either the red or white wires as the "high" side of the line and connect to pin 2 of microphone-type XLR audio connectors and the tip of 3-conductor phone connectors. The black wire of the two-wire circuit shall be the "low" side of the line and connect to pin 3 of microphone connectors and the ring of 3-conductor phone connectors. The shield conductor shall connect to pin 1 of microphone connectors or to the sleeve of phone connectors. In the case of unbalanced lines, the low side shall connect to the shield connection.
 - K. Identify all audio and video wire and cable clearly with permanent labels wrapped about the full circumference within one (1) inch of each connection. Indicate the number designated on the associated field or shop drawing or run sheet as applicable. Assign wire or cable designations consistently throughout a given system. Each wire or cable shall carry the same labeled designation over its entire run, regardless of intermediate terminations.
 - L. Each conduit shall include a minimum of one spare cable or 10%, whichever is greater for each type of cable pulled including line-level, microphone-level, intercom, loudspeaker, control, video, and control system. Neatly bundle a minimum of 10-feet of cable at each end of each spare circuit. All spare circuits shall be labeled and noted on the AV Contractor's field drawings for inclusion into the record drawings.
 - M. Where the design location requires that products, materials, or equipment are visible to the public, no manufacturer's logos shall be visible. Unless otherwise directed, neatly remove or permanently paint out such logos.
 - N. GROUNDING
 - 1. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
 - 2. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at all equipment display locations. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
 - 3. Shields shall be connected at each end of each wire to the pin 1 of each XLR, shield connection for each electronic device, etc. No shield wires shall be left unconnected except where noted on the drawings, nor shall any shield come in contact with conduit, pullboxes, or other building steel. Audio line-level circuit shield wires shall be grounded to rack sheet metal only via rack-mounted equipment. Shields shall be electrically isolated in multiconductor cables. Shields for audio line-level circuits connected to audio transformers shall be connected to transformer electro-static shields and case ground. In the case of unbalanced audio lines the shield wire shall connect to the low side of the line (black wire).

4. Equipment rack ground shall be only via the insulated ground wire provided by the Electrical Contractor for technical system ground. Equipment racks shall be isolated from other ground paths such as building steel and from ground via conduit.
 5. Each equipment rack within a row of racks shall be electrically bonded to each other using a minimum 1/4-inch diameter unfinished bolt and nut with star washers. Bolts shall fasten to each equipment rack unpainted sheet metal. Each row of equipment racks shall be electrically bonded to adjacent row(s) via a No. 6 AWG insulated ground wire. This work shall be performed by the AV Contractor.
- O. CIRCUIT ROUTING
1. All audio circuits shall be separated according to function; e.g. microphone circuits shall be separated from line-level circuits which are separated from video circuits which are separated from loudspeaker circuits. Where audio and video circuits are installed in conduit or other raceway, separate conduits are required for the various circuit functions.
 2. Control and intercom circuits, and video circuits can be routed with line-level circuits, if separate conduit is not furnished for these circuits.
 3. Where circuits are exposed in the equipment racks or large junction or pull boxes, the circuits shall be bundled according to function. Use plastic cable ties to bundle cables and provide as much separation as reasonable.
- P. WIRE SPLICING
1. Audio and video circuits shall not be spliced except as shown on approved shop drawings.
 2. All solder connections shall be made with soldering iron and rosin core solder. All solder connections shall be checked for "cold" solder joints by the AV Contractor.
 3. All audio circuits terminating to screw-type connectors shall be installed with non-insulated brazed seam spade lugs of the proper size for wire and screw connection.
 4. All crimped audio connections shall be installed with a Thomas & Betts WT111 M or Klien 1006 crimping tool with the notch opposite the barrel seam. All crimped video connections shall be installed with a ratchet style crimper such as the West Penn TL-SNS (screw-on BNC connectors will not be accepted). Ensure crimper is sized for connectors and cabling that is being installed.
- Q. LABELING AND PLACARD
1. All labeling of equipment shall be engraved plastic laminate plates or metal-photo plates.
 2. All labeling of wiring within equipment racks, consoles, or other areas obscured from direct view shall be of adhesive backed strips comprised of numbers and letters as required. Wire markers shall be near both ends of wire termination.
 3. All labeling of exposed wiring, such as found at the rear of the mixing console shall be typewritten identifying each cable and covered with clear heat shrink tubing near the cable end.
 4. Embossed plastic tape labeling, such as DYMO, shall not be acceptable.
 5. All equipment in equipment racks shall be labeled front and rear for ease of identification. Equipment shall be labeled as indicated within quotation marks shown on technical system drawings. Labels shall be of a contrasting color with that of equipment color to promote visibility.
 6. Within each rack and at other remote locations for technical system equipment, label all associated AC power receptacles reflecting the appropriate circuit breaker. Ensure that the circuit breakers are labeled as to the rack or remote equipment location.
 7. At all connection points for all types of cable, pressure sensitive label strips of the appropriate letters and numbers shall be wrapped around each cable near its termination. Each label shall be of sufficient length that the written portion is covered with a transparent portion of the label or clear heat shrink of the appropriate size shall be utilized in order to protect the ink. The written portion shall be typed in sufficient quantity to allow viewing of the numbering from any angle. Hand written labels shall not be utilized.
 8. Each rack mounted device shall be labeled with engraved labels as to room, type, and function. Each adjustment point on each rack mounted device shall be labeled with engraved label as to function.

9. In instances of multiple systems within a single equipment rack, care shall be taken to assure appropriate allowance for system growth. In addition, each system type shall have an engraved blank panel inserted in the top rack unit for the system describing the room and functionality of the system.
- R. CABLING
1. Cable within equipment racks, and where service loops are indicated, shall be separated and routed in neat groups according to function: microphone circuits, intercom circuits, line level audio circuits, loudspeaker circuits, video circuits, control circuits, and 120 volt AC power circuits. Cable shall be neatly arranged, but tight bundling, which makes modifications difficult, shall be avoided. two sided hook and loop wrap ties shall be used for grouping of circuits.
 2. Cable in conduit or other raceway — microphone circuits, intercom circuits, line level audio circuits, loudspeaker circuits, control circuits, video circuits shall be separated from any 120 volt AC power circuits.
 3. Care shall be exercised in wiring so as not to damage cables and equipment. Circuits shall not be spliced.
 4. Allow adequate slack for cable termination.
 - a. Wall outlets: 12 inches.
 - b. Systems furniture: as necessary to reach the farthest point on each desktop using the furniture raceways plus 12 inches at the jack location.
 - c. Telecommunications Spaces: as necessary to reach the most distant patch panel or punch-down block plus a length equal to 2 times the room height.

S. AUDIO INSTALLATION

1. Equipment:
 - a. All antennas shall be installed per manufacturer's recommendations to allow for adequate signal transmission and without obstruction.
 - b. IR Emitter panels shall not be obstructed in order to provide line of site view for acceptable coverage of the designated area.
 - c. Protect during construction.
 - d. Loudspeakers shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations and with no obstructions to the coverage area.
 - 1) Mounting hardware shall be a minimum grade SAE 8 load rating and a safety factor of 5 times the supported weight.
 - 2) Coordinate installation of loudspeakers with location of structure and other devices, including but not limited to ductwork, sprinklers, light fixtures, and fire alarm devices.
 - 3) Coordinate loudspeaker finishes with architect prior to ordering. If painting of loudspeaker is required to match architectural finishes, paint per manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 4) Where back cans, in-wall loudspeaker back boxes or junction boxes are to be provided, coordinate installation and associated conduit with electrical contractor and other devices located within the wall or ceiling.
 - 5) In-ceiling loudspeakers to be installed plum and level with the ceiling surface. Speaker is to be supported separately from ceiling grid with independent supports.
 - 6) Pendant mount loudspeakers shall be installed so that cables are neatly dressed with pendant support cable. Coordinate support cable length with architectural ceiling elements and lighting fixtures.
 - 7) Surface mounted loudspeaker installation to be coordinated with architectural plans and other wall mounted devices. Coordinate location of backing with general contractor prior to installation.
 - 8) Ceiling flown loudspeakers shall be provided with the designated hardware as required by manufacturer to structurally support the weight of the speaker and allow aiming as indicated on the drawings. Installation shall be coordinated with ceiling elements and associated building infrastructure to allow for proper

- structural support and to avoid obstructions to provide acceptable audio coverage.
- e. Amplifiers shall be installed per manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 1) For rack or desk mounting, provide all necessary hardware to properly support from the front and rear.
 - 2) Install so that front and rear air vents are not blocked to ensure proper cooling.
 - 3) Before connecting loudspeakers, check total impedance and ensure that it is within the allowable range for the amplifier output.
 - 4) Total power for connected loudspeakers shall be below the rated power output for the connected channel.
 - f. Audio Processors shall be installed per manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 1) For rack mounting, provide all necessary hardware to properly support from the front and rear.
 - 2) Provide proper ventilation of device and ensure that there are no obstructions to the unit.
 - 3) Filter shall be clean when system is turned over to owner.
 - g. Wired Microphones:
 - 1) Mounts shall be installed flush with surface.
 - 2) Coordinate location and installation dimensions of ceiling microphones with architectural ceiling elements and lighting fixtures.
 - 3) Coordinate location, installation and hole cut out for tabletop microphones with architectural and furniture plans.
 - 4) Align microphone coverage pattern with intended speaker location(s) for proper pick up.
 - 5) Install logic control connectors for microphone mute indicator lights.
2. Cabling:
- a. Use plenum cable in environmental air spaces including plenum ceilings.
 - b. Install wiring in raceways where applicable. Audio cables shall be installed in separate raceways.
 - c. Exposed cables shall be installed parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structure and secured by Velcro straps. Secure at intervals not exceeding 30 inches.
 - d. Install cable sheathing on exposed cables from floor boxes.
 - e. Provide at a minimum, a 5' slack loop on equipment end of cable.
 - f. Separate speaker-microphone, line-level, speaker-level and power wiring runs.
 - g. Match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces.
 - h. Provide power input cord for equipment.
 - i. Unless otherwise noted, all audio circuits shall be two wires with shield, with the red or white wire used for the "high" side of the line and connected to pin 2 of microphone connectors or to the "tip" of patch panel and other phone jacks. The black wire shall be used for the "low" side of the line and shall connect to pin 3 of microphone connectors or to the "ring" of phone jacks. The shield (drain) wire shall connect to pin 1 of microphone connectors or to the sleeve of phone jacks.
 - j. All audio circuits (red or white and black conductors) shall be ungrounded except as provided by single ended amplifier inputs and where grounding of unbalanced circuits is directed during system tests. Shields for line level audio circuits shall be grounded to rack sheet metal at each cable termination. Where line level audio circuits connect to audio transformers, shields shall connect to transformer electrostatic shields and case grounds. At each cable termination shield or shield drain, wire length shall be approximately equivalent to the length of the insulated conductors. Shield drain wires shall be sheathed in green PVC sleeving or clear Teflon sleeving sized appropriately for conductor gauge. Circuit shields shall not otherwise connect to each other nor ground to electrical conduit at wall boxes, etc. Microphone circuit shields shall be grounded only at mixer inputs.

- k. Where resistors are indicated to terminate an audio circuit, install each resistor at the end of the line at the input to the following transformer or amplifier. High impedance circuits shall not extend more than 20 feet.
 - l. All wire joints and connections in the audio system shall be made with rosin core solder and a small soldering iron; or with approved mechanical connectors. Soldering shall be neat and shall not exhibit "cold" solder joints. Connections to screw type terminals shall be made with mechanically connected, un-insulated, spade type lugs selected for the particular wire size in use.
 - m. Connections made with miniature screw actuated, pressure type terminal strips shall be made by stripping approximately 1/4-inch of insulation from stranded conductor, inserting the untinned wire into the pressure terminal, and tightening the terminal screw using a small screwdriver which securely fits the screw head.
 - n. All crimp type connectors, including non-insulated butt connectors for inline loudspeaker circuit connections, shall be crimped with an appropriate crimping tool. Spade tongue terminals shall be crimped with the notch on the barrel opposite the seam.
 - o. Loudspeakers shall be installed so that proper impedance matching shall be maintained between amplifiers and loudspeakers.
 - p. Tie-wrap and secure all loudspeaker line matching transformer leads and loudspeaker cable away from loudspeakers to prevent "rattling" when loudspeakers are energized.
3. Labeling:
 - a. Clearly identify audio cable with permanent labels within 12 inches of each connection.
 - b. Loudspeaker cable labels shall designate type and amplifier and channel/zone number.
 - c. Microphone and line-level cable labels shall designate type and number.
 - d. Provide labels on front and rear of equipment to match labeling as indicated on the submitted shop drawing.
 - e. Label wireless devices. Provide unique color identifier for each device.
 4. General Labeling Requirements:
 - a. All labels shall be affixed with clear heat shrink covers.
 - b. Field labeling shall be consistent with submitted shop drawings and as-built drawings.
 - c. Labeling shall be consistent with system configuration device identifiers.
 - d. Cable numbering schematic shall match number as indicated on the submitted shop drawing.
 - e. All faceplates shall have engraved labeling to clearly identify input/output.
 - f. Audiovisual equipment requiring a network patch cable shall be labeled on each end with coordinating switch port and audiovisual equipment identifier.

T. PHYSICAL INSTALLATION

1. Equipment Racks:
 - a. Racks will be installed plumb and square without twists in the frames or variation in level between the racks.
 - b. Firmly secure all equipment in place unless requirements of portability dictate otherwise.
 - c. Install appropriate factory or custom rack mount adapters for all equipment installed in equipment rack, whether specifically itemized or not. Utility or one size fits all rack shelves shall not be utilized unless specifically noted on the AV construction documents.
 - d. Install rear support for any equipment that exhibits mount stress or tilt caused by the depth or weight of the equipment.
 - e. The front of the rack will have the appropriate vented blanks and grills installed to fill in areas not used for equipment mounting.
 - f. Mounting hardware used in racks will be identical in color, size, and manufacturer as dictated by function, i.e. rack screws will be from the same manufacturer with identical fiber washers.

- g. Vertical lacing bars shall be installed in all equipment racks in order to facilitate neat wiring and proper signal separation. Horizontal lacing bars shall be utilized in sufficient quantity to ensure that cables traveling horizontally do not sag, but not in such quantity to limit access for testing and maintenance.
- 2. Cabling Harness:
 - a. Any exposed cabling harnesses are to be concealed and neatly bundled in black expandable "Tech Flex" type harnessing sheath. Before installation sheath shall be cut to length and ends burned to prevent unravel. When installed the ends shall be turned into itself and secured with flush-cut tie-wraps.
- 3. Floor and Wall Plates:
 - a. All connection plates (wall, floor, etc.) will be secured with appropriate fasteners and installed plumb and level. All plate and panel finishes shall be coordinated with the Architect prior to order entry and installation. Each connection type shall be labeled in a logical manner consistent with the organizational standards of the Owner. Labeling shall be engraved into plate material. Adhesive or mechanically fastened labels shall not be permitted.
- 4. Mounting To Building Structure
 - a. Building structural members shall not be modified without consultation with and approval of the Architect and Structural Engineer.
 - b. Do not fabricate or install supports that will overload the building structure. Supports shall not be installed to overhead structure not capable of supporting five times the weight of the sub-mount, mount, and equipment combined.
 - c. All Mounting methods of each device type and mounting type shall be shown on submittal drawings and approved by the project Architect prior to installation.
 - d. Do not drill or cut concrete beams, joists or structural steel, and do not weld to structural steel.
 - e. Beam clamps are to be used to anchor strut and threaded rod to structure such as I beams, Z bar, etc.
 - f. Attachment hardware with a minimum SAE Grade 8 load rating and a safety factor of at least 5 are to be used.
 - g. Screens, wall mounted devices, projector / display mounts, or sub-mounts are to be installed plumb and level.

3.04 VIDEO INSTALLATION

- A. HDBaseT Cabling:
 - 1. Cabling shall length shall not exceed 300 ft in length.
 - 2. Wire according to the TIA-568B termination scheme.
 - 3. Maintain a minimum bend radius of 4 times the outside diameter of the cable.
 - 4. Do not bend, twist or kink cable, cables with physical damage will be required to be replaced.
 - 5. Do not splice or bridge cable at any point.
 - 6. Install cable using shielded RJ-45 (8P8C) plug that does not require soldering.
 - 7. Provide a TIA-568 Channel Test report for each installation of HDBaseT cable using a calibrated and certified cable tester. Refer to Section 27 15 13 for cable testing requirements.
 - 8. Cables shall be installed a minimum of 12 inches from AC power cables.
- B. Projectors and Projection Screens:
 - 1. Field verify projection throw distances and assure proper projection device lenses are supplied for the particular throw distance.
 - 2. Coordinate the power connections of projector lifts and projection screens with the Electrical Contractor.
 - 3. Projectors shall be placed within the rooms to properly fill projection screens.
 - 4. Projectors shall be installed at proper heights to the screen placements to allow for proper projection utilizing the minimum necessary horizontal and vertical keystone adjustments.
- C. Displays:

1. Displays shall be installed plum and level.
2. Image should be clear and static free without any artifacts.
3. Displays connected to PCs shall be set to Dot by Dot mode and not image stretch.
4. Mounting heights of displays are to the center of the equipment.

3.05 CONTROL SYSTEMS INSTALLATION

A. Minimum Control Requirements

1. At a minimum, the control system shall be programmed to include the following:
 - a. Full function control of all source components, display units, processing devices and switching electronics.
 - b. Separate program and microphone audio level control with mute function.
 - c. Audio level default button on audio page.
 - d. Panel layout to include user screens as well as password protected technician pages.
 - e. Raise and lower projection screens when system is powered on/off.
 - f. Lighting presets with independent control for the separate lighting zones, if applicable.
 - g. Audio conferencing call control.
 - h. Video conferencing call control.
 - i. PTZ camera presets.
 - j. Assignment of dedicated OFE room computer as default.
 - k. Owner logo on first page.
 - l. Owner Colors to be used on all pages.
 - m. Automatic system shutdown.
 - n. Install PC-based control interface application (ie. Crestron XPanel) on designated Owner PCs for remote control of all control systems.
 - o. Intellectual property release for installing editable, uncompiled source code for the entire remote control system and associated panel layouts on OFE computer(s). Editable, uncompiled source code is intended for the Owner to make additions, modifications and changes to the remote control system after the warranty period has expired.
 - p. Provide and load onto Owner's dedicated computer, editable versions of all configuration files for any digital signal processing as well as the associated software required for editing those files. Provide editable and uncompiled versions of all master source code for the control system on Flash Drive.

B. Control Interface Requirements:

1. Present on All Pages
 - a. Owner Logo
 - b. Shut down button
 - c. Admin page button
 - d. Buttons to go to Sources, Audio, Phone, Camera and Lighting Pages
 - e. Room Volume Control and mute with Graphic Representation
2. Sources Page
 - a. Drag and drop source selection
 - b. Graphic representation of each display device
 - c. Graphic representation of each source
 - d. Preset function buttons
 - e. Projector Blank
3. Audio Page
 - a. Audio level slider for each source
 - b. Buttons for volume up, volume down and mute for each source
 - c. Default button to reset audio levels to a Default value
 - d. Overall Room Volume with mute
 - e. Audioconferencing functions (dialer, etc.)

3.06 INTERFACE WITH OTHER WORK

- A. Coordinate all required interfaces with other trades and systems as required.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
- B. Schedule tests with at least seven days' advance notice of test performance.
- C. After installing display equipment and after input signals are available and calibrated after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
- D. Operational Test: Perform test and calibration video display and sound per manufacturer installation training. Verify proper signal levels and that system is free of noise and distortion with all signals provided at outlet.
- E. Retesting: Correct deficiencies in video and audio display and retest. Prepare a written record of tests.
- F. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and all interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.

3.08 STARTING EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. Upon completing installation of each system, the Contractor shall align, balance, and completely pretest each entire system under full operating conditions.
- B. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal and installation requirements.
- C. System tests and adjustments shall include but not be limited to the following:
 1. Functional tests of all individual audio, video and control equipment.
 2. Alignment, convergence and source input settings for each video monitor.
 3. Functional tests of all AV control system software functions
 4. Room equivalentzation and audio gain structure set up providing the maximum possible dynamic range and gain before feedback. These settings shall be documented and submitted to the AV Engineer prior to Final System Tests and Equivalentzation.
 5. All functional tests of the installed system as required assuring that the system is ready for final inspection.
- D. The AV Contractor shall be responsible for notifying the Owner of any unresolved malfunctions encountered during system tests and of any equipment not at the site sufficiently prior to final system testing and inspection.
- E. If troubles are encountered, the AV Contractor shall continue tests and adjustments until the system operates in a satisfactory manner.

3.09 TRAINING

- A. Furnish the services of a factory-trained Engineer or technician for one (1) four-hour period to instruct the Facility's personnel. Instruction shall include corrective and preventive maintenance of each system's equipment. Training shall be accomplished before the system can be accepted by Owner. Additionally, training will be scheduled at the convenience of the Owner for this (1) period.
- B. Furnish the services of a representative of the systems, familiar with the functions and operation of the equipment, for two four-hour periods to train selected Facility personnel. Instructions shall be provided for staff personnel in each area where new equipment is provided under this contract. When multiple locations are involved, classes will be grouped. Periods of training shall be coordinated with Owner to ensure all shifts receive the required training. A video tape presentation shall be provided where such tape exist that is sufficient in detail to stand alone as a training aid for initial utilization and familiarization of the system. Additionally, the Contractor shall provide two copies of the video presentation to the Owner.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Jobsite to remain organized during construction. All efforts must be made to protect existing finishes and equipment. Any devices altered during construction to be brought back to existing or better condition upon completion of construction.

3.11 SCHEDELE

A. All work to be scheduled with General Contractor, Owner, and Architect

END OF SECTION 27 4100

SECTION 27 4133
MASTER ANTENNA TELEVISION SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes the head-end equipment and intermediate signal distribution system components for a master antenna television systems (MATV) using a community antenna television cable (CATV) service or Satellite Earth-Station System as the signal source.

1.02 DEFINITIONS:

- A. Agile Receiver: A broadband receiver that can be tuned to any desired channel.
- B. Carrier: A pure-frequency signal that is modulated to carry information. In the process of modulation, the signal is spread out over a wider band. The carrier frequency is the center frequency on any television channel.
- C. CATV: Community antenna television. A communication system that simultaneously distributes several different channels of broadcast programs and other information to customers via a coaxial cable.
- D. CCTV: Closed-circuit television.
- E. dBmV: Decibels relative to 1 mV across 75 ohms. Zero dBmV is defined as 1 mV across 75 ohms. $\text{dBmV} = 20 \log 10(V1/V2)$ where V1 is the measurement of voltage at a point having identical impedance to V2 (0.001 V across 75 ohms).
- F. Headend: The control center of the MATV system, where incoming signals are amplified, converted, processed, and combined into a common cable along with any locally originated television signals, for transmission to user-interface points. It is also called the "central retransmission facility."
- G. MATV: Master antenna television. A small television antenna distribution system usually restricted to one or two buildings.
- H. NTSC: National television system committee.
- I. RF: Radio frequency.

1.03 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Product Data: Include detailed manufacturer's specifications for each component specified. Include data on features, ratings, and performance.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Design Calculations:
 - a. Calculate requirements and perform structural analysis for installed products including selection of seismic restraints, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - b. Calculate signal attenuation budget and show calculated line and equipment losses for the system based on the functional block diagram, to show that proposed system layout can be expected to perform up to specification.
 - c. Calculate signal strength from sources to headend input points for each antenna, satellite dish, and CATV grouping. Allowable losses between components and user interface shall be used to determine size and type of coaxial cable.
 2. Include dimensioned plan and elevation views of components and enclosures, and details of control panels. Show access and workspace requirements.
 3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
- C. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with requirements.
- D. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements of installed systems.

- E. Maintenance Data: For television equipment and components to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. In addition to requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Contract Closeout" or in Division 27 Section "Common Work Results for Communications," include the following:
 1. Detailed operating instructions covering operation under both normal and abnormal conditions.
 2. Routine maintenance requirements for system components.
 3. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended to be stored at the site for ready access.
- F. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is an authorized representative of the television equipment manufacturer, for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project, to supervise installation of the system.
- B. Comply with Section 27 0501 "Common Work Results for Communications".
- C. Comply with Section 27 0553.01 "Identification for Communications Systems".
- D. Comply with 47 CFR 15, 17, and 76.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS:

- A. Environmental Limitations: System components are equipped and rated for the environments where installed.
 1. Service Conditions for Indoor Equipment: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following environmental conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Temperature: 32 deg F to 122 deg F.
 - b. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent.

1.06 COORDINATION:

- A. Coordinate Work of this Section with requirements of CATV service provider.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. MATV System Components:
 - a. Blonder Tongue Laboratories, Inc.
 - b. Channell Company.
 - c. General Instrument Corp.; Jerrold Div.
 - d. RMS.
 - e. CE Labs.
 - f. Drake.
 - g. Multiplex Technology, Inc.
 - h. Pico Macom, Inc.

2.02 GENERAL PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components: Modular plug-in, heavy-duty, industrial- or commercial-grade units.
- B. Equipment: Silicon-based, solid-state, integrated circuit devices.
- C. Power Supply Characteristics: Devices shall be within specified parameters for ac supply voltages within the range of 105 to 130 V.
- D. Protect signal cables and connected components against transient-voltage surges by suppressors and absorbers designed specifically for the purpose.
- E. RF and Video Impedance Matching: Signal-handling components, including connecting cable, shall have end-to-end impedance-matched signal paths. Match and balance devices used at

connections where it is impossible to avoid impedance mismatch or mismatch of balanced circuits to unbalanced circuits.

2.03 DISTRIBUTION COMPONENTS

- A. Distribution and trunk amplifiers, couplers, splitters, connectors, taps and outlets shall be the standard product of one manufacturer to constitute a fully compatible, complete and operational system.
- B. Head-End Equipment: Units consistent with specified levels of overall system performance. Include the following where necessary for indicated functional requirements whether shown in system diagrams or not. House units in standard 19-inch equipment cabinet:
 1. Broadband and single-channel amplifier combining networks
 2. Modulators.
 3. Demodulators.
 4. Processors.
 5. Descramblers.
 6. Decoders.
 7. Converters.
 8. Power supplies
- C. Preamplifiers: Coaxial-down-lead-broadband or single-channel type inherently protected against lightning and voltage surges and enclosed in weatherproof housings. Use antenna cable for power supply from external source.
- D. Signal Traps: Packaged filters tuned to interference frequencies encountered in Project
- E. Signal Power Splitters and Isolation Taps: Metal-enclosed directional couplers with brass connector parts. Where installed in signal circuits used to supply cable-powered amplifiers, power throughput capacity shall exceed load by at least 25 percent.
 1. Return Loss: 17 dB.
 2. RFI Shielding: 100 dB.
 3. Isolation: 25 dB.
 4. I/O Impedance: 75 ohms.
- F. Attenuators: Fixed to balance signal levels.
- G. Terminating Resistors: Enclosed units rated 0.5 W and matched for coaxial impedance.
- H. Distribution Amplifiers:
 1. 31 dB amplifier to be Blonder-Tongue BIDA 86A-30P or approved equivalent.
 2. 43 dB amplifier to be Blonder-Tongue BIDA 86A-43P or approved equivalent.
- I. Trunk Amplifiers:
 1. 36 dB amplifier to be Motorola BLE87S/H** or approved equivalent.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine rough-in for antenna or satellite to verify actual locations of cable connections before antenna installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, roofs, equipment bases, and roof supports for suitable conditions where television equipment is to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Outdoor Installation: Comply with ANSI C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."
- B. Install surge suppressors where ac-power-operated devices are not protected against voltage transients by integral surge suppressors specified in UL 1449. Install surge suppressors at the devices' power-line terminals.
- C. Provide required interconnecting cable and terminations between components provided herein for a complete and operational system.

- D. Wiring within Enclosures and equipment racks: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Equalizing Video Signals: Where system performance may be degraded in certain operating modes, revise component connections and install video distribution amplifiers and attenuators as required to provide a balanced signal across the system.
- F. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- G. Cap all unused connectors.
- H. Grounding: Provide independent signal circuit grounding recommended by manufacturer.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 27 0553.01 "Identification for Communications Systems."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation and supervise pretesting, testing, and adjusting of television equipment.
- B. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
- C. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Replace malfunctioning or damaged items. Retest until satisfactory performance and conditions are achieved. Prepare television equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:
 - 1. CATV Sources: Connect the receiver to an agile demodulator or CATV set top converter at the CATV service entrance to the facility.
 - 2. Satellite Earth-Station System Sources: Adapt receiver to the output of satellite television receiver.
- D. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has successfully been completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
- E. Performance Tests: Perform system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation.
 - 1. Field-Strength Instrument: Rated for minus 40-dBmV measuring sensitivity and a frequency range of 54 to 812 MHz, minimum. Provide documentation of recent calibration against recognized standards.
 - 2. Signal Level and Picture Quality: Use a field-strength meter or spectrum analyzer, and a standard television receiver to measure signal levels and check picture quality at all user-interface outlets.
 - a. Test the signal strength in dBmV at 55, 151, 547, and 750 MHz.
 - b. Minimum acceptable signal level is 10 dBmV (1000 mV).
 - c. Maximum acceptable signal level over the entire bandwidth is 17 dBmV.
 - d. Television receiver shall show no evidence of cross-channel intermodulation, ghost images, or beat interference.
 - 3. Signal-to-Noise-Ratio Test: Use a field-strength meter to make a sequence of measurements at the output of the last distribution amplifier or of another agreed on location in system. With system operating at normal levels, tune meter to the picture carrier frequency of each of the designated channels in turn and record the level. With signal removed and input to corresponding headend amplifier terminated at 75 ohms,

- measure the level of noise at same tuning settings. With meter correction factor added to last readings, differences from first set must not be less than 45 dB.
4. Qualitative and Quantitative Performance Tests: Demonstrate reception quality of color-television program transmissions at each system outlet from each designated channel and source. Quality shall be equal to or superior than that obtained with performance checks specified below, using a standard, commercial, cable-ready, color-television receiver. If poor reception is found and cannot be resolved, the Contractor shall demonstrate that the Level and quality of signal at the outlet and from each designated channel and source complies with the following Specifications when tested according to NCTA-02 or 47 CFR 76:
- a. RF Video Carrier Level: Between 2 and 12 dB mV.
 - b. Relative Video Carrier Level: Within 3 dB to adjacent channel.
 - c. Carrier Level Stability, Short Term: Level does not change more than 0.5 dB during a 60-minute period.
 - d. Carrier Level Stability, Long Term: Level does not change more than 2 dB during a 24-hour period.
 - e. Broadband Frequency Response: More than the 54- to 220-MHz frequency range, signal amplitude is plus or minus 3 dB, maximum.
 - f. Channel Frequency Response: Across any 6-MHz channel in the 54- to 220-MHz frequency range, referenced to video carrier, signal amplitude is plus or minus 1 dB, maximum, unless otherwise indicated.
 - g. Carrier-to-Noise Ratio: 45 dB or more, unless otherwise indicated.
 - h. RF Visual Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 43 dB or more.
 - i. Cross Modulation: Less than minus 50 dB.
 - j. Carrier-to-Echo Ratio: More than 40 dB.
 - k. Composite Triple Beat: Less than minus 53 dB.
 - l. Second Order Beat: Less than minus 60 dB.
 - m. Terminal Isolation TV to TV: 25 dB, minimum.
 - n. Terminal Isolation between TV and FM: 35 dB, minimum.
 - o. Hum Modulation: 2 percent, maximum.
 - p. RF FM Carrier Level: 13 to 17 dB below video carrier level.
 - q. FM Frequency Response: More than the 88- to 108-MHz frequency range, signal amplitude is plus or minus 0.75 dB, maximum.
 - r. FM Carrier-to-Noise Ratio: More than 24 dB.
- F. Record test results.
- G. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.

3.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Clean MATV system components, including antennas and supports, head-end equipment, distribution components, and outlets.

3.06 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain television equipment.
 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment.
 2. Demonstrate methods of determining optimum alignment and adjustment of components and settings for system controls.
 3. Demonstrate programming and tuning of satellite receivers.
 4. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" or Division 27 Section "Common Work Results for Communications."
 5. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect/Engineer, with at least seven days' advance notice.

6. Conduct a minimum of six hours' training as specified in instructions to Owner's employees in Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout" or Division 27 Section "Common Work Results for Communications."

3.07 ON-SITE ASSISTANCE

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested by Owner within one year of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in tuning and adjusting the system to suit actual occupied conditions and to optimize performance. Provide up to two adjustments at Project site for this purpose, without additional cost.

END OF SECTION 27 4133

SECTION 28 0500
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section describes basic design requirement specifications for electronic security systems (ESS). This section contains requirements that pertain to other Division 28 security specifications such as requirements for warranty, submittals, quality assurance, record drawings, installation, demonstrations and operator training. The term Security System Integrator (SSI) shall apply to the installation contractor for the division 28 security specification sections.

1.02 QUESTIONS OF INTERPRETATION DURING BIDDING PHASE

- A. If questions arise during the bidding process regarding the meaning of any portion of the contract documents, the prospective bidder shall submit the questions to the Architect/Engineer for clarification.
- B. Any definitive interpretation or clarification of the contract documents will be published by addenda, properly issued to each person holding documents, prior to the bid date.
- C. Verbal interpretation or explanation not issued in the form of an addendum shall not be considered part of the bidding documents.
- D. When submitting questions for clarification, adequate time for issuance and delivery of addenda must be allowed.
- E. The Architect/Engineer shall be the sole judge regarding interpretations of conflicts within contract documents.

1.03 CONTRACT DOCUMENT DISCREPANCIES

- A. If any ambiguities should appear in the contract documents, request clarification from the Architect/Engineer before proceeding with the work.
- B. If the Contractor fails to make such request, no excuse will thereafter be entertained for failure to carry out the work in a manner satisfactory to the Architect/Engineer.
- C. Should a conflict occur within the contract documents, the Contractor is deemed to have estimated the more expensive way of doing the work unless a written clarification from the Architect/Engineer was requested and obtained before submission of proposed methods or materials.
- D. The Architect/Engineer shall be the sole judge regarding interpretations of conflicts within contract documents.

1.04 DEFINITIONS

- A. Install: Supply labor to construct complete system, ready for intended use.
- B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to the site, ready for use, items required to complete tasks or perform tests required to build a complete ready-to-use system.
- C. Provide: Furnish, install, connect and test, supplying required labor to construct a complete system, ready for the intended use.
- D. Contractors Field Test (CFT): Test performed by the contractor to verify device functionality in the field.
- E. Performance Verification Test (PVT): Test performed by the contractor in the presence of the Owners Representative verifying a fully operational system.

1.05 SYMBOLS

- A. Items of equipment and materials are indicated on the drawings in accordance with the Security Symbols Legend on the drawings. Some of the symbols scheduled may not be required for the project. Because of the scale of the Drawings, symbols are shown on Drawings as close as

possible to the mounting location. Verify exact locations with the Architect and Owner's Representative.

1.06 ABBREVIATIONS

- A. CCTV: Closed Circuit Television
- B. DAC: Digital Alarm Communicator
- C. DPS: Door Position Switch
- D. DVR: Digital Video Recorder
- E. EAC: Electronic Access Control
- F. EMI: Electromagnetic interference
- G. EPT: Electrical Power Transfer
- H. EVS: Electronic Video Surveillance
- I. FACP: Fire alarm Control Panel
- J. IDS: Intrusion Detection System
- K. LAN: Local Area Network
- L. LCD: Liquid Crystal Display
- M. LED: Light-Emitting Diode Display
- N. LBM: Latch Bolt Monitor
- O. NEC: National Electrical Code, latest edition
- P. NEMA: National Electrical Manufacturers Association
- Q. NFPA: National Fire Protection Association
- R. NVE: Network Video Encoder
- S. NVR: Network Video Recorder
- T. PSTN: Public Switched Telephone Network
- U. PTZ: Pan-Tilt-Zoom
- V. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride
- W. RQE: Request to Exit.
- X. SMS: Security Management System
- Y. SSI: Security System Integrator
- Z. STP: Shielded twisted pair
- AA. SPD: Surge Protection Device
- AB. UL: Underwriters Laboratories, Inc
- AC. UPS: Uninterruptible Power Supply
- AD. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair
- AE. VMS: Video Management System
- AF. WAN: Wide Area Network
- AG. WTH: Wire Transfer Hinge

1.07 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. The work shall be performed by competent craftsmen skilled in the trade involved and shall be done in a manner consistent with normal industry standards. All work shall conform to all applicable sections of currently adopted editions of the codes and standards listed below or the codes, standards, and specifications published by the organizations listed below:
 - 1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI).
 - 2. American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM).
 - 3. Building Industry Consulting Service International (BICSI).

4. Building Officials and Code Administrators International, Inc. (BOCA).
 5. Electrical Testing Laboratories (ETL).
 6. International Building Code (IBC)
 7. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE).
 8. National Electrical Code (NEC), latest edition.
 9. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA).
 10. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
 11. Life Safety Code (NFPA 101).
 12. Independent Testing Laboratories (ITL).
 13. International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
 14. Occupational Safety and Health Standards (OSHA), National Consensus Standards and Established Federal Standards.
 15. Safety and Health Regulations for Construction.
 16. Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA).
 17. Uniform Building Code (UBC).
 18. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., Standards (UL).
 19. State and Local Codes.
- B. Where there is a conflict between the code or referenced standards and the contract documents, the code or standard shall have precedence only when it is more stringent than the contract documents. Items that are allowed by the code but are less stringent than those specified shall not be substituted.
- C. Follow Owner's installation standards unless otherwise shown on the drawings or stated herein. Where requirements of Installation Standards conflict with Performance Standards or manufacturer's recommendations, refer to Owner for a decision before proceeding. Owner's standards are listed below.

1.08 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURERS

- A. Options in selecting materials and equipment are limited by requirements of the contract documents and governing regulations. They are not controlled by industry traditions or procedures experienced on previous construction projects.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be provided in accordance with the following:
 1. Primary Design Products: Primary design products are those products around which the project was designed in terms of capacity, performance, physical size and quality.
 - a. Primary design products are indicated by use of a single manufacturer's name, model number or similar data on drawings or schedules or within the specifications.
 - b. Provide primary design products unless substitutions are made in accordance with the following paragraphs.
 2. Acceptable Equivalent Substitutions: Acceptable equivalent substitutions are products of manufacturers other than those listed for the primary design products. Equivalent acceptable substitutions shall meet each of the following requirements:
 - a. The product shall be manufactured by one of the acceptable manufacturers listed in the Project Manual, drawings, or addenda.
 - b. The product shall meet or exceed the requirements of the contract documents in terms of quality, performance, suitability, appearance, and physical characteristics.
 - c. The Contractor providing the substitution shall bear the total cost of changes due to substitutions. These costs may include additional compensation to the Architect/Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of work by the Owner or other Contractors, and similar considerations.
 - d. Performance Requirements: Where the contract documents list performance requirements or describe a product or assembly generically, provide products that comply with the specific requirements indicated and that are recommended by the manufacturer for the respective application.
 - e. Compliance with Standards, Codes and Regulations: Where the specifications require only compliance with an imposed standard, code or regulation, the Contractor

- has the option of selecting a product that complies with specification requirements, including the standards, codes and regulations.
3. Proposed substitutions will be judged on the basis of quality, performance, appearance and on the governing space limitations. The reputation of the manufacturer, delivery time requirements, and the availability of repair or replacement parts may also be considered.
 4. The Architect/Engineer shall be the sole and final judge as to the suitability of substitution items.

1.09 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Requirements:
 1. Other section in the Project Manual shall be adhered to if more stringent than the following paragraphs.
 2. When required by other sections of this Project Manual, submit shop drawings, product data or samples to the Architect/Engineer for review.
 3. Submittals deemed unnecessary by the Architect/Engineer shall be returned indicating "No Action Taken".
 4. A completed copy of the transmittal form included with the Project Manual shall accompany each submittal.
 5. Submittals shall be numbered consecutively by specification section (i.e. 28 0501-01, 28 0501-02).
 6. Unless otherwise noted, submit one copy electronically of shop drawings and product data for review. Review comments will be returned electronically. A hard copy of the electronic submittal will be returned if requested.
 7. Each submittal shall clearly indicate proposed items, capacities, characteristics and details in conformance with contract documents. Equipment items shall be marked with the same item number as used on drawings or schedules. Capacities, dimensions and special features required shall be certified by the manufacturer.
 8. Submittals shall indicate manufacturer's delivery time for the item after review by the Architect/Engineer.
 9. When required by other sections of this Project Manual, the Contractor shall submit a Specification Compliance Review consisting of a paragraph-by-paragraph review of the specifications and addenda with the following marked for each paragraph. Markings may be made in the margins of the original specification or addenda. Unless a deviation or exception is specifically noted in the Specification Compliance Review, it is assumed that the equipment, product, or material is in complete compliance with the contract documents. Submit Specification Compliance Review with shop drawings and product data.
 - a. "A": Reviewed, No Exceptions Taken.
 - b. "B": Reviewed, Exceptions Taken as Noted.
 - c. "C": Revise and Resubmit.
 - d. "D": Rejected.
 - e. "E": No Action Taken.
 10. The Architect/Engineer shall review or take other appropriate action upon the Contractor's submittals such as shop drawings, product data and samples, but only to determine conformance with the design concept of the work and the information given in the contract documents.
 11. Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for any deviation from the requirements of the contract documents by the Architect/Engineer's review of shop drawings, product data or samples.
 12. Contractor shall not be relieved from responsibility for errors or omissions in the shop drawings, product data or samples by the Architect/Engineer's review of those drawings.
 13. No portion of the work requiring submission of a shop drawing, product data or sample shall be commenced until the submittal has been reviewed by the Architect/Engineer. Such portions of the work shall be in accordance with reviewed submittals.
 14. The successful Contractor/Supplier may, at their option, obtain DXF or AutoCAD DWG electronic drawing files on CD-ROM for use in preparation of shop drawings.

- a. This information is available from IP Design Group upon written request.
 - b. The use of these drawing files is intended solely for the preparation of drawings as required by these contract documents.
 - c. Any other use is strictly prohibited by copyright laws.
 - d. The user of these electronic drawing files assumes full responsibility for their accuracy and scale.
- B. Bid Submittals
- 1. Qualification Data: For Installer .
 - a. A resumes of qualification shall be submitted with the Contractor's proposal indicating the following:
 - 1) A list of five recently completed projects of similar type and size with contact names and telephone numbers for each.
 - 2) Installer Qualifications
- C. Pre-Construction Submittals
- 1. Shop Drawings
 - a. Shop drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules and other data specifically prepared for this project by the Contractor, Manufacturer, Supplier, or Distributor to illustrate some portion of the work. Shop Drawings shall also detail fabrication and installation for metal and wood supports and anchorage for mechanical materials and equipment. Shop drawings shall included, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Functional block/wiring diagrams showing single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types, quantities, and sizes.
 - 2) Dimensioned plans and elevations of equipment racks/enclosures.
 - b. Shop drawings shall be drawn to accurate scale and of adequate size to illustrate required details.
 - c. Maximum sheet size shall be 30 inches by 42 inches. For each hard copy shop drawing sheet larger than 11 inches by 17 inches, submit one drawing on reproducible media.
 - d. The Architect/Engineer's action shall be indicated on the reproducible drawing and the drawing shall be returned to the Contractor.
 - 2. Product Data
 - a. Product data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instruction brochures, diagrams and other information furnished by the Contractor, Manufacturer, Supplier, or Distributor to illustrate a material, product or system for some portion of the work.
 - 3. Programming Data:
 - a. Device names and descriptions.
 - b. Complete written sequence of operations for all functions of the system.
 - 4. Performance Verification Test Reports (PVT): A proposed test plan shall be submitted to the Owner's representative for approval prior to commencement of testing.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals Submittal:
- 1. Prepare an electronic copy of the operation and maintenance manuals for the equipment furnished. Manuals shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer for review and distribution to the Owner not less than 30 days prior to substantial completion of the project. Manuals not meeting the following requirements may be rejected by the Architect/Engineer.
 - 2. Upon review from Architect/Engineer that contractor shall submit three (3) hard-copies of the operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 3. Each manual shall be assembled in a three-ring binder with hard cover and plastic finish. Binders shall not exceed a 3-inch thickness. Where more than one binder is required, the manuals shall be separated into a logical grouping, i.e., "Electronic Access Control", "Electronic Video Surveillance", "Maintenance", "Operation", "Parts", "Shop Drawings", etc. Each binder shall have the following information clearly printed on its front cover:
 - a. Project name and address.

- b. Portion of the work covered by each volume (if more than one volume in the set). Where more than one volume is required, label each volume as "Volume _____ of _____".
- c. Name, address and telephone number of Contractor and Sub-Contractors including night or emergency number.
- 4. Manual shall include, but shall not be limited to, the following:
 - a. A Complete Index. Contractor may submit the index to the Architect/Engineer for review prior to submittal of complete manuals if desired.
 - b. Names, Addresses and Telephone Numbers. This list shall include the manufacturer and local representative who stocks or furnishes repair parts for all items of equipment and shall be typed on a single page in front of the binder.
 - c. Startup, Operation and Shutdown Procedures. Provide a written description of procedures for startup, operation and shutdown of each electrical item or system. This description shall include switches to operate, buttons to push, etc., in proper sequence, and the location of switches, starters, and pushbuttons. Description shall include item references or labels used in the contract documents unless otherwise instructed in advance by the Owner.
 - d. Equipment Accessory Schedule. Upon completion of the work, furnish the Owner with a complete equipment accessory schedule listing each piece of equipment and the related size, type, number required and the manufacturer of renewable items.
 - e. Manufacturer's Operation and Maintenance Manuals and Parts Lists.
 - f. Emergency Procedures. Provide a written description of emergency operating procedures or a list of service organizations (including addresses and telephone numbers) capable of rendering emergency services to the various parts of the system.
 - g. One copy of shop drawings and product data, clearly marked for each item furnished using the designation label specified or indicated on Drawings.
 - h. Manufacturers' warranty information.
 - i. Normal Maintenance Schedule. Include a listing of work to be performed at various time intervals; i.e., 30, 90, 180 days and yearly.
 - j. Hardware Manual:
 - 1) Names, Addresses and Telephone Numbers. This list shall include the manufacturer and local representative who stocks or furnishes repair parts for all items of equipment and shall be typed on a single page in front of the binder.
 - 2) One copy of all shop drawings and product data, clearly marked for each item furnished using the designation label specified or indicated on drawings.
 - 3) Installation and check out procedures
 - 4) Alignment and calibration procedures
 - k. Software Manual: The manual shall describe the functions of all software and shall include all other information necessary to enable proper loading, testing, and operation.
 - 1) Definition of terms and functions
 - 2) System use and application software
 - 3) Initialization, start up, and shut down
 - 4) Reports generation
 - 5) Details on forms customization and field parameters
 - l. Operators Manual: The manual shall fully explain all procedures and instructions for the operation of the system.
 - 1) Computers and peripherals
 - 2) System start up and shut down procedures
 - 3) Use of system, command, and applications software
 - 4) Recovery and restart procedures
 - 5) Graphic alarm presentation
 - 6) Use of report generator and generation of reports
 - 7) Data entry

- 8) Operator commands
 - 9) Alarm messages and reprinting formats
 - 10) System permissions functions and requirements
- E. Post-Construction Submittals
- 1. Field quality-control test reports.
 - 2. As-built drawings:
 - a. Maintain current documents at the construction site. Submit with Operations and Maintenance Manuals.
 - b. As-built drawings shall include the following:
 - 1) As-built shop drawings
 - 2) Station outlet/device labeling.
 - 3) Routing of cables from equipment cabinets to devices.
 - 4) Revisions to construction documents (addenda and field changes.)
 - 5) Floor plans with all final device and equipment cabinet locations and labeling.
 - 3. When required by specification sections, submit manufacturer's printed instructions for delivery, storage, assembly, installation, adjusting, and finishing, in quantities specified for shop drawings and equipment brochures.

1.10 OPERATING TRAINING

- A. Complete operating instructions for each system and item of equipment shall be provided to the Owner's designated personnel.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Manuals must be reviewed and accepted by the Architect/Engineer and provided to the Owner prior to operating training.
- C. Training shall be scheduled at the convenience of the Owner. A minimum of 4 hours of training shall be provided. Refer to Section 3 within this specification.
- D. Training shall include, but not limited to, instructions on the following:
 - 1. Startup and shutdown procedures
 - 2. Periodic maintenance
 - 3. Emergency operation
 - 4. Configuration and setup
 - 5. Issuing credentials
 - 6. Creating and editing user accounts.
 - 7. Creating and exporting reports
 - 8. Setting up alerts/alarms
 - 9. Configuring and setup of devices
 - 10. Setting up schedules
 - 11. Using the software
 - 12. Using the mobile application
 - 13. Additional training identified in other sections
- E. In addition to the instructions required above, wherever possible perform the operations being described in order to fully illustrate system operation.
- F. At the completion of training, the Contractor shall turn over to the Owner all required keys and special tools for installed equipment. Each key or tool shall be labeled with its use.

1.11 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An Experienced installer who is an authorized representative of equipment manufacturer with industry accepted experience relative to size and nature of project.
- B. The work specified in these specifications and construction documents shall be accomplished by an experienced Contractor in the design, fabrication, installation, checkout and warranty contract management of systems such as those being described in each Section.
- C. Installer shall employ only a qualified PM-Project Manager and must meet the following requirements: Required participation in meetings and conferences. Be present at Project site for

Substantial Completion Inspection, Final inspection, approves the operating and maintenance manuals and to provide any additional instructions as needed to designated members of the Owner's staff.

- D. Be responsible for supervision of all technical work that is part of this Specification.
- E. Supervise preparation of shop drawings and submittals and sign all submittals.
- F. Supervise the shop fabrications and field installation work to assure strict conformance in accordance to the Contract Drawings, Specifications and the reviewed Shop Drawings to assure workmanship of the specified quality.
- G. Oversee the testing of all assemblies and all sub-assemblies prior to their delivery at the Project Site.
- H. Lead in the specified testing of completed installation to assure the Owner that all Contract Requirements were met. Working with and assisting the Owner in the final testing for approval and acceptance of the system by Owner.

1.12 WARRANTIES

- A. The Contractor shall warrant all materials, workmanship, and equipment against defects for a period of one year after the date of substantial completion. Certain equipment shall be warranted beginning at the time of final acceptance or for longer periods of time as specified in those sections of the Project Manual. The Contractor shall repair or replace, at no additional cost to the Owner, any item which may become defective within the warranty period. Any manufacturers' warranties concerning any item installed will run to the benefit of the Owner. The Contractor agrees not to void or impair, or to allow Sub-Contractors to void or impair, any warranties regarding products or items installed as part of this project. The repair of faulty workmanship shall be considered to be included in the contract.
- B. Warranty Maintenance and Service Agreement:
 - 1. General Requirements: The contractor shall provide all services required and equipment necessary to maintain the entire ESS in an operational state as specified for a period of one year after formal written acceptance of the system, and shall provide all necessary material required for performing scheduled service or other unscheduled work.
 - 2. Personnel: Service personnel shall be factory certified in the maintenance and repair of the equipment installed under this section of the specification. The owner shall be advised in writing of the name of the designated service representative, and of any change in personnel.
 - 3. Description of Work: The service and repair of the ESS including all equipment provided under this specification supplied by the successful contractor. The contractor shall provide the manufacturer's required scheduled and unscheduled maintenance and all other work necessary to keep the ESS at its maximum performance.
 - 4. Schedule of Work: This work shall be performed during regular working hours, Monday through Friday, excluding federal holidays.
 - a. Inspections: The Contractor shall perform two minor inspections at 6 month intervals (or more often if required by the manufacturer), and two major inspections offset equally between the minor inspections to effect quarterly inspection of alternating magnitude.
 - b. Minor Inspections: These inspections shall include:
 - 1) Visual checks and operational tests of all console equipment, peripheral equipment, field hardware, sensors, and electrical and mechanical controls.
 - 2) Mechanical adjustments if required on any mechanical or electromechanical devices.
 - c. Major Inspections: These inspections shall include all work described under paragraph Minor Inspections and the following work:
 - 1) Clean all ESS equipment, including interior and exterior surfaces.
 - 2) Perform diagnostics on all equipment.
 - 3) Check, walk test, and if required by the manufacturers' maintenance procedures, calibrate each sensor.

- 4) Run all system software diagnostics and correct all diagnosed problems.
5. Operation: Performance of scheduled adjustments and repair shall verify operation of the ESS as demonstrated by the applicable tests of the performance verification test.
6. Emergency Service: The owner will initiate service calls when the ESS is not functioning properly. Qualified personnel shall be available to provide service to the complete ESS. The owner shall be furnished with a telephone number where the service supervisor can be reached at all times. Service personnel shall be at site within 24 hours after receiving a request for service. The ESS shall be restored to proper operating condition within 24 hours after service personnel arrive on site.
7. Records and Logs: The Contractor shall keep records and logs of each task, and shall organize cumulative records for each component and for the complete system chronologically. A continuous log shall be maintained for all devices. The log shall contain all initial settings. Complete logs shall be kept and shall be available for inspection on site, demonstrating that planned and systematic adjustments and repairs have been accomplished for the ESS.
8. Work Requests: The Contractor shall separately record each service call request on a service request form. The form shall include the model and serial number identifying the component involved, its location, date and time the call was received, specific nature of trouble, names of service personnel assigned to the task, instructions describing what has to be done, the amount and nature of the materials used, the time and date work started, and the time and date of completion. The Contractor shall deliver a record of the work performed within 5 days after work is accomplished.
9. System Modifications: The Contractor shall make any recommendations for system modification in writing to the Owner. No system modifications, shall be made without prior approval of the Owner. Any modifications made to the system shall be incorporated into the operations and maintenance manuals, and other documentation affected.
10. Software: The Contractor shall provide all software updates during the period of the warranty and verify operation in the system. These updates shall be accomplished in a timely manner, fully coordinated with ESS operators, shall include training for the new changes / features enabled, and shall be incorporated into the O&M manuals.

1.13 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. The Contractors performance of work shall comply with applicable federal, state and local laws, rules and regulations. The Contractor shall give required notices, shall procure necessary governmental licenses, permits and inspections and shall pay without burden to the owner all fees and charges in connection therewith unless specifically provided otherwise. In the event of violation, the contractor shall pay all fines and penalties including attorney's fees and other defense costs and expenses in connection therewith.
- B. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) registration or approval for any equipment requiring such approval shall be appropriately identified and obtained by the Contractor.
- C. Design, manufacture, test and install communications cabling networks per manufacturers' requirements, state codes, local codes, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and particularly the following standards:
 1. Comply with NFPA 70, National Electric Code
 2. Comply with NFPA 101, Life Safety Code
 3. Comply with NFPA 730, Guide for Premises Security
 4. Comply with NFPA 731, Standard for the Installation of Electronic premises Security Systems,
 5. Comply with American Disabilities Act (ADA)
 6. Comply with International Building Code (IBC)
 7. Comply with IEEE C62.41.1 (Latest version), Guide on the Surge Environment in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits
 8. Comply with ANSI-310-D-92, Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment
 9. Comply with ANSI/TIA-607 Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications.

- D. Follow Owner's installation standards unless otherwise shown on the drawings or stated herein. Where requirements of Installation Standards conflict with Performance Standards or manufacturer's recommendations, refer to Owner for a decision before proceeding.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.14 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate and schedule all construction work with the General Contractor prior to beginning work. Do not interrupt building activities without strict coordination with the General Contractor. Unscheduled appearance to work in the spaces without prior scheduling with the General Contractor is not allowed.
- B. The Contractor shall attend all meetings as required by the General Contractor.
- C. Convene a meeting one week prior to commencing the work of this section.
 - 1. Agenda:
 - a. Tour, inspect and discuss building conditions related to the structured cabling system.
 - b. Review submittals both completed and yet to be completed.
 - c. Review plans, specifications and proposed equipment.
 - d. Review construction schedule, availability of materials, personnel, equipment and facilities needed to proceed without delay.
 - e. Review required inspections and testing.
 - f. Review cable routing, cable support, primary pathways and communications spaces location and environmental conditions.
- D. The Contractor's Project Manager must be available on-site when needed and readily available.
- E. Coordinate network configuration requirements for electronic security equipment with Owner's IT staff.
- F. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute to other participants.
- G. Coordinate security device rough-ins/conduit and door/door frame prep with general construction work and arrange in building structure during progress of construction to facilitate the security installations that follow.
- H. Coordinate exact location(s) of ceiling mounted equipment/devices with architectural plans, reflected ceiling plans, structural plans and all affected trades prior to construction and installation.
- I. Coordinate exact location(s) of all desk/counter top mounted security equipment with Millwork/Casework and furniture plans prior to installation.
- J. Fully examine the drawings and specifications for other trades and coordinate the installation of security work with the work of the other trades. Consult and cooperate with the other trades for determining space requirements and for determining that adequate clearance is allowed with respect to his equipment, other equipment, and the building.
- K. Coordinate installation and cabling with the raceway installer. Verify raceways are installed according to the plans and specifications before installing cable.
- L. Provide offsets and elevation changes in piping, conduit and devices as required to complete the Layout and Coordination Process. Offsets and elevation change information shall be indicated in the coordination process documentation and must be submitted for review.

1.15 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Security equipment shall neither be delivered nor installed until the building is totally enclosed, secured, weather tight and all dust or moisture generating construction work within the building is complete and cured. Care shall be taken to protect equipment from damage until the date of substantial completion of the project

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE, CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. See Drawings for Equipment Schedules for Equipment Performance Requirements when capacities and characteristics are not indicated in the specifications.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. The Contractor's options in selecting materials and equipment are limited by requirements of the contract documents and governing regulations. They are not controlled by industry traditions or procedures experienced by the Contractor on previous construction projects.
Materials and equipment shall be provided in accordance with the following:
 1. Primary Design Products: Primary design products are those products around which the project was designed in terms of capacity, performance, physical size and quality. Primary design products are indicated by use of a single manufacturer's name, model number or similar data on drawings or schedules or within the specifications. The Contractor shall provide primary design products unless substitutions are made in accordance with the following paragraphs.
 2. Acceptable Equivalent Substitutions: Acceptable equivalent substitutions are products of manufacturers other than those listed for the primary design products. Equivalent acceptable substitutions shall meet each of the following requirements:
 - a. The product shall be manufactured by one of the acceptable manufacturers listed in the Project Manual, drawings or addenda.
 - b. The product shall meet or exceed the requirements of the contract documents in terms of quality, performance, suitability, appearance and physical characteristics.
 - c. The Contractor providing the substitution shall bear the total cost of all changes due to substitutions. These costs may include additional compensation to the Architect/Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of work by the Owner or other Contractors, and similar considerations.
 - d. Performance Requirements. Where the contract documents list performance requirements or describe a product or assembly generically, provide products that comply with the specific requirements indicated and that are recommended by the manufacturer for the respective application.
 3. Compliance with Standards, Code and Regulations: Where the specifications require only compliance with an imposed standard, code or regulation, the Contractor has the option of selecting a product that complies with specification requirements, including the standards, codes and regulations.
 4. Proposed substitutions will be judged on the basis of quality, performance, appearance and on the governing space limitations. The reputation of the manufacturer, delivery time requirements, and the availability of repair or replacement parts may also be considered. All proposed substitution must be submitted to the Architect/Engineer for prior approval at least 10 days prior to the final Addendum.
 5. The Architect/Engineer shall be the sole and final judge as to the suitability of substitution items.

2.03 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Refer to the individual specification sections for manufacturers.

2.04 COMPLETENESS OF WORK

- A. The contract documents depict security systems which are intended to be complete and functioning systems. All products, labor and programming necessary to render a full and functional system to fulfill the design intent shown on the documents shall be provided by the Contractor.
- B. Catalog numbers referenced throughout the drawings and specifications are intended to convey the understanding of the type and quality of the product required. Where written descriptions differ from information conveyed by a catalog number the written description shall govern. No extra charge will be allowed because a catalog number is found to be incomplete or obsolete.

2.05 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT FURNISHED BY OTHERS

- A. Where materials and equipment are indicated as furnished by others and installed or connected under this contract, it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to verify installation details and requirements.

2.06 QUANTITY OF SPECIFIED ITEMS REQUIRED

- A. Wherever in these specifications an article, device or piece of equipment is referred to in the singular number; such reference shall apply to as many such articles as are shown on the drawings or required to complete the installation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. For digital serial communication devices that are close to distance limits of the serial protocol being used (RS-232, RS-422, RS-485, Weigand), run a length test on proposed routing to said device. Inform Owner and Engineer of any devices beyond Recommended Standard (RS) distance limits. Owner and Engineer shall not be responsible for cables that exceed Recommended Standard distance limits.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cables without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.
- B. Provide SPD devices in the security cabinets for any security device located in outdoor locations.
- C. Bond security cabinets with minimum #6 AWG ground wire to nearest Secondary Bonding Busbar (SSB) when cabinets are located within the telecom room. Bond ground bus bar to approved ground rod installed by the electrical contractor when security cabinets are located in outdoor locations.
- D. Install security cables continuous from the device location to the security cabinet serving that area, or between security cabinets. If a splice is required, provide tamper-resistant "torx with peg" security fasteners for junction boxes containing security cable splices.
- E. All security devices located outdoors shall be rated as weather proof.
- F. Furnish tools and test equipment. Provide all specified materials, installation hardware, and labor required to complete work shown on drawings and specified in this Section. This shall include work and miscellaneous items not specified but necessary to build a complete system installation including test equipment accessories and appurtenances required for testing the system. All systems shall be complete and ready for operation.
- G. Use cable bundling hardware rated for the environment and application in which used. Applications include, but are not limited to, general purpose, outdoor, chemical resistant, flame retardant, high temperature, and vibration. Provide reusable cable management straps for bundling and securing cables. Do not use nylon cable ties.
- H. Do not bend cables, in handling or in installing, to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer. Do not exceed cable manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions.
- I. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
- J. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
- K. Wiring within Equipment Rooms and Enclosures: Provide conductors of adequate length. Train conductors to terminal points with no excess.

- L. Bring to the attention of the Owner and Engineer conflicts between manufacturer's instructions and Contract Documents.

3.03 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Firestop all smoke and fire rated walls, partitions and openings after the installation of communications cabling in sleeves and pathways. Firestop material shall be approved for use with the communications cables and jackets being installed.

3.04 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Maintain current documents at the construction site.
- B. Record drawings shall include all information required for shop drawings and, in addition, shall indicate the following:
 1. Routing of cables between communications rooms and from communications rooms to entrance facilities.
 2. Revisions to construction documents (addenda and field changes).
 3. Record drawings shall include all construction changes posted to all portions of the documents including but not limited to communications floor plans, expanded plans, wall and rack elevations, schematics, labeling and installation details. Record documents shall include and clearly show final cable labeling designations down to the individual outlet and port.
 4. Record drawings shall be complete and organized to be suitable for use as disaster recovery and cable infrastructure administration documents.
- C. Final drawing shall be provided to Engineer in electronic format.
- D. Post a complete set of record documents in the security command center or security equipment room serving the project. In each security equipment room post a final floor plan of the outlets served by each room on the wall behind a protective plexiglass wall frame.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Performance Verification Tests:
 1. Notify Architect and Owner's representative in writing, in advance of testing to prevent delays in construction schedules.
 2. Test all systems and place in proper and specified working order prior to demonstration of the systems.
 3. Test system grounds to demonstrate that the ground resistance does not exceed the requirements of UL 1449 Surge Protection Device (SPD) and the National Electric Code (NEC).
 4. Perform tests, as required, by authorities having jurisdiction over the site.
 5. Testing shall be in the presence of the Owner's designated representatives, Contractor, Architect and representatives of the authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Verification of Performance:
 1. Prior to acceptance of the work, the security system integrator/installer (SSI) shall demonstrate to the Owner, designated representatives, Contractor, Architect and representatives of the authorities having jurisdiction, all subsystems, features and functions of the system, and shall instruct the Owner in the proper operation and event sequences of the system. Check for correct connections and test for short circuits, ground faults, continuity, and insulation before energizing any cables and wires.
 - C. Where systems have been expanded and/or upgraded, the SSI shall provide the personnel and labor to completely test and demonstrate all new, existing, and upgraded software and hardware.
 - D. Demonstrate each system and subsystem. The demonstration is to consist of no less than the following:
 1. Designate actual location of each component of a system or sub-system and demonstrate its function and its relationship to other components within the system.
 2. Verify final field of view for all fixed cameras

3. Demonstrate the systems and subsystems operations by actual "START/STOP-ON/OFF-OPEN/CLOSE" cycling showing how to work controls, how to reset devices, how to replace fuses and emergency operating/operations procedures.
 4. Trip all alarm and intrusion detection devices and verify response of alarm and trouble signals.
 5. Check Installation, supervision, and operation of all intelligent, addressable initiating and control devices by physically testing each device in accordance with the manufacturers requirements.
 6. Each of the alarm conditions that the system is required to detect shall be introduced on the system. Verify the proper receipt and the proper processing of the signal at the Front-end processing unit and the correct activation of all control points and the sequence of operations.
- E. Activate each installed access control/security device through the Front-end processing unit and verify proper system operation.
- F. Tag all equipment, stations, and other components for which tests have been satisfactorily completed.
- G. SSI shall furnish the necessary trained personnel to perform the demonstration and instructions and arrange to have the manufacturer's representatives present to assist with the demonstrations. Training time shall include, as a minimum, the total time determined by the sum of the times specified in each section, for performing the prescribed demonstrations/training.
- H. SSI shall arrange with the Owner's designated representative the date and times for perform the demonstrations. The Owner will select date and time for demonstration.
- I. Comply with requirements of Division 01 – System Demonstrations.

3.06 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Participate in project site observations, walk-throughs, and punch lists as requested by the Owner or the Architect/Engineer.
- B. Demonstrate completeness of work relative to completion percentages submitted for payment.

3.07 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish.
- B. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finish, including chips, scratches, and abrasions.

3.08 INSPECTIONS

- A. At the completion of the project and prior to final acceptance of the work, provide evidence of final inspections and approvals to the Owner, as required by the authorities having jurisdiction to requirements of Division 01.

3.09 TRAINING

- A. The Contractor shall provide the Owner's Representative with training for operating the system as required by this specification. The Contractor shall provide actual field demonstrations of the operation of all system components and the entire system installed in the building.
- B. The Contractor shall provide 4 hours of formal training for the Security System to the Owner's Representative, scheduled at their direction. The training shall consist of two, 2-hour training sessions and shall cover system operation, hardware configuration and basic maintenance skills.
- C. The Contractor shall provide the Owner's Representative with training for operating the system as required. An additional 4 hours of technical training shall be given to the Security and Engineering staff. The technical training shall consist of two, 2-hour training sessions.
- D. The Contractor shall submit training agendas and materials to the Engineer for review prior to scheduling training.

- E. Prepare a written record of tests, inspections, and detailed test results in the form of a test log.

3.10 ADJUSTMENTS

- A. Within one year of date of Substantial Completion, provide up to three Project site visits, when requested by Owner, to adjust and calibrate components and to assist Owner's personnel in making program changes and in adjusting equipment and controls to suit actual conditions. Visits for this purpose shall be in addition to any required by warranty.

END OF SECTION 28 0500

SECTION 28 1300
ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes necessary components required to provide a complete and fully functional electronic access control system including, but not limited to, servers, control panels, credentialing and readers, door hardware, peripherals, and installation for wiring systems to be used for connection for equipment/devices.

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. The Electronic Access Control (EAC) server shall be an Extension of the Existing and will serve as the key component for managing the EAC system and components. The software, equipment and devices provided herein shall integrate with the server.
- B. The system shall provide for a variety of integral functions including:
 1. Controlled access for authorized personnel within pre-determined areas based on time and/or clearance level.
 2. Monitor, track and interface the following alarms at a minimum:
 - a. Door forced open
 - b. Door held open
 - c. Access Granted
 - d. Access Denied
 3. Capable of providing at a minimum, a hardwired signal to the surveillance system to begin viewing, recording and storing upon the activation of a selected alarm point where and event has been detected
 4. The system shall be programmable to automatically change status of various combinations of protected zones between secure and access conditions at scheduled times
 5. Status changes may be preset for repetitive, daily, and weekly; specially scheduled operations may be preset up to a year in advance
 6. Manual secure-access control stations shall override programmed settings
 7. Egress locks which are part of this work and are in the path of legal exiting shall be connected to the fire alarm system in accordance with local codes such that they automatically unlock in the event of actuation of the fire alarm system.
 8. All fire rated doors shall remain positively latched when electrically unlocked.
 9. The system shall support the functions and features indicated in Part 2. Each function and feature shall be provided and configured per the Owner's request.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. PRE-CONSTRUCTION SUBMITTALS
 1. Product Data: As specified in section 28 0500
 2. Shop Drawings: As specified in section 28 0500
 3. Access Control Programming Schedule: Provide programming information in spreadsheet format to include but not be limited to the following information by door: When door is scheduled to be secured, what groups or individuals have access and when, holiday schedules, and users.
- B. POST-CONSTRUCTION SUBMITTALS
 1. Operation & Manuals: As specified in section 28 0500
 2. Field Quality Test Reports: As specified in section 28 0500
 3. As-Built Drawings: As specified in section 28 0500
 4. Training Materials: As specified in section 28 0500

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Environmental: Do not deliver or install equipment frames, door devices, cabling to the equipment room or install termination hardware until security equipment rooms are enclosed, painted, water-tight, complete, dry and work above and in ceiling spaces is complete.

- B. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of security equipment requiring power to operate. Coordinate with Division 26.
- C. Coordinate door hardware features being provided with EAC system. Coordinate door hardware and frame preparations will door hardware provider to meet detail drawings. Coordinate with Division 08.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Coordinate the features of materials and equipment so they form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum future performance.

2.02 ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL (EAC) SOFTWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers.
 1. Genetec Synergis
- B. The EAC software is an existing Genetec enterprise class IP access control software solution.
- C. Provide software edition as required to meet the detail drawings, as well as the features and functions outlined within these specifications.
- D. Provide all additional client, server, and reader licenses/dongles required for the system as specified herein. Provide all 3rd party software licenses as required for the proper operation of the system.
- E. Provide failover software module for the directory server. The software shall be capable of failing over to a secondary directory server in case of emergency or disaster recovery.
- F. Software shall be capable of providing an unified platform for the electronic security systems. The software shall be a single intuitive interface for simplistic operations. The software shall be capable of operating the electronic security systems on a single server platform and system.
- G. Database software:
 1. The database software shall be capable (limited only by licensing) of supporting an unlimited number of card readers, input points, and relay outputs.
 2. The database software shall also support an unlimited number of system events and System Operator transactions in the history file limited only by available hard disk space.
 3. The database shall also support user-defined data files in personnel records and custom report generator. The reports shall be capable of being pre-defined and saved within the database for ease of exporting and documentation.
- H. The following functions and features shall be provided and configured as required by the Owner. These features are in addition to the required setup and programming required to provide a fully functioning EAC system.
 1. Badge Design and Printing.
 2. Cardholder and Cardholder Group Management.
 3. Complete Active Directory Integration with automatic updating.
 4. Controller Management, Portal Management, and Area Management.
 5. Credential Management.
 6. Dynamic Graphical Floor Plan Mapping for all of the security devices.
 7. Email and SMS alerts.
 8. Mobile Application and Web Client.
 - a. Applications shall support Android, iOS, or Windows platforms.
 9. Native integration with the following systems:
 - a. Electronic Video Surveillance
 - b. Intrusion Detection System
 - c. Intercom/Video Intercom System
 10. Scheduled locking/unlocking.
 11. Unlimited Client PCs.

2.03 EAC SECURITY SERVER

- A. Security Server
 - 1. Physical EAC Server:
 - a. Existing EAC server.

2.04 EAC FIELD HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers.
 - 1. Mercury
- B. EAC FIELD CONTROLLER HARDWARE
 - 1. General: All decisions regarding access, alarms, and automatic timed functions shall be made at the controller level, independent of the host server.
 - 2. Field controller hardware shall be fully compatible with each other.
 - 3. Intelligent System Controller
 - a. Provide intelligent system controller for connection to all EAC doors and EAC software.
 - b. Complete functional hardware/firmware for EAC software host.
 - c. Capable of being a stand-alone system when EAC software is down.
 - d. Connection: TCP/IP network.
 - e. Capable of receiving and processing real-time commands from EAC software.
 - f. Door Inputs: Minimum of 2, Maximum of 8
 - g. Provides, at a minimum, the following inputs:
 - 1) Reader input/power.
 - 2) Door Monitoring.
 - 3) Request-to-Exit Monitoring.
 - 4) Electronic Door Relay.
 - 5) Auxiliary Relay.
 - h. Mounting: Within EAC enclosure.
 - i. Power: Match EAC power supply.
 - 4. Door Control Board
 - a. Provide door control board, as required, for all EAC doors.
 - b. Connection: Serial to intelligent system controller.
 - c. Reporting: Back to Intelligent System Controller.
 - d. Door Input: Minimum of 2, Maximum of 8
 - e. Inputs: Provide a minimum of the following:
 - 1) Reader input/power.
 - 2) Door Monitoring.
 - 3) Request-to-Exit Monitoring.
 - 4) Electronic Door Relay.
 - 5) Auxiliary Relay.
 - f. Mounting: Within EAC enclosure.
 - g. Power: Match EAC power supply.
 - 5. Input Control Board
 - a. Provide input control board, as required, for all input connections.
 - b. Connection: Serial
 - c. Reporting: Back to Intelligent System Controller.
 - d. Inputs: Supervised.
 - e. Mounting: Within EAC enclosure.
 - f. Power: Match EAC power supply.
 - 6. Output Control Board
 - a. Provide output control board, as required, for all output connections.
 - b. Connection: Serial
 - c. Reporting: Back to Intelligent System Controller.
 - d. Outputs: Supervised.

- e. Mounting: Within EAC enclosure.
- f. Power: Match EAC power supply.

2.05 EAC AUTHENTICATION HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers.
 - 1. Standard Door Credential:
 - a. HID
 - b. Mifare DESFire
- B. AUTHENTICATION HARDWARE
 - 1. Standard Door Credential
 - a. Credentials:
 - 1) Type: Fob
 - 2) Credential Technology: 13.56MHz Smart Card
 - 3) Credentials shall be provided and configured.
 - 4) Provide a quantity of 100 to the Owner.
 - b. Credential Reader
 - 1) Supported Credential Technology: 13.56MHz Smart Card or 125KHz Proximity Card
 - 2) Communication: Wiegand or Open Supervised Device Protocol (OSDP).
 - 3) Read Range: At a minimum of 2" away.
 - 4) Light: RGB LED, indicates credential access.
 - 5) Credential Reader shall have the following features:
 - (a) Support credentials specified.
 - (b) Mobile Access (Bluetooth).
 - 6) Mounting: Refer to Detail Drawings
 - 7) Credential Reader Licenses:
 - (a) Provide licensing as required per the Detail Drawings plus 2 spare.

2.06 EAC ACCESS AND DOOR DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers.
 - 1. Activation Devices:
 - a. Federal Signal
 - b. George Risk Industries (GRI), Inc
 - 2. Door Devices:
 - a. Bosch Security
 - b. DMP
 - c. GE Security
 - d. GRI, Inc
 - e. Honeywell
 - f. System Sensor
 - 3. Door Hardware:
 - a. ASSA Abloy.
 - b. HES.
 - c. Sargent.
- B. Activation Devices
 - 1. Panic Button
 - a. Mount: Under Desk
 - b. Type: Double Pole, Double Throw.
 - c. Operation: Momentary.
 - d. Finish: Coordinate with Architect.
 - e. Function: Provide alert notification to Owner identified personnel.
 - f. Coordinate exact location with Owner prior to installation.

- g. Refer to detail drawings.
- C. Door Devices:
 - 1. Refer to the Access Control Opening Schedule for additional information
 - 2. Door Position Switch (DPS)
 - a. Provide DPS and cabling for connection to door. Refer to detail drawings for installation.
 - b. Size: 1" Diameter.
 - c. Gap Distance: Up to 1".
 - d. Contacts: Closed Loop.
 - e. Type: Double Pole, Double Throw.
 - f. Finish: Match door hardware, coordinate with Architect.
 - g. UL Listed.
- D. Door Hardware
 - 1. Latch Bolt Monitor (LBM)
 - a. Furnished with door hardware. Security Contractor shall provide cabling and connection to access control panel. Coordinate connection point with door hardware supplier.
 - 2. Mag-Lock
 - a. Furnished with door hardware. Security Contractor shall provide cabling and connection access control panel.
 - 3. Electric Strike
 - a. Furnished with door hardware. Security Contractor shall provide cabling and connection to access control panel.
 - 4. Electrified Door Hardware Lockset
 - a. Furnished with door hardware. This shall include, but not limited to, exit devices, mortise, and cylindrical locksets.
 - b. Security Contractor shall provide cabling and connection to access control panel.
 - 5. Wire Transfer Hinge/Electric Power Transfer
 - a. Furnished with door hardware. Security Contractor shall provide cabling and connection to access control panel.

2.07 COPPER CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers.
 - 1. Belden
 - 2. Windy City Wire
- B. Composite Access Control Cable
 - 1. Overall jacketed cable with multiple conductors.
 - 2. Conductors: Each shall be individual labeled and colored.
 - a. Lock Power: 4C, 16AWG, Shielded.
 - b. Card Reader: 3pr, 18AWG, Shielded.
 - c. DPS: 2C, 18AWG, Shielded.
 - d. Request-to-Exit/Spare: 4C, 18AWG, Shielded.
 - 3. Rating: Plenum
 - 4. Jacket Color: Yellow
 - 5. Final conductor size shall be verified prior to ordering.
- C. Ancillary Control Cable
 - 1. Overall jacketed cable with multiple conductors.
 - 2. Jacket shall be labeled.
 - 3. Conductors: Quantity and size shall be provided as required.
 - 4. Rating: Plenum
 - 5. Jacket Color: Yellow
 - 6. Final conductor size shall be verified prior to ordering.

2.08 ENCLOSURES, POWER SUPPLY, CABLING MANAGEMENT, AND SUPPORT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers.
 - 1. EAC Enclosures:
 - a. Altronix
 - b. Lifesafety Power
 - 2. EAC Power Supply:
 - a. Altronix
 - b. Lifesafety Power
- B. EAC Enclosure
 - 1. Provide a wall mount EAC enclosure to house equipment/devices and route cabling. Enclosure shall have the following features:
 - a. High grade steel design with lock and key.
 - b. Conduit knock-outs at the top of the enclosure.
 - c. Tamper switch.
 - d. 16AWG backplane for device mounting.
 - e. Houses equipment, batteries, and power supplies.
 - 2. Enclosure shall be sized accordingly to house EAC equipment/devices.
 - 3. Finish: Black.
- C. EAC Power Supply
 - 1. Door Lock Power Supply:
 - a. Mounting: Within EAC enclosure.
 - b. Power Input: 115VAC
 - c. Input Options: (8) normally open or open collector.
 - d. Power Output: 12/24VDC @ 10A.
 - e. Output Options: (8) Fail-Safe or Fail-Secure
 - f. Aux Output Options: (8) Unswitched.
 - g. Output Fuse Rating: 3.5A individual fused.
 - h. Power Distribution: Dedicated for each door.
 - i. Supervision: AC Fail
 - j. Features:
 - 1) Visual Indicators.
 - 2) Thermal overload protection.
 - 3) Alarm output relays.
 - k. Battery Backup:
 - 1) Built-in charger with sealed lead acid batteries.
 - 2) Automatic switch over to stand-by battery when AC fails.
 - 3) AC fail supervision relay output.
 - 4) Battery fail and battery presence supervision relay output.
 - 5) Provide battery capacity for four hours of operation assuming (30) 1.25A door unlocks per door per hour.
 - l. Fire Alarm Disconnect (latching or non-latching):
 - 1) Individually selectable for any or all outputs.
 - 2) Normally open (NO) or normally closed (NC) dry contact input.
 - 3) Alarm output relay indication that FACP input is triggered.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. The Security Contractor shall maintain the integrity of the existing system through renovation. The Contractor shall coordinate any outages or down-time with the Owner prior to starting any work.

- B. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of access control.
- C. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of access control connections before intrusion detection installation.
- D. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of intrusion detection or access control.
- E. Inspect built-in and cast-in anchor installations, before installing access control devices, to verify that anchor installations comply with requirements
- F. Remove and replace anchors where inspections indicate that they do not comply with requirements. Re-inspect after repairs or replacements are made.
- G. Perform additional inspections to determine compliance of replaced or additional anchor installations.
- H. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- I. Examine rough-ins to verify that they are plumb and level.
- J. Examine rough-ins to verify that the height A.F.F. is correct.

3.02 SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Systems shall be complete and operational in all respects.
- B. Contractor shall program and provision the system per the drawings and specifications and owner requirements.
- C. Security software shall be configured and programmed as indicated within these specifications and shall coordinate final programming with Owner.
- D. Server configuration and setup shall be coordinated with Owner prior to programming.
- E. Access control programming schedule shall be utilized to configure and program the security software. Coordinate final configuration with the Owner.
- F. Integrations to other systems indicated shall be configured to allow for the most optimal efficiency of the combined systems. These systems shall work as a single system.
- G. Program required licenses for system.
- H. Configure security workstations to meet manufacturer's recommendations, and the detail drawings and specifications.
- I. Comply with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of all products.

3.03 DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Mount security server, as required, within the indicated equipment rack.
- B. Install security workstations on or within security desk as indicated.
- C. Mount all credential readers where shown on plans. Placement shall be in accordance with Americans with Disabilities Act requirements.
 - 1. Standard Reader: Mount at 42" AFF and 8" on center from the latch side of the door frame, unless noted otherwise.
 - 2. Mullion Mount Reader: Mount at 42" AFF on the latch side of the door frame.
 - 3. Multiple devices at a door location shall be mounted adjacent to each other.
- D. Coordinate door hardware connection points and connections with door hardware supplier.
- E. Install security enclosures and power supplies to plywood backboard.
- F. All security equipment, junction boxes, terminal cans, etc. shall be installed utilizing tamper proof mounting hardware. Provide a minimum of 2 driver bits or hand tools for each type of security fastener provided.

3.04 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceways except in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and in interior hollow gypsum board partitions where cable may be used. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces and as indicated. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4-inch. Security and data transmission wiring shall not share conduit with other building wiring systems.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Use lacing bars and distribution spools. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with intrusion system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- C. Provide all system wiring between all components in accordance with manufacturer's guidelines. Each cable for each device shall be home run. No splices are allowed unless otherwise noted.
- D. All wiring shall be "Plenum" rated in concealed spaces and in conduit or approved raceway in exposed spaces unless shown otherwise on the Detail Drawings.
- E. Conductors: Size and pair quantity as recommended in writing by system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. 120-V Power Wiring: Comply with division 26 "Conductors and Cables,".
- G. Terminal Connections: Comply with torque-tightening values specified in UL 486A.
- H. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components for detection devices at control units, unless otherwise indicated or required by manufacturer. Do not install such items near devices they serve.
- I. Install, wire, and power per manufacturer's recommendations.
- J. All cable shall be free of tension at both ends. Provide strain relief connectors at each device and junction box where cables enter.
- K. Where indicated on detail drawings security cabling shall be routed within cable management tray. Where cable management tray is not provided J-Hooks shall be provided to support security cabling.
- L. Provide cable tray dividers within cable management tray to separate security cabling from other systems.
- M. Support cabling at a maximum of 4-foot intervals utilizing J-Hooks supports anchored to structure. Cable sag at mid-span shall not exceed 6-inches. Install supports to maintain cable bend to larger than the minimum bend radius.
- N. Route individual EAC conductors neatly within EAC enclosure. Each composite access control cable shall be neatly bundled per door and terminated at control board. Each bundle shall be clearly identified for troubleshooting, and moves, adds, or changes.

3.05 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Comply with Division 27 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."
- C. Ground and bond electronic access control field panels to electrical ground bar and grounding conductors within the panels. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.06 INTERFACE WITH OTHER WORK

- A. Coordinate with the Division 08 contractor regarding the doorframes and hardware equipment which is associated with the Electronic Access Control System. Verify rough-in and installation requirements for all door frame mounted and/or door mounted control and monitoring equipment.

- B. Prior to the start of system installation, schedule and facilitate a pre-installation meeting with the pertinent hardware, lock, exit device, and door closer manufacturers' representative(s), and related trades to coordinate materials, techniques, and to sequence complex hardware items and system installation. Proper installation and adjustment of hardware is to be reviewed. Convene at least one week prior to commencement of access control installation. Provide written documentation of the meeting including: date, attendee/participant list and minutes.
- C. Coordinate with Division 26 installer to confirm required cabling pathways, device rough-ins, emergency power, and line-voltage power requirements.
- D. Coordinate with Division 28 - Fire Alarm installer to confirm required modules, connections, and configuration requirements.
- E. Coordinate hardware placement, cabling, and interface requirements relating to elevator cab-mounted credential readers (if applicable) with the elevator contractor.

3.07 IDENTIFICATION AND LABELING

- A. Label all installed electronic access control cabling and equipment.
- B. Prior to installation, the Contractor shall provide samples of all label types planned for the project. These samples shall include examples of the lettering to be used.
- C. Label cables to be easily identified. Labeling shall include:
 1. Label overall jacket above door and as it enters the EAC enclosure.
 2. Label door controller per label detail on detailed drawings.
 3. Label each composite access control bundle to be easily identified.
 4. Label each ancillary control cable to be easily identified.
- D. EAC wiring shall be color coded as required by function. Maintain color coding and labeling throughout the system.

3.08 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

- A. Conduct acceptance testing according to a schedule coordinated with the Owner and Architect/Engineer.
- B. Prior to testing, provide summary of the proposed test plan. The test plan shall include, at a minimum, proposed schedule, list of tests to be completed, equipment to be utilized, expected results, and documentation. The test plan and result shall be provided to the Engineer.
- C. Testing shall be completed prior to the final punch list performed by the Owner and Engineer.
- D. Equipment and personnel required for testing shall be provided by the Contractor.
- E. Power connections:
 1. Visually inspect all cabling and termination points to ensure that they are complete and conform to the wiring pattern defined herein.
 2. Test battery back-up units for complete operation. Provide test reports, as required.
 3. Test power connections to door hardware, credential readers, control panels, and door devices.
- F. Authentication device and control communications wiring and devices:
 1. Visually inspect all cabling and termination points to ensure that they are complete and conform to the wiring pattern defined herein.
 2. Test all cables for continuity, ground faults or line to line short circuits.
 3. Test Field Device cables as applicable to verify resistance in both door-open and door-closed conditions. Document results on a chart that lists each door and the measured resistance of each conductor pair.
 4. Visually inspect all door devices, control panels, and associated equipment to ensure that they are complete and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and defined herein.
- G. TCP/IP network:
 1. Visually inspect all cabling and termination points to ensure that they are complete and conform to the wiring pattern defined herein.

2. Test that EAC intelligent door control board, security server, and security workstations are connected to the network, as required.
- H. EAC Software:
 1. Visually inspect that all functions for the EAC software defined herein are complete and functional.
 2. Visually inspect that the information from the access control programming schedule provided as a part of the pre-construction submittal process has been completed within the EAC software.

3.09 SYSTEM START UP

- A. Conduct system start up according to a schedule coordinated with the Owner and Architect/Engineer.
- B. Prior to system start up, provide summary of the proposed start up plan. The plan shall include, at a minimum, proposed schedule, list of start up procedures to be completed, equipment to be utilized, expected results, and documentation. The plan and result shall be provided to the Engineer.
- C. Conduct system start up testing to verify, at a minimum, the following functionality.
 1. Door functionality.
 2. Authentication hardware.
 3. Security server shutdown and startup.
 4. Security software client workstations.
 5. Management database.
 6. Alarm notifications.
 7. Administrative log-in.
 8. System administrative diagnostic tools and services.
 9. Access level permissions.
 10. Credential management.
 11. Credential operations.
 12. Credential printers.
 13. Visitor printers.
 14. Mobile and web application.
 15. Integrations.
- D. Upon completion and approval of system start up training for the Owner shall proceed.

END OF SECTION 28 1300

SECTION 28 1600
INTRUSION DETECTION SYSTEM

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes necessary components required to provide a complete and fully functional intrusion detection system including, but not limited to, servers, control panels, credentialing, door hardware, peripherals, and installation for wiring systems to be used for connection for equipment/devices.

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. The main digital alarm communicator (DAC) server shall be new and will serve as the key component for managing the intrusion detection system for the components outlined in these specifications and construction drawings. The equipment and devices provided herein shall integrate with the server.
- B. The DAC will directly monitor and control all intrusion detection devices, alarm initiating devices, alarm annunciation devices, and auxiliary control points outlined in these specifications and construction drawings.
- C. The basis of the design is to provide a micro-processor based DAC that monitors various intrusion detection and alarm initiating devices. The DAC shall include a transmitter that sends events to selected public switched telephone network (PSTN) or IP network destinations through programmable route groups and shall be programmable to automatically change status of various combinations of protected zones between secure and access conditions at scheduled times. The system status changes may be preset for repetitive, daily, and weekly; specially scheduled operations may be preset up to a year in advance. Manual security keypad devices shall override programmed settings.
- D. The DAC shall provide interface modules for:
 1. Weigand card reader communications
 2. Control panel with built-in Ethernet jack
 3. Control panel with supervised telephone line interface module
 4. Recording and retention of event information in a dedicated event log
 5. Battery charging capabilities with supervision of battery voltage
 6. Supervision of peripheral devices and communications interfaces
 7. Configuration and operation of separate zones.
- E. The DAC shall be capable of controlling relays and automatically executing system functions based on a time / event scheduling program. The following functions shall be available:
 1. Arm / Disarm a specific area
 2. Bypass / Unbypass a point
 3. Activate / Deactivate a relay
 4. Send a test report
 5. Turn an Access Authority Level On / Off

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. PRE-CONSTRUCTION SUBMITTALS
 1. Product Data: As specified in section 28 0500
 2. Shop Drawings: As specified in section 28 0500
 3. Intrusion Detection Programming Schedule: Provide programming information in spreadsheet format to include but not be limited to the following information by sensor: When a sensor is to be scheduled, what zone a sensor is associated with, what zones are there, schedules, etc.
- B. POST-CONSTRUCTION SUBMITTALS
 1. Operation & Manuals: As specified in section 28 0500
 2. Field Quality Test Reports: As specified in section 28 0500
 3. As-Built Drawings: As specified in section 28 0500

4. Training Materials: As specified in section 28 0500

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Environmental: Do not deliver or install equipment frames, door devices, cabling to the equipment room or install termination hardware until security equipment rooms are enclosed, painted, water-tight, complete, dry and work above and in ceiling spaces is complete.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with Owner's Telecommunications and LAN equipment service suppliers.
- C. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of security equipment requiring power to operate. Coordinate with Division 26.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. General:
 1. Coordinate the features of materials and equipment so they form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum future performance
 2. All applicable components shall be listed and labeled according to the various burglar, intrusion detection, and hold up system related UL standards as required by the local AHJ

2.02 IDS ENCLOSURES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers:
 1. IDS Enclosures:
 - a. Altronix
 - b. Bosch
 - c. DMP
 - d. GE Security
 - e. Life Safety Power
- B. Enclosure shall be provided to house IDS control panels and accessories. Mount equipment/devices within enclosure. Provide enclosure large enough to house the equipment/devices.
- C. Construction: cold-rolled steel with a minimum of 20 gauge box frame.
- D. Finish: Gray
- E. Enclosure shall have the following features:
 1. Tamper switch for monitoring the door.
 2. Keyed lock to gain access into the enclosure.
 3. Conduit knockouts at the top and bottom of the enclosure.
 4. Hinges on door shall be provided to prevent ready removal.

2.03 IDS POWER SUPPLIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers:
 1. IDS Power Supplies:
 - a. Altronix
 - b. Bosch
 - c. Life Safety Power
- B. Power Supply:
 1. Power: 12 Volts DC output
 2. Output Power: 2 amps per output.
 3. Function: Provide connection to control panel and devices as required.
 4. Features:
 - a. Supervised monitoring.
 - b. Visual LED indicators.

5. Mounting: Mount within IDS enclosure.
6. Battery Backup:
 - a. Built-in charger with sealed lead acid batteries.
 - b. Automatic switch over to stand-by battery when AC fails.
 - c. AC fail supervision relay output.
 - d. Battery fail and battery presence supervision relay output.
 - e. Provide battery capacity for 80 hours of standby time.
- C. Power supplies for the control unit shall operate from 120 VAC, supplied at the respective protected areas. Standby batteries shall be supplied to power the system in the event of a utility power failure. Batteries shall be sized to provide 105% capacity for 2 hours. Standby batteries shall be sealed lead-acid. Power supplies shall be all Solid State.
- D. Controls shall be designed to maintain full battery charge when alternating current is available. Batteries shall be recharged to 85% capacity within 24 hours from battery use. The system shall be automatically transferred to battery power upon loss of alternating current power and return to alternating current power upon restoration. Intrusion alarms shall not be initiated during switch over; a signal shall be initiated upon failure of battery or alternating current power.

2.04 IDS FIELD HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers:
 1. IDS Field Hardware:
 - a. Bosch
 - b. DMP
 - c. GE Security
- B. Digital Alarm Communicator (DAC):
 1. The DAC shall be a state-of-the-art, micro-processor based, addressable, security control system specifically designed and constructed for monitoring intrusion detection equipment and other sensors, initiation of an alarm, transmission of an alarm to a central station, and controlling lighting contactors.
 2. Mounting: Within IDS enclosure.
 3. Programmable Outputs: (1) alarm power, (1) aux power, and (4) alarm outputs, at a minimum.
 4. Minimum Zones: 20 programmable zones.
 5. Communications Protocol: TCP/IP Network.
 - a. Provide module as required.
 6. Minimum Quantity of Individual Devices: 200 Hardwired or wireless addressable devices.
 7. Features:
 - a. Multiple custom authority levels for access into the system.
 - b. Full operational command menu and customizable functions.
 - c. Wireless device capable by adding only a wireless interface module.
 - d. Updatable firmware via TCP/IP Network.
 - e. Customizable alerts/alarms.
 - f. Email and SMS notifications.
 8. Additional Modules: Provide and configure modules as required.
 - a. Input module
 - b. Output module.
 - c. Auxiliary power supply.
 - d. Cellular integrated communications module.
 - e. Serial interface module.
 - f. Access control interface module.
 - g. Wireless interface module.
- C. IDS Keypads:
 1. Mount: Wall
 2. Power: Connect to IDS control panel.

3. Function: Keypad shall be capable of arming and disarming by individual zone.
 4. Features:
 - a. Color graphic touch screen.
 - b. Presence detector upon approach.
 - c. Integrated keypad.
 - d. Input/Output expansion.
 - e. Integrated proximity credential reader.
 - f. Identifiable icons and menu.
 - g. Visible LED indicators.
 5. Finish: White.
- D. Expansion Modules:
1. Locate all expansion modules inside of the DAC security cabinet or inside of a cabinet meeting the same requirements located adjacent to the DAC security cabinet. Any alternate locations must be approved by the engineer.

2.05 SECURE AND ACCESS DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers:
1. Panic Buttons:
 - a. DSC
 - b. Federal Signal
 - c. George Risk Industries (GRI), Inc
 - d. GE Security
 - e. Inovonics
 2. Motion Detectors:
 - a. Ademco Sensor Co.
 - b. Bosch
 - c. DMP
 - d. GE Security
 - e. Inovonics
 3. Door Devices:
 - a. Bosch Security
 - b. DMP
 - c. GE Security
 - d. GRI, Inc
 - e. Inovonics
- B. Panic Button:
1. Under Desk (Fixed):
 - a. Mount: Under Desk
 - b. Type: Double Pole, Double Throw.
 - c. Operation: Momentary.
 - d. Finish: Coordinate with Architect.
 - e. Function: Dial out to 911.
 - f. Coordinate exact location with Owner prior to installation.
 - g. Refer to detail drawings.
- C. Motion Detectors:
1. Wall/Ceiling Mount Wide Angle (90-Degree Pattern):
 - a. Mounting Style: Wall
 - b. Type: Wired
 - c. Sensor: Dual Technology (Microwave and PIR)
 - d. Coverage: 40 ft x 40 ft.
 - e. Features:
 - 1) Contractor shall mask detectors to provide an appropriate pattern as needed.
 - 2) Device shall have supervised tamper switch.

- 3) Integrated EOL resistors.
 - 4) Visible LED indicator.
 - 5) Small animal immunity.
 - 6) Provide batteries, as required.
 - f. Finish: Coordinate with Architect.
 - g. Provide mounting bracket as required for wall or ceiling.
2. Wall/Ceiling Mount (Narrow Beam Curtain Pattern):
 - a. Mounting Style: Wall
 - b. Type: Wired
 - c. Sensor: Dual Technology (Microwave and PIR)
 - d. Coverage: 100 ft x 8.5 ft
 - e. Features:
 - 1) Contractor shall mask detectors to provide an appropriate pattern as needed.
 - 2) Device shall have supervised tamper switch.
 - 3) White light suppression.
 - 4) Visible LED indicator.
 - 5) Small animal immunity.
 - 6) Provide batteries, as required.
 - f. Finish: Coordinate with Architect.
 - g. Provide mounting bracket as required for wall or ceiling.
 3. Ceiling Mount (360-Degree Pattern):
 - a. Mounting Style: Ceiling
 - b. Type: Wired
 - c. Sensor: Dual Technology (Microwave and PIR)
 - d. Coverage: 65 ft diameter.
 - e. Features:
 - 1) Contractor shall mask detectors to provide an appropriate pattern as needed.
 - 2) Device shall have supervised tamper switch.
 - 3) Visible LED indicator.
 - 4) Small animal immunity.
 - 5) Provide batteries, as required.
 - f. Finish: Coordinate with Architect.
 - g. Provide mounting bracket as required for ceiling mount applications.
- D. Door Devices:
1. Door Position Switch (DPS)
 - a. Provide DPS and cabling for connection to door. Refer to detail drawings for installation.
 - b. Size: 1" Diameter.
 - c. Gap Distance: Up to 1".
 - d. Contacts: Closed Loop.
 - e. Type: Double Pole, Double Throw.
 - f. Finish: Match door hardware, coordinate with Architect.
 - g. UL Listed.
- E. Auxiliary Alarm Points:
1. Contractor shall connect additional points identified in the construction documents to the system for monitoring and control. Contractor shall verify connection type with each equipment manufacturer to ensure proper signaling and termination. Contractor shall coordinate electrical conduit with electrical contractor as needed for specified auxiliary alarm. Conduit shall be provided to cable tray in accessible ceiling or homerun to equipment room where the terminating access control cabinet is located.

2.06 COPPER CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers.

1. Belden
 2. Honeywell
 3. Windy City Wire
- B. Copper conductor cabling:
1. Overall jacketed cable with multiple conductors.
 2. Conductors: Each shall be labeled and color coded.
 3. Rated: Plenum.
 4. Jacket Color: Orange.
 5. Final Conductor size shall be verified prior to ordering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. The Security Contractor shall maintain the integrity of the existing system through renovation. The Contractor shall coordinate any outages or down-time with the Owner prior to starting any work.
- B. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of intrusion detection and access control.
- C. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of intrusion detection connections before intrusion detection installation.
- D. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of intrusion detection or access control.
- E. Inspect built-in and cast-in anchor installations, before installing intrusion detection, to verify that anchor installations comply with requirements
- F. Remove and replace anchors where inspections indicate that they do not comply with requirements. Re-inspect after repairs or replacements are made.
- G. Perform additional inspections to determine compliance of replaced or additional anchor installations.
- H. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Systems shall be complete and operational in all respects.
- B. If required by the local AHJ the system shall be a UL certificated alarm system.
- C. Contractor shall program and provision the system per the drawings and specifications and owner requirements.
- D. Systems shall be complete and operational in all respects.
- E. Contractor shall program and provision the system per the drawings and specifications and owner requirements.
- F. Security software shall be configured and programmed as indicated within these specifications and shall coordinate final programming with Owner.
- G. Server configuration and setup shall be coordinated with Owner prior to programming.
- H. Intrusion detection programming schedule shall be utilized to configure and program the security software. Coordinate final configuration with the Owner.
- I. Integrations to other systems indicated shall be configured to allow for the most optimal efficiency of the combined systems. These systems shall work as a single system.
- J. Program required licenses for system.
- K. Configure security workstations to meet manufacturer's recommendations, and the detail drawings and specifications.

- L. Comply with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of all products.
- M. Assist Owner in setting up central monitoring company, as required, for the IDS. Coordinate dialing out from the system to the monitoring station.

3.03 DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Mount security server, as required, within the indicated equipment rack.
- B. Install security workstations on or within security desk as indicated.
- C. Mount all intrusion detection devices where shown on plans. Placement shall be in accordance with Americans with Disabilities Act requirements.
 1. Hard ceiling mount device: Mount on ceiling and secure as required.
 2. Accessible ceiling mount device: Mount on ceiling in the center of the ceiling tile and secure as required.
 3. Wall Mount: Mount on wall utilizing rough-in indicated. Device shall be, at a minimum, of 8' AFF.
 4. Keypad: Mount at 42" AFF.
- D. All security equipment, junction boxes, terminal cans, etc. shall be installed utilizing tamper proof mounting hardware. Provide a minimum of 2 driver bits or hand tools for each type of security fastener provided.
- E. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components for detection devices at control units, unless otherwise indicated or required by manufacturer. Do not install such items near devices they serve.
- F. Contractor shall coordinate with the Div. 26 contractor regarding the installation of all conduit, raceways, cable trays, power, power to remote door power supplies, etc. for all building Security Systems.
- G. Install security enclosures and power supplies to plywood backboard.
- H. All security equipment, junction boxes, terminal cans, etc. shall be installed utilizing tamper proof mounting hardware. Provide a minimum of 2 driver bits or hand tools for each type of security fastener provided.

3.04 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceways except in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and in interior hollow gypsum board partitions where cable may be used. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces and as indicated. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4-inch. Security and data transmission wiring shall not share conduit with other building wiring systems.
- B. Conductors: Size as recommended in writing by system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. All wiring shall be "Plenum" rated in concealed spaces and in conduit or approved raceway in exposed spaces unless shown otherwise on the Drawings.
- D. Connect 120 VAC emergency power to Security Systems as required.
- E. 120-V Power Wiring: Comply with "Conductors and Cables."
- F. Connections: Comply with torque-tightening values specified in UL 486A.
- G. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components for cameras at head-end equipment, unless otherwise indicated or required by manufacturer. Do not install such items near devices they serve.
- H. Install, wire, and power per manufacturer's recommendations.
- I. All cable shall be free of tension at both ends. Provide strain relief connectors at each device and junction box where cables enter.

- J. Where indicated on detail drawings security cabling shall be routed within cable management tray. Where cable management tray is not provided J-Hooks shall be provided to support security cabling.
- K. Provide cable tray dividers within cable management tray to separate security cabling from other systems.
- L. Support cabling at a maximum of 4-foot intervals utilizing J-Hooks supports anchored to structure. Cable sag at mid-span shall not exceed 6-inches. Install supports to maintain cable bend to larger than the minimum bend radius.
- M. Route individual IDS conductors neatly within IDS enclosure. Each cable shall be neatly bundled per zone and terminated at control board. Each bundle shall be clearly identified for troubleshooting, and moves, adds, or changes.

3.05 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Comply with Division 27 Section "Telecommunications Grounding and Bonding."
- C. Ground and bond intrusion detection field panels to electrical ground bar and grounding conductors within the panels. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.06 IDENTIFICATION AND LABELING

- A. Label all installed electronic access control cabling and equipment.
- B. Prior to installation, the Contractor shall provide samples of all label types planned for the project. These samples shall include examples of the lettering to be used.
- C. Label cables to be easily identified. Labeling shall include:
 1. Label overall jacket above door and as it enters the IDS enclosure.
 2. Label door controller per label detail on detailed drawings.
 3. Label each composite access control bundle to be easily identified.
- D. IDS wiring shall be color coded as required by function. Maintain color coding and labeling throughout the system.

3.07 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

- A. Conduct acceptance testing according to a schedule coordinated with the Owner and Architect/Engineer.
- B. Prior to testing, provide summary of the proposed test plan. The test plan shall include, at a minimum, proposed schedule, list of tests to be completed, equipment to be utilized, expected results, and documentation. The test plan and result shall be provided to the Engineer.
- C. Testing shall be completed prior to the final punch list performed by the Owner and Engineer.
- D. Equipment and personnel required for testing shall be provided by the Contractor.
- E. Power connections:
 1. Visually inspect all cabling and termination points to ensure that they are complete and conform to the wiring pattern defined herein.
 2. Test battery back-up units for complete operation. Provide test reports, as required.
 3. Test power connections to door hardware, credential readers, control panels, and door devices.
- F. Authentication device and control communications wiring and devices:
 1. Visually inspect all cabling and termination points to ensure that they are complete and conform to the wiring pattern defined herein.
 2. Test all cables for continuity, ground faults or line to line short circuits.
 3. Test Field Device cables as applicable to verify resistance in both door-open and door-closed conditions, and motion sensors. Document results on a chart that lists each door and the measured resistance of each conductor pair.

4. Visually inspect all door devices, control panels, and associated equipment to ensure that they are complete and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and defined herein.
- G. TCP/IP network:
 1. Visually inspect all cabling and termination points to ensure that they are complete and conform to the wiring pattern defined herein.
 2. Test that IDS dialer, keypad, etc are connected to the network, as required.
- H. IDS Software:
 1. Visually inspect that all functions for the IDS software defined herein are complete and functional.
 2. Visually inspect that the information from the access control programming schedule provided as a part of the pre-construction submittal process has been completed within the IDS software.

3.08 SYSTEM START UP

- A. Conduct system start up according to a schedule coordinated with the Owner and Architect/Engineer.
- B. Prior to system start up, provide summary of the proposed start up plan. The plan shall include, at a minimum, proposed schedule, list of start up procedures to be completed, equipment to be utilized, expected results, and documentation. The plan and result shall be provided to the Engineer.
- C. Conduct system start up testing to verify, at a minimum, the completion following functionality.
 1. Door functionality.
 2. Authentication hardware.
 3. Zone verification.
 4. Security server shutdown and startup.
 5. Security software client workstations.
 6. Management database.
 7. Alarm notifications.
 8. Administrative log-in.
 9. System administrative diagnostic tools and services.
 10. Access level permissions.
 11. Credential management.
 12. Credential operations.
 13. Mobile and web application.
 14. Integrations.
- D. Upon completion and approval of system start up training for the Owner shall proceed.

END OF SECTION 28 1600

SECTION 28 2300
ELECTRONIC VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This section includes necessary components required to provide a complete and fully functional electronic video surveillance (EVS) system including, but not limited to, video management system, servers, cameras, licensing, and installation for wiring systems to be used for connection for equipment/devices.

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. The EVS video management system and main server shall be existing to be extended and will serve as the key component for managing the video surveillance system outlined in these specifications and construction drawings. The system shall provide full video control, monitoring, and recording as outlined in these specifications and construction drawings. The equipment and devices provided herein shall integrate with the server.
- B. The basis of the design is to provide to the owner a distributed digital video surveillance system supplied by the Contractor. The system shall be complete and operational per the performance requirements and objectives of these specifications. The EVS shall meet the following requirements at a minimum:
 1. Refer to the "Security Camera Schedule" on the drawings for additional information.
 2. 30 days, minimum based upon server size, of storage for all recorded video shall be required.
 3. Ability to archive selected video from specific incident until manually selected for deletion.
 4. Ability to trigger event-based recording parameters with 5 sec pre-record and 5 sec post-record.
 5. Nominal live video settings: 15 fps, Match camera resolution indicated.
 6. Nominal recorded video settings: 15 fps, Match camera resolution indicated.
 7. Motion/Alarm activated recorded video settings: 15 fps, Match camera resolution indicated.
 8. Capable of viewing from remote locations via internet connectivity.
 9. Software will provide chain of custody of the video clip for authenticity for evidence use.
 10. PTZ controls via traditional joystick/keyboard or video workstation.
 11. Multiple viewers at once for the same cameras.
 12. Support multiple PTZ data protocols.
 13. Time Synchronization: The system shall support either direct or network connection to an external time source and be capable of acting as either a clock master for additional system or listener allowing synchronization to a master system. The system shall support integration to Network Time Protocol (NTP), Atomic Clock and GPS Time.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. PRE-CONSTRUCTION SUBMITTALS
 1. Product Data: As specified in section 28 0500
 2. Shop Drawings: As specified in section 28 0500
 3. EVS Camera Schedule: Provide programming information in spreadsheet format to include, but not be limited to, the following information by camera: License information, mounting type, mounting height/location, field of view, IP address and camera name/indicator.
- B. POST-CONSTRUCTION SUBMITTALS
 1. Operation & Manuals: As specified in section 28 0500
 2. Field Quality Test Reports: As specified in section 28 0500
 3. As-Built Drawings: As specified in section 28 0500
 4. Training Materials: As specified in section 28 0500

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Environmental: Do not deliver or install equipment, and cabling to the equipment room or install termination hardware until security equipment rooms are enclosed, painted, water-tight, complete, dry and work above and in ceiling spaces is complete.
- B. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of security equipment requiring power to operate. Coordinate with Division 26.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Coordinate the features of materials and equipment so they form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum future performance.

2.02 CAMERAS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers:
 - 1. EVS Cameras:
 - a. Hanwha Techwin America
- B. Refer to "Security Camera Schedule" on drawings for exact camera type.
- C. Security camera mounts, licenses, hardware, and associated equipment required to install, mount, and configure camera shall be provided. Mounts shall be in accordance with detail drawings.
- D. Cameras requiring a specific power supply from the manufacturer to operate shall be provided.

2.03 VIDEO MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE (VMS)

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers:
 - 1. EVS Video Management Software:
 - a. Genetec
- B. The EAC software is an existing Genetec enterprise class IP access control software solution.
- C. Provide software edition as required to meet the detail drawings, as well as the features and functions outlined within these specifications.
- D. The VMS shall be capable of controlling and viewing multiple sources of video surveillance cameras within the facility, and manage and present video in a user friendly viewing platform. Software shall be capable of providing an unified platform for the electronic security systems including the electronic access control system, video surveillance system and intrusion detection system. The software shall be a single intuitive interface for simplistic operations. The software shall be capable of operating the electronic security systems on a single server platform and system.
- E. Provide all system components, and additional client, server, and camera licenses/dongles required for the system as specified herein. Provide all 3rd party software licenses as required for the proper operation of the system.
- F. Provide failover software module for the directory server. The software shall be capable of failing over to a secondary directory server in case of emergency or disaster recovery.
- G. Database and Recording Server Software:
 - 1. The server software shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of cameras (limited only by licensing).
 - 2. The server shall also support an unlimited number of system events and System Operator transactions in the history file limited only by available hard disk space.
 - 3. Software shall be capable of supporting a primary and secondary (failover) server to be utilized during maintenance or disaster recovery.

- H. The following functions and features shall be provided and configured as required by the Owner. These features are in addition to the required setup and programming required to provide a fully functioning EVS system.
1. Single GUI to monitor, control, and provide administrative functions.
 2. Complete Active Directory Integration with automatic updating.
 3. Dynamic Graphical Floor Plan Mapping for all of the security devices.
 4. Email and SMS alerts.
 5. Native integration with the following systems:
 - a. Electronic Access Control System
 - b. Intrusion Detection System
 - c. Intercom/Video Intercom System
 6. Mobile Application and Web Client.
 - a. Applications shall support Android, iOS, or Windows platforms.
 7. Unlimited Client PCs.
 8. Hierarchical administrative and user operational tree.

2.04 EVS SECURITY SERVER

- A. Security Server
1. Physical EVS Server:
 - a. Existing EVS server.

2.05 POWER/SPD/SIGNALING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following pre-approved manufacturers.
1. SPD:
 - a. Ditek
 - b. Nitek
- B. PoE IP camera SPD.
1. Mount: Rack Mount
 2. Features:
 - a. Supports 10Gbe.
 - b. PoE++ Surge protection.
 - c. 12 individual field replaceable ports.
 - d. Supports Cat 6A cabling infrastructure.
 3. Provide SPD for all exterior mount cameras. SPD shall be mounted within equipment room where the camera cabling terminates. Refer to detail drawings.

2.06 LAN EQUIPMENT

- A. Ethernet Switch:
1. Provided by Owner.

2.07 COPPER CABLE

- A. Refer to Division 27 Section "Horizontal Cable"

2.08 COPPER TERMINATION EQUIPMENT

- A. Refer to Division 27 Section "Horizontal Cable"

2.09 SECURITY EQUIPMENT RACKS AND CABINETS

- A. Refer to Division 27 "Communication Rooms Equipment Fittings"

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. The Security Contractor shall maintain the integrity of the existing system through renovation. The Contractor shall coordinate any outages or down-time with the Owner prior to starting any work.

- B. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the EVS system.
- C. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of EVS connections before installation.
- D. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of intrusion detection or access control.
- E. Inspect built-in and cast-in anchor installations, before installing EVS, to verify that anchor installations comply with requirements.
- F. Remove and replace anchors where inspections indicate that they do not comply with requirements. Reinspect after repairs or replacements are made.
- G. Perform additional inspections to determine compliance of replaced or additional anchor installations.
- H. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Systems shall be complete and operational in all respects.
- B. Contractor shall program and provision the system per the drawings and specifications and owner requirements.
- C. Contractor shall coordinate with the Division 26 contractor regarding the installation of all conduit, raceways, cable trays, power, etc. for all building EVS Systems.
- D. Connect 120 VAC emergency power to EVS Systems as required.
- E. All security equipment, junction boxes, terminal cans, etc. shall be installed utilizing tamper proof mounting hardware. Provide a minimum of 2 driver bits or hand tools for each type of security fastener provided.
- F. Provide seismic restraints for all equipment, including equipment racks, consoles, etc.
- G. All components of the EVS shall be tested prior to installation on site.
- H. The VMS shall be installed, programmed, and tested in accordance with manufacturer's installation requirements:
 1. Integrations shall be completed and signed off by Owner.
 2. Coordinate network interfaces with Owner.
 3. System operability, workstations, and functionality shall be completed and signed off by Owner prior to turn-over.

3.03 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceways except in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and in interior hollow gypsum board partitions where cable may be used. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces and as indicated. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4-inch. Security and data transmission wiring shall not share conduit with other building wiring systems.
- B. Conductors: Size as recommended in writing by system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. 120-V Power Wiring: Comply with Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".
- D. Connections: Comply with torque-tightening values specified in UL 486A.
- E. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components for cameras at head-end equipment, unless otherwise indicated or required by manufacturer. Do not install such items near devices they serve.
- F. Wiring Installation: Refer to Division 27 for security camera wiring installation requirements.

3.04 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Comply with Division 27 Section "Telecommunications Grounding and Bonding."

3.05 INTERFACE WITH OTHER WORK

- A. Prior to the start of system installation, schedule and facilitate a pre-installation meeting with the related trades to coordinate materials, techniques, and to sequence complex items and system installation. Proper installation and adjustment is to be reviewed. Convene at least one week prior to commencement of video surveillance installation. Provide written documentation of the meeting including: date, attendee/participant list and minutes.
- B. Coordinate with Division 26 installer to confirm required cabling pathways, device rough-ins, emergency power, and line-voltage power requirements.
- C. Coordinate with Division 27 installer to confirm required cabling locations, terminations, and connections.
- D. Coordinate with Division 28 - Fire Alarm installer to confirm required modules, connections, and configuration requirements.

3.06 IDENTIFICATION AND LABELING

- A. Label all installed devices and equipment.
- B. Prior to installation, the Contractor shall provide samples of all label types planned for the project. These samples shall include examples of the lettering to be used.
- C. Label cables to be easily identified. Labeling shall include:
 1. Label each security camera with a unique identifier.
 2. Label each piece of equipment relating to the security equipment as required.

3.07 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

- A. Conduct acceptance testing according to a schedule coordinated with the Owner and Architect/Engineer.
- B. Prior to testing, provide summary of the proposed test plan. The test plan shall include, at a minimum, proposed schedule, list of tests to be completed, equipment to be utilized, expected results, and documentation. The test plan and result shall be provided to the Engineer.
- C. Testing shall be completed prior to the final punch list performed by the Owner and Engineer.
- D. Equipment and personnel required for testing shall be provided by the Contractor.
- E. Power connections:
 1. Visually inspect all cabling and termination points to ensure that they are complete and conform to the wiring pattern defined herein.
 2. Test battery back-up units for complete operation. Provide test reports, as required.
 3. Test power connections to security cameras, command centers, servers, displays, workstations, etc, as required.
- F. Wiring and devices:
 1. Visually inspect all cabling and termination points to ensure that they are complete and conform to the wiring pattern defined herein.
 2. Test all cables for continuity, ground faults or line to line short circuits, as required.
 3. Visually inspect all security cameras, servers, workstations, and associated equipment to ensure that they are complete and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and defined herein.
- G. TCP/IP network:
 1. Visually inspect all cabling and termination points to ensure that they are complete and conform to the wiring pattern defined herein.
 2. Test that EVS cameras, server, and security workstations are connected to the network, as required.

- H. EVS Software:
1. Visually inspect that all functions for the EVS software defined herein are complete and functional.
 2. Visually inspect that the information from the security camera programming schedule provided as a part of the pre-construction submittal process has been completed within the EVS software.

3.08 SYSTEM START UP

- A. Conduct system start up according to a schedule coordinated with the Owner and Architect/Engineer.
- B. Prior to system start up, provide summary of the proposed start up plan. The plan shall include, at a minimum, proposed schedule, list of start up procedures to be completed, equipment to be utilized, expected results, and documentation. The plan and result shall be provided to the Engineer.
- C. Conduct system start up testing to verify, at a minimum, the completion following functionality.
 1. Main database server.
 2. Recording server.
 3. Security server shutdown and startup.
 4. Security software client workstations.
 5. Video wall applications.
 6. Alarm notifications.
 7. Administrative log-in.
 8. System administrative diagnostic tools and services.
 9. Access level permissions.
 10. Security camera configurations
 11. Security camera labeling.
 12. Security camera grouping.
 13. Storage configuration.
 14. Mobile and web application.
 15. Integrations.
- D. Upon completion and approval of system start up training for the Owner shall proceed.

END OF SECTION 28 2300

SECTION 283111 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS & REQUIREMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The drawings provided are preliminary only. The Fire Alarm portion of this project is Performance Based. The Fire Alarm Contractor is responsible for final design, drawings, calculations and final approval by the AHJ (Authority having jurisdiction). Only those sections below that are applicable to the project are required under Action Submittals.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control unit.
2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Heat detectors.
5. Notification appliances.
6. Remote annunciation.
7. Addressable interface device.
8. Network communications.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- C. HLI: High Level Interface.
- D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- E. PC: Personal computer.

ACTION SUBMITTALS

- F. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- G. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.

1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
6. Include battery-size calculations.
7. Include input/output matrix.
8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
11. Provide program report showing that air-sampling detector pipe layout balances pneumatically within the airflow range of the air-sampling detector.
12. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.
 - a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
 - b. Show field wiring required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
 - c. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' control system.
 - d. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' smoke-evacuation system.
 - e. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - f. Show air-sampling detector pipe routing.
13. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
14. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.

H. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
 - b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; Level IV minimum.
 - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. Delegated-Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.

2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire-alarm control unit, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
 - d. Riser diagram.
 - e. Device addresses.
 - f. Air-sampling system sample port locations and modeling program report showing layout meets performance criteria.
 - g. Record copy of site-specific software.
 - h. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
 - 1) Equipment tested.
 - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.

- i. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
 - j. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
- 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 - 2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
 - 3. Device address list.
 - 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- 1. Lamps for Remote Indicating Lamp Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
 - 2. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
 - 3. Smoke Detectors, Fire Detectors: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
 - 4. Detector Bases: Quantity equal to two percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
 - 5. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamperproofed components.
 - 6. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.
 - 7. Fuses: Two of each type installed in the system. Provide in a box or cabinet with compartments marked with fuse types and sizes.
 - 8. Filters for Air-Sampling Detectors: Quantity equal to two percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
 - 9. Air-Sampling Fan: Quantity equal to one for every five detectors, but no fewer than one unit of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level IV technician.
- C. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by an NRTL (nationally recognized testing laboratory).
- D. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a UL-listed alarm company.
- E. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 in the form of a placard by an FM Global-approved alarm company.
- F. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform a full test of the existing system prior to starting work. Document any equipment or components not functioning as designed.
- B. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Construction Manager's written permission.
- C. Use of Devices during Construction: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect the facility during construction.

1.10 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service, and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.
- B. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Components shall be compatible with, and operate as an extension of, existing system. Provide system manufacturer's certification that all components provided have been tested as, and will operate as, a system.
- B. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and horn/strobe evacuation.
- C. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- D. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.

- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:

1. Manual stations.
2. Heat detectors.
3. Flame detectors.
4. Smoke detectors.
5. Duct smoke detectors.
6. Combustible gas detectors.
7. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
8. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
9. Fire standpipe system.
10. Dry system pressure flow switch.

- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.
2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit.
3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
5. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
6. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
7. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
8. Activate smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighters' smoke-control system panel.
9. Indicate device in alarm on the graphic annunciator.

- C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch.
2. Alert and Action signals of air-sampling detector system.
3. Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
4. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
5. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.

- D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
8. Failure of battery charging.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
10. Voice signal amplifier failure.
11. Hose cabinet door open.

E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Initiate notification appliances.
2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit.
3. Record the event on system printer.
4. After a time delay of 200 seconds, transmit a trouble or supervisory signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
5. Transmit system status to building management system.
6. Display system status on graphic annunciator.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. Manufacturers:

1. FCI
2. SimplexGrinnell LP.
3. Notifier

B. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
 - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
 - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
 - d. The FACP shall be listed for connection to a central-station signaling system service.
 - e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.
 2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
 3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.
- C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
1. Announcer and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 80 characters, minimum.
 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
- D. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and

supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.

1. Announcer and Display: Liquid-crystal type, two or three] line(s) of 40 or 80 characters, minimum.
2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.

E. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:

1. Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class A or Class B.
2. Pathway Survivability:[Level 0 or Level 1.
3. Install no more than 256 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
4. Serial Interfaces:
 - a. One dedicated RS 485 port for central-station or remote station operation using point ID DACT.
 - b. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
 - c. One USB port for PC configuration.
 - d. One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.

F. Smoke-Alarm Verification:

1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
3. Record events by the system printer.
4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

G. Notification-Appliance Circuit:

1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.

H. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications. Also print system reset event, including same information for device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate the printing of a list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in the system and a historical log of events.

I. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, shall be powered by 24-V dc source.

1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.

- J. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
 - 1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.
- K. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. SimplexGrinnell LP.
 - 2. Notifier
 - 3. Bosch Security Systems
 - 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
 - 1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral or attached addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
 - 3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
 - 4. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. SimplexGrinnell LP.
 - 2. System Sensor
 - 3. Bosch Security Systems
 - 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
 - 1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
 - 2. Detectors shall be four or two wire type.
 - 3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 - 4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
 - 5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
 - 6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated.

7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition.
 - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg per minute.
 - b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F
 - c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
 - d. Sensitivity levels based on time of day.

C. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

D. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.6 HEAT DETECTORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. SimplexGrinnell LP.
2. System Sensor
3. Bosch Security Systems
4. (Owner Selection)

- B. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
 - 1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
- C. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F per minute unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Mounting: [Adapter plate for outlet box mounting] [Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases].
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg F.
 - 1. Mounting: [Adapter plate for outlet box mounting] [Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases].
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- E. Continuous Linear Heat-Detector System:
 - 1. Detector Cable: Rated detection temperature 155 deg F. Listed for "regular" service and a standard environment. Cable includes two steel actuator wires twisted together with spring pressure, wrapped with protective tape, and finished with PVC outer sheath. Each actuator wire is insulated with heat-sensitive material that reacts with heat to allow the cable twist pressure to short circuit wires at the location of elevated temperature.
 - 2. Control Unit: Two-zone or multizone unit as indicated. Provide same system power supply, supervision, and alarm features as specified for fire-alarm control unit.
 - 3. Signals to Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Any type of local system trouble shall be reported to fire-alarm control unit as a composite "trouble" signal. Alarms on each detection zone shall be individually reported to central fire-alarm control unit as separately identified zones.
 - 4. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.7 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. SimplexGrinnell LP.
 - 2. Gentex Corp.
 - 3. Siemens Industry, Inc.
 - 4. (Owner Selection)
- B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- C. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- D. Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75-dBA minimum rated output.
- E. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81-dBA minimum rated output.
- F. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.
- G. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- high letters on the lens.
 1. Rated Light Output:
 - a. [15] [30] [75] [110] [175] cd.
 - b. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
 2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
 4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
 5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
 6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, [red] [white].
- H. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:
 1. Comply with UL 1480.
 2. Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
 3. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
 4. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
 5. Mounting: Flush.
 6. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.
- I. Exit Marking Audible Notification Appliance:
 1. Exit marking audible notification appliances shall meet the audibility requirements in NFPA 72.
 2. Provide exit marking audible notification appliances at the entrance to all building exits.
 3. Provide exit marking audible notification appliances at the entrance to areas of refuge with audible signals distinct from those used for building exit marking.

2.8 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.

1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.9 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:
 1. Include address-setting means on the module.
 2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
 3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal.
 1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
 2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- D. Control Module:
 1. Operate notification devices.
 2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

2.10 NETWORK COMMUNICATIONS

- A. Provide network communications for fire-alarm system according to fire-alarm manufacturer's written requirements.
- B. Provide network communications pathway per manufacturer's written requirements and requirements in NFPA 72 and NFPA 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
 - 1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
 - 2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Connecting to Existing Equipment: Verify that existing fire-alarm system is operational before making changes or connections.
 - 1. Connect new equipment to existing control panel in existing part of the building.
 - 2. Connect new equipment to existing monitoring equipment at the supervising station.
 - 3. Expand, modify, and supplement existing monitoring equipment as necessary to extend existing monitoring functions to the new points. New components shall be capable of merging with existing configuration without degrading the performance of either system.
- C. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on finished floor.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above the finished floor.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
 - 1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches of the exit doorway.
 - 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
 - 3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches and 48 inches above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
 - 1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
 - 2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
 - 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
 - 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A in NFPA 72.
 - 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 - 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.

- G. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- H. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches long shall be supported at both ends.
 - 1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- I. Single-Station Smoke Detectors: Where more than one smoke alarm is installed within a dwelling or suite, they shall be connected so that the operation of any smoke alarm causes the alarm in all smoke alarms to sound.
- J. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- K. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
- N. Antenna for Radio Alarm Transmitter: Mount to building structure where indicated. Use mounting arrangement and substrate connection that resists 100-mph wind load with a gust factor of 1.3 without damage.

3.3 PATHWAYS

- A. Pathways above recessed ceilings and in no accessible locations may be routed exposed.
 - 1. Exposed pathways located less than 96 inches above the floor shall be installed in EMT.
- B. Pathways shall be installed in EMT.
- C. Exposed EMT shall be painted red enamel.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.

1. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighters' smoke-control system panel.
2. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
3. Magnetically held-open doors.
4. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
5. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
6. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
7. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
8. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.
9. Data communication circuits for connection to building management system.
10. Data communication circuits for connection to mass notification system.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction and engineer.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
 - a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
 2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.

4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION 283111

SECTION 321623 SIDEWALKS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Concrete sidewalks.
- B. Concrete wheelchair ramps.
- C. Section 321726 - Tactile Warning Surfacing.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ACI 305R - Guide to Hot Weather Concreting 2020.
- B. ACI 306R - Guide to Cold Weather Concreting 2016.
- C. ASTM C94/C94M - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete 2022a.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data:
 - 1. Concrete: Provide data on admixtures.

1.04 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Temperature Requirements: Do not place asphalt when ambient air or base surface temperature is less than 40 degrees F, or surface is wet or frozen.
- B. Follow recommendations of ACI 305R and ACI 306R when concreting during hot and cold weather, respectively.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CONCRETE SIDEWALKS AND WHEELCHAIR RAMPS

- A. Gravel Subbase: Thickness as indicated on drawings.
- B. Concrete Forms: Wood.
- C. Concrete Materials: Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.
- D. Aggregate: Pit Run, washed, 3/8 inch (1 cm) stone; free of shale, clay, friable material and debris.
- E. Reinforcement:
- F. Joint Filler: Preformed expansion, with a thickness of 1/2 inch.
- G. Tactile Warning Surfaces: See Section 321726.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify gradients and elevations of the subgrade are correct as shown on drawings. Where poor subgrade material is encountered, remove and replace with suitable material.
- B. Verify compacted subgrade is acceptable, ready to support imposed loads and paving, and ready to receive work.

3.02 SUBBASE PREPARATION

- A. Maintain subgrade in a smooth, compacted condition with required section and established grade until concrete is placed.

3.03 CONCRETE SIDEWALK AND WHEELCHAIR RAMP INSTALLATION

- A. Forming:
 - 1. Assemble formwork to permit easy stripping and dismantling without damaging concrete.
- B. Reinforcement:
- C. Placement:

1. Place concrete in a single lift.
 2. Consolidate concrete by tamping and spading.
 3. Install work in accordance with Municipality of Norman, Oklahoma Public Works.
- D. Joints:
1. Spacing: Provide scored joints every 5'-0" on center unless otherwise shown.
 2. Provide keyed joints as indicated.
 3. Filler height equal to the full depth of the finished concrete.
- E. Finishing:

3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Surface Flatness: 1/4 inch, maximum, measured with 10 foot straight edge.
- B. Variation from True Position: 1/4 inch, maximum.
- C. Compacted Thickness: Within 1/4 inch of specified or indicated thickness.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after placement, protect sidewalk from premature drying, excessively hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.
- B. Do not permit pedestrian traffic over sidewalk for 7 days minimum after finishing.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 321723.13
PAINTED PAVEMENT MARKINGS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Parking lot markings, including parking bays, crosswalks, arrows, and handicapped symbols.
- B. Roadway lane markings and crosswalk markings.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FS TT-B-1325 - Beads (Glass Spheres) Retro-Reflective 2007d (Validated 2017).
- B. MPI (APL) - Master Painters Institute Approved Products List; Master Painters and Decorators Association Current Edition.
- C. FHWA MUTCD - Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices 2010, with Errata.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 3. Installation methods.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver paint in containers of at least 5 gallons .
- B. Deliver glass beads in containers suitable for handling and strong enough to prevent loss during shipment accompanied by batch certificate.
- C. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- D. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Line and Zone Marking Paint: MPI (APL) No. 97 Latex Traffic Marking Paint; color(s) as indicated.
 1. Roadway Markings: As required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Handicapped Symbols: Blue.
- B. Reflective Glass Beads: FS TT-B-1325, Type I (low index of refraction), Gradation A (coarse, drop-on) ; with silicone or other suitable waterproofing coating to ensure free flow.
- C. Temporary Marking Tape: Preformed, reflective, pressure sensitive adhesive tape in color(s) required; Contractor is responsible for selection of material of sufficient durability as to perform satisfactorily during period for which its use is required.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Allow new pavement surfaces to cure for a period of not less than 14 days before application of marking materials.

- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
 - 1. Remove dust, dirt, and other granular surface deposits by sweeping, blowing with compressed air, rinsing with water, or a combination of these methods.
- D. Where oil or grease are present, scrub affected areas with several applications of trisodium phosphate solution or other approved detergent or degreaser, and rinse thoroughly after each application; after cleaning, seal oil-soaked areas with cut shellac to prevent bleeding through the new paint.
- E. Establish survey control points to determine locations and dimensions of markings; provide templates to control paint application by type and color at necessary intervals.
- F. Temporary Pavement Markings: When required or directed by Architect, apply temporary markings of the color(s), width(s) and length(s) as indicated or directed.
 - 1. After temporary marking has served its purpose, remove temporary marking by carefully controlled sandblasting, approved grinding equipment, or other approved method so that surface to which the marking was applied will not be damaged.
 - 2. At Contractor's option, temporary marking tape may be used in lieu of temporary painted marking; remove unsatisfactory tape and replace with painted markings at no additional cost to Owner.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Begin pavement marking as soon as practicable after surface has been cleaned and dried.
- B. Do not apply paint if temperature of surface to be painted or the atmosphere is less than 50 degrees F or more than 95 degrees F.
- C. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions using an experienced technician that is thoroughly familiar with equipment, materials, and marking layouts.
- D. Comply with FHWA MUTCD manual (<http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov>) for details not shown.
- E. Apply markings in locations determined by measurement from survey control points; preserve control points until after markings have been accepted.
- F. Apply uniformly painted markings of color(s), lengths, and widths as indicated on drawings true, sharp edges and ends.
 - 1. Apply paint in one coat only.
 - 2. Wet Film Thickness: 0.015 inch, minimum.
 - 3. Width Tolerance: Plus or minus 1/8 inch.
- G. Roadway Traffic Lanes: Use suitable mobile mechanical equipment that provides constant agitation of paint and travels at controlled speeds.
 - 1. Conduct operations in such a manner that necessary traffic can move without hindrance.
 - 2. Place warning signs at the beginning of the wet line, and at points well in advance of the marking equipment for alerting approaching traffic from both directions. Place small flags or other similarly effective small objects near freshly applied markings at frequent intervals to reduce crossing by traffic.
 - 3. If paint does not dry within expected time, discontinue paint operations until cause of slow drying is determined and corrected.
 - 4. Skip Markings: Synchronize one or more paint "guns" to automatically begin and cut off paint flow; make length of intervals as indicated.
 - 5. Use hand application by pneumatic spray for application of paint in areas where a mobile paint applicator cannot be used.
 - 6. Distribute glass beads uniformly on the paint lines within ten seconds without any waste, applied at rate of 6 pounds per gallon of paint; if the marking equipment does not have a glass bead dispenser, use a separate piece of equipment adjusted and synchronized with the paint applicator; remove and replace markings having faulty distribution of beads.

- H. Parking Lots: Apply parking space lines, entrance and exit arrows, painted curbs, and other markings indicated on drawings.
 - 1. Mark the International Handicapped Symbol at indicated parking spaces.
 - 2. Hand application by pneumatic spray is acceptable.
- I. Symbols: Use a suitable template that will provide a pavement marking with true, sharp edges and ends, of the design and size indicated.

3.04 DRYING, PROTECTION, AND REPLACEMENT

- A. Protect newly painted markings so that paint is not picked up by tires, smeared, or tracked.
- B. Provide barricades, warning signs, and flags as necessary to prevent traffic crossing newly painted markings.
- C. Allow paint to dry at least the minimum time specified by the applicable paint standard and not less than that recommended by the manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace markings that are applied at less than minimum material rates; deviate from true alignment; exceed length and width tolerances; or show light spots, smears, or other deficiencies or irregularities.
- E. Remove markings in manner to avoid damage to the surface to which the marking was applied, using carefully controlled sand blasting, approved grinding equipment, or other approved method.
- F. Replace removed markings at no additional cost to Owner.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 323313
SITE BICYCLE RACKS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Exterior bicycle racks.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless 2022.
- B. ICC-ES AC308 - Acceptance Criteria for Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete Elements 2016.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 3. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate size, shape, and dimensions, including clearances from adjacent walls, doors, and obstructions.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Handle racks with sufficient care to prevent scratches and other damage to the finish.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 1. Madraz; www.madrax.com
 2. CycleSafe; www.cyclesafe.com
 3. Dero Bike Rack Co, a PlayCore Company; www.dero.com
 4. The Park Catalogue; www.theparkcatalog.com
- B. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 BICYCLE RACKS

- A. Exterior Bicycle Racks: Device allows user-provided lock to simultaneously secure one wheel and part of the frame on each bicycle parked or racked.
 1. Size: 2 feet o.c. by 3 feet high
 2. Style: Inverted horseshoe rack formed by one u-shaped bend of round pipe.
 3. Mounting, Ground: Surface flange.
 4. Color: Powder Coated, Semi-gloss black.
 5. Accessories: Surface flange cover.
- B. Materials:
 1. Pipe: 2" Carbon steel, ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to receive bicycle racks.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory conditions before proceeding.
- C. Do not begin installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Ensure surfaces to receive bicycle racks are clean, flat, and level.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install level, plumb, square, and correctly located as indicated on drawings.
- C. Post-Installed Anchors: Comply with ICC-ES AC308.
- D. Surface Flange Installation: Anchor bicycle racks securely in place with 1/2 inch by 4 inch anchor bolts through flange holes.
- E. Freestanding Installation: Place in location indicated on drawings.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean installed work to like-new condition. Do not use cleaning materials or methods that could damage finish.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION